MAQTAL AL-ḤUSAIN:

Martyrdom Epic of Imām al-Ḥusain (;">"

Translated from the Arabic and Edited
By
Yasin T. al-Jibouri
CONTENTS

AUTHOR'S BIOGRAPHY ............................................................... 9
  1. AUTHOR'S BACKGROUND .......................................................... 9
  2. HIS LINEAGE ........................................................................ 10
  3. HIS BIRTH AND UPBRINGING .................................................. 11
  4. HIS MENTORS ....................................................................... 12
  5. THE STATUS OF HIS SCHOLARSHIP ......................................... 13
  6. HIS STYLE ............................................................................ 13
  7. HIS FIRST BOOK .................................................................... 14
  8. MAQTAL AL-HUSAIN, THE BOOK ........................................... 14
  9. HIS LEGACY .......................................................................... 16
      A. HIS PUBLISHED BOOKS ..................................................... 16
      B. INTRODUCTIONS AND PREFACES FOR LEGACY BOOKS .... 16
      C. HIS MANUSCRIPTS .......................................................... 16
 10. HIS LOYALTY TO AHL AL-BAYT (ع) ...................................... 17
 11. HIS POETRY ........................................................................ 18
 12. HOW HIS LIFE WAS CONCLUDED .......................................... 18

PART I

AL-HUSAIN'S UPRISING .............................................................. 21

THE PROPHETS ARE
  ON AL-HUSAIN'S SIDE .......................................................... 34

THE INTENTION TO KILL ............................................................ 36

THE VERSE OF PERDITION ........................................................ 44
  SUMMARY .............................................................................. 48

AL-HUSAIN'S PRIOR KNOWLEDGE
  OF HIS MARTYRDOM .............................................................. 51

AL-HUSAIN: A CONQUEROR ....................................................... 52

AL-HUSAIN AMONG HIS COMPANIONS ...................................... 58

AL-HUSAIN (ع) ON THE TAFF DAY ............................................. 66

DESERTION PERMITTED .......................................................... 69
  SUMMARY .............................................................................. 74

THE SHARI ‘A SURVIVED
  THROUGH AL-HUSAIN .......................................................... 75
MUSLIM STARTS HIS TRIP .......................................................................................... 114
ENTERING KÕFA ...................................................................................................... 114
THE OATH OF ALLEGIANCE .................................................................................. 115
MUSLIM'S STAND .................................................................................................... 117
HANİ'S STAND ........................................................................................................ 120
MUSLIM’S UPRISING .............................................................................................. 122
AL-MUKHTAR IS JAILED ....................................................................................... 123
MUSLIM AT THE HOUSE OF TAW'A ...................................................................... 124
MUSLIM MEETS IBN ZIYAD ................................................................................... 126
THE JOURNEY TO IRAQ .......................................................................................... 130
MECCA:
   AL-HUSAIN (ınız) DELIVERS A SERMON .......................................................... 131
ATTEMPTS TO DISSUADE HIM
   FROM DEPARTING .............................................................................................. 131
WHY DID THE IMAM (ınız) LEAVE? .................................................................... 133
   AL-TAN’IM .......................................................................................................... 136
   AL-SIFA ............................................................................................................... 137
   THAT ‘IRQ ........................................................................................................... 138
   AL-HAJIR ............................................................................................................ 138
SOME INFORMERS ................................................................................................... 139
   AL-KHUZAYMIYYA ............................................................................................. 139
   ZARUD ................................................................................................................ 140
   AL-THA’LABIYYA ............................................................................................. 142
   AL-SHUQQQAN ................................................................................................. 142
   ZUBAL ............................................................................................................... 143
   IN THE HEARTLAND OF AL-‘AQABA .............................................................. 143
   SHARAF .............................................................................................................. 144
   AL-BAYDA ......................................................................................................... 146
   AL-RUHAYMA ................................................................................................... 147
   AL-QADISIYYA ................................................................................................. 147
   AL-‘UTHAYB ...................................................................................................... 148
   QASR BANI MUQATIL ....................................................................................... 149
   THE TAFF VILLAGES ......................................................................................... 151
KERBALA’ ................................................................. 153
IBN ZIYAD MEETS AL-HUSAIN (τ) ............................... 156
IBN ZIYAD DELIVERS A SPEECH ............................... 158
AL-HUSAIN (τ) MEETS THE KUFIANS .......................... 159
THE HOSTS ............................................................... 160
THE WATERING PLACE .............................................. 161
THE SEVENTH DAY .................................................... 162
CONCEIT OF IBN SA’D .............................................. 164
CALUMNY OF IBN SA’D .............................................. 165
AL-SHIRMR’S OPPRESSIVENESS .................................. 166
SECURITY .................................................................... 167
BANU ASAD ............................................................. 168
DAY NINE ................................................................. 168
THOSE WHOSE CONSCIENCE IS FREE ....................... 170
THE NIGHT PRECEDING ʿÂSHURA ................................. 172
ʿÂSHURA .................................................................... 177
AL-HUSAIN (τ) ON ʿÂSHURA .......................................... 180
AL-HUSAIN (τ) SUPPLICATES ....................................... 181
THE FIRST SERMON .................................................. 181
A MIRACLE AND GUIDANCE ....................................... 184
ZUHAYR IBN AL-QAYN DELIVERS A SPEECH ............... 185
BURAYR’S SPEECH ...................................................... 186
AL-HUSAIN’S SECOND SERMON ............................... 186
IBN SA’D’S MISGUIDANCE ......................................... 188
AL-HURR REPENTS ..................................................... 189
AL-HURR ADMONISHES THE KUFIANS ....................... 190
THE FIRST CAMPAIGN ............................................... 190
DUELS BETWEEN TWO OR FOUR WARRIORS ............... 192
AN APPEAL FOR HELP, AND GUIDANCE ...................... 192
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>POST-MARTYRDOM EVENTS</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE ELEVENTH NIGHT</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE ELEVENTH NIGHT IN THE COMPANY OF AL-HUSAIN (علي)</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE LOOTING</td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE STEED</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE SEVERED HEADS</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEPARTING FROM KERBALÂ’</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KûFA</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZAINAB’S SPEECH</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FÂTIMA DAUGHTER OF AL-HUSSAIN (علي) DELIVERS A SPEECH</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UMM KULTHÛM SPEAKS OUT</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AL-SAJJÄD (علي) DELIVERS A SPEECH</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE BURIAL</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AT THE GOVERNOR’S MANSION</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBN `AFIF</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AL-MUKHTÄR AL-THAQAFI</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE SACRED HEAD SPEAKS</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPPRESSION OF AL-ASHDAQ</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UMM AL-BANEEN</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘ABDULLÄH IBN JA’FER</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘ABDULLÄH IBN `ABBÄS</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE CAPTIVES TAKEN TO SYRIA</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN SYRIA</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YAZID MEETS AL-SAJJÄD (علي)</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE MOST SACRED HEAD</td>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A SYRIAN ENCOUNTERS FÂIMA</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZAINAB’S SPEECH</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE HOUSE OF RUINS</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BACK TO MEDINA</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE SEVERED HEAD REJOINS THE BODY</td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE ARBA’EEN</td>
<td>303</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Author’s Background

The author is a defender of the Imāms of Guidance who carried on the Shari‘a of the Master of Messengers (ṣ), raised the saline features of the creed, explained the Sunnah and promoted righteousness. The said Imāms (ṣ) disseminated the Islamic teachings whenever they had the opportunity to do so, braving numerous trials and tribulations, persevering in every hostile environment. Their foes envied them while those who despised and hated them harboured a great deal of grudge against them. The intestines of some of them were cut open while the livers of others were chopped. Swords severed their joints, and they were hurled into dark dungeons. Despite all of this, the light of the truth did, indeed, dispel the darkness of misguidance. Truth always subdues falsehood. Generations have been obliterated and new ones have come as the scholars of the Infallible Household remain vigilant as guardians of the Shari‘a. They took upon themselves to study and clarify its obscurities and comprehend its pith. The knowledge of Ahl al-Bayt (ṣ) has received a great deal of attention and awarded a great deal of concern; therefore, major Islamic cities have been filled with many a genius and a scholar. These set up the rules and established the branches. Their pens delved into each and every field and wrote about every branch of knowledge and scholarship.

I find myself at this juncture reluctant to discuss the branches of knowledge about which they wrote or the arts they categorized according to queries, or the precious treasures for whose safeguarding they dedicated themselves. The libraries of the Western world, at major cities, are filled with large numbers of such great works. The halls of their institutes are crowded with thousands of books which their pillars have recorded, not to mention what is available at Islamic cities in the East of great books and magnificent literary works. Publishing houses and scientific institutes came to their universities and scientific institutes and took to serious work, verifying what is written and bringing out what is treasured. They kept explaining and critiquing, clarifying, comparing, and examining. Critics’ pens dived into the depths in order to take out the jewels and the treasures therein. Opportunity was seized by every publishing establishment that loves knowledge or seeks wealth, for people are bent on ambitiously seeking knowledge, desiring to quench their thirst of the fountain of various branches of knowledge. [The hawza at] al-Najaf al-Ashraf is a pioneer in researching, teaching and writing since it was founded by the sect's mentor, al-Tusi, in the fifth Hijri century (the 11th century A.D.). Its study circles are crowded with exemplary scholars who shone like stars in the depth of the darkness and with dazzling suns during the period that followed our Imams' time. They never ceased their march, nor did they ever put down the pens that they unsheathed to remove the doubts, nor did they abandon the pulpit. Sacred mosques are full of glorious mentors and brilliant and inspiring intellectuals: thinkers whose fountainheads are pure. We, therefore, find al-Najaf upholding its role of leadership. It is the ultimate desire of those who seek and appreciate knowledge, the final stop of those who pursue honours. Do you think that its teaching staff and their status at “al-Fitiyya” would ever abandon it while the rays of the Master of the Learned, the Imam of the pious, the Commander of the Faithful, overwhelm the Islamic world, and the torches of his wisdom and teachings live in and fill the hearts? These are only some of the precious boons of the Master of the Wise, peace be upon him.

In the deluge of the waves of these scholarly floods did our master, whose biography is here
discussed, live and grow up. He felt distressed at finding the legacy of Ahl al-Bayt (k) obscured in many respects, and it hurt him to see pens unconcerned about researching their ways of life and extracting what is hidden of their deeds and merits. Is not the Islamic library satisfied with these thousands of books and literary works that deal with Fiqh and Usul while the “struggle” of the masters of the world remains obscured and shadowed by misinformation, misrepresentation and distortion wrought by bygone antagonistic pens during periods when Ahl al-Bayt, peace be upon them, were not given any respite at all, nor were they befriended? Horrible wars were waged against them and lies and fabrications invented in order to distort the facts relevant to them. How could such pens be otherwise especially since the oppressive authority and those in charge, during their time, felt jealous of them and schemed against them? False charges and deception were the outcome as those who flattered the rulers spread far and wide.

Due to his extensive knowledge of these narrators and liars and his familiarity with the names of fabricated personalities, our master whose biography we are discussing regarded it as his obligation, one mandated on him by the Imams, peace be upon them, to dedicate his efforts and energy to research and study what these Imams had taught, the knowledge which is now with us, and to clarify the reasons behind the confusion about and the historical context of those events. He did all of this by applying the principles of comparison and deduction in order to deduce complex injunctions.

But he came to conclude that authorship should be restricted to explaining the biographies of these Imams and the details of the circumstances wherein they lived. Are we not being unfair to them, being able to write, having the knowledge, scholarship, and the tools of research at our disposal? Should we be too lazy to do so or feel reluctant to unveil the facts behind whatever dubiosity was cast on what actually befell them? The Umayyads, the Zubayris, and the `Abbāsides waged unrelenting wars against them in order to obscure their light and obliterate their legacy, utilizing those who followed and supported them. Is it not, then, obligatory on us to direct our energy to continue what they had started? In other words, should we not write books lauding them, so that we may thus support and assist their struggle, and so that we may show the glowing facts obscured by frivolous lies? Did not our scholars delve enough into the questions of Fiqh, Usul, logic, and philosophy for many centuries, leaving nothing at all for anyone else to say or to discuss or to debate?! We have a moral obligation towards them. We should write about them and study their revivals and shed a light on their statements. We must refute the charges levelled against them and the skepticism.

He, may Allah have mercy on his soul, was of the view that an author should not exert his effort and exhaust himself in dealing with the branches of modern or ancient knowledge without allotting a portion of such effort or exertion to study their personalities and those of their offspring and followers who were hanged, jailed, or exiled to distant lands and who died while remaining firm in adhering to the lofty principles and to the true faith. This is what he himself had written in the Introduction to his explanation of a poem by Shaikh Hasan son of Shaikh Kāzim Sabti, may Allah have mercy on his soul, known as “al-kalim al-tayyib.” This is how he starts it: “It is, therefore, obligatory on us, having studied the basics of our beliefs, to look into their [Imams’] virtues, merits, and lifestyles, so that we may carry out our responsibility towards them on one hand, and so that we may emulate them and follow their recommendations on the other.”

2. His Lineage
He is `Abdul-Razzāq son of Muhammed son of `Abbās son of the scholar Hasan son of the scholar Qāsim son of Hassān son of Sa`i’d son of Hasan son of Kamāl ad-Dīn son of Husain son of Sa`i’d son of Thābit son of Yahya son of Duways son of `Asim son of Hasan son of Muhammed son of Ali son of Sālim son of Ali son of Sabra son of Mūsā son of Ali son of Jā’fer son of Imām Abul- Mūsā al-Kāzim (k) son of Imām Jā’fer al-Sadiq (k). His nickname, “al-Muqarram,” is the family name. The story behind this family name is that one of his grandfathers was sick in his feet on account of an ailment which exhausted him, causing him to be very thin, rendering him to house confinement. Before that incident, the family name used to be “al-Sa`i’d,” after his grandfather Sa`i’d son of Thābit.
3. His Birth and Upbringing

He, may Allāh be merciful to him, was born in 1316 A.H./1899 A.D. `Allāma Shaikh Ali Asghar Ahmadi learned from him as indicated in an article by `Imād Zadah, editing manager of (Iranian) Khud magazine which he wrote for the Tehran newspaper Nida-e-Haqq of the 29th of the month of Ramadan, 1370 A.H./July 4, 1951 A.D.

His father, Sayyid Muhammed son of Sayyid `Abbās, used to quite often observe i’tikāf at Kāfa's grand mosque, and he used to stay at Kāfa quite often. But his grandfather on the mother's side, Sayyid Husain, the scholar, looked after him with affectionate care and raised him Islamically just as the offspring of the people of knowledge and distinction are raised. He studied Arabic in its tools, the fiqh (Islamic jurisprudence) in its branches, and the `aqa'id (Islamic beliefs) and the queries relevant thereto. His grandfather's death in 1334 A.H./1916 A.D. agonized him a great deal, overburdening his general life and his efforts to make a living. He, therefore, had to withstand extreme hardships and face the cruelty of circumstances. Yet all of that did not distract him from seeking knowledge and attending research sessions with his mentors. He used to quite often mention his father Sayyid Muhammed (who died in 1351 A.H./1932 A.D.) well. His mother, a descendant of the progeny of Imam Ali (ئ), was very kind to him, and he was kind to her. She was a righteous women who used to recite the Holy Qur’an; she died in 1370 A.H./1951 A.D.

His uncle, Sayyid Mehdi son of Sayyid `Abbās, used to travel frequently between various cities and visit his relatives who scattered throughout Nu’māniyya, Dīwāniyya, Hindiyya and elsewhere. This uncle, may Allāh have mercy on his soul, used to be a bitter opponent and a critic of the `Uthmānis (Ottomans), and he used to frequently criticize them for the harm and oppression they were inflicting on the public till they arrested him in Kuwait which he visited in 1334 A.H./1916 A.D. and hanged him.

The ancestor of al-Muqarram's family is Sayyid Qāsim who had moved from al-Hasaka, where he had some real estate properties, to al-Najaf al-Ashraf in order to be near the master of wasīs. Another reason was the fact that some of his family members were already residing at al-Najaf as he recorded in some of his papers.

His departure took place in the second Hijri century (8th century A.D.). Since he settled in the family's present house, he became very much involved in seeking knowledge till he became one of Najaf's most renown personalities and dignitaries. His house became the place where distinguished scholars met. He used to quite often hold commemorative ceremonies for Ahl al-Bayt (ئ) and majāls in their honour. He was a recognized genealogist, an imām of jama’ā, and an author. Among his wrottings was a commentary on Al-Ansāb by Abul-Hasan al-Fatāni who died in 1138 A.H./1726 A.D. This commentary goes beyond tracing the names of fathers and grandfathers or stating one's family tree. Another commentary he wrote was for `Umdat al-Tālib of Ibn Ansāb who died in 828 A.H./1425 A.D. Our biographee, may Allāh have mercy on him, did not discuss issues relevant to late genealogies, feeling too embarrassed to deal with their affairs. But he was quite familiar with and fully knowledgeable of biographers and narrators of hadith and those who branched out of the “origins;” therefore, it was not hard for him to appreciate the significance of a particular hadith or narration once he knew the false name of its narrator, that is to say, the one who fabricated it, or his characteristics whereby he was supposedly known.

We must not forget the fact that his grandfather on his mother's side, Sayyid Husain, who died in the late part of 1334 A.H./1916 A.D., was also an imām of jama’ā and one of those whose profession was teaching. His uncle, Sayyid Ahmed son of Sayyid Husain, who also died in 1334 A.H./1916 A.D., was a man of scholarship and distinction, and he fathered four sons among whom Sayyid Ibrāhīm son of Sayyid Ahmed, who died in 1358 A.H./1939 A.D., came to be distinguished for his scholarship and virtues. He was a far-sighted man, one whose fiqh was quite broad. Many of those who acquired a lofty degree of scholarship were among his students, and he studied for a lengthy period of time at the school of Imam Shaikh Muhammed Husain Al Shaikh Ali Kāshīf al-Ghitā’, may Allāh have mercy on him.
4. His Mentors

1. His grandfather, the pious and God-fearing scholar, Sayyid Ḥusain, who died in 1334 A.H./1916 A.D. and who took care of raising and educating him.


3. The scholar/authority and faqih Shaikh Husain al-Hilli al-Najafi, may Allāh expand his shade, who taught him ṣuḥūṣ in their respective fiqh and usūl.


8. Ayatullah and the greatest mentor and today's authority Abul-Qāsim al-Khoei al-Najafi, may Allāh expand his shade, who taught him fiqh and usūl.

9. As regarding the great mujahid Shaikh Muhammed Jawad al-Balaghi, who died in 1352 A.H./1933 A.D., he used to hold the biographee in high esteem, quite often recognizing his status. Due to the similarity between both men's method of work and defense of the Sharī'a of the Chosen One (ṣ), the bonds between them were quite strong. The forgiven biographee participated with the authority al-Balaghi in publishing Al-Rihla al-Madrasīyya and in co-writing Al-Huda li Din al-Mustafa. Al-Balaghi's personality filled his soul with admiration and respect with regard to many situations wherein loyalty to Ahl al-Bayt (ṣ) openly manifested itself. You can notice this from reviewing what he recorded by way of comment on al-Balaghi's poem in the appendix to this book and on many other books which he had bought from him, such as the biographee's editing of a copy of Al-Rihla al-Madrasīyya and his procurement of Ahmed's Musnad, which he indexed and marked with a statement indicative of his admiration for al-Balaghi's personality.

As regarding the forgiven authority in fatāwa Shaikh Muhammed Husain al-Isfahānī al-Najafi, who died in 1361 A.H./1942 A.D., the biographee cherished his company and learned from him lessons in philosophy and 'ilm al-kalām. In response to Sayyid al-Muqarram's desire, the forgiven Shaikh al-Isfahānī wrote his monumental poem in honour of the Infallible Ones, peace be upon him, titled Al-Anwār al-Qudsiyya. Despite the fact that the poet was a professor of philosophy who had filled this poem with rational philosophical terms, it came easy in its structure, pure in themes and meanings, sweet to the ear in its musical tone. We know that philosophy, due its complex terminology, taxes any poem, leaving it anything but poetry, yet the forgiven al-Muqarram used to quite often recite some of it during many majālis which he used to hold in memory of the Infallible Ones (ṣ). This book, Maqtaal al-Husain, does not overlook this poem, and in the chapter containing eulogies, you will find some of it in praise of Imām al-Husain, peace be upon him.

The authority Shaikh ʿAbdul-Rasūl son of Shaikh Sharīf al-Jawāhiri, who died in 1389 A.H./1969 A.D., may Allāh fill his grave with noor, was a role model of piety and integrity and on the highest plains of purity of the soul and righteousness. The biographee kept him company, and the Shaikh was one of those who were known for their ijtiḥād and lofty scholarly status. Our master al-Muqarram maintained a close tie with him especially when major questions and intricate researches were discussed. I once asked my virtuous friend professor al-Hajj Yahya al-Jawāhiri, who used to attend their meetings, about the nature of the researches discussed by the Shaikh [al-Jawāhiri] and the Sayyid [al-Muqarram]. He answered me by saying that the forgiven al-Muqarram used to introduce arguments known as ishtībāḥāt (confusing issues) to the great Shaikh relevant to the latter's book Al-Jawāhīr, and that the faqīh Shaikh ʿAbdul-Rasūl used to endorse
them and attract his attention to his observations with regard to some of the questions discussed in *Al-Jawāhir*.

5. The Status of his Scholarship

I do not find this topic permitting me to discuss the Sayyid's scholarly status because he is my father, but if the reader wishes to discern such a status, he will be able to do so from examining the list of books he had written. In his manuscripts, as well as in published works, there is a wealth for the researcher and a hamlet for the seeker, let alone the scholarly “licenses” awarded to him by the greatest of scholars and which are preserved besides his manuscripts. But the Sayyid never bragged about them, and I am not sure what their effect on his psyche was.

As regarding the Introductions which he wrote for many published books, in addition to the researches and commentaries embedded in *Al-Dirāsat* by Sayyid Ali al-Shahroodi, may Allah have mercy on him, which are edicts issued by our master al-Khoei, in addition to another of his books titled *Al-Muhadaraṭ fi al-Fiqr al-Ja’fari* (lectures in the jurisprudence of Imam Ja’fer al-Ṣādiq[۱۴] ), all these indicate the intellectual caliber and the brilliance the biographee used to enjoy, add to that his diligence as he turned the pages of numerous references. I am inclined to think that he assisted many contemporary researchers in Najaf who wrote famous books, and he may have provided them with entire chapters for their books. He did all of that as a service to knowledge and to those who seek it. Let me provide you here with what Shaikh Muhammed Ḥādi al-Amīnī, son of the forgiven authority al-Amīnī, has said,

The authority, Sayyid al-Muqarram, was a flowing ocean not only of *fiqh* and its basics, but you also find him delving into *hadith*, literature, philosophy, education and divine wisdom. He was the ultimate end of the seeker and the refuge of the one in need. His education was broad, his knowledge abundant, and he was frank in everything he said and did... One single book of his suffices to provide you with a clear idea about his living education wherein his genius is manifested. Despite all his wealth of knowledge and exhaustion of research, he never let pride take control of him, nor did he permit conceit to entertain his mind. For this reason, you always find him most humble, providing you with what he has as though he is taking from you...¹

6. His Style

Researchers' methods depend on clarity, elucidation, argumentation, and glaring evidence. If we study the author's books, how will his writing style appear to us?

Most likely, if you examine his books in their various topics, and the comments which he had written for others, or the Introductions he wrote for great scholars, you will no doubt find the mark of clarity and the stamp of glow as basic ingredients of their structure. We do not forget that the research whereby his books are characterized is indicative of a study, an examination and an in-depth comparison. This requires him to read the texts in their various connotations together with what critics and narrators have commented about them as well as a review of the personalities of their authors. Having done all of this, the text may either stand on solid grounds, or it may collapse. It is upon such a premise that his book *Tanzāḥ al-Mukhtar al-Thaqafi*, and also his great book *Sayyida Sukayna*, in addition to his manuscript *Naqd al-Tārikh fi Masā’il Sitt*, are based. The writing style of his time depended on the use of rhymed prose, decorative diction, and the charging of the structure with whatever symbols, signs, and other things which over-burden the statement, all of which are avoided by modern Arabic style. Yet his style is free of all of these things. He,

---

¹This excerpt was published in issue No. 17 of *Al-ʿAdl* Najafi magazine of Shaʿbān 14, 1391/October 5, 1971.
rather, relied upon deduction and good comprehension; therefore, his books are based on the originality of thought, the detail in narrating the facts, and on portraying the thoughts. You find him leading you to accept the serious issue which he raises. This book, *Maqtal al-Husain*, is full of such issues. Sayyid Husain never stops researching, studying, analyzing, and comparing. Then he says, “We, thereupon, conclude from a *fiqh* standpoint that..., etc.”

7. His First Book

The intensity of his love for Ahl al-Bayt, peace be upon them, stimulates him, when he reads a book, to pick from it the tales and traditions which point out to something relevant to them or to their opponents, then he incorporates such bits and pieces into a dissertation which we can describe as “incomplete” and which researchers describe as “research's raw material.” Often, he presents such collected material to one who finds it to be of interest to his own research. He once came to know that the orator and poet, the forgiven Shaikh Hasan Sabti, had composed a lengthy poem about the Infallible Ones (¢) which he called *Al-Kalim al-Tayyib* or *Anfa` al-Za`d li Yawm al-Ma`‘ad*, so he explained it saying, on the onset, “This is the first of my writings after which I wrote about Zayd the martyr.” At its conclusion, he said, “I wished to summarize it but was unable to do so because of my very busy schedule.” He dedicated himself to explaining and commenting on it, clarifying any part which needed to be expounded, but he, may Allah have mercy on him, did not consider it as one of his books because the explanation was not based on his own basic effort; so, he was not concerned about it.

His first published book was *Zayd al-Shahid* (“Zayd the Martyr”) to which he appended his dissertation titled *Tanzih al-Mukhtar al-Thaqafi*. *Zayd al-Shahid* is a book that details the biography of Imam al-Sajjad, peace be upon him. He did not indicate in the Introduction his reasons for writing it, and I think his genuine love for the revolution of Imam Husain (¢) motivated him to write it and to discuss how the oppressive government of the Umayyads came to an end, and also due to the abundant similarity between its stand and that of the revolution of the Father of Martyrs (¢). The book is full of many issues which hired pens have fabricated in order to support the government of the Umayyads. We are not concerned about this issue as much as we are about pointing out the following: The book was published in the 1930s, and at the time, it was regarded a shame that a scholar should busy himself with issues unrelated to *fiqh* and *usūl*. His action would be regarded as self-demeaning, undermining his status and prestige. But the biographee broke the iron locks that prohibited a learned scholar from researching and actively seeking to publish and comment or critique a book written by our prominent scholars of the past generations. For this reason, those at the scholarly *hawza* felt uneasy upon seeing one of their most notable scholars seeking to research issues which had no relevance to *fiqh* or to *usūl*. Amazement intensified at the *hawza* to see a book by Shaikh `Abdul-Husain al-Amrani titled *Shuhad` al-Fadila* (“Martyrs of Virtue”), so the investigative researcher, Agha Buzurg, came to publish his great encyclopedia titled *Al-Thar`i‘a*, the first volume of which was printed by Najaf’s presses. They were preceded in doing so by the forgiven trusted authority Shaikh `Abbās al-Qummi who published his precious book *Al-Kuna wal Alqāb*. The Publishers' Club critiqued Sayyid al-Radi's book *Haqiq al-Ta‘wil*, the valuable Introduction for which was written by the authority scholar and poet, Shaikh `Abdul-Husain al-Hilli... Thus did the men of distinction and prestige become accustomed to this type of writing and study.

Other works, or say studies, followed, and it was then decided that the dust accumulated by forgetfulness and negligence should no longer cover the author's books especially since the presses, the publishers, and the readers welcome such books with a great deal of pleasure. It was then that public and private libraries came to acquire it, and those who benefit from scholars' researches abounded.

8. *Maqtal al-Husain*, the Book

A poet has said,
Your calamity has made us forget ours that were
And is sure to make the ones to come easy to bear.

This poet is simply referring to the Kerbalá’ tragedy, for it certainly is the greatest of all tragedies, the most momentous of all catastrophes that befell the Progeny of the Chosen One (ع). The series of disasters that accompanied the march undertaken by force by the members of the House of Revelation from Medīna to Iraq, then to Syria, could cause anyone's heart to swell and bleed. The glorious Imāms (ع) used to always urge their followers not to forget it and to do everything they could to keep it alive in their memory saying, “Keep our cause alive! May Allāh have mercy on whoever keeps our cause alive!” It was, therefore, accompanied by chapters in which the narration played an important role, stamping it with a very somber and emotionally exciting stamp, one that excites what the souls hide and the minds conceal. The hearts of the Shi‘as are sorely distressed and are filled with profoundly sad thoughts filled with frightening images. The hearts are filled with outrage at everyone who committed that heinous crime.

Prominent historians wrote down what they heard and recorded what came to their knowledge. As a result, many things found their ways (to print) which good taste rejects and which do not agree with what the Imāms themselves, peace be upon them, had narrated, nor do they agree with the truth. This comes from our own party. We (Shi‘as) have added a great deal to the Kerbalá’ events and to the events that followed. As regarding the enemies of Ahl al-Bayt (ع), these took to falsifying and distorting the facts! Thus has the calamity passed; centuries passed by while it is still standing and will continue to be so till the Day of Judgment. Yet we have to remove the curtain from what was hidden and veiled. We have to narrate authentic events and undermine everything which does not agree with the foundation upon which the uprising of the Master of Martyrs was based in his bloody struggle to depose those who killed the Sunnah while keeping the bid‘a alive.

Does not amazement stir you to accept the narration of Hameed ibn Muslim who appears as a soft-hearted man on the battlefield while he was one of those who accompanied the severed head of Abu ‘Abdullāh, peace be upon him, as it was being displayed in Kāfa and Syria and, at the same time, set aside Kerbalá's events and not learn them from the ones to whom they took place and upon whom its calamities were piled up?

And who is “Abul-Faraj” anyway?! He is a supporter of the Umayyads and one of their kinsfolk who depends in his narration on those who follow al-Zubayr or on Umayyads who all are the enemies of Ahl al-Bayt, peace be upon them! In his famous Tarikh, al-Tabari quotes most of his narration from al-Suddi and Mujahid and others while learned people know exactly who al-Suddi is. Yet he is quoted narrating the events at Kerbalá! It is for all of these reasons that the forgiven biographee stood to write his book, Maqtal al-Husain.

This book refers to and exposes a large number of quotations which do not stand on any foundation. Through comparison and examination, he nullifies the narrations transmitted by many narrators for many, many years.

This book contains in its footnotes researches relevant to the fiqh, language, and literature in addition to numerous researches of many expressions related to narrations which contradict even those who narrated them. The reader will find in it an overflow of references upon which the biographee relies to verify and research the Kerbalá’ epic.

The Kerbalá’ epic contains numerous names of men, women, and children in which there is a great deal of confusion with regard to both the names and the ones to whom they were attached. The author removed such confusion. Do you know that those who refer to Umm Kulthūm are actually talking about Zainab, the wise lady?! And can you imagine that “Umm al-Baneen” was not living during the time of the tragedy and that the poetry recited by the thākirs has no share of the truth?! Read, for example, this one:
Do not call upon me, O Umm al-Baneen,  
You only remind me of the lions in their den.

So we narrate the event and thus side with Marwân, the wazigh⁵, unwittingly presenting him as a soft-hearted man with tearful eyes! And what do you know about the one who slaughtered al-Husain (τ.), namely Shimr, about his lineage and nature, and about governor `Ubaydullah (ibn Ziyâd)? The Sayyid derives legislative injunctions from the conduct of Imâm Abu `Abdullâh (τ.) and from his statements in his sermons. You find all of this in Maqtal al-Husain, and you find many other causes which I myself am reluctant to present to you, but your soul pushes you, O reader, to be familiar with them, and to sift the contents of this book just as we proudly introduced its precious topics to you.

9. His Legacy  
A. His Published Books:  
1. Zayd al-Shahîd (biography)  
2. Al-Mukhtâr ibn `Ubayd al-Thaqafi (critique and study)  
3. Sayyida Sukayna (research)  
4. Maqtal al-Husain (τ.) (history book and research)  
5. Al-Siddîqa Fatîma (τ.) (biography)  
6. Imâm Zayn al-`Abîdîn (τ.) (biography)  
7. Imâm al-Rida (τ.) (biography)  
8. Imâm al-Jawâd (τ.) (biography)  
9. Qamar Banî Hâshim: al-`Abbâs (τ.) (biography)  
10. Ali al-Akbar (τ.) (biography)  
11. Al-Shahîd Muslim ibn `Aqîl (biography)  
12. Sirr al-Imâm fil Shahada al-Thâlítha (events and study)  

B. Introductions and Prefaces for Legacy Books:  
15. Dalî`il al-Imâma (by Ibn Jarîr al-Tabari al-Imâmi)  
17. Al-Khasâ`is (by al-Sayyid al-Radi)  
18. Al-Maâkîm (by Sayyid Ahmed ibn Tawûs)  
19. Farhat al-Ghari (by Sayyid `Abdul-Karîm ibn Tawûs)  
20. Ithbât al-Wâsiyya (by al-Mas`ûdi)  
22. Bishârat al-Mustafa (by `Imâd ad-Dîn al-Tabari al-`Âmîli) (commentaries and remarks)  
23. Al-Jamâl (by Shaikh al-Mufîd) (commentaries)

C. His Manuscripts:  
1. Al-Munqith al-Akbar - a research  
2. Al-Hasan ibn Ali (τ.) - a research  
3. `Ashûra fil Islam - a critique and a history book

---

⁵He was called so by the Messenger of Allâh (صلى الله عليه وسلم). — Tr.
10. His Loyalty to Ahl al-Bayt ( ﷺ)

There is no treasure greater than one's life, nor even death in loving Ahl al-Bayt ( ﷺ), nor is there anything more precious, when all material possessions are lost, than acquiring their love and the security of their intercession and, ultimately, the reward in the life hereafter of being a resident in their neighborhood, nor more than nearness to them. People may all grow up loving them and being loyal to them, but the degree of such an attribute varies among them. One may be contented with attending their majālis, whereas someone else insists on nothing less than holding such majālis for them. Another person may accept to be present at their shrines or to travel to visit such shrines, whereas another is active in urging people to do so, and he may even spend of his own wealth on facilitating the pilgrims to visit their mausoleums, peace be upon them.

Our master, the biographee, was adorned by all of these activities combined. He grew up and was raised to find himself in a house where many occasions were held in honour of Ahl al-Bayt ( ﷺ). So did he observe his grandfather, Sayyid Husain, doing: meeting with people to discuss or produce a great deal of their literary production. He found his grandfather, may Allāh have mercy on him, full of loyalty to them, so he added his zeal to that of his own. He waited for the opportunity to hold majālis even for those who expressed their loyalty for Ahl al-Bayt ( ﷺ) and who followed in their footsteps and were executed or died in exile after having persevered, and there are many such persons. His manuscript, Nawādir al-`athār, contains poems delivered by poets who attended their merry occasions.

Holding a majālis to bring their legacy to memory did not suffice him; active efforts to disseminate their views and to explain their ways of life and conduct did. He did so through the lectures which he delivered at meetings which he held in the company of his brethren and friends during the month of Ramadan. Thus did I see the house full of them, and the research is repeated one night after another, one month of Ramadan after another, and so on...

As regarding his pen and how he utilized his time, his books listed above, which he left behind him, provide sufficient testimony. We plead to the most Exalted One to assist the efforts to circulate them among people. The greatest of his manuscripts is Al-Munqith al-Akbar (the greatest saviour), meaning Muhammed ( ﷺ), and also Al-Imām al-Hasan ( ﷺ). It has been more than thirty years since he wrote both of them. Another is Naqd al-Tārīkh fil Masā’il al-Sitt, a book which he used to mention quite often.
11. His Poetry
The biographee neither composed good quality poetry, nor did he memorize nor critique poetry. Yet he, may Allah have mercy on him, appreciated it very much especially if it was in honour of Ahl al-Bayt, peace be upon them. He used quite often to cite the poetry of those who lauded Ahl al-Bayt (عليه السلام) and incorporate it in his works which discuss them, peace be upon them, in order to bring such poetry to life. As far as he is concerned, we are not aware of him composing poetry except very little such as a few lines, for example, in praise of Abul-Fadl al-`Abbās, peace be upon him, where he pleads to Allah through him to remove his ailment:

O father of al-Fadl! O eyesight of al-Husain!
O caretaker of the caravan on its march!
Do you shun me, the gracious that you are,
And the refuge for whoever seeks protection?!

Among his poetry are lines which he composed in praise of the Prophet (صلى الله عليه وسلم) and his pure Progeny the composition of which he did finish; among them are the following:

We praise You, Lord, Who honoured
This whole existence with the Chosen one:
Muhammed and his good Progeny,
The path of guidance, who suffice the seeker,
Who guide whoever strays from the right way
To the path of righteousness and wilāya.

and also:

In their hadith, Ahl al-Bayt said:
Whoever praises us in a verse of poetry
Allah will assist him through His Holy Spirit
And all doubt from him will He remove;
So I liked to rhyme what the scholars
Of authentic traditions did record
Of merits of the Prophet's Purified Progeny
Those put in charge by the Lord.

12. How His Life was Concluded
The author, may Allah have mercy on him, suffered a great deal from harsh living conditions and the agonies of life. He took his stride in life with pride and dignity. He retained a sufficient measure of self-respect not to lower himself and do what was not becoming of him or what would jeopardize his studies or his performance as a teacher. I'tikāf preoccupied him a great deal, and he was satisfied from this life with attaining wisdom. Ayatullah Abul-Hasan al-Isfahani, the leading theologian, may Allah have mercy on him, very much desired that he should visit him and be his representative at one of the major cities of Iraq so that he would be able to earn means of a comfortable life, but such an offer did not rest well with him! Such a role did not appeal to him, and he deep down felt satisfied with what Allah, the most Exalted One, had allotted for him, accepting whatever means of livelihood at his disposal. His main concern was to acquire more and more knowledge and satisfy himself with its treasures of minute legacies. Having worked very hard and with persistence, he acquired a respectable status among people of distinction.
He, may Allah have mercy on him, used to talk about such wishes desired for him by religious authorities, and he used to justify his having rejected their offers by saying that once the means of ease and luxury were available, one would not be able to control his worldly desires, and he might find himself involved in other things. Such justifications and other matters which he did not express were behind his refusal, and he preferred to remain silent rather than discuss them.

As regarding his physique, he was thin and straight. During his last days, when various types of ailments assaulted him from all directions, he used to struggle to stand straight with his head upright. It very much pleased him to hold majlis on various occasions for the pure Imāms (ştir) and for their faithful followers. His belief in them and in their special status with Allah often prompted him to seek their intercession to remove his affliction. Why would he not do so? Did not Imām Abul-Hasan Ali al-Hādi (ştir) order Abu Hashim al-Ja’feri to ask someone to pray for him at the grave-site of the Master of Martyrs?

He, may Allah have mercy on him, maintained quiet nerves, yet he would become agitated upon seeing something which he did not like or hear. He was emotional and tearful whenever he heard the tragedy that befell the progeny of the Messenger of Allah, peace be upon him and them, so he would seek intercession with Allah, the most Exalted One, through their status with Him to remove his hardship and repel the harm from him. He had a firm conviction that Allah, the most Exalted One, did not extend his life-span except through them, for even one of the ailments that befell him was sufficient to put an end to him. Thus did he remain till death overtook him on Muharram 17, 1391/March 15, 1971; so, may Allah grant him His ridwān and generous rewards. One of the most interesting eulogies written about him is a poem composed by Shaikh Ahmed al-Wa’ili in which he recorded his year of death as follows:

Oh, `Abdul-Razzāq, the brilliant mind,  
The spirit of Imān and of conduct!  
A grave in which you reside  
Is a garden where you will lodge  
Till the Day of Meeting.  
So when you are brought back to life,  
Your good deeds shall surround you:  
White, sweet in their shine  
And spread like the field of the Taff  
For which you recorded for Husain  
And for his family and the companions  
Pages of depth and scrutiny that revile  
The souls of those who aspire  
To acquire every precious thing.  
About Husain you wrote, and him you shall meet  
And see the over-brimming Pool and the Waiter!  
These shall intercede for you for sure,  
And what the Lord has for you is even more.  
Hopeful of your Lord's rewards, record:  
Ó servant of al-Razzāq you went away,  
O to al-Razzāq did you go!

(1391 A.H./1971 A.D.)
And (as for) those who strive hard for Our sake, We will most certainly guide them in Our ways, and Allah is most surely with the doers of good.
(Qur’an, 29:69)

And do not reckon those who are killed in Allah’s way as dead; nay! They are alive, receiving sustenance from their Lord, rejoicing in what Allah has given them of His grace, and they rejoice for the sake of those who, (being left) behind them, have not yet joined them, that they shall have no fear, nor shall they grieve.
(Qur’an, 3:169-170)

Surely Allah has traded the believers’ persons and property for the Garden: they fight in Allah’s way, so they slay and are slain, a promise which is binding upon Him in the Torah, in the Bible, and in the Qur’an, and who is more faithful to his covenant than Allah? Rejoice, then, in the pledge which you have made, and that is the mighty achievement.
(Qur’an, 9:111)
PART I
AL-HUSAIN'S UPRISING

The only objective anticipated by the creed's Martyr and Islam's defender, al-Husain son of the Commander of the Faithful, was to undo the Umayyads' innovations and remove the viciously false allegations attributed to the Islamic Sharia, and to attract the attention to its clearance and that of its adherents from the shame and the demeaning innovations which the Umayyads attached to it as well as the obvious debauchery and the merciless politics of the time. The Master of Martyrs achieved his glorious uprising's objective, exposing all the blatant impudence to all those who were concerned about the faith. People came to identify Yazid and all those who surrounded him from among the evil leaders and the germs of dissension as the embodiment of everything shameful. Ears felt too offended to listen to them, and there was hardly any Muslim who did not look at them with contempt, so much so that hostility towards them intensified, grudge against them mounted, and people's zeal for the faith ebbed. It reached the point where arguments turned into physical violence, and their life of ease and luxury was turned into one of bloody wars which put an end to them, ruining their government which was founded on the ashes of the Islamic caliphate without any wisdom or merits. Husain the victor thus achieved his objective, and people have kept remembering him. His fame spread far and wide, and so did his prestige and glory.

And do not reckon those who are killed in Allah's way as dead; nay! They are alive, receiving sustenance from their Lord, rejoicing in what Allah has given them of His grace, and they rejoice for the sake of those who, (being left) behind them, have not yet joined them, that they shall have no fear, nor shall they grieve.
(Qur'an, 3:169-170)

I cannot imagine you, dear reader, as you march along history and investigate the facts with analyzing eyes except that the honourable person of the Father of the Oppressed becomes manifest to you, and so is the case with his sacred goal, good intentions, noble aims, as he travelled or landed, assaulted or halted, condemned or condoned. Nor do I think that you need to be acquainted with the details of those statements after having come to know who the great martyr is, and what deeds he did. Of course, you know before anything the nature of his opposing stand and the shame that caused him to grow gray hair.

Even if we set aside our firm conviction that righteous Husain was, indeed, the nation's Imam and that evident truth was on his side and was beyond the reach of any other man of his time, we will still not find it fair at all that the tyrant of his land should have thus waged a war against him or competed with him for any of his merits. He was the Master of the Youths of Paradise. When did his foe ever find himself qualified to compete with Husain so that he would be apt to challenge him? He felt too dignified to meet even those who had preceded Yazid in his post.

Could you imagine al-Husain comparing Abu Sufyan with the Great Prophet, or Mu'awiya with the Commander of the Faithful, or the liver-chewing woman with the mother of the faithful, Khadija, or Maysun with the Head of the Ladies of the World, or the pre-Islamic debauchery with Islam's inspiration, or its overwhelming ignorance with his own overflowing knowledge, or the humiliating greed with his own sacred and dignified self..., up to the end of such comparisons the recording of which will exhaust the pen and make one run out of words?!

Between Allah, Glory and Exaltation to Him, and His sincere friends were mysterious secrets the knowledge of which is beyond the reach of others and the comprehension of minors. Fanaticism blinded them, so they dared to cast doubts about the sanctity of the Greatest Saviour, insisting on maintaining their
shameful fanaticism. They, therefore, said, "Al-Husain was killed by the sword of his grandfather because he revolted against the imām of his time (meaning Yazid) after the latter had secured the oath of allegiance for himself and the conditions of the caliphate were met through the consensus of those who did and undid, and there was nothing in his conduct that would shame him [Yazid] or stain his reputation."3

This speaker has overlooked the fact that Maysūn's son (Yazid) never lived in righteousness even for one single day so that he would see the shame of what he did, nor was there for his shameful actions and sins any "before" or "after". He suckled the breast of the woman from Kilāb that was mixed with lustful desires. He grew up in the lap of one who was cursed by the holiest Messenger (ص) who had ordered the nation to kill him upon seeing him ascending his pulpit.5 Had the nation carried out this binding order, it would have achieved security against the imminent torment threatening it from the window of the

---

3This statement was made by Abu Bakr Muḥammed ibn `Abdullāh, known as Ibn al-`Arabi (d. 543 A.H./1148 A.D.), on p. 232 of his book Al-`Awāsim, a book critiqued by Muḥibb ad-Dīn al-Khatīb and published in 1371 A.H./1951 A.D. It is there that the following statement is recorded: "The Messenger of Allāh (ص) said, 'There will be dissensions; so, anyone who wants to disunite this nation after its unity, you must kill him, whoever he may be.' None disagreed with him [with Imām Ḥusain] except according to the interpretation of this hadīth, nor did anyone fight him except on account of what they had heard his grandfather (ص) say." Commenting on this tradition, Muḥibb ad-Dīn said, "Muslim has mentioned this tradition in his Sahīh in the Book of Imāra." It is, in fact, stated on p. 121, Vol. 2, of the Book (chapter) of Imāra following the one dealing with the Prophet's military campaigns. It is quoted from Ziyād ibn `Alaqah who cites `Arfajah who cites the Prophet (ص). This man, Ibn `Alaqah, is known to have been misguided in his views and one who deviated from the path of Ahl al-Bayt (ع) according to the testimony recorded on p. 381, Vol. 3, of Ibn Hajar's book Tahḥīb al-Tahthīb. The author mentions `Arfajah on p. 176, Vol. 3, of his book saying about him the following: "No doubt praised nor condemned him, for he is among those who do not enjoy any recognition and whose traditions are completely ignored."

What is truly strange is Ibn al-`Arabi's conviction that Yazīd's government was legitimate despite his knowledge of one hadīth of the Prophet (ص) in which he has said, "Justice shall dominate my nation till it will first be violated by a man from Banū Umayyah called Yazīd." This tradition is reported on p. 241, Vol. 5, of Mujma` al-Zawā'id wa Manba` al-Fawā'id by Ibn Hajar who traces its isnād to Abu Ya'li and al-Bazzāz. It is also stated on p. 132 of Al-Sawā'iq al-Muhriqa from al-Ruyānī who quotes Abul-Dardā' quoting the Messenger of Allāh (ص) saying, "The first person to change my Sunnah will be a man from Banū Umayyah named Yazīd." In the Book of Dissensions (Kitāb al-Fitan) of al-Bukhārī's Sahīh, the Prophet (ص) is quoted as saying, "My nation's annihilation will take place at the hands of minors in my nation." Also, Abu Hurayra is quoted [in the same reference] as having said, "I have heard the Messenger of Allāh (ص) saying, 'The annihilation of my nation will be at the hands of youths belonging to Quraish.'" Ibn Hajar has explained the meaning of this tradition on p. 7, Vol. 13, of his book Fath al-Bārī saying, "Abu Hurayra used to walk through the bazaars repeating these words: 'Lord! Do not permit me to live till the year 60 [A.H.], and do not let me live to see children becoming rulers.'" Ibn Hajar goes on to say, "He [Abu Hurayra] was referring to Yazīd's caliphate which took place in 60 A.H./680 A.D. although he did not criticize him [Yazid]."

4The following statement is recorded on p. 357, Vol. 11, of al-Tabari's Tārikh where the events of the year 284 A.H./897 A.D. are discussed and also on p. 57, Vol. 2, of Abul-Fidā's Tārikh where the events of the year 238 A.H./852 A.D. are discussed, and it is also recorded on p. 247 of Nasr's book Sīfīn (Egyptian edition), and on p. 115 of Ibn al-Jawzī's book Tathkīrāt al-Khwāsād by the grandson of Ibn al-Jawzī (Iranian edition): "The Messenger of Allāh (ص) once saw Abu Sufyān riding a camel led by his grandson Yazīd and driven by his son Mu`āwiyyah, so he said, 'May the curse of Allāh be upon the rider, the leader, and the driver.'"5

innovations of this tyrant and due to his exterminating cruelty in dealing with it. But it denied Allāh's
bounties, so it started relishing the fountainhead plagued with thorny death. Allāh, therefore, clothed it with
the outfit of fear, leaving it moaning under the yoke of persecution, shackled in the chains of humiliation
and slavery just as it witnessed the insolence of debauchees and the violations of those who were immersed
in their lust. Whatever filled the hated Umayyad bastian provided nourishment for Yazīd, the man of sundry
desires, as he grew up among such blatant manifestations of promiscuity.

Yazīd openly expressed all the ill intentions which he had harbored against Islam and all those who
adhered to it, gleefully expressing how he had the field all open for him. The renown scholar al-ʿĀlāsī has
said,

Anyone who says that Yazīd did not commit any transgression, and that cursing him is not
permissible, ought to line up in the chain of command among Yazīd's supporters. Let me say
that this malignant man never believed in the Prophet's Message, and that his violations of
Allāh's sanctities and of the sanctities of His Prophet (س) are no less indicative of such
disbelief than throwing a page of the Holy Qur’ān in a pile of filth. I do not think that
dignified Muslims were at that time ignorant of his malicious nature, nor were they
overcome, subdued, unable to do anything other than persevering. Were this malignant man
thought to have been a Muslim, then he was a Muslim whose deeds incorporated the sins
which no articulate tongue can ever describe. I go as far as permitting cursing him by name
even when nobody can ever compare him with any licentious man, ever. It is quite obvious
that he never repented, and the possibility of his having repented is less than that of his
having believed (in Islam) in the first place.

In his category fall (ʿUbaydullah) Ibn Ziyād, Ibn Saʿd, and their company; so, Allāh's curse be upon them
and upon those who support, assist and follow them and all those who incline towards them, a curse that
lasts till the Day of Resurrection, so long as there are eyes that shed tears for the tragedy inflicted upon Abu
ʿAbdullāh, al-Husain (ع). I like what our contemporary poet, the one whose distinction is quite evident to
everyone, namely ʿAbdul-Bāqi Afandi al-ʿUmari al-Mūsilli, who said the following after having been asked
about cursing Yazīd,

More than I curse Yazīd should you curse him after:
So heal upon him the worst of cursing now and forever!

Anyone who fears lest he should be criticized for thus openly cursing him should nevertheless curse this
deviator from the Right Path by saying: “May Allāh, the Exalted One, the Almighty, curse whoever
consented to have al-Husain (ع) killed and whoever unjustly harmed the Progeny of the Prophet (ص) and
whoever confiscated their rights.” He will, then, be cursing Yazīd in such general terms since the latter is
included in such condemnation. Nobody disagrees about the permissibility of condemning this cursed man
using such words except Ibn al-ʿArabi to whom reference is made above, and so are those who agree with
him. These folks, according to what is narrated about them, do not permit the cursing of those who agreed to
have al-Husain (ع) killed, and this, by my life, is going too far in being misguided; it is the misguidance
which may even surpass that of Yazīd himself.

Al-Barzinji, in his book Al-Ishāʿa, and [Ibn Hajar] al-Haythami [al-ʿAsqalānī], in his book Al-
Sawaʿiq al-Muhriqa, have both recorded that Imam Ahmed [ibn Hanbal] was asked once by his son
ʿAbdullāh about cursing Yazīd. Said he, “Why should anyone not curse one whom Allāh has cursed in His
Book?!” ʿAbdullāh said, “I have read the Book of Allāh, the most Exalted, the Almighty, and I did not find
in it any cursing of Yazīd.” Imam Ahmed said, “Allāh says, ʿBut if you held command, you were sure to
make mischief in the land and cut off the ties of kinship!' (Qur’an, 47:22). What corruption and severing of the ties worse than what Yazid had done?”

A group of scholars, including Abu Ya’li, the judge, and al-hāfīz Ibn al-Jawzi, emphatically declared the permissibility of cursing Yazid. Al-Taftazānī has said, “We do not stop at raising doubts about his [Yazid's] conduct but go as far as doubting his conviction, the curse of Allah be upon him and upon his supporters and followers.” Jalal ad-Din al-Sayyātī, too, openly declared the permissibility of cursing him.

In Al-`Wāfi bil Wafiyāt, and in Ibn al-Wardi's Tārīkh, it is stated that Yazid was approaching Jayrūn's highway when al-Husain's women and children were brought and the severed heads were hoisted atop the spears. A raven croaked, so jubilant Yazid said the following verses of poetry:

When those loads did come in sight,
When the sun upon Jayrūn's hills shone bright,
The raven croaked so I did say:
Say or do not say,
For now I have had my way
And made even the Prophet pay!

“What he meant,” both authors comment adding, “is that he [Yazid], having killed those whom he killed [of the Prophet's family], he got even with the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) who caused on the Battle of Badr the killing of men such as Yazid's grandfather, `Atbah, and his uncle, `Atbah's son, and other men. His statement is nothing but obvious blasphemy. If the narration is authentic, Yazid will then have committed apostasy. A similar incident is Yazid's adaptation of the poetic verses composed during the pre-Islamic period by `Abdullāh ibn al-Zub`ari starting with 'I wish my ancestors..., etc.'”

Add to the above a list of more sins and transgressions. He, hence, deserved to be cursed by Allah, by His angels and prophets, and by all those who follow the latter till the Day of Judgment. Nobody hesitates to do so except one who is deprived of the fragrance of conviction, blinded by his own fanaticism from embarking upon the right tracks so his steps are shaky, and he is confused, not knowing the right path, nor does he find an exit out of his tunnel.

Scholarly critics did not stop at confirming his (Yazid's) lack of conviction and apostasy; rather, Ibn Khaldūn, for example, says, “Abu Bakr ibn al-`Arabi, the Mālikī judge, erred when he said in his book Al-`Awāsim wal-Qawāsim: 'Husain was killed by the sword of the same Shar`a which he followed,' thus overlooking the conditions required of a just imām who is qualified enough to take charge of the Islamic caliphate, for who could be more just than Husain? Who could be a better Imām than him? Who could be more fair in fighting those of diverse personal views?” On p. 254, he refers to the consensus view with regard to Yazid being corrupted and to the corruption of those who rallied behind him, and that he was not fit to be the leader of the nation. It was because of what he was that Husain (ṣ) saw it mandatory to fight him despite the reluctance of the sahābah and the tābi`īn to support him not because his action was not right, but because they did not justify the spilling of blood. It was not proper to support Yazid by fighting Husain. Rather, the killing of Husain (ṣ) was one of Yazid's indications of apostasy, and al-Ḥusain (ṣ) was truly a martyr.”

Ibn Muflih, a Hanbalite, says,

---

1Refer to p. 73, Vol. 36, of the exegesis Rūḥ al-Ma`āni where the verse saying “So did you desire, when you turned away, etc.” [referred to above] is explained.

2Taṣfīr Rūḥ al-Ma`āni, Vol. 26, p. 73, where the verse “... so if you turn away, do you wish..., etc.” is explained.
Both Ibn `Aqīl and Ibn al-Jawzi have permitted the fighting of an unjust leader using the example of Husain (.cx) fighting Yazid in order to uphold righteousness. Ibn al-Jawzi has included this concept in his book Al-Sirr al-Masān among the common beliefs upheld by the majority of Sunni Muslims barring a group that said that Yazid was right and Husain (cx) was wrong in fighting him. If these folks look into [Yazid's] biography, they will see how the oath of allegiance was taken for him by force, how people were forced to swear the oath of allegiance to him, and how he dealt with people in the ugliest manner. Moreover, even if we say that his caliphate was valid, Yazid still did many things each one of which rendered his caliphate nil and void such as his plundering of the people of Mecca, his bombardment of the Ka`ba with the catapult, his killing of al-Husain (cx) and his family members, his hitting Husain's mouth with a rod, his carrying Husain's head on top of a lance... Anyone who finds such conduct palatable is an ignorant Sunni who thinks that by doing so he is only enraging the Rāfidis.1

Al-Taftazāni has said, “In all truth, the details of Yazid's endorsement of the murder of Husain (cx) and his excitement thereat, as well as his insulting the family of the Prophet (ص), are consecutively reported even when their details vary. We do not only question his actions, we question his imān. May Allah curse him and curse his supporters and helpers.”2

Ibn Hazm has said, “The action undertaken by Yazid son of Mu`awiyah was for the sake of this world; that's all, and it has no justification whatsoever; it is pure oppression.”3 Al-Shawkānī says, “Some scholars transgressed beyond all limits when they decided that al-Husain (cx), grandson of the Prophet (ص), may Allah be pleased with him and may He please him, was unfair to a drunkard, to one who violated the purified Share`a, namely Yazid son of Mu`awiyah, may Allah curse both of them. How amazing to come across statements that make the skin shiver and that stun even the hardest rock upon hearing them!”4

Al-Jahiz has said, “The abominations committed by Yazid, such as his killing of al-Husain (cx), his transporting the daughters of the Messenger of Allah (ص) as captives, his hitting al-Husain's lips with his rod, his terrorizing the people of Mecca, his demolition of al-Ka`ba..., all point out to his cruelty, oppression, and his being a Nāsibī, to his error of judgment, to his grudge, animosity, and hypocrisy, to his altogether renunciation of imān: every apostate is cursed, and everyone who prohibits anyone from cursing an already condemned person is himself worthy of being cursed.”5

Al-Burhan al-Halabi (of Aleppo) narrates saying that the mentor Muhammed al-Bakri, following in his father's footsteps, used to curse Yazid and say, `May Allah increase his shame and place him in the lowest rung of Sijjeen.”6 Abul-Husain Ali ibn Muhammed al-Kayaharashi, too, has cursed him saying, “Had I unleashed my pen, I would have recorded a great deal of this man's shameful deeds.”7 Ibn al-'Imād quotes him saying that he was once asked about Yazid son of Mu`awiyah, and he answered by saying that the man

---

3Al-Muhalla, Vol. 11, p. 98.
5Rasā'il al-Jāhiz (al-Jāhiz's Letters), Letter No. 11 with regard to Banū Umayyah, p. 298.
6Al-Sira al-Ḥalabiyya.
7Wafiyyat al-A'yan by Ibn Khallikān, in the biography of Ali ibn Muhammed ibn Ali al-Kayaharashi, and also in Mi`urat al-Jinān by al-Yāfī, Vol. 3, p. 179, where the events that took place during 504 A.H./1110 A.D. are discussed.
was not among the *sahābah* because he was born when `Omer ibn al-Khattāb was the caliph. Ahmed offers two views in this regard one of which is implicit and the other explicit, and so is the case with (Imam) Abu Hanifah. As far as we are concerned, we have only one explicit view about him and none implicit. Why should there be any other way especially since Yazid was well known for being an expert in playing dominoes, in being a habitual drunkard, in writing famous poems in praise of wine drinking?1 Dr. Ali Ibrahim Hasan says, “Yazid used to be proverbial in his wine drinking, entertainment escapades, and in hunting.”2

Al-Thahbi, in *Siyar A’lām al-Nubalā*, has said, “Yazid son of Mu’āwiya was a very rude, crude, and heavy handed Šāsibi. He consumed intoxicants and committed abominations. He started his reign by killing al-Husain, the martyr, and concluded it with the Harra Battle. People, for these reasons, held him in contempt, and he was not blessed in his life-span.”3

Shaikh Muhammed `Abdoh has said, “Had there been in this world a just government that implements the Shari‘a and another violating it, every Muslim is obligated to support the first.” Then he goes on to say, “It is based on this principle that Imām al-Husain, grandson of the Messenger of Allāh (ص), fought the leader of oppression and corruption whose government was forced on the Muslims by oppression and trickery, namely Yazid son of Mu’āwiya, may Allāh forsake him and forsake any Šāsibi or Karāmi who defends him.”4 Ibn Taghribardi, a Hanafi, has said, “Yazid was an adulterer, a habitual drunkard.” He adds saying, “Scholars have issued *fatāwa* strongly denouncing `Omer ibn `Abdul-`Aziz al-Qazwini for calling Yazid `Commander of the Faithful.' He was, upon saying so, kicked out of Baghdad and sent back to Qazwīn [in the Caspian region].”5 Abu Shāma has said, “Ahmed ibn Ismā‘il ibn Yousuf al-Qazwīnī went to Baghdad once and delivered a sermon at al-Nizāmīyya (school). On the Day of `Ashūra, he was asked to condemn Yazid son of Mu’āwiya, but he said, `But he was a mujtahid imām,’ whereupon someone assaulted him and almost killed him. He collapsed from the pulpit, then he was taken and sent back to Qazwīn where he died in 590 A.H./1194 A.D.”6

Sibt ibn al-Jawzi was asked once about cursing Yazid. He said, “Ahmed [ibn Hanbal, Imam of the Hanbalites] has permitted it, and we say that we do not like Yazid because of his mistreatment of the son of our Prophet's daughter (مَيْلًا), how he transported the family of the Messenger of Allāh, peace of Allāh and blessings be upon him and his progeny, as captives to Syria on camels without saddles, and how he dared to insult the family of the Messenger of Allāh. If you accept our reconciled stand, we say that we do not like him; let it be so; otherwise, we will have to refer to the basic cause: cursing Yazid is permissible.”7

Abul-Qāsim al-Zajjājī, who relies on the authority of `Omer ibn al-Dahḥāk, says, “Yazid ibn

---

1Ibn al-`Imād, *Shatharāt al-Thahab*, Vol. 3, p. 179, where the events that took place during the year 504 A.H./1110 A.D. are discussed.


6*Ibid.*, Vol. 6, p. 134, where the events that took place during the year 590 A.H./1194 A.D. are discussed.

7*Ibid.*, Vol. 6, p. 134. It is also recorded on p. 120 of *Midmūr al-Haqā’iq* by Taqī ad-Dīn `Omer ibn Shahinshah al-Ayyūbī, who died in 617 A.H./1220 A.D. (edited by Dr. Hasan Habashi), in a chapter detailing the events that took place during the Hijri year 579 (1184 A.D.).


26
Mu‘awiya used to play with a monkey. One day he carried it and put it on a zebra. Then he tied the zebra and set his horses loose to chase it till the horses crushed the zebra to death. Yazid ibn Mu‘awiya thereupon said,

`Abul-Qays relied on its reins,
So we don't guarantee that it won't perish,
Just as was done to a shaiikh before:
Ziyad, a zebra, crushed by the commander of the faithful.”

Ibn al-Athir claims that Abu Ya`li, Hamzah ibn Ahmed ibn Ja`fer ibn Muhammed ibn Zayd ibn Ali ibn al-Husain ibn Ali ibn Abu Talib (€), said, “I do not call Yazid kafir because the Prophet (µ) had said, `I pleaded to Allah not to let my offspring be persecuted by outsiders.”1 This claim does not deserve anyone's attention because Abu Ya`li was too dignified and too trustworthy to make such a crude statement even when al-Rafi`i had preceded him in making it, recording it in his discussion of the scholars of Qazwín.2 Even if one supposes that he had said so, it must have been said in observance of taqiyya. Mirza Abdullah Afandi, a student of al-Majlisi, went to extremes in refuting it. All those who recorded Abu Ya`li’s biography praised and complimented him a great deal without ever mentioning at all that he had made such a statement. Had he made it, they would have despised him solely on its account.

In his books, Shaikh al-Sadiq invokes Allah's mercy on Abu Ya`li’s soul, expressing his pleasure with him; he was, indeed, one of his mentors. On p. 493, Chapter 39, of `Uyân Akhbar al-Rida (€), for example, he is quoted detailing some of the events that took place during the year 339 A.H./951 A.D. according to his correspondence with Ali ibn Ibrahîm ibn Hashim who details the events of 309 A.H./922 A.D. quoting Yásir, the servant [of Imam al-Rida (€)] who quotes Imam al-Rida (€). Despite his fanaticism, al-Khatîb al-Baghdadi records Abu Ya`li’s biography without quoting this unbecoming statement falsely attributed to him.3 This imprudent statement is something which al-Rafi`i and Ibn Athir had added of their own without relying on any authority whatsoever.

Having thus taken note of the nation’s most famous scholars who express their contempt towards Yazid, let us put `Abdul-Mughith ibn Zuhayr ibn Alawi al-Harbi on trial and ask him about the “authentic” references from which he derived the text material for his book in praise of Yazid4, about which “merit” he found in him to record in his book, and about Yazid's entire life, a life full of shame and assaults on the Sharî`a. This is the reason why the scholars paid no attention to his book. In Vol. 2, p. 275, of Shatharât al-Thahab, while detailing the events of the year 583 A.H./1187 A.D., Ibn al-`Imad rebuts him topic by topic; on p. 328, Vol. 2, of Ibn Kathîr’s book titled Al-Bidâya, he is accurately and excellently rebutted by Ibn al-Jawzi; in Vol. 11, p. 213, of his book Al-Kamil, Ibn al-Athir rebuts him, and in Murûj al-Thahab, he is rebutted in the most amazing way; on p. 356, Vol. 1, of Tabaqât al-Hanabîlah, Ibn al-Jawzi rebuts him and calls his rebuttal “a response to the stubborn fanatic who forbids the cursing of Yazid.”

What is really strange is the verdict of `Abdul-Ghani al-Maqdisi who was once asked about Yazid; he said, “His caliphate was authentic because sixty şahâbis swore the oath of allegiance to him including

---

1Ibn al-Athîr, Al-Kâmîl, Vol. 4, p. 51, where the events of the year 64 A.H./684 A.D. are discussed, and also in Murûj al-Thahab.
2Al-Rafi`i, Al-Tadwîn fi `Ulemâ` Qazwîn, Vol. 2, p. 184, a photocopy of which is deposited at Al-Hakîm’s Library [Najaf, Iraq]. [This al-Hakîm is the late Ayatullah al-Uzma Sayyid Muhsin al-Hakîm. – Tr.]
[ʿAbdulrahman b. ʿOmar b. al-Khattâb]. But if someone does not like him, he should not be held accountable because he was not among the sahâbah. Rather, cursing him should be banned for fear of touching his father and in order to close the door before dissension.”1 More strange than this is the denial by Ibn Hajar al-Haythami that Yazid accepted the killing of al-Husain (ﺎ) at all or that he ever ordered it2 despite this fact being transmitted consecutively: Yazid was quite pleased with it; this fact is denied only by those who deny the sun having rays. Ibn Jarir al-Tabari and al-Sayyuti have both said that when al-Husain (ﺎ) was killed, Yazid was very happy, and Ibn Ziyad's status with him was enhanced, then he regretted it.3 Al-Khawarijmi says that Yazid said to al-Nu’man ibn Bashir, “Praise to Allâh Who killed al-Ḥusain.”4 They [such “scholars”] kept the lid over his abominable deeds just as they had done to the oppression of his father, Muʿāwiyah, who had renounced the laws enacted by the person who carried out the Divine Call. Is he not the one who said to the following to his father Sakhr who pretended to have accepted Islam for fear of the Muslims’ swords:

O Ṣakhir! Do not accept Islam and thus scandalize us
After the corpses of those who fell at Badr have been torn,
Do not submit to something to hand over to us,
While the dancers at al-Nu’man suffer from heavy hearts.
Death is easier than our youths saying to us
That Ibn Hind’s cavalry turned away from protecting al-ʿUzza,
So if you refuse, we will reject what you accept,
And do not turn people from al-Lāt and al-ʿUzza if they accept them...?!5

Ibn Abul-Hadid says, “Many of our fellows have cast doubt about Muʿāwiyah's creed and said that he was an atheist who did not believe in Prophethood. They quote his own statements testifying to this fact”6

His grandfather Sakhr is the one who, upon the conquest of Mecca, said to al-ʿAbbâs, “This is a kingdom.” Al-ʿAbbâs, thereupon, rebuked him by saying, “Woe unto you! This is Prophethood!” About Muʿāwiyah, Ahmed ibn al-Husain al-Bayhaqi says, “Muʿāwiyah exited disbelief and entered into hypocrisy, and during the time of the Messenger of Allâh (ص) and thereafter, he went back to his original disbelief.”7

Maysûn’s son is the sap of all these abominations. When was he ever fit to rule, much less to be looked upon as the divinely supported caliph, especially since among the nation there was then present the fragrant flower of the Messenger of Allâh (ص), the Master of the Youths of Paradise, the son of the man upon whose struggle the creed was established, the son of the Head of all the women of mankind, the fifth among those covered with the Prophet's mantle (ashâb al-kisâ), the peer of the Glorious Book of Allâh according to hadith al-thaqalayn (tradition of the two weighty things)? He was the one from whose sides knowledge was gushing forth, from whose great conduct ethics and morals were gloriously manifested wherever he went, whose sides emitted the fragrance of Prophethood, whose countenance shone with the

---

1Ibid., Vol. 2, p. 34.
3al-Tabari, Târîkh, Vol. 7, p. 19 (first edition), and also Târîkh al-Khulaṣâ', Vol. 1, p. 139, where Yazid is discussed.
5al-Karajî, Al-Taʾajjub, p. 39, in the Appendix to Kanz al-Fawâ'id.
glow of Imāmate. To such merits does al-Husain ((chip) point out when al-Walid asked him to swear the oath of allegiance to Yazīd; he, thereupon, said,

_Ameer!_ We are the household of the Prophet, the substance of the Message, the ones visited by the angels; it is through us that Allāh initiates and concludes. Yazīd is a man of sin, a drunkard, a murder of the soul the killing of which Allāh has prohibited, a man who is openly promiscuous. A man like me shall never swear the oath of allegiance to a man like him.¹

Having stated all the above, let us ask this man of pedantry about his claim that al-Husain (chip) dissented after the oath of allegiance had (unanimously) been secured for Yazīd: “When was such a swearing under duress secured, and when was there any consensus in its regard given by those who tied and untied? Was it when his father [Muʿāwiyyah] secured it through terrorism, or was it when he swiftly dispatched funds to the masters of evil who cowered as they licked their lips?² Or was it when Yazīd's appointees offered it to people, so the descendant of the Messenger of Allāh (ṣallā Allāh ‘alaihi wasallāhu), together with Banū Hashim, turned away from it, and al-Zubayr fled from it and hid in Mecca, while Ibl `Omer confined himself to his house?³ ³ ‘Abdul-Rahmān son of [first caliph] Abu Bakr used to publicly say that it was an allegiance taken Heraclius-style: whenever one Heraclius fell, another Heraclius would succeed him.⁴ So Muʿāwiyyah dispatched one hundred thousand dirhams to appease him, but he sent the money back saying, “I shall not sell my religion in exchange for this life.”⁵ ‘Abdullāh son of ’Amr ibn al-ʿĀṣ said to ʿĀbis ibn Saʿīd, who urged him to swear the oath of allegiance to Yazīd, “I know him better than you, and you have surely sold your religion in exchange for this world.”⁶ Saʿīd ibn Zayd ibn ʿAmr ibn Nāfīl al-ʿAdawi said the following to a Syrian man sent by Marwān ibn al-Hakam to him to secure his oath of allegiance to Yazīd: “Marwān is ordering me to swear the oath of allegiance to people whom I have struck with my sword till they submitted to Allāh. By Allāh! They did not surrender to Allāh; they only surrendered to the sword.”⁷

Ziyād ibn Abeeh³³ said to Ḥubayd ibn Kaʿb al-Numayri, “Muʿāwiyyah wrote me with regard to swearing the oath of allegiance to Yazīd, and securing the cause of Islam is quite a great cause. Yazīd followed his own whims and desires. He was quite negligent about the creed due to a passion for hunting. So, inform Muʿāwiyyah about me and acquaint him with how negligent Yazīd is with regard to the religious injunctions, and tell him about his abominable deeds.”⁹

Saʿīd son of Ṣa`d ibn Ṣa`d, who urged him to swear the oath of allegiance to Yazīd, and securing the cause of Islam is quite a great cause. Yazīd followed his own whims and desires. He was quite negligent about the creed due to a passion for hunting. So, inform Muʿāwiyyah about me and acquaint him with how negligent Yazīd is with regard to the religious injunctions, and tell him about his abominable deeds.”⁹

Saʿīd son of Ṣa`d ibn Ṣa`d, too, denounced Muʿāwiyyah. He once wrote Muʿāwiyyah saying, “My father [the third caliph] is better than Yazīd's father; my mother is better than his mother, and I am

¹_Hadīyyat al-Aḥbāb_, p. 111, where al-Bayhaqi’s biography is detailed.
²_al-Ṭabarī, Tāʾrīkh_, Vol. 6, p. 135. It is also recorded by Ibn Khallikān when he discusses the biography of al-Ahnaf.
³_Ibid.,_ Vol. 6, p. 170.
⁵_al-Nawawi, Taḥthīb al-ʾAsmā’,_ Vol. 1, p. 294, where the biography of ʿAbdul-Rahmān son of Abu Bakr is detailed.
⁷_Taḥthīb Tāʾrīkh IbnʿAsākir_, Vol. 6, p. 128.
⁸_Ibn Abeeh” means: “the son of his father.” Nobody knew who Ziyād's father was. — Tr.
⁹_al-Ṭabarī, Tāʾrīkh_, Vol. 6, p. 169, where the events of the year 56 A.H./676 A.D. are discussed.
better than him." Al-Ahnaf ibn Qays denounced his caliphate, too. He wrote Mu‘āwiya once trying to show him where he had erred by appointing his son as his successor and by preferring him over both Imāms al-Hasan and al-Husain (†) despite their merits and lineage. He reminded him of the terms which he had promised al-Hasan (†) to fulfill, including one saying that he would not put anyone ahead of him, and that the people of Iraq never hated him nor his brother al-Husain (†) ever since they loved them both, and that the hearts that hate Mu‘āwiya were still beating within them.⁵

The oppressed Imām and the Master of Martyrs (†) spared no means to provide Mu‘āwiya with advice, to guide him to the right path, and to acquaint him with Yazid's abominable conduct, and that he was better than him in every respect. Once he said to him, “My mother is better than his mother, and my father is better than his father.” Mu‘āwiya then said to him, “As regarding your mother, she is the daughter of the Messenger of Allāh (acios); she is, of course, better than any woman from [the tribe of] Kilāb. As regarding my love for Yazid, were I to be awarded what fills a fertile oasis [with gold], I would not be satisfied. As regarding your father and his, they both sought the judgment of Allāh, so Allāh judged in favour of his father over yours.” It was then that Abu ʿAbdullāh, Imām al-Husain (†), refrained from commenting because he became convinced that the son of the liver-chewing mother would never be convinced about the truth. Yet Mu‘āwiya refrained from saying that Yazid's father was better than Husain's because he knew that that would have been something quite unheard of due to Ali (†) being the foremost in accepting Islam and to his having all merits, and to his superiority in all virtues. It was for that reason that Mu‘āwiya refrained from alluding to the existence of disliking and of a dispute of sort, and this is what the scholars of rhetoric call “persuasion.”

On another occasion, the Master of Martyrs, Abu ʿAbdullāh (†), said to him, “I understood what you mentioned about Yazid's accomplishments and the policy of Muhammed's nation. You want to mislead people into thinking that you are describing someone with whom they are not familiar, or identify an absentee, or acquaint them with some specific knowledge. Yet Yazid has personally revealed what his mentality is; so, draw your own conclusion about Yazid from noticing his interest in exploring decorated hunting dogs, race pigeons, female singers with their musical instruments, his entertainment parties, and you will then find all of that helpful [to form an idea about him]. Stop what you are trying to do; it will not help you when you meet Allāh to carry, besides your own burden of sins, the sins of all this multitude. By Allāh! You never cease to seek falsehood with oppression and earn an outrage coupled with injustice, so much so that you have filled all containers though the distance between you and death is only that you close your eyes. So proceed to do something which will testify against you on a Day witnessed by everyone, a Day that is sure to come; there is no doubt about it.”

On a third occasion, Imām Husain (†) wrote Mu‘āwiya saying,

Be admonished that Allāh, the most Sublime, the most Great, has a Book which leaves nothing, small or big, without recording it. Allāh, the most Exalted One, does not forget how you annihilate people for mere suspicion, how you kill His friends only on account of your

---

1Muhammed ibn Habib, Nawadir al-Makhtuutat (the Sixth Letter deals with assassinated personalities), p. 165


4In the first chapter of Ibn al-Taqtqi's book Al-Adlah al-Sulianiyya, p. 38, the author says, “Yazid son of Mu‘awiya used to decorate his hunting dogs with gold bracelets and woven outfits, and he used to assign for each dog a slave to tend to it.”

charges, and how you exile them from their homes to foreign lands. Did you not kill Hajar al-Kindi and the worshippers who always upheld their prayers and who resented oppression and regarded *bid’as* as most abhorred and did not accept the blame of anyone when it came to upholding Allah's Commandments? Did you not kill ‘Amr ibn al-Hamq, the companion of the Messenger of Allah (ص), the righteous servant of Allah whose body was worn out by adoration and whose complexion turned yellow on account of fearing Allah even after having granted him security and given him of the sacred promises that which, had you given them a bird, it would have descended upon you from the peak of the mountain, so you thus defy your Lord and take such promises lightly? Did you not claim the son of Sumayya (as your son), the one who was born to a slave from Thaqif, claiming he was begotten by your father although the Messenger of Allah (ص) had said, “The newborn belongs to the bed upon which he was born, whereas whoever commits adultery should be stoned,” thus forsaking the Sunnah of the Messenger of Allah (ص) deliberately? Did you not follow your own inclinations without any guidance from Allah, the most Exalted One, then you granted him authority over the Iraqis so that he would cut the hands of the Muslims, gauge their eyes, and crucify them on palm-tree trunks, as if you do not belong to this nation, and as if they do not belong to you? Are you not the one who wrote Ziyad ordering him to kill anyone who followed the creed of Ali ibn Abu Talib (ع), so he killed them and mutilated their corpses following your orders while Ali’s creed is the creed of Allah, the most Sublime, the most Great, whereby He smote you and your father and whereby you now seat yourself where you are? Add to all this your forcing people to swear the oath of allegiance to your son Yazid although he is a child who drinks wine and plays with dogs. Surely you have lost your soul, compromised your creed, and violated your trust.¹

On a fourth occasion, the Imam (ع) wrote him to enumerate his sins following the killing by Ziyad ibn Abeeh of Muslim ibn Zaymar and ’Abdullah ibn Naji, both of Hadramaut, and their crucifixion for many days in Kafa on their houses’ doors only because they were supporters (Shi’as) of the Commander of the Faithful Ali (ع). Among what he said was: “Are you not responsible for the execution of Hajar and both men from Hadramaut regarding whom the son of Sumayya wrote you telling you that they followed the religion of Ali (ع) and followed his views, so you wrote him saying, ‘Kill everyone who follows the religion of Ali (ع),’ notwithstanding the fact that Ali followed the creed of his cousin (ص) who smote your father, the same creed because of which your father smote those who adhered to it and because of which you yourself now seat yourself where you are? Had it been otherwise, we, rather than you, would have been honoured by bearing the brunt of its responsibility in this life and in the life to come, had we only removed it from your shoulders and shouldered it ourselves.”

The Imam (ع) rebuked him in a lengthy letter for adopting Ziyad and appointing him as ruler of Iraq,² but all these pieces of advice from the grandson of the Messenger of Allah (ص) did not avail to put an end to Mu’awiyah’s falsehood after the latter’s acts of terrorism and greed had already blocked the way before justice and equity. Yet despite his very well known shrewdness, Yazid did not feel comfortable regarding any harm touching al-Husain (ع) for fear of its dire consequences and repercussions. He knew that the most oppressed Imam (ع) would never accept humiliation till the last breath, and that his Shi’as then were different from the time they used to be when his brother Imam al-Hasan (ع) was alive. These kept

---


complaining about the horrible persecution meted to them at the hands of Mu‘awiya's governors, so much so that any of them preferred to be called an atheist rather than a “Turabi.”

Quite often, they used to confront Imam al-Hasan (α) very bitterly despite their recognition of his Imamate and their surrendering to the fact that whatever he did was due to divine righteousness and will. They went as far as urging al-Husayn (α) several times to rise against oppression, but he declined to do so out of deference for the obligations of the Imamate, preferring to postpone doing so till the right time, the time of which he was informed by both his grandfather (α) and by his wāsi, his own father (α).

Mu‘awiya knew very well that in the event al-Husayn (α) was in any way harmed, the Shi’as would rally behind him, and this would lead to worsening an already bad relationship between both of them.

It was for this very reason that he advised his son Yazid to seek peace with al-Husayn (α) if the issue was aggravated no matter how “harsh” the Imam (α) might be to him. Said he to Yazid, “The people of Iraq will not let Husain till they get him out [of Medina]; so, if he rebels against you, and if you capture him, forgive him, for his lineage is great, and so is his right.”

Due to his deadly conceit, ignorant Yazid did not pay any attention to that advice; so, his evil overcame him, bringing out the worst in him. If Yazid, the man who personified all abominations, was pleased with a swift victory, his victory was soon followed by failure, and people faced him with condemnation. Even those who did not claim adherence to Islam blamed him a great deal.

The incident of the messenger sent by a [Byzantine] Roman emperor to Yazid at the latter’s court is a case in point. The messenger saw how Yazid was beating the sacred severed head of the Imam (α), so he responded in a way that shook the whole place. Yazid then realized that his falsely justifying what he had committed was of no avail any longer. How could his justifications be of any avail after each and everyone responded in a way that shook the whole place. Yazid then realized that his falsely justifying what he had done at the latter's court is a case in point. The messenger saw how Yazid was beating the sacred severed head of the Imam (α), so he responded in a way that shook the whole place. Yazid then realized that his falsely justifying what he had committed was of no avail any longer. How could his justifications be of any avail after each and everyone responded in a way that shook the whole place. Yazid then realized that his falsely justifying what he had committed was of no avail any longer. How could his justifications be of any avail after each and everyone responded in a way that shook the whole place.

Before the tragedy of Kerbalâ’, who had ever heard a head, which had been severed from its body, speak so articulately? Was Maysân’s son capable of frustrating Allah's mysteries or putting out His most sacred Light? Of course not.

The denunciation of what Yazid had done came even from his wives and those closest to him, so much so that when his wife Hind¹ saw

---

¹Tabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 179.

²The traditionist ‘Abdullâh Nūr-Allâh al-Bahrâni, Maqta al-‘Awâlim, p. 150, as appears in his biography on p. 370 of Rawdat al-Jannât at the conclusion of the biography of Shaikh ‘Abdullâh ibn al-Hajj Sâlih al-Samahejî who had compiled Al-Sâhîfa al-‘Alawiyya.

³The story of how Hind, wife of ‘Abdullâh ibn ‘Amîr ibn Karîz, was married to Yazid after her husband was forced to divorce her is one of the fables whose author desired to demean the Masters of the Youth of Paradise, namely al-Hasan and al-Husayn, peace be upon them. It is narrated in many different ways:

¹) Al-Khawârizmî’s Maqta states on p. 151, Vol. 1, Chapter 7 (Najâf’s edition) through the isnâd of Yahya ibn ‘Abdullâh ibn Bashîr al-Bâhili saying, “Hind daughter of Suhayl ibn ‘Amr was with ‘Abdullâh ibn ‘Amîr ibn Karîz, and Basra’s governor had then been appointed by Mu‘awiya. The said governor offered her husband to exchange his wife, according to Yazid’s desire to have her, with Basra’s entire tax revenue. At the end of the waiting period, Mu‘awiya sent Abu Hurayra with a thousand dinars as her dower. At Medina, Abu Hurayra narrated the incident to Imam al-Husayn ibn Ali (α) who said to him, ‘Say a good word about me to Hind.’ Abu Hurayra did; therefore, she chose al-Husayn (α) who married her. When the Imam (α) came to know that ‘Abdullâh ibn ‘Amîr had desired her, he divorced her saying, ‘A good person have I been to legitimize her for you.'” The author traces the chain of narrators of this incident back to Yahya ibn ‘Abdullâh ibn Bashîr al-Bâhili who quotes Ibn al-Mubârak who is not known at all to the scholars specialized in the science of verifying the narrators of hadith.
the severed head crucified on her house door as `Alawite radiance emanated from it to the depth of the sky and witnessed it bleeding, and the blood was emanating a very sweet fragrance, she was very distressed and could not help entering Yazid's court without her veil. She screamed: “The head of the daughter of the

2) Al-Khawārizmi's *Magtaż* traces, on p. 150, Vol. 1, its *isnād* to al-Hathli who quotes Ibn Sirin saying, “`Abdul-Rahmān ibn `Innab ibn Asid was the one who had deflowered her then divorced her. `Abdullāh ibn `Āmir ibn Kariz then married her, as stated above, except that he substituted the name of al-Husain (ṣ) with that of al-Hasan (ṣ), claiming that he said to `Abdullāh ibn `Āmir after the latter had divorced her, ‘You will not find anyone better than me to legitimize her for you.’ Hind used to say, ‘Their master is Hasan; the most generous among them is `Abdullāh, and the one I love most is `Abdul-Rahmān.’ On p. 45, Vol. 2, of Ibn Hajar's book *Tahthib al-Tahthib*, it is stated that al-Hathli is Abu Bakr who is regarded by Ibn Ma`īn as a liar and by Abu Zar`ah as “weak” and by al-Nassā`i as one whose traditions should not be taken seriously at all. On p. 146, Vol. 3, of al-Safādi’s book *Al-Wāfi bil Wafiyār*, the author says, “Muhammad ibn Sirin admitted to hearing hadith then curtailing it, and that he was among those brought as captives from Jirjaya.” On p. 103, Vol. 2, of *Tarḥ al-Tahthīb*, it is stated that, “Ibn Sirin was taken captive after `Ayn al-Tamr was overrun.”

3) On p. 180, Vol. 6, of al-Nuwayri's *Nihāyat al-Arāb*, it is stated that, “Zainab was with `Abdullāh ibn Salām who was appointed as ruler of Iraq by Mu`āwiya. Mu`āwiya asked him to divorce his wife because Yazid desired her as his own wife provided he would give him his own daughter to marry. When he did divorce her, Mu`āwiya's daughter refused to marry him, so Mu`āwiya dispatched Abu Hurayra and Abu-Dārād`a to Iraq to ask for the hand of Zainab daughter of Ishāq for Yazid. They came to Kūfah, and al-Husain ibn Ali (ṣ) was there, so they told him their story. He (ṣ) said to them, “Mention my name to her.” She, therefore, chose al-Husain (ṣ) who did actually marry her. When al-Husain (ṣ) came to know that `Abdullāh ibn Salām wanted her for himself, he divorced her in order to legitimize her marriage to his first husband.

This lengthy incident, which al-Nuwayri narrates and which he takes for granted in his book *Nihāyat al-Arāb* without even tracing the chain of its narrators, is taken for granted by Ibn Badrūn who explains one of his poems on p. 172 (1330 A.H./1912 A.D. edition) titled “Uraynab.” Al-Husain (ṣ) never visited Kūfah after their departure therefrom.

4) On p. 274, Vol. 1, of al-Maydānī's book *Al-Amthāl*, the following incident is narrated under a heading reading: “There may be someone who diligently helps someone else sitting idly by”:

“Mu`āwiya asked Yazid once about his desires, so he informed him of his desire to marry Selma, mother of Khālid and wife of `Abdullāh ibn `Āmir ibn Kariz. Mu`āwiya called upon the latter to meet with him. When they met, he asked him to divorce his wife, the mother of Khālid, in exchange for all the taxes levied from Persia for full five years. He, therefore, divorced her. Mu`āwiya then wrote his governor over Medīna, al-Walīd ibn `Utbah, to inform Khālid's offer of her divorce. After the expiration of the waiting period, Mu`āwiya dispatched Abu Hurayra with sixty thousand dirhams and twenty thousand dinars for her dowry in addition to twenty thousand dinars to appease her and yet twenty thousand more as an additional gift. At Medīna, he narrated the incident to the father of Muḥammad, namely al-Hasan son of the Commander of the Faithful (ṣ), who said to Abu Hurayra, “Mention my name to her.” Al-Husain (ṣ), too, said to him, “Mention my name to her.” `Ubaydullāh ibn al-`Abbās ibn `Abdul-Muttaṭilī said likewise and so did `Abdullāh son of Ja`far al-Tayyār, as well as `Abdullāh ibn al-Zubayr and `Abdullāh ibn Mut`ū ibīl al-Aswād. Abu Hurayra met her and narrated to her what Mu`āwiya wanted, then he informed her of the desire of each of these men to marry her. She said to him, ‘You choose one of them for me.’ He, therefore, chose al-Hasan ibn Ali (ṣ) and married her off to him, then he took the money back to Mu`āwiya who reprimanded him (Abu Hurayra) for what had happened. The latter answered him by saying, “One who is consulted is one who is trusted.”

This is all what “trustworthy historians” had recorded of the facts as they had taken place. It is regrettable to see how they did not demonstrate any concern about safeguarding the Muslims' dignity. Just consider this myth the ultimate objective of which is to defame both grandsons of the Messenger of Allāh, peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him and his progeny, the Imāms of the nation whenever they stood up or sat down. One who sees things as they are without discerning them would be duped into accepting such a lie and, hence, would charge Abu Muḥammad, Imām al-Hasan (ṣ), with a charge because of which the mountains are removed from their places on account of the many wives al-Hasan (ṣ) had married, and that to divorce a wife thrice was quite common. They could not find any truthful person to legitimize marrying a woman a permanent marriage then divorcing her other than al-Hasan (ṣ)!

I do not know what excuse he will find for himself on the Day when the father of Muḥammad [ibn al-Ḥanafīyya] asks him, “Upon what basis did you thus violate my sanctity and did not see the evil of what you did?”
Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) is crucified on our house!” Yazid stood and covered her up and said, “Mourn al-Husain, for he is the [cause of] anguish of Banu Hashim. Ibn Ziyad was swift in killing him.”

He intended to mislead her and, by shifting the blame for the crime to his governor, attempted to avoid condemnation. But what is already fixed cannot be removed. This is why he wrote his short missive which historians describe as “the rat's ear” and which he dispatched together with his more detailed one to the man whom he appointed as governor of Medina, namely al-Walid ibn `Utbah, ordering him to secure the oath of allegiance for him from the entire population. In his shorter missive, he instructed him to secure it specifically from al-Husain (ۚ), and to kill him and send him his head to him if he refused.

This was due to Yazid's knowledge that the righteous men of his time and the dignitaries among them would not endorse his government, nor had they accepted to do so during the lifetime of his father, Muawiyyah, except after being coerced and harassed.

He wanted to “officially” alienate himself from the order to kill al-Husain (ۚ) so that if his appointee did it then held him accountable, he would seek his excuse by attributing the act of killing to his appointee. In his letter ordering him to secure the oath of allegiance for him from all the people of Medina, he did not dare to refer to such an order. This would provide him with the opportunity to shift the blame to his appointee. It was then that he came up with that excuse, and some historians were thus duped. But will it avail him at all? Of course not.

They clothed themselves for what they did
With the attire of shame:
Black in color tailored by infamy.

**THE PROPHETS ARE ON AL-HUSAIN'S SIDE**

The discussion of al-Husain's martyrdom has been one of the mysteries of creation, one of the legacies of the prophets, and one of the subjects quite often discussed by the wasis and the bearers of the secrets, so that the Master, Praise to Him, would acquaint them with this great revolutionary and with his superiority over everyone else: he was the one who safeguarded the conclusive Shar`a. All those prophets came to pave the way for such Shar`a and train the souls to accept it. Allah will surely reward them for grieving over him, for denouncing such a painful tragedy. Adam wept over him, and so did Abraham, the Friend of Allah. Moses (ۚ) and Jesus (ۚ) condemned his killer and ordered the Israelites to curse him saying, “Whoever lives to see him should fight on his side for he would be rewarded as though he was martyred fighting on the side of a prophet, whether charging or retreating. It is as though I can see his spot; each and every prophet visits it.” He also addressed it saying, “You are a spot of plenty of goodness; in you shall be buried the magnificent moon.”

Prophet Ishmael (ۚ), the one who was truthful to his promise, opted to follow his example after being informed of his martyrdom so that the Awaited Imam, may Allah hasten his reappearance, may avenge his murder.

---

1 al-Tabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 267.
2 Ibid., Vol. 6, p. 188.
3 Shaikh Abul-Qāsim Ja’fer ibn Muhammed ibn Ja’fer ibn Mūsa ibn Qawlawayh al-Qummi (d. 367 A.H./978 A.D.), Kāmil al-Ziyārāt, p. 67.
4 Ibid., p. 65.
Yahya chose his head to be conveyed and displayed, 
Finding his solace in the example of Husain.

The news of Husain's impending martyrdom caused the holiest Messenger of Allāh (ص) to weep, and he eulogized him though he was still alive¹, so what if he had seen him slain at Kerbala’ among a group of his kinsfolk who all were like lanterns that shatter the darkness after depriving him and all those with him from drinking the same water they had permitted the animals to drink?

Yes, the Prophet of Mercy (ص) witnessed a piece of his heart in such a condition for which the heavens are rent asunder, and he saw that a huge multitude immersed in falsehood was bent on eradicating his Progeny anew from the world. Some of those who were with him saw him looking once at them and once at the sky, submitting to destiny.²

When the Commander of the Faithful (ع) passed by Kerbala’ on his march to Siffin, he alighted there, pointed to a particular spot and said, “There shall they alight,” then he pointed to another spot and said, “There shall their blood be spilled. The offspring of Muhammed (ص) shall alight there.” After a while he said, “‘Alas! O soil from which some people shall enter Paradise without judgment!”³ Then he released his tears, and all those who were with him shed their tears, too, for seeing him thus weeping. He informed his closest followers that his son al-Husain (ع) would be martyred on that spot together with many youths who descend from Muhammed (ص) together with his companions who are the masters of martyrs. Nobody ever reached their lofty status, nor will any..., ever.⁴

In another statement which he (ع) made when word was circulated that a group of young people belonging to Muhammed's family would be killed at Kerbala’, he said, “The heavens and the earth shall weep for them, too.⁵ May my father be sacrificed for one whose only supporter was Allāh.”⁶ Then he added saying, “Banū Umayyah shall not cease immersing themselves in their misguidance till they unjustly spill the forbidden blood during the forbidden month. It is as though I look at a handsome young man swimming in his blood. So once they do so, they will have none to seek excuses on their behalf, nor will they be able to maintain their government.”⁷ Selmān the Persian once passed by Kerbala’ on his way to Madain and said, “These are the places where my brethren will be killed, and this is the place where they will camp and their blood spilled! Here will the son of the best of the first generations and of the last will be killed.”⁸ Jesus son of Mary (ع) passed once by the land of Kerbala’ and saw gazelle grazing. The gazelle told him that they were grazing there only because of their love for the soil of the blessed offspring of Ahmed the Prophet (ص), and that they felt secure in that land. Jesus (ع) took some of their dung, sniffed it then supplicated saying, “O Allāh! Preserve it so that his [Husain’s] father may sniff it, too, and find in it means of condolence and


²Ibn Qawlawayh, Kāmil al-Ziyārāt, p. 65.

³Naṣr ibn Muzāhim, Siffin, pp. 157-159.

⁴Ibn Qawlawayh, Kāmil al-Ziyārāt, p. 27.

⁵Abu Na’īm, Dalā’il al-Nubahwa, Vol. 2, p. 211.


The dung remained there till the Commander of the Faithful (ع) came to Kerbala’. By that time, it had turned yellow due to the passage of time. He took it, sniffed it then wept. He passed it on to Ibn ʿAbbās saying, “Keep it; if you one day see it boiling in blood, you should then know that al-Husain is killed.” He did. On ʿAshūra Day in the afternoon, he saw it boiling in blood.¹

THE INTENTION TO KILL

Introductory Note:

By necessity, the human society needs a reformer to bridge the gaps among its sectors, to correct its error, to complete its deficiency, and to enable it to stand on its own. The reason for all of this is the fact that the elements of corruption are present in it. Had there been none to curb the nation’s evil intentions, their whims and desires would have played havoc with them and divided them, so much so that even a relative would not be able to trust his relative, and all individuals would be the victims of their own ambition. Such a reformer is chosen by the Master, Glory to Him, from among His servants because He, and only He, is the One Who best knows the purity and integrity of the souls, of their renunciation of what displeases the Lord of the Worlds. He will have to be protected against the immoralities the servants of Allah have and against all abominable inclinations so that he may not partake of them and thus worsen the situation and abandon informing others and guiding them to the paths of guidance and warning them against the pitfalls of perdition. Allah had created the greatest Prophet (ص) from the light of His sanctity and bestowed upon him the most perfect of good ethics to the extent that he surpassed in his good conduct everyone else and excelled over every being in existence. He, therefore, started explaining what is divinely permissible and what is not, supported by divine inspiration.

One’s pen is surely incapable of defining such a brilliant personality about which the Prophet (ص) said to the Commander of the Faithful, “Nobody knows Allāh except I and you; nobody knows me except Allāh and you, and nobody knows you except Allāh and I.”²

Since the Prophet (ص) was not to live forever, being a mortal like any other human being whose end is predetermined, and since a number of his injunctions were quite general the time for whose specifics had not come yet, it was mandatory on the legislator that called for reforming the nation to appoint a successor to continue the march in his footsteps, in his determination, sincerity and infallibility. Nobody knows what someone hides within himself except his Creator. Had the nation been entrusted to select such a person, it would have been impossible for it to distinguish one person from another because of its inability to determine the characteristics which had to be present in the Imām. Chaos, corruption, disputes and dissension would then result. This is contrary to the Munificence of the Master, Glory to Him. “Your Lord creates whatever He pleases and chooses: they have no choice to make in the affair” (Al-Qasas, verse 68). “No believing man nor woman has any choice with regard to their affairs if Allāh and His Messenger make a decree, and whoever disobeys Allāh and His Messenger strays a manifest straying” (Al-Ahzāb, 36).

Succession [to the Prophet] is a divine post for which Allāh, the most Exalted One, enables someone to carry the burdens of prophethood, so he conveys the message and calls for the details of the Sharīʿa brought by the Supreme Saviour. He will guide the ignorant, alert the heedless, discipline the transgressor and explain in detail what the Prophet, peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him and his Progeny, had

¹ al-Ṣadūq, Ikmāl ad-Dīn, p. 295.
² al-Hasan ibn Sulaymān al-Hillī (one of the students of the First Martyr who was alive in 802 A.H./1400 A.D.), Al-Muhtadīr, p. 165, and also on p. 125 of his book Al-Bāṣāʾīr.
summed up either to secure the common good of people, or he neglected to explain it because it was not opportune to do so yet.

After the Message had been conveyed by the Commander of the Faithful (א), he was succeeded by his son al-Hasan then by al-Hasan's brother al-Husain, the Master of Martyrs, then by his (Husain's) son Ali Zayn al-`Abidin, then by his son Muhammed al-Baqir followed by his son Ja'fer al-Sadiq followed by his son Musa al-Kazim followed by his son Ali al-Rida, then by his son Muhammed al-Jawad then by his son Ali al-Hadi, then by his son Hasan al-'Askari, then by his son the Awaited One, Abul-Qasim, Muhammed al-Mehdi, may Allah hasten his reappearance.

Consecutively narrated traditions have told us that Allah, the Great, deposits with the Imam, whom He appointed for the nation as the proof and the guiding light whereby those who stray are guided, a divine power and a light whereby he can inquire about the beings and what happens in existence of events and epics. An authentic hadith says, “When one of us is born, a pole of light will be raised for him whereby he sees the deeds of Allah's servants and whatever takes place in the lands.”

Such a statement refers to the divine power poured by the Truth, Glory to Him, for the purpose of discovering all facts as they are, be they statements or actions or anything else relevant to the material or spiritual world. It is through such a divine power that the curtains of ignorance are lifted and the barriers of heedlessness are removed; so, nothing remains except that it is present before them in its essence and before their holy selves. Such a light dispels the darkness, so the one seeing will find what the deep darkness had veiled from him standing before his very eyes. Abu 'Abdullah, Imam al-Sadiq (א), has already informed us of how the Lord, Great is He, bestowed upon Ahl al-Bayt the ability to be acquainted with what happened to the early generations and what will happen to the last ones, what is in the heavens and in the earth, and what was and is, so much so that all things are present before their very eyes.

Then he records explaining thus, “Whatever belonged to the Messenger of Allah (א), the same belongs to us except his prophethood and wives.”

There is no exaggeration in this statement which comes from those whom Allah had purified according to the text of the Holy Qur'an that says, “Allah desires to remove from you, O Ahl al-Bayt, all abomination and purifies you with a perfect purification” (Qur'an, 33:33) in order to be able to carry the most divine superabundance. There is no miserliness in the Supreme Lord, numerous are His Signs. To exaggerate about someone is to point out one of his characteristics which may either be comprehended or not, due to the limitation of one's own comprehension. Reason does not negate the divine generosity. How could it, since the most Great One pours His bounties upon those who go to extremes in their oppression and who rebel against the sanctity of His Greatness, as if they were the ones who were doing Him a favour?! Yet all of this did not stop Him from showing mercy and benevolence to them and granting them His favours. It is as though they had been the ones who did Him a favour! Yet all this did not stop Him from showing mercy to them and benevolence to them and granting them of His favours that whose treasures are not exhausted, nor can it fail anyone who seeks it. This is one of the self-explanatory causes. If the condition of the Overwhelming Lord, Praise to Him, is as we have just described with regard to those tyrants, how would He, the Omnipotent and the Great that He is, fare with the truth relevant to Ahmed (א) whom He created from the most sacred light, great is He, indeed?! So a meeting took place between an ever-flowing fountainhead and souls which are always ready to give. It is no bid’a at all in what is narrated about them, peace and blessings of Allah be upon them, bearers of the knowledge of the unknown, with what Allah's

---

1. al-Saffar, Basa’ir al-Daraajat, Vol. 9, p. 128.
servants do or do not, and with what happened in the lands or what will.

The knowledge of the unknown, in as far as they, peace be upon them, are concerned, is not relevant only to the Creator, the most Exalted One, so that it would be inaccessible to them. Such knowledge is characteristic of the Almighty Himself. As far as the Imāms are concerned, such knowledge is bestowed upon them by Allāh, Praise to Him. It is through His grants and Munificence that they could know the nature of things and of events.

The knowledge of the unknown, then, is of two types:

1) one which has to exist and which comes only from the Creator of the heavens and the earth. It depends on Divine boons. It is what the prophets and their wasīs had had, and it is to such type of knowledge that the scholar of exegesis al-‘Ālāsi attracted our attention when he explained the following verse: “Say: None in the heavens and in the earth knows the unknown except Allāh.” Al-‘Ālāsi said, “It may be said that, as a matter of fact, the knowledge of the unknown, from which everyone other than Him, the most Exalted One, is excluded, is that which is specifically relevant to one person without means whereby he acquires it.

2) As regarding the knowledge with certain individuals, this is acquired when He somehow bestows it upon them; so, it cannot be said that they were familiar with the unknown through the first avenue, for one who says so will certainly be committing apostasy. Rather, it should be said that they were distinguished from others when they were acquainted with the knowledge of the unknown.”

A testimony to this fact is what Imām Abu Jaʿfer al-Jawād (ع) said once to his wife, Umm al-Fadl daughter of caliph al-Maʿmūn, when she unexpectedly found herself menstruating. She said to him, “Nobody knows the unknown except Allāh.” Said the Imām (ع), “And I know it because Allāh, the most Exalted One, acquaints me with it.”

The Imāms (ع) are at all times in need of Divine favours. “Had it not been for the continuity of their link with Him and the consecutive boons which He bestows upon me,” said Imām Abu ʿAbdullāh, al-Ṣādiq (ع), “I would have exhausted what I have with me.” He has also said, “Had it not been for an increase every Friday evening in what we have, what is with us would have depleted.” The Imām (ع) by saying so meant to tell us that the Imāms' knowledge is directly from the Creator, the most High, and that they are in continuous need for His knowledge and for the continuation of His mercy, Glory to Him. His specifying Friday evening is due to its being a blessed one. It is blessed by the descending of Divine Munificence from the beginning of the evening till its end, unlike other nights. It is to such meaning that Imām al-Rida (ع) refers when he says, “Knowledge is made [by Allāh] accessible to us; it is then that we know, and it is withheld from us, so it is then that we do not know.”

In Sūrat al-Jinn, we read the following verse: “The One Who knows the unknown, so He does not acquaint anyone with His knowledge of the unknown except a messenger with whom He is pleased.” Nobody who reads this verse should doubt (the gist of) what is stated above. The Messenger who stood the distance of two bows or closer was none other than the Seal of all the Prophets, the Messenger with whom

---

1 Rūḥ al-Maʿānī, Vol. 20, p. 11.
3 al-Ṣādiq, Usūl al-Kāfī, as quoted in a footnote on p. 185, Vol. 1, of Mirʿat al-ʿUqūl.
4 Mukhtasar al-Baṣāʿir, p. 63.
Allāh is pleased, the one over whom Allāh never preferred anyone else from among all His creation. Imām Abu Ja`fār, al-Bāqir (辏), used to say, “By Allāh, Muhammed was the one with whom Allāh is quite pleased.” Allāh never distances the successors of the Prophet (ﷺ) from such a status after having derived their light from that of Prophet Muhammed (ﷺ). Another testimony is the answer provided by Imām al-Rida (辏) to `Amr ibn Haddāb. The latter rejected the notion that the Imāms, peace be upon them, had with them the knowledge of the unknown, deriving his argument from the above quoted verse. The Imām ( cumshot ) responded to his rejection by saying, “The Messenger of Allāh (ﷺ) is the one who was familiarized by Allāh with His knowledge of the unknown, and we are the heirs of that Messenger who came to know Allāh's knowledge of the unknown; so, we thus came to know what was and what will be till the Day of Judgment.”

Why would not the Messenger with whom Allāh was pleased be the same one whom Allāh loved especially since the Creator, Glory to Him, honoured him by addressing him directly without an intervening angel? Zurarah reports saying that he once asked Abu ʿAbdullāh, Imām al-Sādiq ( cumshot ), whether the Messenger of Allāh (ﷺ) used to be overcome with a swoon whenever he received revelation. “No,” answered the Imām ( cumshot ), “it was not. He swooned whenever he communicated with Allāh, the Omnipotent, the Great, directly, without anyone intervening between them. As for Gabriel ( cumshot ), he never visited him except after seeking and being granted his permission to do so. So, whenever he entered, he sat before the Messenger of Allāh (ﷺ) just like a slave sitting before his master.”

When the Messenger of Allāh (ﷺ) was in no condition to grant permission for Gabriel to enter, the latter remained outside by the drain pipe till he was granted permission to enter. And he received the wahi without any angel intervening as proven by Burhan ad-Din al-Halabi,5 al-Suhayli,6 Ibn Sayyid al-Nas7, al-Sayyūṭī8 and al-Zarqānī.9

Based on these traditions, which tell us about the status reserved by the Master, sublime are His Signs, for the greatest Messenger (ﷺ), Shaikh al-Sādiq recorded his belief in the wahi and in the swoon [referred to above].10 The view held by Shaikh al-Mufīd is not different from his. Says he, “Wahi is of two types: one the Prophet (ﷺ) hears directly without anyone interfering, and one wherein he hears through the angels.” The great authority, Shaikh Muhammed Taqi al-Isfahānī, who is well known as Aqa Najafī, follows in his footsteps. Add to this the Prophet's knowledge of the Qur'ān and whatever knowledge and

---

1Ibid., Vol. 12, p. 22, in a chapter dealing with the Imām's visit to Basra. It is also discussed on p. 74, Vol. 15, where the subject of khirāj taxes is discussed.
2al-Sādiq, Tawhīd, p. 102, in the chapter denying the possibility of Allāh being seen by anyone, and it is also discussed on p. 14, Chapter 7, of ʿIlal al-Sharḥī and on p. 86 of al-Fayd's book ʿIlm al-Yaqqīn.
3Ibid., p. 102, in a chapter denying the possibility of Allāh being seen by anyone. It is also cited on p. 14, Chapter 7, of ʿIlal al-Sharḥī, and on p. 86 of al-Fayd's book ʿIlm al-Yaqqīn.
5al-Halabi, Sīra, Vol. 1, p. 294, in a chapter discussing the inception of the wahī.
10In this scholar's Appendix to Chapter 11 of his book lʿtiqādāt.
secrets of natures and characteristics of things it contains even prior to its revelation to him. What is most important is that the Master, Great is He, had told him not to make such knowledge public before receiving its revelation. He, Glory to Him, said, “Do not hasten with the Qur’ân before its revelation is mandated to you.”

Had the Prophet (ص) not been fully acquainted with what the Glorious Qur’ân contains of secrets and knowledge, such a prohibition from making it public would have had no meaning. This quite clearly proves that the Prophet (ص) knew what events took place and what events will take place, and that such knowledge was not totally dependent on Gabriel (ع)، descending upon him. The sacred boon which he had received from the Almighty had already acquainted him with all facts even before Gabriel was created...

At this juncture, another phenomenon becomes evident, one which was not realized by those who could not realize the degrees of greatness and beauty such a magnanimous personality enjoyed. It is the fact that the greatest Messenger (ص) was familiar with reading and writing all languages regardless of their variations and methods of writing before and after his Prophethood due to his attainment of the highest degrees of [human] perfection. Such a quality was not to be withheld from him. Had he not been thus endowed with such knowledge, he would have sought help from others whenever he needed to read or to write anything, and he would then have been in need of someone’s favour: he is the embodiment of all favours and virtues. This is not only our view; it is the view to which renown verifiers have submitted. The verse saying, “You do not write it with your own right hand” does not negate his knowledge of writing; it only negates his own writing it down, and there is no connection between such recording and his ability to write. He, peace and blessings of Allâh be upon him and his progeny, being the Seal of the Prophets of Allâh that he was, was permitted to marry more than four women.

Anyone who does not know the implication of the knowledge of the unknown, which these geniuses had, is surely to find such an issue tremendous, so he rejects it. One who does not know the fiqh of the Shari`a unknowingly admits the error of his belief. Shaikh Zadah al-Hanafi says, “Qasim al-Saffar caused a verdict labelling as “illegal” any marriage based on one merely testifying to the unity of Allâh and to the Prophethood of the Messenger of Allâh (ص), claiming that such person had also to believe in the Prophet's

---

1Al-`Inayat al-Radawiyya, p. 51.

Al-Shihâb al-Kha`fîjî, on p. 398, Vol. 2, of his book Sharh al-Shifâ, indicates the same in a chapter dealing with his names. On p. 514, he includes a section dealing with his miracles. On p. 4, Vol. 21, of Rûh al-Ma`âni, al-`Âlusi comments on the phrase “you do not write it down with your own right hand” in the verse referred to the above by saying, “A group of scholars once discussed this phrase and were of the view that he [the Messenger of Allâh] knew how to write.” Then he quoted al-Bukhârî saying in his Sahîh, “He (ص) wrote down the covenant of the peace treaty [of al-Hudaybiyya].” Prof. `Abduh-`Azîm al-Zarqâ`, on p. 260 (first edition) of his book Manâhil al-Irfân, records what negates that he learned how to write but that he already knew how to. On p. 249, Vol. 6, of Tahâthib Târikh Ibn `Âsâkir, the author states that `Abul-Walîd al-Bâji wrote a dissertation about the Prophet (ص) being able to write, and he is supported in his views by Ahmed ibn Muhammad al-Lakhmi and Ja`fer ibn `Abdul-Jabbâr in addition to others.
knowledge of the unknown. But the head of the Tatar-Khans rejected the notion that he should be called an apostate because certain things are demonstrated before the purified soul of the Prophet (ﷺ), so he thus comes to acquire some of the knowledge of the unknown whereas Allah has said, ‘He is the One Who knows the unknown, so none except a Messenger with whom He is pleased will be acquainted with His knowledge of the known.’ Neither of these men understood the meaning of “the knowledge of the unknown” discussed here, nor did either of them realize the truth about the Seal of the Prophet, peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him and his progeny, so they said whatever they were able to comprehend and no more.

Having explained its connotation, the discreet reader has no excuse for hesitating, or for entertaining any doubt. Yes, nobody can deny that the Creator, Praise is due to Him, has with Him knowledge with which He, and only He, is familiar, the knowledge which He did not share with anyone else at all, including the time of the Hour.

As regarding Ahl al-Bayt (ع) denying having any knowledge of the unknown, such as the following statement of Īmām Abu ‘Abdullāh, al-Sādiq (ع), “Strange how some people claim that we know the unknown! None knows the unknown except Allāh. I was about to hit my bondmaid when she ran away from me and hid: I have no idea in which room she hid!”, this statement is interpreted as being said by way of taqiyya due to the presence at the time of men like Dāwūd al-Raqī, Yahya al-Bazzāz, and Abu Busayr. These men could not comprehend the mystery of how Ahl al-Bayt (ع) knew what they knew. Abu ‘Abdullāh (ع) wanted to deny having any knowledge of the unknown in order to demonstrate his support for those men's beliefs. What supports this theory is Sadīr, the narrator of this incident, visiting the Īmām (ع) thereafter and expressing to him his amazement at how he denied his knowledge of the unknown. The Īmām comforted him by saying that he knew what was even more than that: the Book of Allāh in its entirety and all the knowledge and secrets it contains. Yet this incident is brushed aside by al-Majlisi, who states so in his book Mir‘at al-‘Uqāl, due to the ignorance of those who have narrated it.

The reason why the Īmām (ع) denied knowing his bondmaid's whereabouts may have been to deny having seen her in her hiding place rather than having known where that place actually was. His phrase “I have no idea” means: “I did not actually see in which room she entered;” otherwise, one who has said about himself “The knowledge of what had passed before me is with me, and so is that which has not come to pass” cannot be ignorant of his bondmaid's whereabouts. When Mubashshir knocked at the door of Abu Ja‘fer, Īmām al-Baqīr, and the maid went out to open it, he caught her hand, whereupon Abu Ja‘fer (ع) called upon him from inside the house, “Enter, may you lose your father!” He entered and apologized by saying that he did not entertain any ill thought but only wanted to increase (his conviction that the Īmām knew who was at the door). The Īmām (ع) said to him, “Had the walls obstructed our vision as they obstruct yours, we and you would have been on par.” He also said once to Muhammed ibn Muslim, “Had we been ignorant of what you all do or not do, we would not have been preferred over the rest of the people,” then he mentioned the incident at the Rabatha involving him and his fellow with regard to the subject of Īmāmate.

The Prophet's hadith: “Had I known the unknown, I would have acquired plenty of goodness” does not carry any meaning other than the Prophet (ﷺ) being in need of Allāh, the most Exalted, to acquire knowledge, and that he did not know the unknown on his own. There is no doubt about that, for everyone believes that Allāh, the most Exalted, is the One Who bestowed upon the Prophet (ﷺ) and upon his offspring, peace be upon them, the divine faculty whereby they were able to acquire the knowledge of the

---

1 Mu‘jam al-Anhur, Vol. 1, p. 320 which discusses the Hanafi fiqh.
world.\(^1\)

Another testimonial is when Imām al-Ṣādiq (\(\varepsilon\)), who was with his followers in jail, asked his followers about the presence of those who were spying on them. They told him that they had no knowledge of such spies. He, thereupon, said, “Thrice do I swear by the Lord of this building that had I been present with Moses and al-Khidr (\(\varepsilon\)), I would have told them that I am more knowledgeable than [both of] them, and I would have informed them of the knowledge with which they were not familiar. They were, indeed, granted the knowledge of what had already passed and what is to pass till the time of the Hour, and we [Ahl al-Bayt] have inherited all such knowledge from the Messenger of Allāh, peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him and his Progeny.”\(^2\)

This narration is authentic; nobody accuses Ibrahim ibn Ishāq al-Ahmar of any weakness in what he narrates. We, furthermore, say that it does not contradict his vast knowledge due to the fact that the Ahl al-Bayt (\(\varepsilon\)) are not obligated to reveal all what they knew. Rather, they had to act upon whatever met the principle of \(taqiyya\), or due to their concern about some of their companions on account of being under surveillance. His statement is similar to another wherein he said, “I know what is in the heavens and in the earth, and what is in Paradise and in hell; I know what was and what will be.” Having said so, the Imām (\(\varepsilon\)) realized its tremendous effect on his audience; he was concerned about those who were in his company then and there, so he (\(\varepsilon\)), went on to say, “I came to know all of it from the Book of Allāh: The most Exalted One says that His Book contains the explanation of everything.”\(^3\)

The Imām (\(\varepsilon\)) took into consideration his companions' condition, so he brought them an argument to convince them, and so were the other Imāms (\(\varepsilon\)) in as far as their knowledge of temporal circumstances and personal conditions were concerned. His statement about Moses and al-Khidr (\(\varepsilon\)), that they were granted the knowledge of what was, does not contradict al-Khidr's knowledge of the future of the young boy [whom he killed], for it is one of the causes with which Allāh informed him for a temporal reason.

As regarding the Imāms, peace be upon them, stating that when one of them wants to know something, Allāh informs him of it,\(^4\) it does not prove the limitation of their knowledge at a particular time. Such a statement proves that putting the divine power with which they are endowed at birth to work depends on their will which is determined by the presence of an interest necessitating the revelation of a veiled fact and producing what they had had with them of treasured knowledge. Yet this explanation occurs in no more than three narrations all of which are refuted by al-Majlisi in his book \(Mir‘ūt al-‘Uqūl\), proving the weakness of some of them and the ignorance of those who reported the others.

What can be concluded from the above is that Allāh, the most Sublime, has bestowed upon His purified vicegerents a divine faculty whereby they could comprehend events, the nature of things, the secrets of everything, in addition to whatever good or evil takes place in the universe. There is no exaggeration in all of this especially since the nature of these Imāms is capable of absorbing such divine overflow, and since the Lord, Glory to Him, is never miser in what He grants those upon whom He bestows of His knowledge. The Imāms, peace be upon them, have declared the same, saying that they always are in need of His subsequent blessings, Great is He; otherwise, their storehouse of knowledge may deplete. This is not

\(^1\)al-Khaḍājī, \(Sharh al-Shīfū\), Vol. 3, p. 150, where he says, “What is denied in these verses is his [Prophet's] knowledge of the unknown without means [enabling him to know]. As regarding his knowledge of the unknown, it is done by Allāh, the most Exalted One, informing him. This is a recognized fact. It is ascertained by the verse saying, “He does not acquaint anyone with His knowledge of the unknown except a Messenger with whom He is pleased.”

\(^2\)al-Sādiq, \(Usūl al-Kāfī\), as quoted on p. 189, Vol. 1, of \(Mir‘ūt al-‘Uqūl\).

\(^3\)Ibid., p. 190.

\(^4\)Ibid., p. 187.
unexpected with regard to those whose ultimate objective is to obey Allah Almighty, and whose substance is integrity. Such are Allah's friends and the truthful ones in addition to those whom the Creator appointed as the custodians of His Sharī'a. This view is endorsed by renown critics and is stated by Shaikh al-Mufid on p. 77 of _Al-Maqāls,_ and by al-Majlisi on p. 187, Vol. 1, of _Mir'at al-'Uqul._ Al-Ashṭiyyānī, the critic, has followed in their footsteps as stated on p. 60, Vol. 2, of his commentary on Shaikh al-Ansāri's Letters.

Ibn Hajar al-Haythami states the following:

The verses stating: “Say: None knows the unknown in the heavens and in the earth save Allah” and “The One Who knows the unknown, so He does not acquaint anyone with His knowledge” do not contradict the prophets' and the walis' knowledge of portions of the unknown. They know of such knowledge because Allah Almighty informs them of it. This is not the same knowledge like that relevant to Him whereby He is praised and glorified. In both of these verses, He is simply saying that none shares His knowledge of the latter. As far as other types of knowledge are concerned, He informs whomsoever He pleases of some of the knowledge of the unknown. The Almighty informing His prophets and friends of some of the knowledge of the unknown is possible; it is not impossible at all. Anyone who denies it is stubborn. It goes without saying that such granted knowledge does not in the end lead to the recipients sharing with Allah the knowledge which He has reserved for Himself and whereby He is praised, glorified, and is known since eternity. This is the same view upheld by al-Nawawi in his verdicts.¹

This clearly proves that Ibn Hajar was not too far from accepting the notion that the walis knew the unknown, but he did not agree with the Shi‘as with regard to their belief that their Imāms from among Ahl al-Bayt, peace be upon them, are capable of knowing the events which took place as well as those which will take place till the Day of Judgment. He believes that such ability is characteristic of the Great Creator. The criterion he has set for the walis to know some of the knowledge of the unknown is their being empowered by their Master, Glory to Him, to do so; He is the One Who informs them of some of the knowledge of the unknown. Such empowering, he believes, keeps the Shi‘a beliefs in check. If the criterion of Allah Almighty empowering others to know the unknown becomes the particular divine faculty of certain individuals who are the offspring of the Messenger of Allah (ṣ.), then it is quite possible that such faculty reaches its utmost limit to the extent that it will not be confined to some but rather to all such knowledge, so much so that one of such individuals may see things as if they are before his very eyes as Imām al-Sādiq (ع) says. The exception to this, of course, is the knowledge which Allah Almighty has confined only to Himself. None can be acquainted with such knowledge even if he reaches the degree beyond the zenith of perfection.

This is also the view held by Ibn Hajar. Al-Naishapuri, author of the _Tafsir,_ has recorded it as follows: “If the walis are not granted such a faculty, it is either because Allah is entitled not to grant a believer what he wants, or because the believer simply is not worthy of it, and either one is far from the other. If a believer is empowered to attain it, it surely is the very greatest of all of what He grants a servant of His. If the One Who is most generous does not withhold the very best, He likewise is generous enough not to give what is the least.”² He further says, “There is no contradiction between the verse saying, ‘No soul knows what it shall earn in the morrow’ and the advance knowledge of the Prophet (ṣ.) of the conquest of Mecca and of the imminent wars against the renegades, those who deviated from the right path, and the

---

¹ _Al-Fatāwa al-Ḥaditha,_ p. 222.

² Abdul-Qādir al-‘Aidarūsī, _Al-Nūr al-Sāfir fi A’yān al-Qarn al-‘Āshir,_ p. 85.
apostates. All what the verse says is its negation of the knowledge of the future, but if this is done by Allāh informing someone of it, then the case is not so. It is quite possible that Allāh informs His Prophet (صلى الله عليه وسلم) of what will be.\footnote{Ibn Abul-Hadid, \textit{Sharh Nahjul-Balāgha}, Vol. 1, p. 427 (first Egyptian edition), p. 427.}

**THE VERSE OF PERDITION**

From what we have already established, it has become clear to us that the Imāms (ع) were never ignorant of the martyrdom of each one of them: who would commit it, how and when. They were informed of it by Allāh Who bestowed upon them of the types of knowledge whereby they comprehended the events, in addition to the heavenly tablet which descended upon their grandfather, the Supreme Saviour (صلى الله عليه وسلم), and which they read.

Their welcoming martyrdom in a way that assisted the demise of their holy selves, or hurled them into perdition, is something which the Holy Qur‘ān prohibits. Safeguarding one’s life and taking precautions against falling into perdition is obligatory so long as it is destined, or when it does not serve a higher purpose. But in the presence of a purpose which is served by one exposing his life to peril, as is the case with performing \textit{jihād} or in self-defense, death will claim the lives of a number of \textit{Mujāhids}. Allāh ordered His prophets and messengers who approached it determined to be martyred, and many of them were quite happy to do so. A number of prophets were killed in the line of their duty; they never flinched nor relented till their holy souls departed from their bodies. A group from among the Israelites sought to worship their Lord by putting an end to their lives; He, the Great and the Almighty, said, “So repent to your Creator and kill your own selves.”\footnote{Scholars of exegesis have stated that the Israelites who worshipped the calf then repented having forsaken Allāh’s worship were told by Moses (ع), who had been informed by his Lord that He did not cease to accept their repentance, to bathe, wear their shrouds then stand in two rows to be attacked by Aaron and a number of men with him, who had not worshipped the calf, to kill them. When each man looked and saw his son, brother, father, or relative in front of him [slated to be killed by him], he did not have the guts to do it. They, therefore, spoke with Moses (ع) in this regard, and Moses (ع) asked his Lord, Glory to Him, what he should do. The most Exalted Creator told him that He would send upon them darkness wherein one would not be able to see the person sitting next to him. Those who had worshipped the calf were ordered to sit at home with their heads down between their knees without trying to defend themselves either by hand or by leg, and not to raise their heads nor to change their position. The sign of God being pleased with them would be that the darkness would be unveiled and the swords would work on them. It would only be then that God would forgive those who would be killed from among them and accept the repentance of those who would survive. Aaron and his men did so, killing as many as seventy thousand of them.}

To read this verse as is [rather than in its context] will only take it out of our discussion of the topic of revelation: to warn against an imminent danger. It succeeded a verse dealing with transgression during the months regarded by the Muslims as sacred. Allāh Almighty says, “The sacred month for the sacred month and all sacred things are (under the law of) retaliation; whoever then acts aggressively against you, inflict injury on him according to the injury that he has inflicted on you, and be careful (of your duty) to Allāh and keep in mind that Allāh is with those who guard (themselves against evil)” (Qur‘ān, 2:194).

The prohibition of putting someone’s life in jeopardy becomes [in such a context] dependent on the polytheists attacking the Muslims during the sacred months, and when the Muslims did not have enough force to fight them back. Taking the stand of a general prohibition of any life-threatening situation becomes a rationalizing cause which cannot be subjected to a particular situation but a specific injunction relevant to the case of the lack of a cause stronger than that of simply facing a danger. When the necessary cause is present, no injunction interferes to prohibit it, such as in the case of defending Islam.

The most Praised and Exalted One praises the believers who march to their death and struggle to promote the divine cause saying, “Allāh has bartered with the believers: their lives and wealth for Paradise;
they fight in the cause of Allah, so they kill and get killed.” He also says, “Do not reckon those who are killed in the cause of Allah as dead. Nay! They are alive with their Lord receiving their sustenance.” He also says, “Among the people is one who sells his life seeking the Pleasure of Allah.”

Thus did the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) declare to the members of his nation when he provided them with his valuable instructions saying, “The best of martyrs is Hamzah ibn Abu Talib and a man who spoke a word of truth to an oppressive ruler because of which he [the ruler] killed him.”

Muhammed ibn al-Hasan al-Shaubani is not far off from following such instructions when he sees no harm in a man assaulting a thousand of his foes and who either comes out safely or is killed in the process. Then he says, “There is no harm in one losing his life, or is hurt, if his assault at a thousand foes strikes fear in the latter or causes them to be in disarray.” His reasoning is that such an assault is better than any harm inflicted because it serves the interest of the Muslims.

Ibn al-ʿArabi, the Malikite scholar, says, “Some scholars permit a man assault a huge army seeking martyrdom, and such an action is not regarded by them as jeopardizing one's life and exposing it to perdition because Allah, the most Exalted One, says, ‘And among men is he who barters his life for the pleasure of Allah, and Allah is Affectionate to the servants’ (Qurʾan, 2:207), especially if the motive behind the assault enhances the morale of the Muslims upon seeing one of them facing thousands.”

Allah, Glory to Him, has specifically allotted certain injunctions to those who are the custodians of his legislation and His vicegerents over the nation. Most of such injunctions cannot be realized by people's aspirations, nor can they be comprehended by their reason. Among them is enjoining them to sacrifice themselves for the sake of achieving His Pleasure, Glorified and Exalted is He, and to spend all wealth, influence, and possessions in the process. So you find them once in the depth of dungeons, or exiled, or deported, all the time suffering from apprehension and hardship, remaining against their wish silent as they are being verbally abused. This continued till they met their death. What savoured all of this for them was their being informed beforehand by their greatest grandfather (ﷺ), who was told by divine inspiration, of the merits and the interests whereby the Islamic nation is served. Had they not been thus determined to offer such sacrifices, the creed would have been terribly distorted and misguidance would have crept therein. They found themselves submitting to that with which Allah had acquainted them of His secrets. He acquainted them with the great significance with Him, the most Exalted and Praised One that He is, despite the various degrees of sacrifice they had to offer.

The Almighty ordered some of them to withhold and not to fight or to be involved in jihād while ordering others to accept to be killed and yet others to accept to be poisoned. The mystery in such variation of obligation was due to what He, Glory to Him, saw of the interests according to their relevant time.

Their bracing their death and taking poison was never due to their ignorance of what an oppressive ruler was doing to them. Rather, they were quite sure about it. They knew of their killer and his method of killing, and even of the day and time, seeking submission to the Command of their Lord, the most Exalted One, and surrendering to the divine judgment in their regard. They are, in so doing, only carrying out all the orders they had received from the Master, Praise to Him, be they obligations or recommendations. Reason determines that a slave must obey his master and not do anything forbidden without inquiring about the interest, or the lack thereof, that necessitated it. But if the Master is wise in everything He does, according to the verse saying, “He is not asked about what He does while they are,” obedience to Him ought to be

---

2 Ibid., Vol. 1, p. 309.
unconditional, without questioning the reasons behind His orders.

It is this suggested view that the critics from among renown scholars have endorsed. If researchers keep themselves busy investigating the reasons why Ahl al-Bayt (e) did what put an end to their sacred lives, they will keep going right and left without actually coming out with what satisfies anyone simply because such researchers produced nothing but assumptions which do not agree with the basics or with what is most exemplary.

Traditions regarding Ahl al-Bayt (e) indicate that when they knew that their enemies were determined to put an end to them, or when the pain of their chains intensified, and it became obvious to them that their fate was delayed, they resorted to all possible means, including supplications which could not be rejected, or complaining to their grandfather the Prophet (n), requesting him to keep harm and calamities away from them. Imām Abu Ja'fer, al-Baqir (e), says, “If something distresses us and we were apprehensive of the authorities' mischief, we, Ahl al-Bayt, would say, 'O King of everything! Bless Muhammed and his Household and do unto me such-and-such.'”

When al-Mansūr became angry with Imām Abu ʿAbdullāh, al-Sadīq (e), setting his mind to kill him, the Imām (e) supplicated to his Lord, the most Exalted One, pleading to Him to ease his hardship. By the grace of his supplication, the dark ominous clouds of an ill fate dissipated. As soon as al-Mansūr looked at al-Sadīq (e), he gladly stood up, demonstrating his pleasure at seeing him, hugged and kissed him. After that incident, al-Mansūr narrated the reason why he changed his mind. He said that the Messenger of Allāh (n) appeared to him in a vision standing before him stretching his open hands, uncovering his arms, looking very angry as he shielded the Imām (e) from him; he said to al-Mansūr, “If you harm the father of ʿAbdullāh (e), I will certainly annihilate you.” Al-Mansūr had no choice except to forgive, respect and honour the sanctity of the Imāmate. Then he dispatched the Imām (e) back to [his and] his grandfather's home town [Medīna] surrounded with royal grandeur:²

When the confinement of Imām Mūsa son of Imām Ja'fer al-Sadīq, peace be upon both of them, became quite prolonged, and the Imām was fed-up with the mistreatment meted to him, he pleaded to Allāh Almighty to put an end to his suffering saying, “O One Who releases the trees from the sand and the water, Who releases milk from between blood and secretion, Who releases the fetus from the womb and the embryo, Who releases fire from between iron and stone, Who releases the soul from between the bowels and the intestines, do release me from Hārūn's grip.”³ By the grace of this supplication, he was, indeed, released from the darkness of the dungeon and from the pain of the chains.

When Hārūn al-Rashīd offered him poisoned dates to eat, the Imām (e) selected those which were not poisoned and ate them then gave the poisoned ones to al-Rashīd's dog which died.⁴ He had no intention to cause the dog's death except to let the tyrant al-Rashīd know that he was fully aware of his intention to kill him at a time when his demise was not yet opportune. But when it was time for the Imām (e) to die, and Allāh called upon him to return to Him, he ate the poisoned dates which al-Rashīd had given him knowing that they were, indeed, poisoned. Having eaten them, he raised his hands and supplicated saying, “Lord! You know that had I eaten such dates before today, I would have put an end to my life!” So he ate of them and his fate had its way.⁵

---

¹ Sayyid Rādi ad-Dīn ibn Tāwūs, Muhaj al-Da‘awāt, p. 365 (Bombay edition).
² Ibid., p. 299.
³ al-Sadīq, Āmāli, p. 327, majlis 60. Hārūn is “al-Rashīd,” the `Abbāside ruler.
⁴ al-Sadīq, ʿUyūn Akhbār al-Rida, p. 57.
Upon such a basis, Imām Abul-Hasan, Ali al-Hādi (‡), ordered Abu Ḥāshim al-Ja’fēri to send a man to a most sacred spot of al-Ḥā’ir to supplicate to Allāh to heal him, saying that Allāh Almighty loved to be invoked there.¹ His objective was to point out that nothing happens in the system of the universe except what naturally flows, and except natural laws. Or he may have intended to attract our attention to the benefits of supplicating to Allāh when calamities overtake one of His servants and when catastrophes surround him. What supports this view is that al-Rabā‘i’, slave of al-Mansūr al-Dawānqi, learned by heart the supplication composed by Imām al-Sādiq (‡) when he met with al-Mansūr who had angrily decided to annihilate him. Al-Rabā‘i’ saw with his own eyes how al-Mansūr met the Imām (‡) with utmost respect instead of carrying out his evil intention against him.²

It is upon the same basis that the chosen one, Imām al-Hasan son of the Commander of the Faithful (‡), used to sometimes seek healing from his grandfather's soil, and sometimes he would follow the instructions of his physician, and yet some other times he would follow the advice of those who had undergone a similar experience³ despite his knowledge that his sickness was not fatal and that he knew when such fate would come to pass. But he wanted to let people know that combatting ailments is done through ordinary indispensable means so that such means may be implemented. But when it was time for him to depart, he did not do any of that out of his submission to destiny. This happened when Ja`da daughter of al-Ash`ath offered him poisoned sour milk. It was very hot, and al-Hasan (‡) was fasting.⁴ He raised his hands to the sky and supplicated saying, “We belong to Allāh, and to Him is our return. Praise to Allāh for the meeting with Muḥammed, the Master of all Messengers, with my father the master of all wāsas, with my mother the Head of all women of the world, with my uncle Ja`fer who flies in Paradise, with al-Hamzah, the Master of Martyrs.”⁵ Having said so, he drank the sour milk then said to her, “He [Mu`awiyah, his assassin] fooled you and made fun of you. Allāh will expose both you and him to shame.”⁶ As the Imām spoke those words, the woman shook like a palm leaf braving a storm.

Imām al-Rida (‡) had informed his companions that he would be assassinated by al-Ma`mān, and that they had to be patient till then.⁷ Imām Abu Ja`fer, al-Jawād (‡), said to Ismā`il ibn Mahrān, when he saw that the latter was upset upon al-Ma`mān ordering the Imām (‡) to meet with him, “He [al-Ma`mān] was never my friend, but I will return from this trip.” But when he ordered him to meet with him again, the Imām (‡), said to Ismā`il ibn Mahrān, “In this meeting will I have to face my death,” ordering him to take orders from his successor Imām al-Hādi (‡), his son, who became the nation's Imām following the assassination of his father.⁸ So when Umm al-Fadl [daughter of al-Ma`mān, who also was the Imām’s wife] gave him a poisoned handkerchief, he did not hesitate to use it, thus submitting to destiny and obeying the order of his Master, all Praise is due to Him. Yes, he only said the following words to her then: “Allāh has afflicted you with infertility without a cure and with an affliction which you will never be able to hide.” She was instantly afflicted with an ailment in the most delicate of her five senses.

---

¹Ibn Qawlawayh, Kāmil al-Ziyārāt, p. 223.

²Muhaj al-Da`awāt.


⁴al-Rawandi Al-Kharāʾijī, p. 22 (Indian edition), in a chapter dealing with his miracles.


⁶al-Mufīd, Al-Irshād, and it is also recorded in Al-Kharāʾijī.

⁷al-Muqarram [author of this book], Imām al-Rida, p. 45.

The Commander of the Faithful (إث) had already provided the name of “Ibn Muljim” as that of his assassin; this is a fact regarding which no two persons dispute with one another. When Ibn Muljim came to swear the oath of allegiance to the Commander of the Faithful (إث) then went away, the Imam (إث) said, “Anyone who wishes to see the face of my killer should look at this one.” “Why do you not kill him?,” the Commander of the Faithful (إث), then the caliph, was asked. “How strange,” he (إث) answered, “that you should suggest I must kill the one who shall kill me!” He meant that that man killing him was an already determined destiny and an unavoidable fate, and that his being killed by Ibn Muljim was an irreversible divine decision; so, how could he contradict the divine will and undo what is destined to happen? It is to this meaning that Imam al-Sadiq (إث)، refers when he once said to Uqbah al-Asadi: “Had the Imams (peace be upon them) persisted in their supplication to Allah to annihilate all the tyrants in the world, He would have responded favourably to their pleas, and it would have been easier for Him than a string of beads which someone cuts through, but we do not want anything except what Allah wants.”

SUMMARY

Through these straightforward proofs, the veil wrapping the truth is uncovered; therefore, facts appear most gloriously and place themselves before the brilliant researcher surrounded with a halo of truth and conviction. He, therefore, becomes convinced that the Imams of guidance were familiar with how fate fared and what imminent destiny was, the one which could not be avoided and whereby it afflicted them with catastrophes. This is so due to the fact that the Great Master, Glory to Him, welcomed their pleas and acquainted them with secrets and mysteries, be they good or bad. Such abundant knowledge never parted from them but was granted to them first from the One Who initiated existence in the first place, Great are His signs, and second from the Messenger of Allah (ع) who also acquainted them with it, and third due to their being informed by the revealed divine tablet sent down upon their grandfather (ع). Allah Almighty surely granted them a lofty status and an immortal honour which they could not have achieved except through martyrdom and the annihilation of their sacred souls. It is for this reason that they sacrificed their precious lives in submission to the Commands of Allah Almighty and to serve the realistic interests which no humans could realize and whose particulars are not known except to the One Who knows the unknown. We do not have to know the advantages or disadvantages in all the legislative obligations; rather, reason obligates us to obey the Great Master, Exalted is His Status, whenever He bids or forbids.

I am amazed at those who listen to the authentic traditions and willingly submit to the fact that the Imams from among the Progeny of Muhammed (ع) knew what was and what will be, and with them was the knowledge of fate and the calamities, yet they are unfamiliar with the light of many traditions which clearly state that whatever those Imams said or did not say, stood or sat, was due to an order which they had received from Allah, Praise to Him, conveyed through His trustworthy Messenger of divine revelation, and that nothing small or big hid from their knowledge, nor were they ignorant of anything of it, not even the moment of their death. What testifies to this fact is the following statement by Imam Abu Ja’fer al-Baqir (إث):

I am amazed at people who accept us as their masters, making us their Imams, and describing obeying us as mandatory as obeying the Messenger of Allah (ع), yet they violate their argument and indict themselves with a weakness in their conviction. So they belittle our rights and fault those whom Allah had given the proof of the uprightness of recognizing us and submitting to our commands. I wonder why they should not adopt a contrary stand. Have

---

1 al-Ṣaffār, Baṣā’ir al-Darajāt, p. 34, and also Risālat Ibn Badrūn, p. 156, where a poem by Ibn ʿAbdūn is explained.

2 al-ṢSādūq, Usūl al-Kāfī, in a chapter under the heading “The Imams know when they are to die,” and also in Al-Kharāʾīj (of al-Rāwandi), p. 143 (Indian edition).
you seen how Allāh, the most Exalted One, mandated His servants to obey His friends without acquainting the latter with what happens in the heavens, depriving them of having access to the knowledge of what they should endure, of what helps their creed stand on firm grounds?

Hamrān said to him, “O son of the Messenger of Allāh! What is your view of the consequences of the stands taken by the Commander of the Faithful (ص), how al-Hasan and al-Husain (ص) revolted and how much they had to suffer at the hands of the tyrants who subdued them, killed and vanquished them?” Abu Ja`fer (ص) said to him, “O Hamrān! Allāh, Praised and Exalted is He, willed that all of that should happen to them. He decreed and predestined it out of His own will, then He let it happen. Due to being already informed by the Messenger of Allāh (ص), Ali, al-Hasan, and al-Husain (ص) took their stands. Due to the same knowledge, some of us remained silent. Had they wished Allāh Almighty, earnestly pleading to Him to remove the authority of the tyrants, it would have been faster than a string of beads which someone cuts through. What afflicted them was not due to any sin which they had committed, nor to any transgression whereby they disobeyed Allāh; rather, it was for the achievement of a certain status and favour with Allāh which He wanted them to achieve; so, do not permit yourself to be misled, O Hamrān!”

It is through the rays of this sacred tradition that we clarify obscure mysteries and divine wisdom which Allāh bestowed upon certain custodians of His wahi, thus granting them distinctions over all other human beings. Among such distinctions are the following:

a. Their knowledge of everything, and the fact that the knowledge from the heavens never ceased reaching them, the knowledge that contained all subjects barring none.

b. The perils to which they were exposed, and the oppression to which the leaders of oppression exposed them, were due to reasons not known except by the Omnipotent Almighty.

c. Their waging wars, their struggle, and their martyrdom while defending the divine Message, as well as their silence towards what the leaders of misguidance commit, their witnessing how the nation goes to extremes in its oppression, and their doing that which cause putting an end to their sacred lives in obedience to the commands of their Lord relevant to them..., all demonstrate their willingness to submit to His will without any hesitation at all; they willingly do so, just as willingly as others carry out their obligations.

d. Succumbing to destiny and sure death and reluctance to plead to the Exalted Creator to remove their causes was done so that they might win martyrdom which is the most honourable form of death in order to reach a lofty status and a high station which cannot be achieved except through this type of death.

It is through providing the same explanation that Abul-Hasan, Imām al-Rida (ص), answered those who asked him about the reason why the Commander of the Faithful (ص) exposed himself to being killed while knowing the exact hour of his death and the name of his killer. He (ص), said, “All of that did, indeed, take place, but he chose that night to let fate have its way.”

This and similar statements lead us to conclude that the reason why members of Ahl al-Bayt (ص) walked to their death willingly is that they did so in obedience to their Lord in order to carry out the


2al-Sadūq, Uṣūl al-Kāfî, commenting on Vol. 1, p. 188, of Mir‘āt al-‘Uğûl.
obligations relevant specifically to them; so, there is no shortcoming in their knowledge, nor can what caused their death be seen as bringing perdition to themselves or be rejected by reason. It is also the view upheld by the most renown Shi’a scholars.

Shaikh al-Mufid, for example, is quoted in al-Ku’bari’s Masa’il saying, “We have no problem accepting the fact that an Imam may be informed in detail of what takes place and of distinguishing one thing from another, and such knowledge is conveyed by Allâh Almighty. Likewise, we do not have any problem seeing how the Commander of the Faithful persevered till reaching martyrdom and surrendering to be killed, thus reaching a degree so high that nobody can reach in any other way. He, in so doing, demonstrates his obedience to his Lord in a way none else could have. Nor can the Commander of the Faithful be described as having brought perdition upon himself or assisted others to his own detriment in a way which reason does not condone. Nor should such an action be understood by those who objected to his doing so. We also do not have any objection to al-Husain (ξ) being fully aware of the place where water could be found, and that it was as close to him as the distance of one yard; so, had he dug, he would have found water. His reluctance to dig cannot be interpreted as assisting fate against his own life by abandoning seeking water where it is inaccessible to him. Reason does not see that as being far-fetched, nor as being ugly. So is the case with al-Hasan (ξ) being fully informed of the outcome of seeking reconciliation with Mu’āwiya: He had already known about it, and it was quite obvious. But he, by doing so, postponed his being murdered, putting off the time when his followers would surrender to Mu’āwiya. That was a good reason for his survival till it was time for him to go, and it was good for the survival of many of his Shi’a as and family members. An avoidance of a greater harm to the creed from it could have actually otherwise taken place. He (ξ), was fully aware of what he did; Allâh Almighty had ordered him to seek obedience to Him in so doing.”

The great scholar, al-Hilli, was asked once about the reason why the Commander of the Faithful (ξ) exposed himself to being murdered. He said that it was quite possible that he had been informed of his being killed in a particular night and place, and he was required to do what we are not; so, it was quite possible that his acceptance of death for the sake of Allâh was mandatory, just as mandatory as a person waging jihâd, even when such a mujâhid knew that it would in the end cause him to be killed.”

The great mentor, Shaikh Yousuf al-Bahrâni, says, “Their acceptance of tragedy, their being killed by the sword or by poison, and their acceptance of the affliction to which they are exposed at the hands of their oppressive foes, despite their knowledge of it and ability to avoid it, is due to their knowledge that it would cause the most Praised and Exalted One to be pleased with them, and that it was chosen for them by Him and was mandated upon them so that they would be closer to His holy Self; so, it is not of the type that causes one to harm himself with his own hands and which is prohibited by the verses of the Holy Qur’ân. That was something prohibited by the One Who brought the Sharî’a, a clear prohibition. This, contrariwise, is done with the knowledge of His being pleased with it and His having decreed it. It is the opposite of the first. But they may endure something before their predestined end, so it does not put an end to their lives, nor does it supercede their fate. Such is a danger against which they may not openly take precautions, or they may do so privately, or they may plead to Allâh to remove it from them since they knew that it was not intended by Allâh, the Praised One, to finish them, nor was it to bring about their fate. In short, they, peace be upon them, coped with fate and destiny according to the extent of their knowledge of both and of what the Vanquisher had chosen for them to do.” Such is the view also of al-Majlisi, the great scholar, al-Karki, the critic, and al-Hasan ibn Sulaymân al-Hilli, one of the students of the First Martyr, as well as of many others.

1He is quoted by al-Majlisi on p. 189, Vol. 1, of Mir‘ât al-‘Uqûl and also on p. 663, Vol. 9, of Bihâr al-Anwâr.

2Al-Durra al-Najafiyya, p. 85.
AL-HUSAIN'S PRIOR KNOWLEDGE OF HIS MARTYRDOM

What we have stated clarifies that reason; the *Sharī‘a* condones one's walking to his death when doing so serves a common interest greater than that of his own life, such as the continuity of the creed or of the *Sharī‘a*, or to bring to life a certain fact, an objective which cannot be realized in any other way, such as the case with regard to al-Husain (ِ) taking such an amazing stand, thus reciting to the multitude a white tablet which generations and epochs have been reciting ever since.

Through his holy uprising, Imām Husain (ِ) acquainted present and future nations with what the Umayyads did and with who discarded and violated the sacred laws of the *Sharī‘a*. Nations have learned lessons from the courage demonstrated by the most oppressed one (ِ), that they should welcome death with open arms, that they should sacrifice their all in order to support the call propagated by Muhammed (ص) and learn from it lofty lessons. They learned how to persist in defending their principles, and to sacrifice everything precious in order to liberate themselves from the claws of oppression.

Muhammed ibn al-Hasan al-Shaybani rejects the notion that it is despondency that causes one to attack a thousand men knowing that he has no chance of survival or of defeating the enemy by so doing, saying that such an action is not suicide because there is a benefit in it for the Muslims: it strengthens their determination and provides them with a shot in the arm that rejuvenates their energy and determination to defend their principles and to die in dignity.¹

Abu Abdullāh, al-Husain (ِ), by the same token, surpasses everyone else in doing so when he defied the large multitude that had sunk in falsehood. He, it is true, caused the death of his holy self as well as that of pure ones from among his family and followers. He exposed the offspring of the Messenger of Allāh (ص) to plundering and captivity, yet he inscribed upon the face of time with words of *noor* the truth about his uprising and the falsehood of all the allegations propagated by his foe that had deviated from the canons of truth and became immersed in oppression. He is, therefore, the true victor, and whoever challenged him drowned in the sea of misguidance and was one who violated the Islamic laws drawn by the one who conveyed the Divine Message (ص).

I truly wonder about one who says that al-Husain (ِ) was counting on the support of the people of Kāfa. Such an individual has surely missed the mark. Even if we surrender and say that al-Husain (ِ) did not have a general knowledge of what was, what is, and what will be, how could he have not been informed by his grandfather (ص) and his *wasi*, his own father, of the events that would happen to him, and that he would be killed in the land of Kerbala after being denied access to water, accompanied by his kinsfolk and followers and would all face a sure death? Is he not the one who informed Umm Salamah of his own martyrdom when she expressed to him apprehension of his trip? The reason for it is that the truthful and the trustworthy one, who never said anything out of his own inclination (ص), had already informed him of his being killed in the land of Kerbala after being prohibited from drinking water.

Among what al-Husain (ِ) had said to her was: “I know the day on which I will be killed and the time when I will be killed. And I know who among my Ahl al-Bayt (ِ) and followers will be killed. Do you think that you know what I do not? Do you think that I can escape death? If I do not die today, I will tomorrow.”

He said to his brother, `Omer al-Atraf, “My father had informed me that my resting place will neighbour that of his own. Do you think that you know what I do not?” To his brother Muhammed ibn al-Hanafiyya he said, “Allāh has decreed to see me murdered and the women taken captive.”

To Ibn al-Zubayr he said, “Had I hidden in a hole in these ravines, they would have hunted me out and killed me.” To `Abdullah ibn Ja’fer he said, “I saw the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) in a vision ordering me to do something which I am going to do.” When they were at a mountain pass, he said to his companions, “I see myself being killed, for I saw in a vision dogs mauling me, and the most wild among them was spotted.” When `Amr ibn Lawthān suggested to him to stay away from Kāfa becoming fully informed of its people's intentions, he (cesso) said, “I am not ignorant of their views, but the will of Allah is never over-ruled. As soon as they invite me, they will take out the blood clot in me.”

He made many such explicit and implicit statements in Medina, in Mecca, and on the way to Kāfa, statements which you will read in this book in their entirety. They all testify that he (cesso), was fully aware of his being killed on the day with which he was familiar and in the land of Kerbala’. So, can anyone doubt this fact if he reads his sermon in Mecca when he wanted to travel from there to Iraq? In that sermon, he said, “I can see my limbs being cut to pieces by wild beasts in an area between al-Nawawees and Kerbala’, so there is no way to avert an event already decreed.”

All these answers to those who asked al-Husain (cesso) to wait or to go somewhere else prove that the Master of Martyrs was knowledgeable of what was going to happen to him, and that he knew the intentions of the people of Kāfa. But it is a divine mystery which concerned only him, and so that his cries for help and support on the Day of Taff, before and after the war, would be an argument against that unlucky multitude of people.

Yet he did not inform each and every person who objected to his march to Kāfa of all what he knew due to his knowledge that the facts were not to be revealed just to anyone. People vary in their capacity to absorb, and their goals vary, too. It is for this reason that the Imam (cesso) responded to each person according to his level of absorption, to his conditions, and to what his knowledge and mentality could bear. The knowledge of Ahl al-Bayt (cesso) is laborious and inaccessible; it cannot be tolerated except by a messenger prophet, an angel near to Allah, or a believer whose heart Allah tested with conviction.

**AL-HUSAIN: A CONQUEROR**

A l-Husain (cesso) was convinced that he was a divinely supported conqueror due to the life his martyrdom would provide for the religion of the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) and to the death of the innovations introduced therein. His martyrdom exposed the ugliness of the deeds committed by his foes. It made the nation realize that Ahl al-Bayt (cesso), more than anyone else, deserved to be the caliphs. It is to this principle that his letter to Banū Hashim refers. In it, he said, “Whoever among you decides to join us will be martyred, and whoever lags behind will miss victory.” The victory he referred to in this letter was the outcome of his uprising and sacrifices: these would undermine the foundations of misguidance and remove the thorns of falsehood from the path of the purified Sharī’a and the establishment of justice and Tawḥīd, and that the nation was obligated to resist abominations.

This is the same meaning we can derive from reviewing a statement made by Imam Zayn al-‘Ābidīn (cesso) to Ibrāhīm ibn Talhah ibn ‘Ubaydullāh who had asked the Imam (cesso) upon his return to Medina, “Who won?” Said the Imam (cesso), “When it is time for the prayers, call the athān and the iqāma, and it is then that you will know who the winner is.”

Here, he is referring to achieving the objective for which the Master of Martyrs had sacrificed his

---

1. A well-known area where there was a Christian cemetery.
sacred life and the failure of Yazid in his attempts to put out the noor of Allah Almighty and the efforts of the Messenger of Allah (صـ) which his father [Mu`awiyah] had aimed to foil by killing the shahada after it had become mandatory on the nation during the five known times [of prayers], a testimony for the Prophet of Islam. The Islamic faith undermined the foundations of shirk and put an end to idol worship. It likewise became mandatory on the nation to bless the Prophet (صـ) and his pure Ahl al-Bayt (كن) whenever the believers make the tashahhud. Any blessing short of blessing his progeny is curtailed.\footnote{Ibn Hajar al-`Asqalani, \textit{Al-Sawqi al-Muhriq}, p. 87. Al-Sha`rani, \textit{Kashf al-Ghumma}, Vol. 1, p. 194. Refer also to p. 371 of the book titled \textit{Zayn al-`Abidin} by the author of this book [al-Muqarram].}

Zainab, the wise lady, daughter of the Commander of the Faithful (كن), too, pointed out to this victory when she said to Yazid, “Plot your plots, exert your effort, and perfect your schemes, for by Allah you shall never be able to wipe our name out, nor will you ever kill our wahi, nor will you ever attain our status, nor will you ever be able to wash away the shame and infamy of what you have committed.”

Anyone who contemplates upon the Taff event will clearly realize that the sacrifices offered in it are greater than those offered during the Battle of Badr even though the latter was the first military victory achieved in Islam. The reason is that the Muslims had then braved death under the protection of the flag of the Prophet (صـ) and were supported by angels numbering three thousand strong, while the Prophet (صـ) kept filling their ears with his calls for victory, urging them to assault their enemy. The Muslims, hence, faced the tyrants from Quraish feeling confident of subduing them.

As regarding the Taff event, the suffering undergone during it was much more painful, and the agony was greater. The tides of death clamoured, the war uncovered its fangs, and Banu Umayyah surrounded the grandson of the Prophet (صـ) [and his tiny band] from all sides.

Yet the band that sided with the truth did not lose heart, meeting those dangers without counting on any support or expecting any help. All essential supplies were cut off from them. Even water, the most plentiful of anything, and which was free for all, was denied them. Women and children were terrified on account of the imminent peril. Children's cries due to thirst filled everyone's ears. Yet they faced mountains of steel with open arms and relentless determination. All what those pure souls were concerned about was fighting Banu Umayyah. They spilled their pure blood only in defense of their honour, something which was abandoned by others. The government of the descendants of Harb became like a dog licking its nose, so the surface of the earth was in the end cleansed of their shame.

One poet belonging to Ahl al-Bayt (كن) did well when he said:

\begin{verbatim}
Oppression spurred it to action,
So it came mounting its tyranny;
Throngs that filled the earth,
Overwhelming every ravine and highway.
He trampled upon the beasts when
He found no route to escape.
The birds did not leave their nests.
\end{verbatim}
So ask those among them who did survive:
If they met us though we brought only seventy.\(^1\)

The Taff battle, then, is an Islamic victory over the jāhiliyya which was revived through the actions of the Umayyads and their fellows who did not seek the shining light of Tawhīd and Prophethood.

Al-Husain (ṣ) did not aim by his march to attain authority, power, or recognition. Had this been his goal, he would have sought the means that would lead him to it, and he was the most knowledgeable man of such means. He would not have informed those who were with him from among the natives of Mecca and Medina that he and those with him would be killed, and that his family would surrender to captivity. His army, as a result, abandoned him, and his might diminished. Yet his holy soul, as is the case with all free men, insisted on telling the truth rather than misleading anyone. He even tested them by granting them permission to leave him. Those whose concern was accumulation did, in fact, leave him, while the select few insisted on helping and supporting him. Neither cowardice subdued them nor discouragement surfaced among them, for such is the doing of one who has lost hope from attaining his objective. Those folks were convinced that they would win what they hoped to win as testified by their statements whereby they responded to al-Husain (ṣ) telling them on the eve of Ḥijrah that the situation had reached a critical point, and he even excused them from their oath of allegiance to him and released them. They said, “Praise is due to Allāh Who honours us with being killed on your side! Had this world remained forever, and had we, too, been immortalized, we would still have preferred to rise with you rather than remain therein.”

He (ṣ), found them ready to sacrifice their lives waging jihād with him and defending the sanctity of the Sharī‘a. He recited a line from their white tablet when he said, “I find my companions to be the most loyal, and my Ahl al-Bayt (ṣ) to be the most kind and the best in staying together.”\(^2\) I am surprised at the narrators and historians who transmitted a great deal and who charged those pure souls with what the face of humanity resents and is rejected by a truthful conscience. Some of them said, “Those people were shaken and their complexion kept changing colour whenever fighting intensified with the exception of al-Husain (ṣ) whose face shone like a full moon.”\(^3\)

They said so after finding themselves unable to find fault with the honourable and dignified martyr. Finding no way to belittle him, they charged his companions and his Ahl al-Bayt (ṣ). This is only because of the hidden disease residing in the body of those who mixed poison with oil and passed it on to simpletons who regarded it as a fact. They, by so doing, distorted history, but any discreet critic can easily assess the nature and the schemes of such people.

More strange than such talk is Zajr ibn Qays al-Ju‘fi’s following statement to Yazīd: “We surrounded them as they sought refuge with thickets and holes just as pigeons seek to hide from an eagle.”\(^4\) May gravel fill your mouth! As if you never witnessed that terrifying situation when they demonstrated courage and determination to defend the creed, so much so that their stand on that day surpassed the Battle of Siffin wherein they fought on the side of the chosen one (ṣ) as well as in other bloody wars which caused the people of Kāfā to talk about nothing in their meetings except their courage.

Yes, those circumstances stunned you, so you do not know what you are saying, or time separated

---

\(^1\)Shu‘arā’ al-Ghari, Vol. 1, p. 387, attributed to Bāqir al-Hindi, may Allāh fill his grave with noor.


you from them, so you forgot what actually happened. But did you also forget the cries of the orphans, the wailing of the widows of Kafian families everywhere throughout Kafar on account of what those elite men had done with their swords to the enemies of Allāh and of His Messenger (ماي)⁴? Your excuse is that you came out unscathed, so you took to distorting their stand, for which they will forever be appreciated, seeking to please Yazid, the product of wines.

Their avowed enemy, Ḫār ibn al-Hājjaj, had described the truthfulness of their intentions, urging his men saying, “Do you know who you are fighting? You are fighting the land's knights, the people of vision, those who welcome death with open arms. None of you dares to come out to fight them except that they will kill him despite their very small number. By Allāh! If you throw stones at them, you will be able to kill all of them.”⁵¹

A man who had participated in the Taff Battle on the side of Ibn Sa’d was asked once, “Woe unto you! Did you really kill the Progeny of the Messenger of Allāh?!” He answered by saying, “May I be stoned to death! Had you seen what we saw, you would have done what we had done. We were assaulted by a group of men holding their swords and charging like fierce lions, crushing the cavalry right and left, throwing themselves in the jaws of death, accepting no security, desiring no wealth, nothing stopping them except either death or taking control of the government. Had we given them a chance, they would have annihilated our entire army; so, what do you expect us to do, may you lose your mother?”⁵²

Ka’b ibn Jābir, too, testified for them. Having killed Burayr, he was reprimanded by his wife who said to him, “Did you really assist in killing Fāṭima's son? Did you kill the master of Qarīs? You have done something monstrous. By Allāh! I shall never speak one word to you.” He then composed the following lines in his answer to her statement:

Never did my eyes see their likes, in their time,
Nor before, among the people, since my youth;
None strikes with the sword in the battle
Better than one defending honour, protecting it.
Steadfast were they when swords and lances worked,
Even as they were defenseless.
They sought duels, had they only had their way.

Which one of them, anyway, was upset to the extent that he shook in fear?! Was it Zuhayr ibn al-Qa‘qin who put his hand on Husain's shoulder and said the following lines seeking his permission to fight:

Come forth, may you be guided!
For you are the guide who is rightly guided:
Today shall I meet your grandfather the Prophet...?³

Or was it Ibn `Awṣajah who advised Ḥabīb ibn Muzāhir to support al-Husain (ي) even as he was drawing his last breath, as if he was not satisfied with sacrificing his life and with all the trials and tribulations he underwent?

Or was it Abu Thumāma al-Sa‘iddi who, seeking to please his Lord, the most Exalted One, was not concerned about calamities, pain, or anything except the prayers whose time was approaching?

Or was it Ibn Shibib al-Shākiri who laid down all his protective gear to entice someone to kill him so

⁴Ṭabāri, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 247.
that he would win the honour of martyrdom even as courageous heroes well known for their bravery take pains in covering their bodies with all protective coverings so that death may not reach them?

Or was it John who was excused [because of his age] by al-Husain (ئ) from having to fight, so he fell down to kiss the Imām's feet, tearfully begging and pleading to him saying, “My colour is black, my descent is lowly, my smell is bad, so breathe upon me with the breath of Paradise so that my colour will be whitened, and my descent will be honourable, and my smell will be good”?

If we think about the statement of Imām Abu Ja’far al-Bāqir (ئ) wherein he said, “The companions of my grandfather al-Husain (ئ) did not feel the pain of iron,” the steadfastness of those righteous men will become evident to us, and that they were not mindful of the pain and of the wounds which they received due to their attachment to their goal and to their eagerness to meet the Chosen One (ص).

Nobody finds this statement unusual except one who does not know how someone in love feels, and how, when such a lover's feelings are directed towards the person he loves, he does not feel any fatigue or exhaustion. Historians tell us that “Kathīr ‘Azza,” the poet, was once in his tent peeling arrows when ‘Azza entered. The moment he saw her, he was in such awe that he kept peeling his fingers and kept bleeding without feeling any pain.3

Narrators say that a young man from the Ansār came face to face with a woman, and he very much liked her. He watched her as she entered an alley as he chased her. He did not see a piece of glass etched in a wall, so his face was wounded but he did not feel the pain at all. When he could not see that woman any longer, he noticed that blood was running over his clothes and chest, so he went to the Messenger of Allāh (ص) and narrated to him what had happened to him. It was then that the following verse was revealed:4

Tell the believing men that they should cast down their looks and guard their private parts; that is purer for them; surely Allāh is Aware of what they do.

(Qurʾān, 24:30)

The Messenger of Allāh (ص) is quoted as saying that a martyr killed for the Divine Cause does not feel the pain of killing except as a pinch5.

Rushayd al-Hajari6 was called to Yazīd's court where the latter asked him about what he had been

---

3 Al-Mirzabānī, Al-Muwashshah, p. 144, where Kathīr, the poet, is discussed by Abu ‘Obaydah. Muhammad [ibn al-Hanafiyya] ibn Ali (ئ) [Imām Husain's brother from his father's side] said to Kathīr once, “You claim that you are one of our Shī‘as, yet you praise Marwān's offspring.” He said to him, “I make fun of them, turning them into snakes and scorpions, and I take their money!”
4 Al-Sadūq, Usūl al-Kāfī, commenting on Mir‘āt al-Uqāl, Vol. 3, p. 511, chapter 160 which deals with what is lawful to see of a woman, citing Imām al-Bāqir (ئ), who is also quoted on p. 731, Vol. 3, of Taṣfīr al-Burhān explaining this same verse.
6 According to ‘allāma al-Hilli's book Al-Khulāsā, his name is Rushayd, and according to Abu Dawūd, his Last name is pronounced “al-Hajari,” and so is the view of al-Sayyūtī which is stated on p. 277 of his book Lubh al-Albāb. The same is recorded by al-Samʿānī. He is from Hajar, in the distant regions of Yemen. A number of famous men carry this last name and are mentioned by al-Samʿānī. One of them is another Rushayd from Kūfah who narrates hadith from his father. On p. 305, Vol. 1, Part Two, of Buhārī's Tārīkh, he is said as having narrated hadith from his father from `Abdullāh. On p. 285, Vol. 3, of Ibn al-Atīr's book Al-Lubāb, it is stated that, “Rushayd al-Hajari is named after a well known region in Yemen. As regarding Hajār, a town near Medina, Ibn al-Qaysarānī discusses it on p. 223 of his book Al-Ansāb al-Muttaqiqa. It is also discussed in Tāj al-`Arūs. It is also mentioned in Lisān al-`Arab.

1Riǧāl al-Kashshi, p. 51.


3Riǧāl al-Kashshi, p. 51. On p. 113 of Bishārat al-Mustafa, and on p. 103 of al-Ṭibrisi’s Āmāli, majlis No. 6, first edition, she is referred to as “Amatullāh,” bondmaid of Allāh.

4al-Saffār, Basā‘ir al-Durarāt, Vol. 6, p. 73, in a chapter about the Imāms being acquainted with the conditions of their Shī‘as. He is quoted on p. 246, Vol. 11, of Bihār al-Anwār, where Imām Mūsa ibn Ja’fer (ṣ) is discussed.

Since those women\footnote{On p. 39 of \textit{Diwān al-Sahābah}, in a footnote on decorating markets, it is stated that the number of women who had cut off their hands reached forty, nine of whom did so due to their love and passion [for Prophet Yousuf (Joseph) (\textcircled{6})].} did not feel the pain of their wounds, it is not strange to find al-Husain's companions, who were the world’s cream of the crop, did not feel the pain of iron as a result of their love for the manifestations of divine beauty, and due to the eagerness of their souls to reach the ultimate end of sanctity after being electrified by their loyalty for the Master of Martyrs (\textcircled{6}).

---

My father do I sacrifice for countenances that
In Kerbalā’ shook hands with shields,
Countenances that light up with hope
Whenever the world frowns and drips of liberality.
They glow under the darkness of clamour
Like lanterns bright, stealing the sight.
They regarded their lives as cheap in defending
The son of the Prophet's daughter,
Lives that eagerly anticipate with Allah a union.
So they were spent while from
Their sides dignity forever emits fragrance.
No water did they taste except
From the heart's blood the wounds choked in pain
Of their blood they would have drunk
Only if it could their thirst quench.
Stripped were they, so they, instead of the fabric
Of the earth did they weave shrouds of wind.\footnote{\textit{Shu`arā’ al-Hilla}, Vol. 3, p. 214, excerpted from a poem eulogizing al-\text bringing the nation's attention to wake up from its slumber of ignorance. It was mandatory on people to obey
him because he was the rightful Imam obedience to whom was mandatory. The majority of the Muslims recognized and swore the oath of allegiance to the Commander of the Faithful, Imam Ali ibn Abu Tālib (r). They decided that fighting those who rebelled against him was the right thing to do as testified by their statements which are recorded in their books, statements which serve as testimonials to their call, a call supported by reason and documented facts.

[Imam] Abu Hanīfah, for example, says, “Whenever [Imam] Ali fought anyone, right was on his side. Had Ali (r) not fought them, nobody among the Muslims would have learned how to deal with them! There is no doubt, moreover, that Ali (r) fought Talḥah [ibn ʿAbdullāh] and al-Zubayr [ibn al-ʿAwām] after the latter had sworn the oath of allegiance then reneged therefrom. And during the Battle of the Camel, Ali (r) dealt with them with equity, the most learned man among the Muslims that he was, so it became a Sunnah to fight the people who promote oppression.”

His student, Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥasan al-Shaybānī (who died in 187 A.H./803 A.D.), followed in his footsteps. Said he, “Had not Ali (r) fought Muʿāwiyyah because of his oppression, we would not have been guided to fighting those who oppress.”

Ṣufyān al-Thawri has said, “Whenever Ali (r) fought anyone, he was on the right track versus the other.”

Imām al-Shāfiʿī has said, “Silence with regard to those who were killed during the Battle of Siffin is commendable, although Ali (r) was more right than anyone whom he fought.”

Abu Bakr, Ahmad ibn Ali al-Rāzī al-Jassas (who died in 370 A.H./981 A.D.), has said, “Ali was right in fighting the oppressive gang. Nobody maintains a contrary view. He was accompanied by many senior saḥābis, those who participated in the Battle of Badr, as well as by those who appreciated their status.”

Abu Bakr ibn al-ʿArabī, the judge, who died in 546 A.H./1152 A.D., has said, “Ali was the Imām because they all regarded him as such, and he could not have abandoned people because he was the most worthy among them of receiving the oath of allegiance. He accepted such an oath out of his concern lest some in the nation should be killed due to chaos and disorder and even the distortion of the creed and the demise of Islam as a religion.” The people of Syria asked him to seek revenge on those responsible for ʿUthmān's murder, so he (r) said to them, “First of all, you should swear the oath of allegiance as others have, then you can ask for justice; it is only then that you will achieve justice.” Ali (r) was the most wise among them in his view and speech. Had he pursued those killers, their tribes would have rallied behind them, thus igniting a third tribal war. So he waited till law and order were established and the general public had sworn the oath of allegiance to him. It is then that he directed his attention towards the court of justice to effect equity without discriminating between anyone in the nation and the other. There is no disagreement among the nation that a leader is justified in postponing effecting retribution if doing the opposite may cause dissension and disunity.

In the latter scenario, anyone who disobeyed Ali (r) would be regarded as an oppressor killing whom is mandatory, so that justice will be served and reconciliation is achieved. His waging a war against the Syrians who refused to swear the oath of allegiance to him, as well as his having fought those who reneged from such an oath in the Battles of the Camel and al-Nahrawān, was justified. It was the obligation of

---

4Adab al-Shāfiʿī wa Manqūbiḥ, p. 314.
everyone to rally behind him and carry out his orders then make any demands. But since they all did not do so, they became oppressors like the ones referred to in the verse saying, “...then kill the one that oppresses till it returns to [accepting] Allâh's Commandment” (Qur’ân, 49:9).

Mu’âwiyyah scolded Sa’d ibn Abu Waqqâs1 for not participating in fighting Ali (Restaurant). Sa’d responded to him by saying that he, in fact, had only regretted his reluctance to fight al-fî’â al-bâghîyâ (the oppressive gang), meaning Mu’âwiyyah and his followers.2

Abu Bakr, Muhammed al-Baqillâni, who died in 403 A.H./1013 A.D., said the following after enumerating some of Ali’s merits: “Ali (Restaurant) is qualified for the caliphate by only some of these merits and by less than these virtues, and he deserves to be the Imâm. He is right in his views and in whatever he took charge of. Obedience to him, therefore, is mandatory due to his having received the oath of allegiance from the most respected dignitaries among the Muhâjirun and the Ansâr on the third day following `Uthmân’s assassination. These insisted that only he was the most knowledgeable among the sahâbah, the most qualified, and the one most worthy of it. They pleaded to him in the Name of Allâh Almighty to safeguard the rest of the nation and to protect Dâr al-Hijra. They, therefore, swore the oath of allegiance to him before al-Zubayr and Talhah had arrived. Having seen everyone else swearing to him, and having found themselves obligated, al-Zubayr and Talhah, too, swore the oath of allegiance to him. Had they preferred not to do so, they would have fallen in sin. Their saying to him, “We swore the oath of allegiance to you against our wish,”3 however, does not harm the Imâm of Ali (Restaurant), simply because the inauguration had already been completed.

Their asking him to kill `Uthmân's murderers prior to swearing the oath of allegiance to him was a mistake because electing a man simply so that he would kill a group of men for killing one man is not right even if his ijtihâd determined that that should be the case: he may later, according to the same ijtihâd, decide to do the opposite. Even if it is proven that Ali (Restaurant) permitted the killing of a number of men for having killed only one single person, the execution of all those who participated in killing `Uthmân is not valid except after proving them guilty, and after the offspring of the murdered person present themselves at his court to

---

1While discussing the oath of allegiance to the Commander of the Faithful (Restaurant) on p. 74, Vol. 3, of his book book Al-Kâmîl, Ibn al-Athîr says, “Among those who did not swear it are: Sa’d ibn Abu Waqqâs, ‘Abdullâh ibn ’Omer, Hassân ibn Thâbit, Ka’b ibn Mâlik, Maslamah ibn Mukhlid, Abu Sa’d al-Khudri, Muhammed ibn Maslamah, al-Nu’mân ibn Bashîr, Zayd ibn Thâbit, Râfi’ ibn Hudayj, Fadâlâh ibn ’Ubayy, Ka’b ibn Ajrah, “Abdullâh ibn Salâm, Suhayb ibn Sinân, Salamah ibn Salamah ibn Waqsh, Usâmah ibn Zayd, Qudámâh ibn Mâz ‘ân, and al-Mughârîhâh ibn Shu’bâh.” These men are discussed by Abu Mansûr, ‘Abdul-Qâhir al-Baghdâdi, on p. 290 of his book Usûl ad-Dîn. They are also discussed on p. 233 of al-Baqillâni’s book Al-Tamhîd, by Ibn Taymiyyah on p. 226, Vol. 4, of his book Al-Fâtîwâ al-Misriyâ, by Abu Ja’fâr al-Tabari on p. 153, Vol. 3, of his renown history book Târîkî Akhâbâr al-Mulâk wal Ummâm (Târîkî, for short). The reluctance of Sa’d ibn Abu Waqqâs to swear it is discussed on pp. 79-83, Vol. 1, of al-Thabî’s book A’îm al-Nuballâ’, commenting that his excuse was not acceptable neither by Allâh nor by His Messenger; that excuse was, “I will not follow anyone unless he gives me a sword with a tongue that speaks and eyes that see in order to distinguish a believer from an apostate.” In his biography in Al-Isfâ‘î ‘ab, it is stated that Mu’âwiyyah wrote him a poem seeking to appease him and soliciting his support. In his answer, he responded with these verses:

Do you really covet what Ali is granted?!
Bid farewell to such hopes!
One day of his life is better than you living
Or dead, may you be sacrificed for the man.
As for `Uthmân, leave his discussion,
For such a view is worn out by affliction.


3al-Hâkim, Al-Mustadrâk, Vol. 3, p. 114. The author says that the first to swear it was Talhah, whereupon the Imâm (Restaurant) said, “This oath shall be violated.”
demand retribution for their father's murder, and if the killing does not lead to as much chaos and disorder as that which followed 'Uthmān's murder, or even more so. Postponing effecting retribution to its right time is better for the nation, and it avoids any worsening of the situation.\footnote{Al-Tamhādī, pp. 229-232.}

Abū `Abdullāh, Muḥammad ibn `Abdullāh, better known as al-Ḥākim al-Naṣīhāpūrī (d. 405 A.H./1015 A.D.), has said, “The narratives relevant to the Commander of the Faithful (ṣ) receiving the oath of allegiance are all authentic according to the general consensus, and it is in reference to them that Khuzaymāh ibn Thābit delivered these poetic lines as he stood before the pulpit:

\begin{quote}
If fealty to Ali we swear, 
Hasan's father suffices us
Against the dissensions we fear:
The best of people we found him to be,
The most knowledgeable among Quraish
Of the Book and the Sunnah is he.
None can surpass him among Quraish
When he does ride and charge,
And all good is in him indeed,
Quraish do not match his word and deed.
\end{quote}


\begin{quote}

Of the Messenger of Allāh he is the wasī
The one and only from among his family,
His knight for a long time in every way,
The first among all men to pray,
Besides the best of women [Khadijah]:
Allāh is the One Who bestows every bliss.
He is ready to sacrifice in every fight,
When even valiant warriors are in fright:
He is the one named for giving the beggar
His ring even as he stood for the prayer.
\end{quote}

\footnote{Al-Ḥākim, Al-Mustadrak, Vol. 2, p. 463.}

\footnote{Ma`rifat `Ulām al-Ḥadīth, p. 84.}
and Mu’awiyyah's followers in the Battle of Siffin.”

Abu Ishaq Ibrahim ibn Ali al-Shrazi al-Fayroozabadi (d. 476 A.H./1084 A.D.) has said, “If a group of Muslims dissent from the leading Imam, advocating his deposition according to its own way of thinking, or likewise stopped a due payment, thus becoming rebellious, the Imam ought to fight it in accordance with the verse saying, ‘...but if one of them transgresses over the other, then kill the one that oppresses till it returns to [accepting] Allah's Commandment’ (Quran, 49:9). Abu Bakr fought those who refused to pay the zakat, while Ali (ṣ) fought the people of Basra during the Battle of the Camel and fought Mu’awiyyah at Siffin and the Kharijites at al-Nahrawān.” The gist is that Ali (ṣ) was right in fighting those parties because he was the leader (the Imam) the oath of allegiance to whom was a must. Their rebellion against him, no matter for what reason, did not justify their actions.

Imam al-Haramain al-Juwaini (d. 478 A.H./1086 A.D.) says, “Ali ibn Abu Talib (a) was the rightful Imam when he took charge, whereas those who fought him were oppressors.”

Our master, Ali, fought the people of Harara at Nahrawan in the presence of the sahābah in fulfillment of the prediction of the Messenger of Allah (ص) to him wherein he said, “O Ali! You will be fought for implementing the Qur’an just as we fight in defense of its revelation.”

His fight for the interpretation of the Holy Qur’an was his fighting the Kharijites. This hadith proves that Ali is our Imam and master because the Prophet (ص) compared the fighting undertaken by Ali in defense of implementing the Qur’an with that of his own fighting in defense of its revelation. The Messenger of Allah (ص) was right in defending its revelation; therefore, our master Ali was also right in fighting for its implementation. Had he not been a rightful Imam, he would not have been right in killing those folks because the call had included them due to their being in “dar al-salam” and to being Muslims. Anyone whom he called to fight them was obligated to respond positively and not to lag behind so long as he was able to do so because obedience to the Imam, which results in no disobedience to Allah, is an obligation, let alone obedience. What is narrated about Abu Hanifah with regard to the subject of when dissension happens among the Muslims, he is of the view that a man should take to staying at home. Such a view is relevant to a particular time which is: When his religious leader does not call upon him to bear arms. But if he does, then obedience to him is obligatory as we have stated earlier.

Yahya ibn Sharaf al-Nawawi (d. 677 A.H./1279 A.D.), a Shafi’i, has said, “Ali was on the right track in those wars. Most of the sahābah and tābi’un, supported by all Muslim scholars, were of the view that during the time of dissension, support and assistance must be rendered to the right party against the oppressors according to the verse saying, ‘... so fight the one that oppresses,’ which is the right thing to do.”

Ibn Humam, the Hanafi (d. 681 A.H./1283 A.D.), has said, “Ali (ṣ) was on the right track when he fought the Battle of the Camel and when he fought Mu’awiyyah at Siffin. The Prophet (ص) had said to 'Ammar, ‘The oppressive party shall kill you,’ an he was, indeed, killed by Mu’awiyyah's followers,

---

1Usūl ad-Din, pp. 286-292.
4Badā’i’ al-Sanā’i’, Vol. 7, p. 140, in a chapter dealing with the injunctions relevant to those who renege.
5Sharḥ Sahih Muslim, Vol. 10, p. 336 and p. 338, in a footnote about giving advice to one going on a military campaign.
something which proves that they, in fact, were the oppressive party. `A`isha expressed her regret [at having fought Ali during the Battle of the Camel] according to Abu `Amr as he so records in his book Al-Isn `ab. She said once to `Abdullah ibn `Omer, `O father of `Abdul-Rahmân! What stopped you for prohibiting me from marching?' He said, `I saw a man who did so even before you,” meaning Ibn al-Zubayr. She then said, “Had you admonished me not to march, I would not have gone out.”

Ibn Taymiyyah (d. 728 A.H./1328 A.D.) has said, “When `Uthmân was killed and people swore the oath of allegiance to the Commander of the Faithful Ali ibn Abu Tâlib (ۡئ), who was then the most worthy of being the caliph and the best of the remaining sahâbah, the views were, nevertheless, diverse and the fire of dissension was lit. There was no complete unity, nor could the caliph, nor those who were the best among the nation, realize all their plans for the goodness of the nation till the Harârî renegades [the people of Harâr] rose to fight the Commander of the Faithful Ali (ۡئ) and those who supported him. In obedience to the Command of Allâh Almighty and that of the Messenger of Allâh (ۡح), he killed them. The Prophet (ۡح) had said, `The renegade group must be killed [even] by the closest of both parties to righteousness.' Ali ibn Abu Tâlib (ۡئ) and those with him were the ones who fought them. Based on the statement of the Prophet (ۡح), Ali and his followers are closer to the truth than Mu`awiyyah and his party.’”

He has also said, “Any Shi`a group admits that Mu`awiyyah could never be compared with Ali (ۡئ) in as far as the caliphate is concerned, and he could not be a caliph while Ali (ۡئ), too, was the caliph. Ali’s feats, his being the foremost to accept Islam, his knowledge, piety, courage, and all his virtues were quite obvious and well known to everyone. None among the ahl al-shâra [those named by Abu Bakr as members of the advisory committee] remained except he and Sa’d. The latter had already abandoned such a subject, and `Uthmân had already died; so, none remained except Ali.”

Al-Zayla`i (d. 762 A.H./1361 A.D.) has said, “Right was in the hand of Ali (ۡئ) when his turn came [to lead the Muslims]. The proof is in the statement of the Prophet (ۡح) to `Ammâr: `The transgressing party shall kill you.' There is no contention that he [`Ammâr] was on Ali’s side when Mu`awiyyah's followers killed him. Then they were unanimous in regarding Ali as being on the right track when he fought the fellows of the Camel, namely Talhah, al-Zubayr, `Ayisha, and those who supported them, as well as the fellows of Siffân, namely Mu`awiyyah and his army.” He goes on to say, “When Ali (ۡئ) became the caliph, while Mu`awiyyah was in Syria, the latter said, `I shall not offer him anything, nor shall I swear the oath of allegiance to him nor visit him.”

Ibn al-Qayyim al-Jawziyyah (d. 751 A.H./1351 A.D.) has said, “During his time, Ali was the foremost of the nation and the very best, and there was none when he took charge better than him.”

Abu `Abdullâh ibn Muflih, the Hanbali scholar (d. 763 A.H./1362 A.D.), has said, “Ali (ۡئ) was the closest to righteousness than Mu`awiyyah and the most fair in fighting those who transgressed. There were those who sided with Ali and those who refrained.” Ibn Hubayrah depends on Ubayy’s hadith to advocate that people should renounce taking to arms during dissension, meaning when

---

1Fath al-Qadîr, Vol. 5, p. 461, “Kitâb al-Qadîr” (the book of judicial decisions). Al-Tabari, Târikh, Vol. 5, p. 221, where `Ayisha is quoted as saying, “I wish I had died twenty years before the Battle of the Camel.” Al-Iqd al-Farîd, Vol. 2, p. 288, where those who participated in the Battle of the Camel are discussed. Ibn Qutaybah, Al-Ma`ârif, p. 59, where it is indicated that `Ayisha was asked, “Shall we bury you near the Messenger of Allâh?” She answered by saying, “No.”


3Ibid., Vol. 4, p. 224.

4Nasb al-Râya, Vol. 1, p. 69, while enumerating the guidance traditions in the volume dealing with a judge's ethics.

'Uthmān was killed. As regarding what happened thereafter, none among the Muslims supported the notion that anybody was excused for lagging behind without supporting Ali (ṣ). And when Sa’d, Ibn ’Omer, Usāmah, Muḥammad ibn Maslamah, Masrūq, and al-Ahnaf did so, they all regretted it. On his death bed, ’Abdullāh ibn ’Omer, for example, said, “I am leaving this world and there is no bigger sigh in my heart than having been reluctant to support Ali (ṣ).” The same has been reported about Masrūq and others because of such reluctance.1 Ibn Hajar al-‘Aṣqalānī (d. 852 A.H./1449 A.D.) has said, “Īmām Ali ibn Abī Taḥlīl was on the right track when he fought those who waged against him the wars of the Camel, Sīfīn, and others.”2

Mahmūd ibn Hajar al-Haythāmī (d. 974 A.H./1567 A.D.) has said, “The people of the Camel and of Sīfīn charged Ali (ṣ) of collaborating with those who murdered ’Uthmān while he was innocent of it, and far he was from doing something like that.”3 He goes on to say, “A religious authority is bound to fight those who transgress because the saḥābah have all conceded that this should be the case, and that he should not fight them before sending them a discreet, equitable, and trustworthy person to advise them and to inquire about their reasons for disobeying him in accordance with the incident when Ali (ṣ) sent Ibn Ṭabādīn to the Khārijjītāt at al-Nahrawān, thus causing some of them to return to his obedience.”4

1Al-Furū’, Vol. 3, pp. 542-543.
2Fath al-Bārī: Sharḥ al-Bukhārī, Vol. 12, p. 244, in a chapter dealing with requiring the renegades to repent, a chapter dealing with forsaking fighting the Khārijjītāt.

On p. 240, Vol. 2, of Ibn al-Athīr’s book Al-Kāmil, Muḥammad ibn Sīrīn is quoted as saying, “Never did I ever come to know of Ali being accused of killing ’Uthmān till people swore the oath of allegiance to him [to Ali as the new caliph]; it is only then that he was accused.” On p. 235 of al-Bāqillānī’s book Al-Tamhīd, it is stated that, “Alī (ṣ) used to say the following when he was in Basra: ‘By Allāh! I did not kill ’Uthmān, nor did I condone his killing, but Allāh killed him, and I am with him,’ whereupon some people thought that his statement “and I am with him” meant that he was predicting that he, too, would be killed. In fact, he meant something like, “Allāh caused him to die, and He will cause me, too, to die [in a like manner, i.e. by being murdered, as it came to happen],” since he swore, the truthful that he was, that he never killed ’Uthmān nor condemned his killing. On p. 274, Vol. 2, of Al-‘Iqd al-Farīd, in a chapter dealing with Ali being innocent of ’Uthmān’s murder, the author states the following: “Alī (ṣ) used to say the following when he was in Kūfā: ‘If Banū Umayyah wish, I am ready to challenge them to swear at the Ka’ba fifty times that I did not start anything against ’Uthmān.’” On p. 224, Vol. 4, of Ibn Taymiyyah’s book Majmū’ al-Farāwa al-Misriyya, the author says, “Alī (ṣ) swore, the righteous and the truthful person who never had to swear that he was, that he never killed ’Uthmān nor wanted anyone to kill him.” On p. 141, Vol. 8, of Tūs al-‘Arūs: Sharḥ al-Qāmūs, in the discussion of the subject of insinuating, and that people should avoid it, Alī ibn Abī Taḥlīl (ṣ) is quoted as saying, “Had Banū Umayyah agreed that we require fifty persons from Banū Hāshim to swear that we never killed ’Uthmān, nor do we know who killed him, we would have done so,” meaning producing fifty witnesses to his innocence. On p. 170 of Ibn al-Sikkīrī’s book Islāḥ al-Mantiq, in a chapter dealing with insinuation and how people ought to forsake it, Alī ibn Abī Taḥlīl (ṣ) is quoted as saying, “By Allāh! I never killed ’Uthmān nor insinuated that anyone should kill him.” On p. 60 of Nasrās’s book Sīfīn, Egyptian edition, it is stated that, “Al-Mughirāh ibn al-Akhnas was killed the same day with ’Uthmān when ’Uthmān’s mansion was attacked. His son composed poetic verses in which he commended Alī (ṣ) for not participating in what those folks [the assailants] had done. Among what he said was this:

As for Ali, he sought refuge at home,
So he neither issued an order in its regard,
Nor did he prohibit anyone.

On p. 112, Vol. 1, of his book Sharḥ Nahjul-Balāgha (Egyptian edition), Ibn Abūl-Hadīd records a statement which testifies to his deep understanding of the events. He said, “Mu’āwiyyah very much deviated from Ali’s line because he [Ali] had killed his [Mu’āwiyyah’s] brother Hanzalah during the Battle of Badr, in addition to his uncle al-Walid, and he took part in killing his grandfather, ’Utbah, or his uncle, Shaybah. From among the dignitaries belonging to ’Abd Shams whom he killed, and their likes, he killed a large number. This is the reason why he [Mu’āwiyyah] attributed ’Uthmān’s murder to Ali (ṣ) and publicized it among the people. Murderers rallied behind him.” On p. 240, Vol. 2, ’Urwa bīn al-Zubayr is quoted as saying, “Alī (ṣ) was too fearful of angering Allāh to assist anyone in killing ’Uthmān.”

The discussion between Ibn `Abbās and the Khārijites is detailed on p. 48 of *Khasā’ is Amīr al-Mu’mīn* by al-Nassā’ī.

Al-Shihāb al-Khafājī (d. 1100 A.H./1689 A.D.) has said, “The Prophet's statement to `Ammār: ‘The transgressing party shall kill you,’ and the fact that the supporters of Mu‘āwiyyah killed him at Siffin because he was supporting Ali (ṣ), is a clear indication that the righteous caliph was Ali (ṣ), and that Mu‘āwiyyah was wrong in following his own personal views. A transgressor is one who unfairly declares his mutiny against his leading Imām. Another hadith by him (ṣ) and his progeny, says, ‘If people dispute, the son of Sumayya will always be right,’ and the son of Sumayya is `Ammār who sided with Ali (ṣ). This is what we owe Allah to say: Ali, Allah glorified his countenance, was right and justified in not arresting those who participated in killing `Uthmān.’”¹

Al-Shawkānī (d. 1255 A.H./1840 A.D.) quotes a tradition of the Prophet, peace of Allah be upon him and his progeny, narrated by Abu Sa`īd [al-Khudrī] wherein he says, “My nation shall split into two parties between whom renegades will come out who should be killed by the closest party to righteousness.” He says, “This proves that Ali (ṣ) and his supporters were right, whereas Mu‘āwiyyah and his followers were wrong.”²

Abul-Thanā al-`Alā’ī, the scholar of exegesis, has cited a number of Hanbali scholars advocating the necessity for killing those who transgress because Ali (ṣ) was too distracted, during his caliphate, with fighting the transgressors to be involved with jihād. This means that fighting transgressors is better than participating in jihād. Then he documents how ‘Abdullāh ibn `Omer [ibn al-Khattāb] regretted his reluctance to side with Ali in fighting the transgressing party. Al-‘Alā’ī did not rebut it.³

Muhammed Kurd Ali has said, “Ali did not violate the Sunnah when he dissociated himself from those who killed `Uthmān. Those who participated in killing him belonged to most of the tribes, and they were very large in number. Ali could not have faced them all by himself. It was impossible for him to arrest them, or even to arrest some of them, since they supported him, even if he had known who they were. The incident took place against his wish, and it was not in his interest to enrage numerous tribes that supported him then. Ali (ṣ) used to swear by Allah that had the Umayyads required him to produce fifty truthful men from Banū Hashim to swear by Allah that he did not murder `Uthmān, nor condoned his murder, he would have obliged.”⁴

The above are texts excerpted from Sunni scholars' books testifying to the fact that Ali (ṣ) was more worthy of being the caliph than anyone else, and that whoever rebelled against him deserved to be fought till he returned to the right course. Such was the choice made by the best from among the saḥābā and the ṭābi‘īn. Among the latter was Uways al-Qarni who was a foot soldier during the Battle of Siffin.⁵

`Abdullāh ibn `Omer ibn al-‘Ās used to say, "I regretted nothing more than not fighting the transgressing party as Allah Almighty had commanded me to.” He used to narrate what the Prophet (ṣ) used to say, that is, “Sumayya’s son will be killed by the oppressive party,” and that the oppressive party was that of Mu‘āwiyyah and his gang. When he was asked about why he did not participate in the Battle of Siffin on Ali's side, he produced an excuse which will not avail him on the Day of Judgment. Said he, “I never used a sword or a lance, but the Messenger of Allah (ṣ) required me to obey my father, and I did.”⁶

---

⁶Ibid.
This is nothing but falsehood and deception. How could he find it palatable to oppose the truth by thus misinterpreting a statement made by the Prophet (صلى الله عليه وسلم)? Does the شريعة permit interpreting the hadith as enjoining obedience to one's father if such obedience requires forsaking the obligations or committing what is prohibited? Of course not. Obedience to the Imam who has received the oath of allegiance was mandatory on all Muslims, and the umma then had no choice except to obey him and carry out his orders, and no obedience to one's father can take precedence over obedience to the Imam (ع). The verse saying, “And if they intimidate you so that you may associate with me that of which you have no knowledge, do not obey them” (Qur'an, 29:8) may be inclusive. The prohibited association referred to in this verse, therefore, may connote prohibiting forsaking obedience to Allah, Glory to Him. It implies prohibiting forsaking obedience to the Prophet (صلى الله عليه وسلم) and to the Imam who has received the oath of allegiance from the Muslims. "A'ishah, thereupon, used to perform her prayers in full when she marched to Basra to fight Ali (ع) because to shorten the prayers, in her view, was done when one travels in obedience to Allāh's Commandments.1

The sacred شريعة has required the Imam of the nation to win his argument against anyone who rebelled against him and abandoned obedience to him by reminding him of Allāh's incessant favours on His servants despite their rebellion and oppression. Then he informs them that this vanishing life does not bring anyone who is immersed in his love for it except loss. He may do so by admonition and by citing Qurʾānic verses in order to enlighten those whose desires blinded them, so that they may see the path of guidance and realize the shining truth.

The Commander of the Faithful (ع) followed this plan of action which Islam canonized during the first three days after his calling upon his companions not to transgress the commandments of the شريعة and not to rush to fight so that the other party might be the transgressing one that fought the believers, hence the argument against it would be established as the one that started the aggression.2

He, peace of Allāh be upon him and his infallible offspring, admonished the fellows of the Camel, Sīfīn, and al-Nahrāwān a great deal so that nobody would have any excuse when the books of deeds are spread wide open and every argument of those called upon by him and who insist on disputing with him and in being stubborn is refuted. Those who were guided by Allāh to conviction were enlightened by the light of his guidance, whereas those who strayed from the path of righteousness did not.

AL-ḤUSAIN (ع) ON THE ṬAFF DAY

These are the guidelines that the father of ʿAbdullāh, al-Ḥusayn (ع), followed on the Ṭaff Day. He did not order his men to start the war despite the persistence of his foes in adhering to misguidance and in fighting him with all their might and means. They, in fact, went as far as prohibiting him, his family and companions from drinking the water regarding which the one who brought the divine شريعة, peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him and his progeny, said, “All people have an equal right to water and (their animals to) pasture.” Imam Husayn (ع), by doing so, wanted to establish his argument against his foes. He stood to address that multitude that had been immersed in misguidance in order to explain his argument. He first acquainted them with the loss of this vanishing world by anyone who threw himself in its lap; it would not bring him anything but disappointment. Then he resorted to reminding them of his status with the

---

1 al-Shawkānī, Nayl al-Awār, Vol. 3, p. 179, in a chapter dealing with a traveller's prayers in a section about one who passes through a country and marries someone there.

Excerpted from a poem in praise of al-Husain (ع) by Sayyid Hayder al-Hilli, may Allah have mercy on his soul.

The da`iyy and the son of the da`iyy required us to choose one of two: either to let his men draw their swords against us, or we accept humiliation and submission to his authority. It is far from us to accept humiliation; Allah rejects that we, His Messenger, or the faithful should ever submit to humiliation. These are [the fruit of] good and pure chambers, men of dignity and souls too proud to prefer obedience to a mean and lowly person over death in honour and in dignity. Let it be known that I shall fight with this family although our number is small, and despite the betrayal of those who promised to support us.

How could he to a lowly one his submission wield?
Only to Allah did he ever submit and yield:
Mightier than the shield is his will,
Before lances thirsty for blood, eager to kill,
To him will every hāfīz refer at will,
To one big as the world and greater still,
One who insisted to live only in dignity,
To sacrifice and personify such struggle for eternity. ¹

Such are the commandments of the purified Sharī`a, and such are its injunctions regarding inviting people to righteousness, and to rise to close the door against falsehood. Just as it mandated jihād against those who promote misguidance as well as the polytheists, it likewise exempted from such jihād the children, the invalid, the blind, the elderly, the women, and the adults who did not obtain the permission of their parents to participate in jihād. But the show of force at the Taff violated its greatest canon, permitting even what was not previously permitted in order to serve the interests and the mysteries which are beyond the reach of men's comprehension. Such was the most oppressed martyr (ع), informed by his grandfather, the supreme saviour (ص), and by his own father, the wasi (ع). Al-Husain (ع) did not bring about a new Sunnah in jihād; rather, it was no more than a divine lesson fixed by the most sacred tablet in the world of perfection, one limited to a particular circumstance and to a specific place, one received by Gabriel, the trusted archangel (ع), who then conveyed to the one who was loved and chosen by Allah, namely Muhammed (ص), the one who conveyed the divine message and who in turn entrusted it to his grandson the Master of Martyrs (ع).

All the unusual events that took place during that bloody encounter, whose essence cannot be comprehended by men were things whereby the Master, Praise to Him, bestowed upon His wali and hujjah,

---

¹Excerpted from a poem in praise of al-Ḥusain (ع) by Sayyid Hayder al-Ḥilli, may Allah have mercy on his soul.
Abu `Abdullah, al-Husain (μ).

It is to these same traditions that the martyr of Kāfa, Muslim ibn `Aqīl, adhered. He was, indeed, distinguished from all others by his knowledge, deeds, an abundance of wisdom and divine faculties which his position as deputy of the Imām, the hujjah, required.1 He suffered from acute thirst to the extent that he was permitted to drink even what was najis. Both Ibn `Aqīl and the moon of the Hashemites [Abul-Fadl, al-Abbās, Imām Husain's brother] drank the same milk and graduated from the same school of Imāmate and infallibility. They, therefore, earned a testimony from the Infallible Imāms (μ) in the sincerity of intention through their readiness to sacrifice their lives for the sake of the creed. Such testimony qualified them to serve as role models in their good deeds. Just as Muslim did not taste water till he died of thirst, so was the case with the father of al-Fadl, al-Abbās, who shook the ranks of the enemy till he finally had access to the water. Knowing the extent of thirst of the Master of Martyrs and that of the Prophet's ladies and of the children who descended from Fātima (μ), he did not see in the Sharḥ a, which he had learned from his father, the wasi, and from both of his brothers who were Imāms whether they stood or sat2, according to the Prophet's words, any provision for him to drink out of concern for the thirst of the hujjah of his time even with a little thereof. But alas! Destiny stood between him and the achievement of his desire.

He did not taste of the Euphrates following his example,
Taking his water straight to the tent.
He found no provision in the creed to quench
His thirst while his brother was burning with thirst.
He derives his deed from the Sharḥ a
And due to his unshaken conviction,
Like al-Husain who controlled the water source
Just to be told that his tents were being looted,
So he threw water away, sensing the gravity
Of the situation, enthused with zeal,
So al-Abbās followed his example as he
Breathed his last in honour, his zeal fiery.

Abu `Abdullāh, al-Husain (μ), rose with that small group of the elderly and the children, with infants and women, in contrast with those who were not apprehensive in regard to conscience or kinship, being determined to eradicate the Prophet's family and relatives. But the line followed by the martyr of the Taff, the one whose extent cannot be realized, nor can the minds comprehend its deep meaning, acquainted the succeeding generations that came across this epic, the like of which history has never witnessed, with the deeds committed by those tyrants whose fathers did not accept Islam, when they pretended to have done so, except out of fear of Islam's sword. Abu `Abdullāh (μ) achieved the objective when the clouds of doubt were dispelled by the light of his shining revolution and the calls of his ladies, the calls that confused and upset the minds that became the subject of all meetings, of what those tyrants and their ancestors had committed of shame and infamy.

---

1Muslim ibn `Aqīl was deputy of Imām Husain (μ), who was the hujjah, of his time. The reader must not misread this statement to imply that Muslim ibn `Aqīl was the deputy of al-Hujjah, al-Mehdi, may Allāh hasten his reappearance. — Tr.

2al-Irbi, Kashf al-Ghumma, p. 159, where al-Husain (μ) is discussed.
DEsertion permitted

It is on such a straight path that the Master of Martyrs declared, in his precious, wise and far-sighted statement, permission to his family and companions to part with him for safety. The text the historians narrate in this regard is his statement (الله يُواسيهم), to his family and companions on the eve of the ninth of Muharram saying, ‘I know no companions better than mine nor family more righteous or kind or united than mine; so, may Allah reward all of you. I think tomorrow will be our last day in facing these folks. I am of the view that you should all set out for safety, you do not owe me anything, while the night is covering you with its covering. Ride it as you would a camel, and each one of you should take the hand of one of my family members. May Allah reward all of you with the best of His rewards; so, disperse under the cover of darkness and go back to your towns, for these people seek me, and if they get hold of me, they will not seek anyone else.’

What a pithy statement, O Father of the Oppressed, and how noble your objective, O Master of Martyrs! How wise your statement and deeds, O soul of Prophethood! Yes, this golden statement was etched in letters of نور on the forehead of time, that those righteous elite men, who were described by the Commander of the Faithful (الله يُواسيهم) as the masters of martyrs, and that none ever reached their heights nor ever will, were the cream of the crop of all mankind and the elite of the cosmos. We have been enlightened by such rays to realize their intention to be determined in their firmness and sincerity to offer the holy sacrifice. In all of these, there are sublime lessons for all those who wish to follow in the footsteps of those honourable men to rise above loving this life and to die under the banner of dignity and not to submit to the oppressive authority, to either achieve the goal or attain martyrdom and eternal happiness.

Had it not been for that permission to desert issued by the custodian of the شريعة and for those words which their pure souls permitted, no succeeding generation could have realized the extent of their knowledge, conviction, and variation of their faculties and ambition to the highest goals and firmness in upholding their principles with sincerity and insight.

The Master of Martyrs wanted by so doing to test their intentions. Testing is done by a wise person who knows what was and what will be, and it does not demean his knowledge and his being familiar with what is hidden since the goal is precious and the status is sublime. This is something to which we pointed out when we wanted to acquaint the reader with the gifts adorning al-Husain’s followers and those of Ahl al-Bayt (الله يُواسيهم). And such a test should not surprise anyone especially since the Creator of all beings, the Almighty, from Whose knowledge nothing small nor big escapes, ordered His friend Abraham to sacrifice his son Ishmael. Being knowledgeable of the extent of obedience to Him rendered by His messenger, the Friend of Allah, Abraham, and of the firmness of His prophet, Ishamel, he did not require it except for a benefit known to the Lord of the Worlds though it is obscure from the comprehension of humans. The incident of the bald, the leprous, and the blind also testifies that Allah Almighty wanted by granting them His blessings to make their story a lesson of wisdom for those who come across it and who find themselves bound to thank Him for His blessings, and that denying His blessings will lead to loss.

---


2Ibn Qawlawyah, Kāmil al-Ziyārāt, pp. 969-970.

Abu `Abdullāh, Imām al-Husain (†), wanted through this test to acquaint the next generations with the status attained by his Ahl al-Bayt (†) and companions, the status of honour, dignity, purity and submission to whatever pleases Allāh and His Messenger, peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him and his progeny.

To know the extent of any man of purity in the world, and to uphold the principle of obedience to the most pious person who most pleases the Master, the Almighty, does not become possible except by his statements supported by good deeds or by a testimony for him from someone familiar with his every movement.

Nobody is ignorant of the defects in the history books in our hands regarding many deeds of righteous men who exhaust all influence and possession in order to support the authentic Sharī‘a. Nor does history record any deeds undertaken by those elite ones, namely the martyrs of Kerbalā’, indicative of the holiness of their conscience, the sincerity of their intentions, the purity of their souls..., better than that bloody scene. Had it not been for those statements made by the companions of al-Husain (†), and of his family, when he gave them permission to leave him for safety and to desert so that he would alone face those who surrounded him, we would not have come to know the differences in their levels of awareness and variations in their far-sighted views, nor their virtues which no human being can attain. Knowledge is a light which Allāh Almighty casts in the heart of whomsoever He chooses from among His servants in various degrees of intensity.

Muslim ibn `Awsajah al-Asadi, for example, does not have anything on the pages of history to testify to his immortal deeds and good merits in anything more or less than a statement made by Shabth ibn Rabʿī that he invaded Azerbaijan on the side of the Muslims and killed six polytheists before Muslim cavalry troops came to his rescue. What can the reader know from this statement other than the extent of his sure loyalty to the Prophet's caliphs and his not having changed as time and circumstances changed? But his statement to al-Husain (†) in which he said, “Are we the type of men who would abandon you? What excuse shall we produce before Allāh Almighty for having thus fallen short of serving you? By Allāh! I shall never leave you till I break my lance in their chests and strike them with my sword as long as I can hold its handle, and even if I have no weapon to fight them with, I shall throw stones at them till I die with you."

Such a statement informs us of the firmness of this man in upholding his principles at the last stage of life, and that if one is not concerned except about pleasing Allāh Almighty and His Messenger (ﷺ), he is not concerned about any pain or bleeding. This statement is accompanied by actions when he faced the swords and the lances with his chest and neck. Moreover, he was not satisfied with all of this till he commended Habīb ibn Muzāhir, the man who benefitted from the science of fates and epics from the Commander of the Faithful (†), to support al-Husain (†), and that he would not otherwise be excused by the Messenger of Allāh (ﷺ) for having fallen short of carrying out his responsibility even when he was drawing his last breath. His soul thus parted from his body as he maintained his creed and submission.1

He was followed in sincerity of loyalty and readiness to sacrifice by Saʿīd ibn `Abdullāh al-Hanafi who said, “By Allāh! We shall never abandon you till Allāh knows that we safeguarded the absence of the Messenger of Allāh (ﷺ) in your person. By Allāh! Had I known that I will be killed then brought back to life, then burnt alive, then my ashes strewn, and this is done to me seventy times, I would still not abandon you till I meet death defending you. Why should I not do so? It is only one death followed by a bliss that

---

1Such a level of readiness to sacrifice for the son of the Prophet's daughter (†) reminds me of the excuse produced by Saʿīd ibn Abu Waqās when the Commander of the Faithful (†) asked him for his support. As stated on p. 59 (second edition) of the book titled Al-Jamal by Shaikh al-Mufid, his answer was, “I hate to participate in this war and accidentally kill a believer unless you give me a sword that distinguishes a believer from an unbeliever.”
lasts forever.”

He, therefore, defended Abu `Abdullāh (¶) and admonished others to do likewise. He was not satisfied with all the bleeding wounds which he received when he assaulted the enemies of Allāh Almighty in defense of al-Husain (¶), who was then performing the noon prayers on the battlefield, till he understood from the Father of the Oppressed that he had discharged his responsibility towards the Message and proven his faithfulness to what Allāh had mandated on him, so he died feeling elated for having pleased the Almighty God. Anything besides this is a shortcoming and a loss. Abu `Abdullāh (¶) comforted him of attaining happiness through martyrdom and of the meeting with the Messenger of Allāh (¶) before him.

As soon as he had finished his speech, Zuhayr ibn al-Qayn al-Bijli stood up to recite for all future generations lofty teachings in promoting the creed which immortalized him. To al-Husain (¶) he said, “By Allāh! I wish I had been killed then brought back to life then killed, and so on, for a thousand times, as long as my being killed protects you and protects these youths of Ahl al-Bayt (¶).”

There is no doubt in Allāh accepting obedience from any of His servants if such obedience earns him victory on the Day of Eternity. But there is something even beyond that of a more lofty objective: it is the obedience of the people of conviction who are not concerned, when they perform what they are obligated to perform, except to be closer to the Lord, Praise to Him, Who is the only One worthy of being worshipped. Ibn al-Qayn is a bastion of conviction and pure faith, a man who recited for us in such a situation his far-sighted view, his true beliefs, and his noble goals: protecting the man who was appointed by Allāh Almighty as the Imām and protecting the lives which were held dear by the Messenger of Allāh (¶) without aiming by worshipping Allāh, through performing jihād against His enemies, except to earn the rewards of the hereafter for his endeavour on the Day when wages shall be granted for good deeds. Rather, he aimed by performing this rite to protect the person who was charged with safeguarding the Message, the hujjah of his time, citing the Prophet, peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him and his Progeny.

“Husain is of me, and I am of Husain,”1 says the Messenger of Allāh (¶). The one who brought us the Sharī`a did not make this statement simply to inform the nation that the Taff Martyr was part of him (i.e. a member of his family), for such an interpretation is quite shallow and is not expected of the master of orators. Of course every offspring is part of his father and grandfather; so, there is no distinction for al-Husain (¶) here. Rather, he (¶) intended for this golden statement to point out to the responsibility vested upon the Master of Martyrs in cementing Islam’s foundations, removing the thorns of falsehood from the path of the just Sharī`a, and alerting the nation against the crimes committed by those who played havoc with the sanctity of the creed. Just as the Prophet (¶) was the first person to rise to disseminate the divine call, al-Ḥusain was the last to rise to cement its foundations:

```
The creed did moan, groan and complain
About him; it did complain to none but Husain.
The Prophet’s grandson saw that to cure the creed,
At Kerbala’ to death he had to defend it and bleed.
```

Never did we hear that a patient could be cured
Only with the death of the one who cured and endured.
When Husain was martyred, Islam's guidance standard rose high.
When Husein is remembered, Islam's fragrance does intensify.

Had it not been for the open statements made by the son of the singers, we would not have been able to realize his attitude vis-a-vis loyalty [or the lack thereof] for those whom the Omnipotent, Praise to Him, chose as the Infallible and as the beacons of guidance for His servants and the custodians of His Sharī`a. Other than this fact, history has not recorded for the singers' son any loyalty except to `Uthmān ibn `Affān versus his animosity towards the grandson of the most pure Messenger of Allah (μ).

As for the stand of `Abīs ibn Abu Shibīb al-Shākiri, when the oath of allegiance was sworn to Muslim ibn `Aqīl at Kāfā, and on the Taff Day, it reveals his superiority over many others, his firm conviction and love for Ahl al-Bayt, peace be upon them, and that nothing at all mattered to him in his bid to protect the Imām (ε) even at the cost of sacrificing his own life and everything precious in his possession.

Having witnessed the betraying throngs assembled to swear the oath of allegiance to Muslim ibn `Aqīl, he [`Abīs] said to him, “I do not wish to inform you about these people, nor do I know what they hide in their hearts and what attracts you to them, but by Allāh I shall tell you about what I have decided to do: By Allāh! I shall respond to you when you call, and I shall fight your enemy, and I shall defend you with my sword till I meet Allāh desiring nothing for doing so except what Allāh has in store for me.”

With these brief words did he interpret those people's intentions and the feebleness of their wills, and that they were molded on betrayal, hypocrisy and the following of their own whims, and that they did not wish to openly declare their inclination to betray him else it should weaken their already weak allegiance and become the cause of animosity. So they said what was beautiful as they waited for the outcome. Muslim ibn `Aqīl could not get even one of those thousands of men to lead him to any highway to exit the city when the clouds of doom overshadowed him, not even one, so he did not know where to go...

On the Taff Day, Ibn Abul-Shibīn said to al-Husain (ε), “Nobody on the face of earth, be he a kin of mine or a stranger, is more dear to my heart than you. Had I been able to defend you with anything more precious than my life, I would have most certainly done so.”

Yes, O son of Abul-Shibīn! Men who are sincere to Allāh Almighty are endowed with self-denial. They regard the world as a vanishing thing and hope to attain immortality through supporting the Imām, the essence of beings, the orbit of existence itself.

Then Nāfī` ibn Hilāl stood and said, “By Allāh! We are not too afraid to submit to Allāh's destiny, nor are we averse to the meeting with our Lord. We are with our minds and intentions supporting whoever supports you and are the enemy of whoever antagonizes you.” The rest of his companions made similar statements.

When he (ε), granted permission to his family members to leave, they all said in one voice, “Shall we do so in order to survive you? May Allāh never permit us to see that happen.” Then he turned to `Aqīl's offspring and said, “Suffices you [the calamity that you have suffered because of] Muslim's murder. I have permitted you to leave.” They immediately expressed their unrelenting determination to support the creed and to defend the Imām, the hujjah, saying, “If we do so, shall we then say to the people that we abandoned our mentor and master, while our cousins are the best of cousins, without having shot one arrow with them, nor have we stabbed anyone with our lances nor struck anyone with our swords? No, by Allāh! We shall
never do that; rather, we shall sacrifice ourselves, our wealth, and our families for your sake and fight with you till we meet the same fate as yours; abominable, indeed, is to survive you.”

Such readiness to sacrifice in that precarious situation, wherein all avenues of help and rescue were blocked, and even water, which was made available to the animals, was denied them, reveals their attainment of the most sublime attributes of perfection. It reveals their renunciation of this vanishing life. Had they had in their heart the least desire to stay, or to love this world, they would have taken his permission to leave them as an excuse they would produce on the Day of Judgment. But these souls, which the Lord of the Worlds, Praise to Him, created of a holy mold and blended with the noor of conviction, did not desire to stay alive except to uphold what is right or to put an end to what is false. How could they find life meaningful while knowing that the man who was so much loved by the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ), the heart of Islam, was suffering of bleeding wounds and of a painful agony?

Souls that wanted nothing but the legacy of their father
Are either killed without being avenged,
Or are killing those whom none will avenge.
Their souls were used to the battlefield,
Just as their feet were used to the pulpits.¹

Meanwhile, news reached Muhammed ibn Bashir al-Hadrami that his son was captured in the outskirts of Ray, so he said, “To Allah do I entrust him; I do not wish that he should be taken as a captive while I survive him.” When al-Husain (ﯽﮏ) heard him say so, he was fired with holy zeal for the creed and excused him from his oath of allegiance to him so that he could manage to have his son released. Having heard the Master of Martyrs say so, he now was fired with holy zeal for the creed and was prompted by his sincere loyalty to demonstrate his firm conviction in sacrificing everything he had to defend the Imam, saying, “O Abu `Abdullah! May the wild beasts feed on me should I ever part with you!”

Firm conviction and obedience to Allah Almighty and to His Messenger (ﷺ) raise those who are thereby enabled to attain the zenith of greatness to a level superior even to virtue itself. Had ibn Bashir's conviction been shaky, he would have seized the opportunity of the permission which he had received from the Imam (ﯽﮏ) to leave as his excuse before the Master, Praise to Him, and before people.

Al-Husain's martyrdom did not leave its hero any choice except to release the black slave John who belonged to Abu Tharr al-Ghifari so that his modesty might not keep him from fleeing. But the Master of Martyrs, having come to know his persistence and firmness in the face of calamities, wanted by testing him to acquaint those who had surrounded him, as well as the succeeding generations, with his character. He wanted to highlight the extent of John’s stand to defend the Shari’a with which those who betrayed it played havoc no matter how serious the danger was and how many the woes. He, therefore, excused John form his covenant, permitting him to to seek his own safety saying, “O John! You have accompanied us for your health's sake; so, do not be afflicted by our own way of life.” It was then that John’s tears ran down. John feared he would not succeed in earning eternal happiness. He blended his tears with a statement which has been reverberating to all succeeding generations ever since, acquainting them with success for those who persevere during the time of trials and tribulations. Said he, “Only rest follows fatigue...”

He also said, “Should I during the time of ease eat your food then betray you during the time of hardship? My smell is bad, my descent is lowly, and my colour is black, so do breathe upon me of the breath of Paradise so that my smell will turn good, my descent will become honourable, and my colour will be

¹Ibn Nama, Muthir al-Ahzân.
white! No, by Allah! I shall never leave you till my blood is mixed with yours.”

Had it not been for such frank statements made by al-Husain ( czas), nobody would have come to know the purity of the conscience of that slave nor of his good intentions. His insistence to be killed, even after receiving permission to be released and to part with the group, demonstrates a very firm conviction.

Summary

Safeguarding the Imam ( czas) is like safeguarding the Prophet (,,, ), something which reason and the Sharī‘a mandate, something which nobody should abandon or hesitate to safeguard against those who wish to eradicate it. What is obligatory is to sacrifice one's own life for his [Imam’s] sake in order to thus remove the aggression against the life of the Imam who is the life of existence and the existence of the cosmos itself. The Imam ( czas) was also required to call others to support and to defend him with the knowledge that whoever responded would be jeopardizing his life, and that there was no choice except to avoid the fatal danger. He, in such case, was obligated not to require anyone to defend him, for it would then be in vain.

Al-Husain ( czas) was familiar with what he was going to endure. “A destiny which cannot be altered, a decree which cannot be reversed,” said he to Umm Salamah adding, “If I do not die today, I will tomorrow, and if not tomorrow, then the day after. Do you think that there is anyone who can avoid death? Do you think that you know what I do not?”

He, then, is not required to obligate others to defend him. Yes; any human who is unfamiliar with divine decrees is not exempted from being required to defend the person of the Imam, the hujjah. Nobody is excused upon seeing how those people besieged a man whom Allah chose as His viceroy in dealing with His servants, how they cut off all supply routes from him and even prohibited him from having access to water, without rising to remove such an oppression or to protect his sacred life. Allāh Almighty does not accept the excuse of one who sees such a situation and is reluctant to support him even when it is quite precarious except when the hujjah of his time grants him permission to part with him and to leave him to face his enemy, since he is fully familiar with the best course; he is informed by the Wise One, the Knowing, the Sublime. In such a case, neither reason nor the Sharī‘a requires him to stay and to defend him, nor will his parting be regarded as a violation of what the Sharī‘a has decreed. He will then have an excuse when the books of deeds are spread: he was granted permission by the Imam ( czas) not to support him. The Imam himself will not then be jeopardizing his life upon permitting others to abandon him to face his foes alone and to excuse them from having sworn the oath of allegiance to him; he will not be going beyond the actual facts at all. If one does not see the Imam seeking his help and support, he does not carry any obligation or responsibility. Contrariwise, if he sees the Imam in such a precarious situation, repeatedly asking for help, it does not befit him to be too reluctant to support him. In such a case, the Imam will be in a very dire need for his help; so, no excuse shall ever be accepted from him on the Day of Judgment.

Abu `Abdullāh ( czas) met `Ubaydullāh ibn al-Hurr al-Ju`fi at Qasr Muqattil and solicited his support saying, “I advise you that, if you could, you should avoid hearing us crying and mourning our dead, and do not witness our tragedy. Do so, for by Allāh, none who hears us mourning our dead without supporting us except that Allāh will hurl him headlong into the fire of hell.”

This statement supports our rebuttal of the claims of those who heard the Imam pleading for help without helping him. As for one who does not hear such mourning, and he is granted permission to leave, he surely is excused. Al-Dahhāk ibn `Abdullāh al-Mashriqi, therefore, will have no excuse on the Day of Judgment because he heard al-Husain ( czas) pleading for help, and he saw him greatly outnumbered. He was obligated to support him to the last breath.

---

1Ibn Tawus, Al-Luhayf, p. 61 (Saida edition).
A man came to al-Husain (ئ) before the battle started and said, “I would like to fight on your side as long as I see others doing so, but if I do not see anyone fighting with you, shall I then be permitted to leave you?” Al-Husain (ئ) answered him in the affirmative. The man hid his horse in a deserted place upon seeing how al-Husain's horses were being hamstrung and kept fighting on foot. When al-Husain (ئ) stood alone on the battlefield, al-Dahhāk asked him, “Is my term still honoured?” The Imam (ئ) said, “Yes; you are free, if you can, to flee for safety.” The man, therefore, took his horse out of its hiding place, rode it and assaulted the foes forcing his way through their ranks. They made way for him, then fifteen men pursued him. He came to an old dried-up well near the bank of the Euphrates. The chasing party caught up with him. Ayyāb ibn Mashrah al-Khaywani, Kathīr ibn `Abdullāh al-Sha’bi, and Qays ibn `Abdullāh al-Sā‘īdī recognized him and said to their brethren, “This is our cousin! We plead to you in the Name of Allah to spare his life.” He was spared.¹ His being told by al-Husain (ئ) that he was excused will not avail him on the Day of Judgment because Abu `Abdullāh (ئ) could not have asked him to stay till he could meet his death, knowing that the man had set his mind, from the beginning, on leaving safely. The Creator, Praise to Him, will not excuse him on the Day of Gathering because he had heard the Father of the Oppressed (ئ) pleading for help, and whoever hears the Imam thus pleading and does not support him will be hurled by Allāh into the fire headlong.

**THE SHARI ‘A SURVIVED THROUGH AL-HUSAIN**

Al-Husain's revolution was the concluding part of the cause of firming the creed’s foundations. It clearly distinguished between those who called for righteousness and those who advocated falsehood. It drew a line between this party and that, so much so that it has been said that Islam started by Muḥammad (ص) and its continuation is through al-Husain (ئ). The Imāms of guidance (ئ), therefore, found no means to promote their cause to reform the nation, and to get their word to resurrect the Sharī‘a of their most sacred grandfather (ص), except by attracting the attention to this glorious revolution due to what it contains of the calamities that split the solid rocks, cause children to grow gray hair, and cause the heart to dissolve. They, peace be upon them, kept urging the nation to support it and to bring to memory the cruelty and persecution meted to the martyr/reformer, and to familiarize the nation with what took place during those bloody scenes of oppression meted to al-Husain (ئ) and to his family members and relatives. They, peace of Allāh be upon them, knew that demonstrating the oppression from which he suffered would bring sympathy and soften the hearts. The listener will naturally investigate the calamities and get to know the status of this oppressed Imam (ئ) and the reasons why he was mistreated.

Of course he will come to know that the Prophet's grandson was a just Imam who did not court this world, nor did he pay attention to those who promoted falsehood, and that his Imamate was inherited from his grandfather (ص) and from his own father the wasi, and that his opponent had no legitimate claim to caliphate at all, nor did anyone who followed his line.

Once the listener comes to know all this to be the truth, that al-Husain and the Imāms who succeeded him (ئ) were all on the right track, he will have no choice except to follow their lead and to embrace their exemplary method, thus firming the foundations of peace and harmony.

The usurping Umayyad and `Abbāsid authorities forced Ahl al-Bayt, peace be upon them, to keep to their homes, closing all doors before them, prohibiting them from meeting with their followers. The Ahl al-Bayt suffered at the Umayyad and the `Abbāsid hands from all types of harm and annihilation, so they

¹al-Ṭabari, Tārikh, Vol. 6, p. 255.
preferred isolation to taking to arms and fighting the promoters of falsehood despite their seeing them going
to extremes in their oppression and in being unfair to the followers of the Commander of the Faithful and to
his offspring ( масло ), pursuing them under every rock and in every city so that they would remove the `Alawides
from the face of earth. They saw how al-Mansūr and al-Rashid placed the offspring of Fātima, peace be upon
her, inside building columns in order to suffer a slow death, all out of injustice and oppression.¹

Yet all of this did not distract them from urging the upholding of the supreme struggle by
admonishing their Shī`as to hold majālis² to commemorate the Taff incident. Disgruntling persisted on
account of the calamities and catastrophes, and floods of tears were shed because of the abundance of their
painful tragedies. They went to extremes in explaining the merits of doing so because they were convinced
that that was the strong factor for maintaining the religious link for which the Commander of the Faithful ( المسال)
suffered what he suffered, and so did his son al-Hasan ( المسال) as well as al-Ḥusayn ( المسال), tragedies which shook
the firm mountains.

The Ahl al-Bayt ( المسال) used to explore various avenues to explain the spiritual importance of
remembering al-Ḥusayn ( المسال) because of the perfect link between such remembering and the safeguarding of
the creed from extinction. They expressed it once in general terms and once in specific references. Imām al-
Baqir ( المسال), for example, has said, “May Allāh have mercy on one who meets with another to discuss our
cause, for the third of them will be an angel seeking forgiveness for them; so, keep such memory alive, for
your meetings and discussions keep our cause alive, and the best of people after us are those who discuss
our cause and invite others to remember us.”

Imām al-Ṣādiq ( المسال) once asked al-Mufaddal ibn Yaqsīr, “Do you meet and discuss?” He answered the
Imām ( المسال) in the affirmative, whereupon the Imām ( المسال) said, “I surely love such majālis; so, keep our memory
alive; whoever sits at a majlis in our memory, his heart will not die when hearts die.”

The Imāms, peace be upon them, aimed by so explaining to urge the nation to believe in their
Imāmate and in what the Master, Glory to Him, has mandated of their Infallibility and what He bestowed
upon them of the virtues and merits, and that directing people to them cannot be separated from belief in
their being the caliphs, had it not been for those who usurped this divine post.

The things that remind people of al-Ḥusayn ( المسال), in their various methods, such as commemorative
majālis, mournings,³ beating the cheeks⁴ at homes and in the streets..., help promote the sect. The role of the

¹al-Ṣādiq, `Uyūn Akhbār al-Rida, p. 62.

²Holding commemorative gatherings (majālis) to bring that tragedy to memory is not confined to homes, for such an understanding
contradicts the spirit of the narration. In his Aḥnāl (masal), al-Ṣādiq cites Imām al-Rida ( المسال) saying, “One who is reminded of our
tragedy and who consequently weeps, his eyes shall not weep on the Day when eyes will be blinded [with tears of remorse].” On p.
26 of Quṭr al-Insīnād, Abu Ṭabullāh ( المسال) is quoted as saying, “Anyone who mentions us or to whom we are mentioned and who sheds
a tear as small as the wing of a fly, Allāh will forgive his sins.” On p. 100 of Kāmil al-Ziyārāt, Abu Hārūn quotes Abu Ṭabullāh ( المسال)
saying that one to whom al-Ḥusayn ( المسال) is mentioned, so he sheds a tear as small as a fly’s wing, will be rewarded by Allāh Who will
not accept anything for less than Paradise. There are many such statements which urge the employment of any means whereby
al-Ḥusayn’s tragedy or the tragedies that befell Ahl al-Bayt ( المسال) are brought to memory, such as holding commemorative majālis,
spending money on them, composing poetry or writing about such tragedies, the citation of already composed poems in their honour,
or re-enacting the tragedy before people in all its aspects. All of these are implied in his following statement: “Whoever reminds others
of our tragedy..., etc.”

³Ibn Qawlawayh, Kāmil al-Ziyārāt, p. 174, where Mālik al-Juhni quotes Imām al-Bāqir, peace be upon him saying, “On Ṭāhūra,
let everyone mourn al-Ḥusayn, weep, and demonstrate his grief for him. They should meet one another at their homes weeping over
him, and let them pay condolences to one another on the anniversary of al-Ḥusayn’s tragedy, for I guarantee for them, if they do so,
that Allāh will grant them the rewards of two million pilgrimages and `umra and campaigns with the Messenger of Allāh and the
guided Imāms, peace be upon them.”

⁴On p. 283, Vol. 2, of Al-Tahthīb, Shaikh al-Ṭāsi quotes Imām Ja’far al-Ṣādiq ( المسال), at the end of a chapter dealing with atonements
re-enactment of the tragedy, accompanied by the recitation of poetry and the narration of the epic, best demonstrates the cruelty which the Umayyahds and their followers inflicted upon al-Husain (ع). It thus clearly reaches the minds of children and the commoners who do not comprehend what is contained in the books, or in poetry, of the particulars of the incident. It is the most effective means in influencing people and in strengthening their determination to safeguard the religious links between us and the Imāms (ع) and those who paid tribute to them, and it plays a major role in firming the creed.

Other people, such as the Indians, in addition to other Islamic sects, have emulated the Shi`as in the re-enactment of the Taff tragedy. This is more prevalent in India than in any other Islamic heartland.1

Attracting attention to such reminders and promoting them is needed primarily to keep the memory of the Infallible Ones alive with those who love them, those who love to discuss them and to remember them. Probably a host of the benefits of doing so are not appreciated by the nation. The most they get out of them is that their doing so brings them rewards in the hereafter; that is all. But one who is acquainted with the mysteries of Ahl al-Bayt (ع) and who digs deep in order to digest the implications of their statements and actions will clearly see what they have referred to with regard to such meetings and with their urging their Shi`as to do due to their munificence and vast knowledge.

MOURNING AL-ḤUSAIN

Among such benefits is the intensive urge (which reaches the limit of consecutive reporting) to weep over what happened to the Master of Martyrs, so much so that it has been reported that one who sheds a tear as little as the wing of a fly, his tear will put out the fire of hell. The reason behind that is: One cannot shed a tear except when he is emotionally moved and is deeply distressed because of what he or someone to whom he/she is attached had to endure. Undoubtedly, we see such a person moved by something else which is: enmity and contempt for all the injustice and suffering inflicted. The Imāms are the most knowledgeable of all people on account of their conditions and circumstances which testify to their mission. They used to seek all means to attain their objectives. One of those means, which obligate one to abandon the enemies of Allah and His Messenger (صلى الله عليه وسلم), is their order to weep over the tragedy that befell al-Husain (ع) because it requires the bringing to memory of the heart-rending cruelty, to its emotional effects, and to the renunciation of whatever does not agree with their line. This is the implication of the statement made by al-Husain (ع), wherein he said, “am the one killed and for whose killing tears are shed; no muʾmin remembers me without shedding his tears.” A believer, who is bonded to al-Husain (ع) with the bond of loyalty and support, finds himself moved and his heart distressed with regard to any harm or peril the Imām (ع) had to undergo, and such a feeling intensifies when calamities reach their peak.

To sum up, the Master of Martyrs did not mean, by saying, “I am the one killed and for whose killing tears are shed,” that his being killed was solely for the purpose of people weeping over him and receiving their rewards in the hereafter, without mentioning any other effect resulting from his being killed other than people weeping over him. How can this be so especially in the presence of other effects the most important of which is to keep the pristine Ṣharīʿa alive and to correct what went wrong of the knowledge of

1In an article published in issue No. 28 (17th year), of the Persian newspaper Al-Habl al-Matn, Dr. Joseph, a French intellectual, is quoted as saying that such a re-enactment has been employed by Shi`as since the time of the Safawides (Safavids) who acquired their authority through the power of their creed assisted by their theologians and scholars.
guidance and the dissemination of reform among the nation and acquainting people of the oppression of the oppressive rulers who pursue their ambition?

But the reason for such an addition is underscoring the relationship between what reference he made to his being killed and mourning him. One who grieves for him shall never find a redress from his grief, and the pain of disappointment can never subside due to the multitude of tragedies that befell him and to his being receptive to them with patience which drew the admiration of the angels in the heavens. The first reaction to the listener, who is moved by such tragedies, is that he weeps over them; so, whenever he remembers al-Ḥusain (��), his tears flow. Add to this the love for him in the hearts of those who love him: if you add this to that loyalty, it will better underscore the relationship between remembering him and mourning him. It is from this juncture that killing is associated with him, hence his statement, “I am the one killed and for whose killing tears are shed.”

This has been the custom of the Arabs in their speech. Whenever they see a very strong link between somebody and one of his conditions, characteristics, etc., they add his name to it. They, for example, use expressions such as “Mudar al-Hamrā’,” “Rabi‘ah al-Khayl,” “Zayd al-Nār,” “children of the fire,” “...husband poisoning,” and so on. Rabi‘ah and Mudar did not leave out any good attribute with which they could adorn themselves except bearing the standard of war and providing horses for the battle. Zayd son of Imām Māṣa ibn Ja‘far (لى) was not known as having done anything outstanding, be it good or bad, other than burning the houses of the Ṭabarids in Basra. Nor did the children of Abu Mu‘āt earn any human attribute to identify them except being the children of the fire [of hell] which the Messenger of Allāh (صلى الله عليه وسلم) added to their name when he ordered their father, Ṣa‘d ibn Abu Mu‘āt, an unbeliever, to be killed; it was then that he asked the Prophet (صلى الله عليه وسلم), “O Muḥammad! Who will take care of my children?” “The fire,” answered the Messenger of Allāh, peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him and his progeny.

Nor was Ju‘da daughter of al-Ash‘ath known by any vice more than the poison which she administered to Abu Muḥammed, Imām al-Ḥasan (لى), grandson of the Prophet (صلى الله عليه وسلم). But since these results are common knowledge among people, the name of the tribe of Mudar came to be associated with “al-Hamrā’,” the blood-red battle, whereas the war horses are added to Rabi‘ah, the fire that burned the Ṭabarids was associated with Zayd's name, and Ju‘da came to be associated with husband poisoning.

Al-Ḥusain (لى) is quoted as saying, “I am the one killed and for whose killing tears are shed” (as he is referred to as such by Imām al-Ṣa‘dīq [اة]). This falls in the same category when the link is so strong between al-Ḥusain (لى) and the tears shed in his memory.

FEIGN WEEPING

The Imāms of guidance (لى) liked to keep such memories alive forever so that successive generations might discuss them. They knew that the creed would stay fresh as long as the nation remembered this great tragedy. They did not only condone what has to be done, that is, weeping upon remembering the tragedy, they went as far as recommending feign crying over it, that is, that one cries without shedding any tears. Imām al-Ṣa‘dīq (لى) says, “Whoever cries [over our tragedies] even without shedding tears will be in Paradise.”

It is a known fact that one who finds it hard to shed tears while being moved by a tragic event is not unaffected by it. Many do so. Being psychologically moved by imagining what pain and agony a loved one suffers necessitates repugnance towards the person responsible for inflicting them.

The Prophet (صلى الله عليه وسلم) once recited the last verses of Sūrat al-Zumar to a group of the Ṭanār: “So those who disbelieved were driven to hell in hordes” (Qurʾān, 39:71). They all wept with the exception of one

1 al-Ṣa‘dūq, Āmāli, p. 86, majlis 29.
young man among them who said, “My eyes did not shed a tear, yet I wept feignly.” The Prophet (ﷺ) then said, “One who weeps feignly [over such matters] will be in Paradise.”

Jarir quotes the Prophet (ﷺ) saying, “I am going to recite to you Sarat al-Takâthur; so, anyone who is unable to weep tearfully should do so feignly. Whoever weeps tearfully will be in Paradise, and whoever weeps feignly will also be in Paradise.”

Abu Tharr al-Ghifârî has quoted the Prophet (ﷺ) saying, “If one of you is able to weep, let him do so, but if he cannot, then let his heart sense the grief, and let him weep feignly, for a hard heart is distant from Allah.”

These traditions tell us that even if one weeps without shedding tears, he does so because his heart is grieved, and his soul cries. But out of awe for the Almighty, Praise to Him, grief and sadness are the outcome of imagining what consequences await those who disobey the Master, what shame they will receive in the hereafter. He, hence, distances himself from any such thing and does whatever brings him closer to the Almighty. When it comes to remembering the tragedies inflicted upon the offspring of the Prophet (ﷺ), it is a must to hate those who opposed, schemed against, and harmed them.

What we have pointed out may be the same that Shaikh Muhammed `Abdoh refers to. Says he, “To cry feignly is to weep with affectation, not out of pretense.”

Al-Sharîf al-Jurjâni says that some people dislike it because of the affectation in it, whereas others permit it for those who aim to express the same feeling [of grief]. Its origin goes back to a statement made by the Messenger of Allah, peace of Allah be upon him and his progeny, “If you do not weep tearfully, then pretend to do so,” meaning those who wish to weep, not those who are indifferent, are distracted.

Both one who weeps tearfully and one who does so tearlessly share one common denominator: both are deeply distressed and saddened by imagining what injustice was inflicted on Ahl al-Bayt (けれども). Both are equal in their repulsion from those who usurped the status reserved for Ahl al-Bayt (けれども) and their aversion thereto.

One who does not comprehend the implication of the speech of the Infallible ones (けれども) will rush to make a judgment on those who weep tearlessly, yet after our explanation of the mystery, you will come to realize their wisdom and eloquence.

Numerous are the mysteries that involve Ahl al-Bayt (けれども) which cannot be comprehended except by one who carefully examines their speech and studies their circumstances, for they never ceased to explore minute ways to attract the souls to them and to acquaint them with their usurped right.

Among that is what Imam al-Baqir, peace be upon him, wished to be done by way of his will which was the giving of eight hundred dirhams to women to mourn him at Mina during the hajj season. Pilgrims from various countries of the world, and from different sects, assemble at Mina during the hajj. It is then that they can enjoy anything previously made prohibitive to them (during the earlier ten days) except women. These are days of festivities and merry making; people in groups visit one another;

---

2 Ibid., p. 148.
4 Tafsîr al-Manâr, Vol. 8, p. 301.
5 Al-Ta’rifat, p. 48.
congratulation parties are held, and places are set up to congratulate one another. If you consider the Imām's choice of this particular time and place, you will realize the precise observation the Imām (化合) took notice of when he preferred those days at Mina over those at `Arafāt or at the mash`ar where people will usually be busy with the rituals and the supplications to the Creator, Praise to Him, in addition to the short period they have to spend there.

Yes, those three days at Mina, the days of Eid, of merry-making and of felicity, not of grief or weeping, were the choice of the Imām (化合). Of course, one who hears someone crying during those happy days will be strongly motivated by curiosity to find out the reasons that caused him to cry, and to ask who is being mourned, what his cause is, and what he had done. He would ask about those who antagonized him and usurped his right. Through such questioning will the truth become clear and so will the best way, for the light of Allah can never be extinguished, and the call to Him is clear in argument.

Such news will be transmitted by people to those who are distant from its stage once they go home. Those who were not there to witness it would thus come to know about it, and the argument would be completed, so nobody can say that he did not go to Medina, home town of Allah's hujjah, or that nobody told him anything, nor did he know the Imām's call and of his opponents being misguided. Nobody would thus remain ignorant of it.

Thus do we come to understand the reason why the Imām (化合) refrained from requiring those mourners to mourn him at Mecca or Medina during the hajj days: in both cities, mourning is done at home, so how can men get to know about these mourners, and how can such mourning convey the desired message?

The claim that a woman's voice is one of her means of attraction which strangers are prohibited from hearing is rebutted by a narration recorded by al-Kulayni in his book titled Al-Kāfi:

Umm Khalid came once to visit Imām al-Ṣadiq (化合), and she was a lady of wisdom and knowledge. Abu Busayr was then present among his companions. He, peace be upon him, asked Abu Buṣayr, “Would you like to hear her speak?” Then he (化合) seated her with him on a couch. Umm Khalid spoke, and she was a wise and eloquent woman.¹

Had a woman's voice been prohibited from reaching strangers’ ears, the Imām (化合) would not have permitted Abu Busayr to hear her.

In his will, Imām al-Baqir (化合) appropriated money for female mourners to mourn him at Mina. This implies the permission of men to hear their voices; otherwise, he would have required them to mourn him at their homes in Medina and Mecca. But the Imām's reasoning is quite clear, and his objective cannot be achieved unless men heard these women's voices and came to know who they were mourning. In an incident narrated by Hammād al-Kāfi, Imām al-Ṣadiq (化合) said to him, “It has come to my knowledge that some people from Kafa visit the grave of Abu ‘Abdullāh (化合) on the fifteenth of Sha‘ban, and that some of them recite the Qur‘an while others narrate stories about him, and that some women mourn him.” Hammād said, “I have witnessed some of what you have just described.” The Imām (化合) then said to him, “Praise is due to Allah Who has let from among our Shi‘a those who visit our grave sites, who praise and mourn us.”¹²

Nobody can deny that when women mourn their dead at any cemetery, they will be heard by strangers. Had it been prohibitive, the Imām and hujjah (化合) would not have commended it and invoked Allah to have mercy

¹al-Hurr al-‘Āmili, Al-Wasā’il, Vol. 3, p. 25, chapter 106, in the verdict with regard to one who hears a female stranger. It is also recorded as tradition 319 in al-Kāfi’s Rawda.

²Ibn Qawlawayh al-Qummi, Kāmil al-Ziyārāt, p. 325, chapter 108, at the beginning of discussing rare incidents.
on their dead.

A woman's voice being 'awra is not supported by any narration. What is reported about men being prohibited from talking to or sleeping at the house of a female stranger is not on account of her voice being 'awra but because of the possibility that omenous things may happen. As he starts discussing nikāh in the 9th query, 'allāma al-Hilli, in his book Al-Tahrir, says that a blind man is not permitted to hear the voice of a female stranger. He probably is saying so only on account of her being a stranger, without implying that it is so because of its being an 'awra. Yes, he indicates in his book Al-Tathkira, at the beginning of his discussion of nikāh, that her voice is an 'awra, and that it is not permissible to be heard by strangers due to the allurement potential, not without. The Shāfi‘i is have two viewpoints regarding its being an 'awra. The author of Al-Jawāhir responded to the critics by saying that along the passage of many centuries, women have been addressing leading religious authorities (imāms); the speeches of Fātimah al-Zahrā‘, peace be upon her [before Abu Bakr and in the presence of the Ansār and the Muhajirūn], and that of her daughters [such as Zainab's speeches in Kāfa and at Yazid's court in Damascus], are very well known facts.

Sunni fiqh does not prohibit it. For example, on p. 167, Vol. 1, of Al-Fiqh ala al-Mathāhib al-Arba‘a, it is indicated that, “A woman's voice is not an 'awra because the wives of the Prophet (ﷺ) used to speak to the saḥābah who used to listen to their [wives'] religious aḥkām.” On p. 127, Vol. 2, of his book Nayl al-Arab, al-Shaybānī, a Hanbali Sunni, says, “Woman's voice is not an 'awra, but to derive illicit pleasure out of hearing it is harām.” This is the same view expressed by Ibn Hajar on p. 27, Vol. 1, of his commentary on restraints in his book Kaff al-Ru‘ā. Yes, some scholars from among Ahl al-Sunnah went as far as considering it an 'awra, a view which is not endorsed by Ibn Hajar. Ibn Najīm, a Hanafī Sunni, says the following on p. 270, Vol. 1, of his book Al-Bahr al-Rāʾiq: “The author of Al-Kāfi says that woman must not utter the talbiya audibly because her voice is 'awar. The same view is expressed by the author of Al-Muhit as he discusses the call to the prayers (athān).” Commenting on this subject, the author of Fath al-Qadīr says, “Had this been applied to her raising her voice during the prayers, and that it voids them, it would make more sense.” The author of Sharh al-Maniyya says that a woman's voice is not an 'awra but it may lead to infatuation. This is the same reasoning adopted by the author of Al-Hidāya and by others with regard to the issue of making talbiya. In Al-Nawāzil, the author states that a woman's tone of voice is an 'awra. He bases it on his claim that a woman prefers to learn the Holy Qur‘an from another woman rather than from a blind man.

In his book Al-Ashbāh wa al-Nazā‘ir, Ibn Najīm, on p. 200, where he discusses the injunctions relevant to hermaphrodites, says that the latter’s voice is an 'awra. On p. 12, Vol. 3, of Al-Furū‘ by Ibn Muflih, the Hanbali scholar, it is stated that it is more accurate to say that hearing a stranger's voice is not a sin because it is not an 'awra. On p. 12, Vol. 4, of al-Ayni's book Sharh al-Bukhārī, at the end of a chapter discussing walking behind borne coffins, the author states that a woman has to reciprocate the greeting of a man and not to raise her voice because it is an 'awra. On p. 250, Vol. 1, of Zayn ad-Dīn al-Iraqi's book Tarḥ al-Tathrīb, the author cites Ibn 'Abd al-Birr's view in his book Al-Istithkār that a woman's voice is not an 'awra adding, “... which is the accurate view according to the Shāfi‘ ‘i.” On p. 45, Vol. 7, of the same reference, where nikāh is discussed, the author says, “Her voice is not an 'awra.” The following is stated on p. 249, Vol. 7, of al-Nawawi's book Sharḥ al-Majmū‘ (second edition): “Both al-Dārmī and Abu al-Tayyib, the judge, have said that it is not prohibitive for a woman to raise her voice during the talbiya.” As he discusses the subject of talbiya, on p. 274, Vol. 4, of Nayl al-Awtār, al-Shawkānī says, “According to al-Rāyānī and Ibn al-Rifā‘, her voice is not prohibitive when raised during the talbiya because it is not an 'awra.”

**PROSTRATING ON THE TURBA**

81
One of the methods adopted by the Imāms from among the Ahl al-Bayt, peace be upon them, in order to acquaint people with the oppression to which al-Husain (ツ) was subjected, and to distance them from those who robbed him of what rightfully belonged to him, that his uprising perfected the Prophet's call and paved its path, is their requirement to prostrate on the turba. One of the reasons behind such a requirement is that five times a day, the person performing the prayers recalls, whenever he prostrates, the sacrifice of the soul of the Prophet (ۚ) and that of his Ahl al-Bayt (ツ) and companions, as well as that of his companions, for the sake of firming the foundations of the right principle. He will also recall the calamities the Master of Martyrs endured and from which even solid rocks would split, meeting them with perseverance which drew the admiration of the angels in the heavens, as the wording in his ziyarat indicates. Then he recalls the fact that this soil was drenched with the blood of the oppressed one and that of the pure ones from among his Ahl al-Bayt (ツ) and companions, those who were described by the Commander of the Faithful (ツ) as the masters of martyrs, none before them reached their status, nor those who follow them ever will, as stated on p. 270, chapter 88, of Kāmil al-Ziyarat of Ibn Qawlawayh al-Qummi.

The heart of the one who is faithful to them would be filled with emotion; tears would trickle down his eyes, and he distances himself from anyone who antagonized them and all those who did likewise as well as those who shed their blood or facilitated such a most foul deed. It would become quite clear for him that this great revolution smashed the altars of oppression. Succeeding generations came to know how a most precious person found death easy in defense of the creed. So is their order to make rosary beads of the said soil and to use them to praise the Almighty in order to achieve the same precious objective. All these objectives are explained by Ahl al-Bayt (ツ) although the nation did not comprehend their minute mysteries.

Others, due to their ignorance, charged us with starting a bid`a by doing so. The misguidance of such critics is the outcome of their ignorance of these wise mysteries and their own inability to comprehend the hadith stated by the one who conveyed the wahi of the heavens: “The earth has been made a mosque for me and a means of purification.” This small piece of earth, prepared for the purpose of prostrating, is made of dust mixed with water, so it is a testimony to the authenticity of this agreed upon hadith.

**LEGISLATING THE ZIYARAT**

During certain times, hordes of pilgrims regard the ziyarat [visiting the Imāms' shrines], a highly commendable deed. They visit one of the foundations of the creed and the lighthouse of its guidance, and from it are the injunctions derived and where the branches of knowledge are researched. Visitors go to his grave from various parts of the world. People get to know each other; they witness such an amazing crowd. There is an incessant stampede. Everyone desires to get to the holy shrine, for the one being visited is the same who promoted a divine call and is a caller to the path of his Lord with wisdom and good exhortation... The pilgrim realizes, even more so, the greatness of the person he is visiting. He will better appreciate him and his cause, and he will be very impressed by such an elating sight. His heart will be more kind, and his conviction grows stronger. It is only natural that he would then be attracted to following his teachings, studying his biography, researching his legacy, and getting to know the injustice inflicted upon him. And the least of such innumerable benefits does not end here. There is another advantage: such ziyarat cements the bonds of fraternity among brethren, the fraternity called for by the Book of Allah in the verse saying, “Believers are brethren of one another” (Qur’ān, 49:10). When the visitors meet at the grave-site or on their way to it, they discuss deeds of righteousness and the rewards related thereto; they admonish one another with regard to the right faith, so the error in the beliefs of other sects becomes unveiled. So is the latter’s straying from the right course, and the bond between the faithful becomes based on wisdom.

---

1A turba is a small piece of dry clay preferably from the place where Imām Husain (ツ) was martyred. – Tr.
This is the truth with regard to visiting the shrines of all the Imāms of guidance. They are the awesome path, the avenue that leads to every guidance, the conscience of reform, the cultivated rite, the true guidance, the complete knowledge. Also, belief in them must be established after realizing their apparent distinction, tremendous knowledge, legendary piety, and innumerable miracles. There is no doubt that to visit their holy shrines with the intention to seek nearness to the Master, Praise to Him, strengthens such a creed and firmly establishes it.

This is the only reason for legislating the ziyārat. As regarding specifying a particular ziyārat for the Master of Martyrs, in addition to urging others to visit his shrine at any time, rather than that of any other Imām, or even that of the Master of Messengers (ṣ), there are many reasons behind that:

The most important reason is that the Umayyad mentality is still alive, and it increases or decreases in intensity from time to time. Those who have certain vested interests periodically howl about it. Although the Umayyads have turned into dust rags and nothing is attached to their name except shame and are cursed whenever they are mentioned, yet since such a propensity is atheistic in nature and is promoted by their gang and by those who join them from the generations, Ahl al-Bayt (ṣ) paid a special attention to putting its fire out and to attracting the attention to its deviation from the right path, the path brought by the Greatest Saviour who suffered so much in order to disseminate his call and keep it alive. One of the means that lead the souls to such a path, acquainting them with the injustice meted to Ahl al-Bayt (ṣ) and directing them towards the divine right clarified for them by the great legislator (ṣ), is the cause of the Master of Martyrs: It is full of tragedies to which the heart of the most bitter enemy softens, let alone that of his follower who recognizes the Imām' usurped authority.

The Imāms (ṣ) desired that their Shi`as should remain all year round, as days come and go, fully alert with regard to those who usurped such an authority, the ones that are so distant from the right path. They, therefore, required them to be present around the shrine of the masters of the youths of Paradise on specific occasions, and during other times as well. It is only natural that such assemblies bring to memory the cruelty employed by the Umayyads who slaughtered the children and banished the daughters of the Prophet (ṣ) from one country to another.

They were forced to ride
Hands to the necks tied
On bare hump she-camels they did ride.
No veil did their faces find:
Behind forearms and hands did they hide.¹

Fervour and manliness insist that nobody should surrender and accept to be ruled by anyone who inflicts such horrible deeds on anyone else at all, let alone on the family of the most holy Prophet (ṣ). It is then that the souls become filled with emotion, feelings reach their ebb, and judgment is issued against those filthy folks who reneged from the Islamic faith. Of course, such a cause with regard to the Master of Martyrs is more binding than any other Imām because his cause contains that which softens the hearts. It is from this juncture that the Infallible Ones (ṣ) used him as their argument whereby they assault their foes. They, therefore, required their followers to weep, to commemorate in any way, to visit his shrine..., and so on and so forth, causing the umma to become full of the memory of Husain: Husaini in principle, and to the last breath Husaini...

¹From a poem by Shaikh Hādī Kāshif al-Ghīṭā’, may Allāh sanctify him.
Imam Ja‘fer al-Šadiq (ع) recites a special supplication during his prostration which has been transmitted to us by Mu‘awiyah ibn Wahab. It casts a divine light in the depths of the hearts; it reaffirms the creed; it brings ease to the soul, and it acquaints us with obscure mysteries. The Imam (ع) used to say the following whenever he prostrated:

Lord! You are the One Who chose us to receive Your bliss, promised us to intercede, granted us the knowledge of what passed and of what remains, made the hearts of some people lean towards us: I invoke You to forgive me and my brethren and those who visit the grave-site of my grandfather al-Husain, those who spend their wealth and exhaust themselves out of their desire to express their devotion to us, hoping to earn the rewards which You have for all those who maintain their link with us, and because of the pleasure they bring to Your Prophet, and out of their response to our own order to do so. Reward them for having vexed our enemy as they sought Your Pleasure. Do reward them, O Lord, on our behalf, and grant them sustenance during the night and the day, and be generous to their families and offspring, those who succeed them in doing such good deeds. Be their Friend; ward off from them the evil of all stubborn tyrants, all those from among Your creatures. Protect their weak from the evil of the mighty ones, be they demons, humans, or jinns. And grant them the best of what they aspire as they estrange themselves from their home-lands, and for preferring us over their sons, families, and kinsfolk. Lord! Our enemies find fault with their going out to visit our shrines, yet it does not stop them from doing so, unlike those who oppose us. Lord! Have mercy on the faces transformed by the heat of the sun. Have mercy on the cheeks that touch the grave of Abu `Abdullāh, al-Husain. Have mercy on the eyes that weep out of kindness to us. Have mercy on the hearts that are grieved on our account and are fired with passion for us. And have mercy on those who mourn us. Lord! I implore You to be the Custodian of these souls and bodies till You bring them to the Pool [of Kawthar] on the Day of the great thirst.

When Mu‘awiyah ibn Wahab regarded this supplication as giving “too much” for those who visit the grave-site of Imam al-Husain (ع), Imam al-Šadiq (ع) said to him, “Those in the heavens who supplicate for those who visit al-Husain's grave-site are more numerous than those who do so on earth.”

This supplication by the Imam of the nation contains great injunctions and attributes which only those who seek their light and uphold the rope of their guidance appreciate. The mourning to which the Imam (ع) refers near the end of his supplication is the result of one who is terrified and afflicted with a calamity. Since there is no specifying whether such mourning takes place at home or simply everywhere, it is commendable no matter where it may be, be it in the streets, or upon seeing a re-enactment, or at any other situation encountered by men or women.

Among the other means which Ahl al-Bayt (ع) enjoined their Shī‘as to do is rubbing their cheeks on the most pure grave. There is no need to specify the grave of al-Husain (ع) because there is one narration relevant to saluting the graves recorded by Shaikh al-Tusi on p. 200, Vol. 1, of his book Al-Tahthīb has transmitted by Muhammed ibn ‘Abdullāh al-Himyari who says, “I wrote the faqīh asking him about one who visits grave-sites. He wrote me back stating near his signature that prostrating on graves is not

---


permissible in any obligatory or optional prayer, but one may place his right cheek on the grave, and this is general due to the recommendation that one places his cheek on any of the graves of the Infallible ones, peace be upon them.”

**PREFERING THEM (ℓ) OVER ALL OTHERS**

Among what this supplication leads us to is the extent to which the Shi‘as go in expressing their love for Ahl al-Bayt (ℓ), spending their money with generosity to keep the memory of their Imāms (ℓ) alive whenever they hold somber commemorations, birth anniversaries, etc., and by preferring them over their offspring, families and kinsfolk.

The implication of putting some people ahead of all others through self-denial is not far from your mind. It is holding others as more important than one's own self. This can be done either by satisfying all the requirements demanded by friendship, or by assisting one to achieve his objective, or by expressing utmost regards for him. It is one of the commendable traits which spring out of one's own goodness of nature, loftiness of moral code, and excellence of substance. Allāh, the Praised and the Exalted One, has praised those who adorn themselves thereby saying, “They prefer others over themselves even when poverty is their lot” (Qur‘ān, 59:9), that is, even when they themselves are in need, being poor, destitute.¹

There is no confusion about the fact that one who is preferred over all others, once he combines in him the requirements that earn him such a preference, will be further recognized as being worthy of such a preference. If you keenly observe those adorned with virtues, you will find none more worthy of being preferred than the inspired Progeny (ℓ) due to the excellent status and the unsurpassed eminence awarded them by the Creator, Praise to Him. Their favours upon the nation obligate the latter to reward them, and to pay them their due rights, the payment which nobody can avoid.

Whoever regards them as his masters, preferring them over himself, his family, and kinsfolk, submits to the fact that the Imāms (ℓ) are the reason behind the divine bounties, the ones who were taught the Sharī‘a by Him, and the means of bringing happiness to man and his earning high plains. Such bounties include their moral excellences, an upright way of dealing with others, social graces and moral codes that guarantee one's success.

Add to the above the Imāms' great efforts to rescue the nation and bring it to the haven of safety and security, saving it from the deluge of annihilation, so much so that they, peace be upon them, preferred doing so over living a happy life. Thus, they sacrificed themselves so that the nation might remain on the right track, or so that they may keep the torment away from the members of the nation.

According to one tradition by Imām Musa ibn Ja‘fer (ℓ), he preferred to suffer rather than let his Shi‘as suffer. The Imāms (ℓ), moreover, never ceased loving their Shi‘as. Every morning and every evening, they used to plead to Allāh to have mercy on them. They were happy whenever their Shi‘as were happy, and they were grieved whenever their Shi‘as were grieved. This is so because the Shi‘as are the remnant of the Imāms’ own mold; they are the leaves of that good tree whose roots are firmly planted and whose branches are high in the sky.

For example, al-Hujjah, may Allah hasten his reappearance, has offered the following supplication for them:

O Allāh! Our Shi‘as were created of the rays of our own noors and of the remnant of our own mold. They have committed many sins, relying on their love for us. If their sins are relevant

¹Refer to p. 387, Vol. 4, of Tāj al-‘Arūs.
to their duties toward You, do, O Lord, forgive them, for it pleases us that You do so. And if such sins are relevant to their obligations towards us, do, O Lord, mend their affairs and distance such sins from reaching the khums due to us. Permit them, O Lord, to enter Paradise; move them away from hell, and do not include them in Your wrath with our enemies.\footnote{This supplication appears on p. 281 of al-Nawari's Supplement to Vol. 12 of \textit{Biḥār al-Anwār}.}

I cannot imagine, since the case is as such, that you can find in the code of rights and obligations, or in the norms of faithfulness, or in the requirements of manliness, any justification for laxing in solacing the bearers of the Message by preferring them over your own self and your family in everything precious or not so precious. You, otherwise, will plunge in the deepest pit of meanness. You will permit yourself to be the target of blame by reason on one hand, and by the requirements of the \textit{Sharī'a} on the other, assaulted by manliness.

There is no doubt that Imam al-Ṣādiq (шей) would like us to adorn ourselves with self-denial in order to keep the memory of all members of Ahl al-Bayt (шей) alive. We come to such a conclusion when we discern the reference used by the Imam (шей) in his supplication: Having supplicated for those who visit the shrine of Imam Husain (шей), invoked Allah to grant them the fulfillment of their best wishes, he (шей) said, “... and reward them for that whereby they preferred us over themselves.” His using the plural “themselves” connotes his loving them for having preferred the Imāms (しゃ) over their own selves, something which brings goodness to each and every one of them.

Since preference awarded to visiting the shrine of the Oppressed Imam (しゃ) is inclusive, due to its bringing to memory his sacred stand, whoever stands before the pure shrines sees himself as though he stands between both ranks: the rank of sanctity, of guidance to everything good, and his band, and the rank of the product of the Thursday of Infamy, namely Yazīd and his followers, observing the stand taken by the first party with regard to what is right and to integrity, and the [evil] end sought by those who opted to follow falsehood and uncleanness. He, therefore, will have then kindled the fires of two attributes: loyalty to one party and dissociation from the other.

A far-sighted discreet person cannot overlook the implication in the statement cited above in Abu Abdullah's supplication: “O Allah! Our enemies found fault with them (with our Shi‘as) for visiting our shrines, yet this did not stop them from doing so, thus distinguishing themselves from those who opposed our ways.” He, peace be upon him, desired to urge the Shi‘as to always keep consoling Ahl al-Bayt (しゃ) and respecting their rites, keeping their heritage alive and disseminating their legacy. Any calamity suffered by them while following such a path is surely witnessed by Allah, the most Exalted One, and it pleases His Purified Friends. The mockery of those who mock does not harm them in the least so long as they are on the right path. The Jews had made fun of the \textit{athān}, just as the polytheists had made fun of the \textit{sujūd}, yet it did not weaken the Muslims' determination in the least, so they continued their march on the straight path heedless of the pitfalls of others.

Those who visit the grave-site of Abu Abdullah, al-Husain (しゃ), and who crowd to uphold the Husaini rites, are not harmed by the mockery of the ignorants about whom al-Ṣādiq (しゃ) says, “By Allah! Their luck missed the mark! From achieving Allah’s rewards did they swerve! And from nearness to Muhammed (peace be upon him) did they distance themselves!”

When Thurayh al-Muhārībī said to him once, “Whenever I detail the merits of visiting (the grave-site) of Abu Abdullah [al-Husain] (しゃ), my offspring and kinsfolk make fun of me,” the Imam (しゃ) responded
He (‡) said once to Hammād, “It has come to my knowledge that some people from Kāfa, as well as others in its outskirts, visit on the middle of Sha`bān the grave of Abu `Abdullāh (‡), and that some of them recite the Qur’ān while others narrate the story (of his martyrdom), while still others laud us, and that the women mourn him.” Hammād said, “I have personally seen some of what you have described.” The Imām (‡) then said, “Praise to Allāh Who let some people come to us to laud us, to mourn us, while letting our enemies fault them and describe what they do as abominable.”

The ridicule of those who distance themselves from Ahl al-Bayt (‡), those who shy away from upholding these rites, does not undermine the goodness of the legacy which endears to us the keeping of the memory of the Imāms alive, and it has benefitted the nation in the life of this world and will benefit it in the life hereafter.

In one hadith by the Messenger of Allāh (‡), he said to the Commander of the Faithful (‡), “A scum [of the earth] from among the people reproach those who visit your graves just as an adulteress is reproached about having committed adultery. These are the evil ones of my nation. May Allāh never permit them to earn my intercession on the Day of Judgment.”

COMPOSING POETRY IN THEIR MEMORY

What is obvious beyond the shadow of doubt is that composing poetry about anyone means introducing him to others, keeping his name alive, and publicizing for him. Men's legacy, no matter how highly esteemed by others and how great, may lose its glow as time goes by. Such legacy, therefore, will eventually be overlooked and its great significance forgotten. Poetry is faster to steal people's attention and appreciation. People disseminate it, tongues articulate it, hearts memorize it and pass it on from one generation to another, from one nation to another. Arabic literature has preserved a great deal of this nations' history, biographies and wars, during the period of jāhiliyya and since the dawn of Islam. Among what Du`bal al-Khuza`i has said about poetry's perpetuation across the centuries are these lines:

If I compose a line, its composer will die, yet I
Am quoted: one whose verse shall never die.

`Urwah ibn Uthaynah has said,

I was told about men who did fear
That I vilify them, and I do not vilify.
If they are innocent, my poetry shall not come near
Them, nor shall they be censured thereby.
But if they are in esteem less than that,
And utter something with an effect to last,
It will mean to these men

1This quotation is stated on p. 143, Chapter 51, of Kāmil al-Ziyārāt of Ibn Qawlawayh al-Qummi.

2This dialogue is stated on p. 124 of Mazār al-Bihār, and on p. 325, Chapter 108, of the first edition of Kāmil al-Ziyārat by Ibn Qawlawayh al-Qummi.

3Refer to this hadith as stated on p. 31 of Farhat al-Ghari by Ibn Ṭāwūs.
Many a book and many a pen.

Since remembering Ahl al-Bayt (ع) is the pillar of the creed and the spirit of reform, and through it are their teachings taught and footsteps followed, the Infallible Imāms (ع) kept urging their followers to publicize their abundant merits, the calamities they underwent, and their suffering as they tried to keep the creed alive. Publicizing the tragedies that befell them and the agonies they had to withstand will keep their cause alive. May Allāh have mercy on all those who keep their memory alive and who invite others to remember them.

Imām Abu Ja`fār al-Baqīr (ع) said the following to al-Kumait when the latter recited for him his poem which starts with “Who shall solace a heart suffering from overflowing passion?”: “May you always be supported by the Holy Spirit.”

When al-Kumait once sought permission of Imām al-Ṣādiq (ع) during the days of ṭaḥrīq to recite his poem to him, the Imām (ع) thought it was quite a serious offence to recite poetry during such great days. But when al-Kumait said to him, “It is composed about you (Ahl al-Bayt [as]),” the father of Abdullāh (ع) became quite relaxed because doing so is obligatory due to its resulting in keeping the traditions of Ahl al-Bayt (ع) alive. Then he called upon some of his family members to join them both, whereupon al-Kumait recited his poem. There was a great deal of weeping when he recited the verse saying,

Shooters hit thereby the mark the others are missing:
O last one led to misguidance by the first: Do listen!

It was then that Imām al-Ṣādiq (ع) raised his hands and supplicated saying, “O Allāh! Forgive al-Kumait's sins, the ones he committed, and the ones he will commit, the ones he hid, and the ones he revealed! And grant him, O Lord, of Your favours till he is pleased!”

Abu Ja`fār Imām al-Jawād (ع) permitted `Abdullāh ibn al-Salt to eulogize him and mourn his father Imām al-Rida (ع).

Abu Talib once wrote the Imām (ع) seeking his permission to eulogize his father Imām al-Rida (ع), so he cut the parchment in which the poem was written and kept it with him, then he wrote him saying, “An excellent job you have done, and may Allāh reward you with goodness.” Imām Abu `Abdullāh, al-Ṣādiq (ع), said to Sufyān ibn Mis‘ab, “Compose for me poetry about al-Husain (ع),” then he ordered Umm Farwa and his own children to be brought near them. Once they all gathered, Sufyān started his poem by saying, “O Farwa! Be generous with your over-pouring tears.” It was then that Umm Farwa cried loudly, and so did the other women with her, whereupon Abu `Abdullāh (ع) shouted: “The door! (Close) the door!” The people of Medina assembled, so Abu `Abdullāh (ع) sent them a child who fainted (having become overwhelmed by emotion). This is one good method of disseminating awareness (of the tragedy of Kerbala) among the public. Indeed, their children did faint during the Battle of al-Taff, and I do not know which one of them the Imām (ع) had then in mind. Was it `Abdullāh, the infant, or was it `Abdullāh Junior son of Imām al-Ḥasan (ع) who was killed with an arrow while in al-Husain’s lap? Or was it Muḥammad son of Abu Sa`īd son of `Aqīl son of Abu Talib?

Ja`fār son of `Abbān came once to see Imām al-Ṣādiq (ع). The Imām (ع) said to him, “You compose

---

1This statement is quoted on p. 5 of `Uyūn Akhbār al-Riḍā (ع) by al-Ṣādiq.
2This is recorded on p. 118, Vol. 15, of Al-Aghānī and also on p. 27, Vol. 2, of Ma`āhid al-Tansīs.
3This is stated on p. 350 of Rījāl al-Kašshi.
4This is hadīth number 263 on the list of ahādīth recorded in Rawdat al-Kāfī.
5According to p. 8, Vol. 7, and p. 45, Vol. 9, of Al-Aghānī, he belonged to the tribe of Tay.
poetry about al-Husain (†), and you do a good job, don't you?” He answered in the affirmative, whereupon the Imam (‡) asked him to recite some of it for him. Ja`fer did. The Imam (‡) cried so much that his tears ran profusely on his cheeks and beard. Then he said to him, “Allah's angels who are near to Him have all witnessed what you have said about al-Husain, and they have all cried just as we here cry. Allah has ordered you to be lodged in Paradise.” After a while, the Imam (‡) turned to those present there and then to say, “Anyone who composes poetry in memory of al-Husain (‡) and he cries and causes others to cry will be forgiven by Allah, and he will be worthy of entering Paradise.”

This Ja`fer is a sincere Shi’ a who has earned a great deal of praise and is regarded as a reliable authority by biographers. He is the one who responded to Marwân ibn Abu Hafṣa when the latter said,

Clear the way for people whose customs are
The crushing of flanks whenever throngs jostle,
Accept what the Lord has decreed for you,
And let alone inheriting every protecting knight.
How can it be, and it never will,
That a daughters' son should inherit his uncle?

Ja`fer ibn `Affān responded by saying,

Why not?! And it surely is:
Sons of daughters shall inherit their uncles,
For the girls have his wealth, while the uncle
Is left without a share. Why should a taleeq
Talk about inheritance at all? The taleeq prayed
Only out of his fear of the sword.

A group of men came to see Imam al-Rida (‡) once and found him looking out of the ordinary. They asked him why. He said to them, “I have spent my entire night awake thinking about what Marwân ibn Abu Hafṣa said,” then he quoted the lines cited above. The Imam (‡) went on to say, “I later fell asleep. It was then that someone took hold of the door as he said,

How can it be? And it shall not:
Pillars of Islam do not belong to polytheists.
Granddaughters inherit no grandfathers,
While the uncle is deprived of his share.
Why should a taleeq about inheritance say a word?
The taleeq prayed only out of his fear of the sword.
The Qur'ān has already informed you of his worth,
So the judges issued about him and decreed.
Fatima's son to whom reference is made

---


2These verses are recorded on p. 17, Vol. 12, of Al-Aghāni.

3See p. 45, Vol. 9, of Al-Aghāni.
Earned his inheritance from his cousins,
While the son of the wide shield stands
Hesitant, weeping, only by his kin pleased.”

Marwân stole the theme from verses composed by a slave of Tammâm ibn Ma` bid ibn al-`Abbâs ibn `Abd al-Muttalib who stood to attack with his poetry `Ubaydullâh ibn Abu Râfi`, servant of the Messenger of Allâh (ص). He had come to Imâm al-Hasan ibn Ali (ص) and said: “I am your servant,” and he used to write down quotations from (the Imâm's father) Imâm Ali ibn Abu Talib (ص). Tammâm's slave then said:

Al-`Abbâs's offspring denied their father's right
So you in your claim seek no good end;
Since do the offspring of the Prophet
Behave like an heir who earns, then he,
When opportune, claims linkage to the father?²

Marwân ibn Sulaymân ibn Yahya ibn Abu Hafsa was a Jew who embraced Islam at the hands of Marwân ibn al-Hakam. Some say that he was taken captive from Istakhar, and that `Uthmân ibn `Affân bought him and gave him to Marwân as a slave. He participated in the incident of the Dar on Marwân's side. When Marwân ibn al-Hakam was wounded (in that incident), he was carried by his slave, Ibn Abu Hafsah, on his shoulders. He dragged him as he (Marwân) moaned. He kept telling him to remain silent else he should be heard and killed. He was able to bring him to a safe haven inside the tent of a woman who belonged to the tribe of `Anzâh and treated him till he healed. Marwân freed him and let him participate with him in the Battle of the Camel and of Marj Râhit.³ Sâlih ibn Atiyyah al-Adjam was angry with Marwân's verse “How can it be, and it shall not, etc.,” so he kept company with him for some time serving him till he and his family felt comfortable about him. When Ibn Abu Hafsa fell ill, Sâlih acted as his nurse. Once those around the sick man had left with the exception of Sâlih, the latter suffocated him and killed him, but none among his family suspected anything at all.⁴

THE QUESTION OF MARCHING WITH THE FAMILY

A l-Husain (ص) transported his family [from Medîna] to Iraq knowing that he and all those in his company would be killed. Why? He knew beforehand that his murder would be in vain if no eloquent tongues and determined persons acquainted the nation with the misguidance of Maysân's son and with the oppression of Marjânâ's son who attacked the pure progeny of the Prophet (ص), and without the refutation of the bid`as which they had introduced in the sacred Sharî’a.

The Father of the Oppressed realized that the theologians were apprehensive of pretending to denounce the oppressive authority to which they surrendered. He was also informed of the imprisonment of

---

1 Refer to p. 305 of `Uyûn Akhbâr al-Rida by al-Sadûq. On p. 214 of Al-Ihtijâj, al-Tibrisi, while discussing the biography of Imâm Mûsâ al-Kâzîm (ص), says that the latter Imâm heard that voice.

2 These verses are recorded on p. 15 of Tabaqât al-Shu`arâ’ by Ibn al-Mu`azzz.

3 Refer to p. 34, Vol. 9, of Al-Aghâni.

4 Ibid., p. 46.
many of them. He concluded that even the greatest among them would not be able to expose the horror of what such authority was committing. What happened to Ibn `Aff al-Azdi underscores this reality which any clear conscience supports.

The Father of the Oppressed also knew that the ladies who were born in the Message were used to persevere during the time of calamity and when facing hardships, and difficulties, with hearts more firm than the mountains. They did not neglect, even under the most adverse of situations, to expose to the public the lies and falsehood resulting from what those misleading rulers were promoting as well as their ultimate goal of undermining the creed. They rose with their Imam who sacrificed himself for the sake of the right creed only to bring the Shari' a of his grandfather, the Prophet (ص), back to life.

Even while their hearts were on fire on account of the tragedy, and even when calamities plunged them into the deepest depression, the wise ladies belonging to the family of the Prophet (ص) were largely prepared for revenge and for defending the sanctity of the creed.

Among them is [Zainab] the wise lady and daughter of the Commander of the Faithful (ص), peace of Allah be upon her, who was not deterred by captivity or by the humiliation of exile, or by losing dear ones, or even by her enemy rejoicing at her misfortune, or by the wailing of the widows, the cries of the children, the moaning of the sick. She often spoke out her mind to those ruffians even when she was between their claws and fangs, without stuttering a bit, hurling words like thunderbolts at their assembly. She, for example, stood before Marjana's son, the ill-begotten tyrant, the defenseless lady that she was, having none with her to protect her nor any of her family's men except the Imam's wali [Zain al-`Abidin] who was exhausted by sickness, in addition to women seeking refuge in her shadow, complaining, weeping, and children filled with the pain of thirst, and young ladies severely beset, while the severed head of the Imam (ص) and those of his supporters and kinsfolk were all in front of her as the limbs were left in the desert for the sun to incinerate. Even a single one of such calamities would overpower and shatter the mind of anyone.

Yet the daughter of Hayder (ص) maintained a great deal of self-restraint and self-composure, so she delivered her speech as though she had been her father, a speech which was more forceful than the fiercest arrow, rendering the son of Marjana speechless as she said, “These are people whom Allah decreed to be killed; so they came out welcoming their destiny. Allah will gather you and them, and arguments will be lodged against you, and you will be disputed; so, see whose lot will be the crack of the fire, may your mother lose you, O son of Marjana.”

She made it clear for those who were unaware of his malice and meanness that he would never be able to wash away the shame and infamy of what he had committed. She baffled the minds and amazed everyone when she delivered another speech at Kafar's cemetery where people were confused, weeping, not knowing what to do. Said she, “How can the shame and infamy of their killing the son of the Prophet, the substance of the Message, and the Master of the Youths of Paradise, ever be washed away from them? May their endeavour be rendered futile! May their hands perish! May their bargain be a loss, and may they be exposed to shame in the hereafter! Surely Allah's retribution is greater, had they only known.”

Having finished her speech, she was succeeded by [her younger niece] Fatima daughter of al-Husain (ص) who spoke eloquently while remaining unruffled, calm [the child that she was]. Her speech acted like spears that pierced the hearts. People could not help raising their voice as they wept, and they came to realize the extent of the tragedy and the pain it inflicted. They said to her, “Suffices you what you have said, O daughter of the pure ones, for you have certainly burnt our hearts and slit our throats!”

She hardly finished when Umm Kulthum, Zainab daughter of Ali ibn Abu Talib (ص), spoke [again]. Zainab described the horror which those misled people had committed, whereupon everyone present wailed and cried, and nobody had ever witnessed more crying and weeping.1

1Read the text of these three speeches in a later part of this book where the subject of martyrdom is discussed.
One wonders whether anyone can deliver a speech under such a most grave situation, when one is surrounded by the swords of the oppressors, no matter how strong his tribe may be. Yet who else besides the daughters of the Commander of the Faithful (首位) could publicly expose the sins committed by the son of Hind and the son of Marjana?

Heavy burdens were placed on the tongues, and fear filled everyone's heart.

Yet all of this is looked upon as abominable had its benefits only been worldly and its motives the doing of one's insinuating self. But if it benefits the religion, such as clearing the faith introduced by the Messenger of Allah (首位) from any falsehood which those adversaries had attached to it, there will be no ugliness in it according to reason and custom, and it is supported by the Shar‘a.

Allah has exempted women from waging jihād and confronting the enemies, and Allah Almighty has required them to stay at home. Yet such is the case when a confrontation like this is undertaken by the men. But when such an obligation is removed from them in a confrontational way from which they should refrain, the foundations of the Shar‘a will be undermined, and the sacrifice of those elite ones will be cleared from any falsehood, women will then be required to do just that.

It is for this reason that the Head of the Women of the World, Fātimah al-Zahrā‘, peace be upon her, stood to defend Allah's supreme caliphat after the oath of allegiance had been sworn to someone else other than to the master of wasis [her husband, Imam Ali ibn Abu Tālib (首位), who was thus forcibly distanced from the political process], so she delivered a speech at the Mosque of the Prophet (首位) which was very eloquent and which was witnessed by a large crowd of the Muhajirûn and the Ansâr.

But al-Husayn (首位) had already been informed by his grandfather, al-Amîn (首位), that those folks, although they would have attained their goal, and although they would go to extremes in their villainy, they would not harm the women. This is clear from a statement made by al-Husayn (首位) in which he said to those women at the final farewell hour, “Put on your outer mantles and get ready for the test, and be informed that Allah will protect and safeguard you, and that He will save you from the evil of your adversaries and render the outcome of your cause righteous. He will torment your adversaries with all norms of torture, and He will compensate you for going through such a calamity with numerous types of blessings and graces. So, do not complain, and do not utter that which may demean your status.”

We can say all of this even if the master of the martyrs (首位) had not been the Imām. But in the case of submitting to the encompassing knowledge of the Imām, the knowledge of what was and of what will be, and his marching as directed by the best realistic interests, and his being infallible in everything he says and does, and it is the truth which cannot be refuted that we are bound to submit that all the divine wisdom he undertook and the divine interests are beyond any doubt..., we have to do nothing but to believe in all his actions without being bound by reason to know the interests served thereby. The same can be said about anything with which adults are obligated. The servants of Allah are not required except to submit and surrender to their Lord without knowing the underlying motives behind what He orders them to do. The same case is applicable to the slaves with their masters. Reason does not require a slave to do anything more than obeying his master whenever the latter bids or forbids him.

`ALAWIDES’ REVOLUTIONS

One of the products of that sacred uprising and clear victory was a transformation in the outlook of the `Alawides, in their lineage and creed, and in that of those who developed some norm of attachment to Muhammad's Progeny, even when one concealed the opposite of what he revealed. All of these were relentless in propagating the rightful cause, in weakening the government of falsehood, and in reminding the nation that there was a right that belonged to Muhammad's Progeny and which was
usurped, and that they were obligated to sever the hand that usurped it, hence those successive revolutions that brought a fresh hope to the hearts and to the desire to research the true guidance in order to find out where the truth lies.

The nation used to think that it was not possible to rise in the face of those who controlled its fate, and who ruled the Muslims, because of their might, and that to challenge the cruel authority would be futile; rather, the Sharī`a prohibits anyone from tragically throwing himself in the pitfalls of perdition without gaining anything.

But the master of dignity and self-esteem, the Master of the Youths of Paradise, inspired the people who cared about the religion at the Taff incident with a loud scream to reject such an attitude, a scream the echo of which can still be heard by generations after generations. He called for the Sharī`a mandating a revolution against every oppressor in the absence of any other means to subdue him.

Such is the level of conviction of those who make the attainment of restitution the motto of their revolution. So they will either score a victory, or their successors will, till the hopes are transformed into a glorious victory.

This is what we witness from the succession of revolutions that were the outcome of the Umayyads playing havoc with the pure Sharī`a, hence al-Mukhtar's call for revenge for the wronged and the persecuted progeny of Muhammed (ص).

Zayd ibn Ali ibn al-Husain (ع) and his son Yahya stood to earn the pleasure of the progeny of Muhammed (ص), and the remnant of the Hāshemites demonstrated their denunciation of the oppressive rulers, leaping like lions to put an end to the sweeping torrent of misguidance.

If you contemplate on the biography of the Infallible descendants of the Messenger of Allah (ص) and what the Master, Praise to Him, has bestowed upon them by making them the means to remove the thorns of abomination, and by their being the means to guide His servants to what is exemplary, you will clearly see their desire, peace be upon them, for waging such bloody brawls, aiming thereby to remind the nation of their being the most worthy of the post of successors of the holiest Messenger (ص). Anyone who foils their attempts to attain what belongs to them, that which the Creator, Praised is His Name, had allotted to them, deviates from the right path. Such an understanding is conceived and discussed because of such revolutions in various lands so that the argument against the nation will be completed. Nobody will then seek an excuse of being ignorant about the Imāms appointed by the greatest Prophet (ص).

If we come across statements made by some of the Imāms of guidance denouncing or dissociating themselves from the `Alawides or others who revolted against oppressive rulers, it is only on account of the taqiyya, a safeguard against the schemes of the oppressive authority, so that such revolutions will not be attributed to them, for they would then face a dreadful fate.

Yes; there have been among the revolutionaries those who used the persecution meted to Ahl al-Bayt (ع) as a trap to hunt simpletons. [`Abdullāh] Ibn al-Zubayr, for example, used to extol the name of al-Husain (ع) and denounce the injustice done to him. But when he took charge, he abandoned such a line, becoming the most bitter enemy of Ahl al-Bayt, peace be upon them, revealing what he had hidden in his chest. He, therefore, suspended [the custom of] blessing the Prophet (ص) for full forty Jum`as. He was asked about his reason for doing so, whereupon he answered by saying, “His Ahl al-Bayt are evil; whenever I mention his name, they become excited, and they become elated; therefore, I hated to bring happiness to their hearts by mentioning his name.”

He was in reality encouraged to do so by Mu`āwiyah. The latter heard the caller to the prayers reciting the kalima (which, of course, contains the name of Muhammed [ص] as the Messenger of Allah), whereupon he commented by saying, “This brother of Banū Hāshim yells his name five times a day saying,
'Ashhadu anna Muhammedan rasool-Allah.' What deed can survive with something like this, may you lose your mother? By Allah, only burying it will, only burying it will.’”1

When al-Ma’mün heard about this incident, he issued his orders to all regions to curse the Prophet (SAW) from the pulpits, but people thought that that was monstrous, indeed, and there was a great deal of uproar among the people, so much so that he was advised to withdraw his orders, which he did.2

The `Abbásides pretended to express their love for al-Husain (A), filling the air with their shouts denouncing the atrocities committed against the family of Muhammed (SAW) during the Taff Battle. Having attained their goal, however, they turned against Muhammed's family, wiping them from the face of earth. Mūsā ibn `Eisa, the `Abbásid (general) who commanded the assault at Fakhkh, said, “Had the Prophet opposed us, we would have struck his nose with the sword.”3

These and their likes are the ones from whom one’s conscience is detached. They will never be protected against the Almighty's wrath although the nation benefitted from their eradication of its enemies who belonged to the offspring of Harb and Umayyah.

Harb’s sons coveted to see
In him submission to force and oppression,
They tried to hunt his valiant heroes
Like birds they shook off humiliation and flew.
They wished to forcibly drag him into disgrace,
Though to dignity he was accustomed and to grace.
How could he swear and submit
To filth only for fear of death?
He refused, hence the event that
Shook the world in awe and in fright.
So he came in an army and marched
Against hosts that filled the plains,
He and lions from `Amr, exalted ones
Wearing for the brawl steadfastness.
They dealt blows in a desert where
Death became in the morrow their mark
So they exalted justice and were spent
Pure in honour, clean of filth they went.
They sacrificed souls great and precious
Too dignified to please the lowly ones.4

PART II

---

2al-Masʿūdi, Murūj al-Thahab, Vol. 1, p. 343, where al-Ma’mün is discussed.
THE KERBALÄ’ EPIC

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) has said, “The killing of al-Husain ( 页面) has left in the heart of the faithful a fire that will never die down.” This tradition is recorded on p. 217, Vol. 2, of Mustadrak al-Wasā’il. Numerous poems have been and will be composed eulogizing the greatest epic of heroism in the history of mankind; here are some of them:

MUḤARRAM HAS COME

Muharram has come, so welcome it with takbīr, And scatter your tears on the earth. See in it the crescent as it manifests itself, See how it is forlorn, contemplating, mourning. Take off the mantle of patience and place it: A yellow robe on one who with grief clothed you, For with the robes of grief do I meet it, Taking off what cheerful red robes decorated me. It is a month destiny in it decreed That the vilest of black dogs would deal With the Lion of the valiant ones. Allah! What a calamity he had to behold! The heavens for it wept crimson blood. A great misfortune, indeed, afflicted the creed, For it did the Mother Town drape in black: Can't you see how the sacred Haram sighs? How his sighs would light the timber? From its depths does Abu Qubays yearn A yearning that reaches Hirā’. Al-Ḥatīm knew of it, so it is grief-crushed, Al-Safa knew of it, so it is serene no more, And its mash’ ars sensed the calamity, And passion struck its Muhassir, so it sighed, For Husain is killed: what a tragedy! On its account Islam became defenseless.1

THE MONTH OF MUḤARRAM

Muharram is when joy is taboo,
When grief is a must, weeping is unavoidable.
A month wherein the seat of faith is in ruin.
Its crescent is a bow
That shot the heart of guidance, the creed,
With the arrow of death and destiny.
Infidels and Muslims considered
Fighting in it a great sin.
Yet Harb's family in it fought the Lord of the heavens,
Permitting the spilling of the inviolable blood.
They violated the sanctity of the Haram's masters,
Committing that which caused the sky to rain blood.
O family of Harb! May you never see peace,
May none spare you from his censuring tongue!
On earth and in the heavens are you cursed,
By the mass of the living.
Be forewarned with woes and destruction,
And with torture on the Day the trumpet is blown.
How many free women of the Chosen Prophet
Did you rip apart?
How much blood of his offspring did you spill?
O nation of betrayal and disbelief!
O gang of misguidance, O fiends!
How will you look his grandfather in the eye
Having done what you did after him?
Like butchers you slaughtered his progeny,
Like slaves you herded his family.
You forgot the kindness bestowed upon you
On Mecca's Victory Day, when you were forgiven.
Had it not been for the moon-faced sons of Hāshim,
A secret lost in the chest you would have been.
Through them did you ascend the pulpit,
And rose to the heights of eminence.¹

**YAZID SON OF MU’ĀWIYAH**

When Mu’āwiyah died in Damascus on Rajab 15, 60 A.H./April 24, 680 A.D., his son Yazid was in Hawrān [Auranitis in Latin]. His shrouds were taken by al-Dahhak ibn Qays who ascended the pulpit. Having praised and glorified Allāh, he said, “Mu’āwiyah used to be the Arab's bulwark, their supporter and great one. Through him did Allāh end dissensions, granting him authority over His servants, conquering the lands through him. He has died, and these are his shrouds. In them shall we wrap him, and in his grave shall we place him, then shall we leave him and his deeds, and so shall the barzakh be

He offered the funeral prayers for him then buried him at the cemetery of Bab al-Sagheer (the Small Gate). He sent a letter to Yazid consoling him on the death of his father and advising him to go there as fast as he could in order to secure the renewal of the oath of allegiance to him. He added a note at the bottom of the letter containing the following verses of poetry:

Alone did Abu Sufyān go,  
Leaving you behind, so  
Consider what you will after him do.  
Follow the right order with us for you  
Are our resort whenever we fret.  

Having read it, Yazid said the following lines of poetry in response:

A carrier with a letter came trotting,  
Casting fear in the heart, frightening,  
So we said: Woe unto you! What is the news?  
Said he: The caliph became heavy, in pain:  
The earth swayed, almost shaken,  
As if uprooted were its every foundation.  
One whose soul remains in apprehension  
Almost brings about that which he does fear.  
I found the mansion gate closed when I came near,  
Ramlā's voice wrecked my heart,  
She did, indeed, rend it apart.  

He set out to Damascus, reaching it three days after Mu‘āwiyah had already been buried. Flanked by a group of prominent personalities, al-Dahhāk went out to welcome him. When Yazid reached them, al-Dahhāk took him first to the site of Mu‘āwiyah's grave. Yazid prayed there then entered the city. Having ascended the pulpit, he said,

O people! Mu‘āwiyah was one of Allah's servants. Allah bestowed His favours upon him then took his soul away. He is higher in status than those who succeeded him and lower than those who preceded him. I do not augment him for Allah, since He knows him better than me. If He forgives him, it is only due to His mercy, and if He punishes him, it is on account of his own sins. I have been granted authority after him, and I do not feel sorry for anything which I sought, nor do I apologize for anything which I have forfeited. When Allah decrees something, it comes to pass. Mu‘āwiyah used to transport you in the sea to invade, but I am not transporting any Muslim in the sea. And he used to let you spend your winter in the land of the Romans, but I am letting none of you spend his winter in any Roman land. He used to

---


3 al-Khawārizmī, *Maqtaṭ*, Vol. 1, p. 178. In the biography of Mu‘āwiyah on the margins of *Al-Isbāḥ* (of Ibn Hajar al-‘Asqalānī) with reference to *Al-Isbāḥ*, al-Shāfi‘i is quoted as saying, “When Mu‘āwiyah felt the weight of his last days, he wrote Yazid, who had been away, telling him about his condition. Yazid then composed four lines of the ones to follow.”
Nobody approached him to offer condolences before `Abdullāh ibn Humām al-Salālī came forward and said, “O commander of the faithful! May Allāh compensate you for your loss; may He bless you for what you have given us, and may He assist you in ruling your subjects. You have surely suffered a great calamity and have been granted something great; so, you should thank Allāh for what you have been granted and be patient about that wherein you have been tested, for you have lost the viceregent of Allāh and given the caliphate of Allāh. You have bidden farewell to a great man and given something great indeed. Mu`āwiyyah has died and you have become our leader and the reigns of government have been placed in your hands. May Allāh bring him to the sources of happiness, and may He enable you to do what is best.” Then he composed the following lines of poetry:

Be patient, O Yazīd, you have parted with a great man,
And thank the One Who put you in charge.
No calamity has befallen the people, they know,
Your calamity is theirs; no issue is better than you.
You have dawned the custodian of all those
Who do uphold the creed,
So look after them as Allāh looks after you.
The surviving Mu`āwiyyah did to us succeed
As you are consoled, while none is mourning you.

This opened the avenue for other speakers to speak. A man from Thaqīf said to him, “Peace on you, O commander of the faithful, and Allāh's mercy and blessings! You have been grieved by the loss of the best of fathers, and you have been given all things; so, be patient with regard to your tragedy, and praise Allāh for granting you such a beautiful gift, for none has been given as you have, nor has anyone been grieved as you have.” People came to him to congratulate him and to offer their condolences. Yazīd said, “We are the supporters of righteousness and the promoters of the creed. Rejoice, O people of Syria, for goodness has always been with you, and there will be a tragic epic between myself and the people of Iraq! I have seen in my vision three nights ago that a river stood between me and the people of Iraq tumultuously flowing with blood, and I tried hard to cross it, but I could not till `Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād crossed it before me as I looked at him!”

The Syrians shouted, “Take us wherever you wish, for our swords, with which the people of Iraq are familiar since the Battle of Siffin, are on your side.” He thanked them and distributed to them a lot of money.

He then wrote the governors of various countries informing them of the death of his father and keeping them in their jobs. He dispatched to Iraq `Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād according to the advice of Serjūn [Sargon], slave of his father Mu`āwiyyah. He wrote the following letter to al-Walīd ibn `Utba, governor of Médīnā:

---


Mu‘awiyyah was one of Allah's servants. Allah bestowed upon him generously and preferred him and granted him authority over others. Then He took him to the world of the souls and to fragrance, to His mercy and punishment. He lived according to destiny, and he died according to a term, and he had enjoined me to beware of the descendants of Abu Turab due to their courage in killing. I have come to know, O Walid, that Allah, Glorified and Exalted is He, will seek revenge for 'Uthman through the descendants of Abu Sufyan because they are the supporters of justice and the seekers of equity. So, when you receive this letter, take the oath of allegiance from the people of Medina.

Then he attached a small piece of scroll wherein he wrote: “Be tough with al-Husain, `Abdullah ibn `Umar [ibn al-Khattab, son of the second caliph], `Abdul-Rahman ibn Abu Bakr [son of the first caliph], and `Abdullah ibn al-Zubair [a cousin of `Ayesha, wife of the Prophet, later on ruler of Hijaz] when you require them to swear the oath of allegiance [to me]. Whoever refuses, kill him and send his severed head to me.”

The governor carried his instructions out. At mid-night, He called for al-Husain (ع) and [Abdullah] Ibn al-Zubayr in the hope that he would secure their oath of allegiance before everyone else. His messenger, `Abdul-Rahman ibn `Amr ibn [son of the third caliph] `Uthman ibn Affan located them at the Prophet's Mosque. Ibn al-Zubayr became apprehensive of such an invitation which came not at the time when the governor used to hold his open public meetings, but the hujjah of his time, al-Husain (ع) of reform, acquainted him with a piece of news from the unknown, telling him that Mu‘awiyyah had died, and that they were being sought to swear the oath of allegiance for and to support Yazid due to a vision which he had seen wherein he saw Mu‘awiyyah's house burning and his pulpit turned upside down.4

The son of Maysun desired to steer the creed,
Played havoc with Allah's religion his every evil deed.
So to succor the Shari'a, the cub of the element and the grand
Who, with his saber's blood, caused its very foundations to stand.
Surrounded he was once he tested the folks
A group whose virtues aspired to reach the peaks.
Who is more brave than one brought up by Hayder
And brought in the birds' towns by his grandfather?
A group for the religion is always ready to sacrifice
Though few in number, yet in will unflinching.
Till they all fell in defense of the Shari'a

---

1 al-Khawarizmi, Maqtal al-Husain, Vol. 1, p. 178 (Najaf edition). We have already referred to this brief letter in our Introduction above; so, you may refer to it.
2 Ibn `Asakir, Vol. 4, p. 327.
3 al-Tabari, Tarkh, Vol. 6, p. 327.
4 Ibn Nama, Muthir al-Ahzan, p. 10. Al-Khawarizmi, Maqtal al-Husain, Vol. 1, p. 182, chapter 8. It is quite clear that the Imam's vision was a true observation of the then status quo and it is a proof of the Imamate's insight, one before which no barrier stands, realizing what happens in the cosmos. There is no innovation in that coming from one chosen by Allah Almighty as the hujjah over the whole world. He (ع) saw in the turning of Mu‘awiyyah's pulpit upside down that the power had slipped away from his hands by virtue of his [Mu‘awiyyah's] death which put an end to his desires. Burning fire connoted the intensification of dissensions such as the tragedy of the Taff, the incident of the Taff, the demolishing of [one of the corners of] the Inviolable House [of Allah, i.e. the Ka’ba which was attacked with catapults by Yazid’s soldiers], and the like.
As lions defend their den.
Hind's son wanted, but he did fail
To see Husain's will with oppression bent.
But the father of deeply rooted honour
Refused to wear the robe of humiliation
So long as the sword was his companion.
How could he bend to the evil band
To the sons of Sumayya and Maysan,
While the sword in his hand did stand?
So he charged like an angry lion
At them as he was sought by his foe
Who with his sword wanted to deal a blow.
In their necks did he let his polished sword
Issue without an appeal its judgment and word,
Till he brought the faith anew
With the blood of the Prophet's issue.
His grandson was needed by his creed
To water its thirsty and drying field.¹

Husain's decision with regard to meeting the governor at that time became clear to Ibn al-Zubayr, so he suggested to him not to do so for fear of being assassinated. Al-Husain (ﯽ) explained to him his ability to avoid it.² Thirty of al-Husain's slaves, followers and family members³ were instructed to raise their arms as they stood at the door and to rush to his rescue should they hear him raising his voice; he himself was armed with the Prophet's staff. When the meeting started with the presence of Abu `Abdullāh, Imām al-Husain (ﯽ), al-Walid informed him of Mu`awiyah's death and asked him to swear the oath of allegiance to Yazīd. He (ﯽ) said, “A man like me does not swear fealty away from people's eyes. When you invite people to swear it, invite us, too. This way it will be one single matter.”⁴

Al-Walid was convinced, but Marwān immediately interfered saying, “Should he part with you now without swearing it, you will never be able to secure it from him again till many of your people are killed, but confine the man till he either swears the oath of allegiance, or you kill him.”

Al-Husain (ﯽ) said, “You son of the blue woman [prostitute]!⁵ Will you kill me, or will he?! You

---

¹ Excerpted from a poem by `allāma Shaikh Muḥamed Taqi, author of Al-Jawāhir.
³ Sayyid Radi ad-Din ibn Tāwūs (henceforth referred to only as Ibn Tāwūs), Al-Luhūf fi Qatlā al-Tufūf.
⁴ al-Tabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 189.
⁵ Sibt ibn al-Jawzi (the grandson), Tathkīrat al-Khawāss, p. 229 (Iranian edition). al-Fakhri, Al-Ādāb al-Sultāniyya, p. 88. Both references indicate that Marwān'sgrandmother was a prostitute. On p. 75, Vol. 4, of Ibn al-Athir's book Kāmil, it is stated that, “People used to taunt the descendants of `Abd al-Malik ibn Marwān of the “blue woman” [prostitute], who was daughter of Mawāhib, because she was a prostitute and because she used to have a [red] flag over her house [to indicate that there was a prostitute in that house as was the custom of the time throughout Arabia and elsewhere — Tr.]” Ibn `Asākir, Tārīkh, Vol. 7, p. 407, where a dialogue between Marwān and `Abdullāh ibn al-Zubayr is quoted. In it, `Abdullāh said to Marwān, “Are you still here, O son of the blue woman??” On p. 129, Vol. 5, of al-Balāūthirī's book Ansāb al-Ashrāf, `Amr ibn al-`Ās, in a dialogue between him and Marwān, said to the latter, “You son of the blue woman.” Marwān said, “She was a blue woman, but she gave birth to a brass the like of which no other woman gave birth to.” On p. 16, Vol. 8, of al-Tabari's Tārīkh, this historian [al-Tabari] says that Marwān ibn Muḥamed ibn al-Ash’ath used to
have surely lied and sinned.”¹

Then he directed his attention to al-Walid as he said, “O ameer! We are members of the household of the Prophet, the substance of the [Divine] Message, and the ones visited by the angels. Allâh initiates by us, and so does he conclude. Yazîd is a wine drinker, a killer of the prohibitive soul, a man who commits sins in the open. A man like me does not swear the oath of allegiance to a man like him, but we will see the morning, and so will you; we shall see and so will you as to who among us is more worthy of the caliphate.”²

It was then that al-Walid started using rough language with the Imâm (ئ), whereupon nineteen men with unsheathed daggers assaulted and forcibly snatched al-Husain (ئ) out and brought him home.³

Marwân said to al-Walid, “You did not listen to me! By Allâh! You will never be able to do it again!” “Rebuke someone else,” al-Walid said, “O Marwân! You chose for me the doing of that which would cause my creed to perish. Should I kill Husain just for refusing to swear the oath of allegiance? By Allâh! I do not think that the scales of anyone who will be tried on the Day of Judgment for spilling al-Husain's blood will be anything but light, nor will Allâh look upon him, nor will He purify him, and he will have a painful torment!”⁴

Asmâ’ daughter of `Abdul-Rahmân ibn al-Hârîth ibn Hîshâm, al-Walid's wife, reprimanded her husband for the way he treated al-Husain (ئ), so he sought an excuse by saying that it was al-Husain (ئ) who started taunting him. “Would you taunt him and his father if he taunts you?” she asked him. “No,” said he, “I shall never do that.”⁵

In the same night, al-Husain (ئ) visited the grave of his grandfather the Messenger of Allâh (ص). A beam of light emanated from the grave for him.⁶ He, thereupon, said,

Peace be upon you, O Messenger of Allâh! I am al-Husain son of Fâtima, your son and the son of your daughter and your grandson whom you appointed to take charge of your nation!

say, “The offspring of Marwân were always taunted of descending from the blue woman, while the offspring of al-`Ash were from the Safforiyya woman [the woman who followed the creed of one `Abdullâh ibn al-Saffâr, head of a group among the Khârijites, whose followers are also known as the Mahlabites {al-Mahâlibah}, descendants of al-Muhallab Abu Sufra. – Tr.].

Although the Sharî`a admonishes us not to call others bad names and not to attack their descent, the Imâm of the nation and the hujjah over creation knew all complex matters and never went beyond what is divinely decreed. Since we are so far away from that time, we are bound to surrender to the judgment of the Infallible Imâm (ئ) with regard to anything he did or said especially when it is in agreement with the Holy Qur’ân, the source of all ahkâm. The taunting applied by the Imâm (ئ) finds references to the taunting used by the Almighty and the Exalted One with regard to al-Walid ibn al-Mughîrah al-Makhzûmi [father of the renown military leader Khâlid ibn al-Walid] who is described in verse 13 of Sûrat al-Qalam thus: ‘utullun ba’da thâlika zaneem. Linguistically, zaneem is one who is born outside wedlock, that is, illegitimately. According to the rules of genealogy, he is one whose lineage is claimed by someone else. On p. 156, Vol. 1, of Kanz al-`Ummâl by al-Mu'taqi al-Hindi, the Prophet (ص) is quoted as saying, “The ‘utullin zaneem is one who is a lowly-born reprobate.” On p. 28, Vol. 29, of al-`Âlusî's lexicon Rûh al-Ma`âni, the author says, “His father, al-Mughîrah, claimed him eighteen years after his birth.” So, if the Holy Qur’ân, the fountain-head of moral excellences and mysteries, charges someone and calls him by such a bad name, and it is the Book that is recited day and night, we should not be surprised to see the son of the Prophet charging Marwân, who was awaiting a chance to harm them, with such a shame.

¹al-Tabari, Târîkh, and also Ibn al-Athîr, Al-Irshâd, and I`lâm al-Wara of al-Tibrisi.

²Ibn Nama al-Hîlli (a sixth century pillar of scholarship), Muthîr al-Ahzûn.


⁵Ibn `Asâkîr, Vol. 4, p. 328.

⁶al-`Adîq, Amâlî, p. 93, 30th majlis.
Testify against them, O Prophet of Allah, that they betrayed me and did not safeguard my right. This is my complaint to you till I meet you.

He kept bowing and prostrating till morning.¹

Al-Walid dispatched someone to inquire about the whereabouts of al-Husain (e). Since that messenger did not find the Imām (e) at home, he thought that he (e) had left Medina, so he praised Allah for not exposing him to a difficult situation on account of al-Husain (e).

In the morning, Marwān met Abu `Abdullah (e), so he admonished him as he would his own likes to: swear the oath of allegiance to Yazīd since in it, he said, “is the goodness of the creed and the life of this world.” Al-Husain (e) said, “Innā lillah wa innā ilayhi raji`oon” (We belong to Allah and to Him shall we return), adding, “Bid farewell to Islam if the nation is afflicted by a caretaker like Yazīd. I have heard my

¹Abdullāh Nūr-Allāh al-Bahrānī, Ṡaqṭal al-ʾAwālim, p. 54. al-Majlisi, Bīḥar al-Anwār, Vol. 10, p. 172. Both references cite Muḥammad ibn Abū Tālib commenting on the issue whether the prophets and wasis remain in their graves or whether they are raised to the heavens. He says that this is controversial among the scholars. Al-Sadūq’s Kāmil al-Ziyārat, Al-Tawḥīd, Al-Majalis, Al-ʿUyūn, Al-Khisl, and also al-Raawandi’s Kharāʾīy and on p. 130 of Al-Basāʾir all quote statements supporting the view that our Prophet (ṣ), Ali and al-Ḥusayn (ṣ), Noah, Shuʿayb, Khālid al-ʿAbasī, Youshaʿ [Joshua] ibn Nūn are still in their graves. They cite testimonials that the remains of Adam, Joseph, and the prophet referred to in the incident relevant to istisqāʾ are still on earth, and that the first to be resurrected will be our Prophet (ṣ). Based on such information, Sayyid Mahmūd ibn Fāth-Allāh al-Ḥusaynī al-Kāzīmi wrote a dissertation dealing with this issue, concluding that they are present at their graves. But both Kāmil al-Ziyārat (of Ibn Qawlawayh al-Qummi), p. 390, chapter 108, and al-Ṭūsī’s Tahthīb, at the conclusion of a chapter on visiting grave-sites, state that neither a prophet nor a wasī stays in the earth more than three days before his soul and remains are raised to heavens. In his Tahthīb, al-Ṭūsī says that he would not remain more than forty days before being raised to the heavens. The disagreement among them may either be due to explaining the reason behind the small or large number of days, or on account of the differences among the status of each one of them. On p. 76 of al-Majlisi’s book Sharḥ al-ʾArbaʾeen, both views are stated: some of them will be raised after three days, whereas others will be raised after forty days. It is possible that such narrations came to discourage the Khārijites from exhuming the graves. Among those who accepted the view that the original bodies are lifted is Shaikh al-Mufīd as stated on p. 84 of Al-Maqālāt, al-Karakchi on p. 258 of Kanz al-Fawāʾid, al-Majlisi on p. 373, Vol. 1, of Mīrʾāt al-ʿUqūl, Shaikh Youṣuf al-Bahrānī on p. 266 of Al-Durra al-Najafīyya, and the traditionist al-Nawārī on p. 331, Vol. 2, of Dār al-Salām. In his book Al-Wāfī, al-Fayd is of the view that their souls are raised while the elements composing their bodies remain in the earth. On p. 227, Vol. 1, of Mīrʾāt al-ʿUqūl, it is stated that a group of scholars think that they are returned to their graves after their souls are raised. When Ibn al-Ḥābīb asked our mentor al-Mufīd about the meaning behind the presence of those who go to visit these graves, Shaikh al-Mufīd has said, “The servants of Allah go to the place where their graves stand even if none is inside them out of veneration for them and a sanctification of the places where they resided then raised. It is like the servants of Allah worshipping Him by going to His Inviolable House although He, Praise to Him, is not confined to any place, but it is done to glorify Him and to exalt His status, the Omnipotent that He is.”

On p. 213 of Ibn Ḥajjār’s book Al-Fatāwā al-Hadūthā, Ibn al-ʿArabī is quoted as saying that the souls are returned to the prophets inside the graves, and that they are permitted to go out and enjoy free movement either in the higher or in the lower domains. So it is possible that many may see the Prophet (ṣ) because he is like the sun. On p. 407, Vol. 2, of al-Samḥūdī’s book Wafāʾ al-Wafāʾ, Part Two, in a chapter dealing with building shrines, the Prophet (ṣ) is quoted as saying, “No prophet is buried except that he is raised after three days except I, for I pleaded to Allah Almighty to be among you till the Day of Judgment.” Abd al-Razzāq has narrated saying that Saʿīd ibn al-Musayyab saw once some people greeting the Prophet (ṣ) at his grave-site, so he said, “No prophet remains in the ground for more than forty days.” On p. 37, Vol. 2, of al-ʿĀlidī’s book Rūḥ al-Maʿānī, in the explanation of the verse saying “Muḥammad was not the father of any of your men” (Qurʿān, 33:40) of Sūrat al-ʿAlzāhā, Anas is quoted in many traditions as saying that the Prophet (ṣ) has said that no prophet dies and remains in his grave for more than forty days. Saʿīd ibn al-Musayyab and Abu al-Muqaddam, Thābit ibn Hurmuz, are quoted as saying that no prophet remains in the ground for more than forty days. Among such relevant statements are those mentioned by Imām al-Ḥaramain in his book Al-Nihāyah as well as by al-ʿRāfīʾi in Al-Sharḥ. They say that the Prophet (ṣ) has said, “My Lord honours me too much to keep me in my grave for more than three days.” Imām al-Ḥaramain cites another narration indicating more than two days. Ibn al-ʿArabī, the judge, as well as al-Rawd, are both quoted as saying that the souls are returned to the prophets after their death, and that they are permitted to leave their graves and have the freedom of movement in both the upper and the lower domains, then he adds his own viewpoint.
grandfather the Messenger of Allah (ص) say, 'Sufyān's offspring are prohibited from the caliphate;¹ so, if you see Mu`awiyah on my pulpit, you must rip his stomach open.' The people of Medina did, indeed, see him on that pulpit, but they did not rip his stomach open; therefore, Allāh afflicted them with Yazīd, the reprobate.” Their dialogue continued for a long time till Marwān left angrily.²

In the second night, al-Husain (ؑ) again visited the grave of his grandfather. He offered prayers then said, “O Allāh! This is the grave of Your Prophet Muhammad (ص), and I am the son of Your Prophet's daughter, and I am encountering that of which You are fully aware. O Allāh! I love the doing of good, and I hate abomination. I plead to You, O Lord of Glory and Honour, by the status of this grave and by the one inside it to choose for me what best pleases You and Your Messenger,” then he wept.

Shortly before sunrise, he placed his head on the grave and slept. He saw in his vision the Messenger of Allāh, peace of Allāh be upon him and his progeny, surrounded by a large crowd of angels on his right and left and in front of him. He hugged al-Husain (ؑ) and kissed his forehead then said, “My loved one, O Husain! Your father, mother and brother have all come to me, and they are eager to see you.” Al-Husain (ؑ) then wept and asked his grandfather to take him with him and to let him enter his grave. But the most holy Prophet refused to do so before his grandson was to do that which would earn him his rewards in a way which the Great One, Praise to Him, prefers on the Day of Argument. He (ص) said, “You have to be granted martyrdom so that you will receive the great rewards Allāh has allotted for you. You, your father, your uncle, and the uncle of your father will all be gathered on the Day of Judgment in one group till you enter Paradise.”

Al-Husain (ؑ) woke up then narrated his vision to his family whose grief and weeping intensified.³ They all realized that time had come to witness what the Messenger of Allāh (ص) had beforehand promised them to undergo, and due to their concern about the noor of Prophethood being veiled from them, so they would then lose the sublime rewards they all aspired to attain. They surrounded al-Husain (ؑ) and asked him to either assent to Yazīd's wish or to go far away from that land.

### MEN EXPRESSING FEAR FOR AL-ḤUṢAIN (ؑ)

**View of `Omer al-Atraf**

O `Omer al-Atraf then said to him, “O son of the Commander of the Faithful!⁴ Abu Muhammed, al-Hasan (ؑ), told me that his father, the Commander of the Faithful (ؑ), had told him that you would be slain. If you swear fealty, it will be better for you.” Al-Husain (ؑ) said, “My father told me that

---


³See p. 54 of *Maqtal al-ʿAwālim* (of ʿAbdullāh Nūr-Allāh al-Bahrānī). This narration is cited on the authority of Muhammed ibn Abu Tālib. Such expression of frustration clearly demonstrates the situation then, and it teaches the nation that getting to be familiar with those incidents, and being acquainted with the abominations committed then and with aborting righteousness, made death an easy remedy for them according to the norms of manliness and to their profound concern about the creed. This does not mean that the Master of Martyrs was preferring something better than what Allāh had chosen for him, nor is it an indication of his fear of death. Far away from him are such presumptions. He did not fear his destiny; he accepted it, and he entered into a covenant in its regard with confirmed promises. He was fully aware that destiny had to be carried out. But the Father of the Oppressed distinguished between the supplication of his grandfather (ص) and destiny, so the one who carried out the Divine Call informed him that Allāh Almighty had decreed to grant him a great status which could not be achieved without his martyrdom. There is a lofty lesson in every syllable of the cause of the Prophet's grandson. Is there anyone in the nation who is admonished thereby or who discards it?

⁴We have indicated his biography in the appendix to our book *Zayd al-Shahīd*, p. 100, second edition.
the Messenger of Allāh (ﷺ) had told him of his murder and mine, and that his resting place would be close to mine. Do you think that you know what I do not know? I shall never yield to lowliness. Fāṭima (خلاف) shall meet her father (خلاف) complaining of what her offspring suffered at the hands of his nation, and none who had harmed her offspring shall ever enter Paradise.”

'Omer ibn Ali ibn Abu Tālib came once to al-Mukhtar when the latter revolted in Kāfā. Al-Mukhtar asked him, “Is Muḥammad ibn al-Hanafīyya with you?” He answered in the negative, whereupon he dismissed him, so he marched on to Mis‘āb till he participated in the battle and was killed among those who were killed there and then.

Fāṭima is bound to come on the Judgement Day,  
With her shirt stained with Husain's blood.  
Woe to one who seeks intercession from his adversaries,  
When the Trumpet is blown on the Judgment Day.

View of Ibn al-Ḥanafīyya

Muḥammad ibn al-Hanafīyya said, “Brother! I love you more than I love anyone else, and I cherish you the most, and I do not advise anyone as I advise you. You deserve such an advice most. Abandon both your fealty to Yazīd son of Mu‘āwiyyah and the metropolises, too, as much as you can, then send your messengers to people. If they swear the oath of allegiance to you, praise Allāh for it, but if they rally behind someone else, Allāh will not have diminished aught of your creed or wisdom, and your magnanimity and distinction will not have been wasted. I fear for you lest you should enter one of these metropolises and people will split into parties, some with you and some against you, then they might fight with one another, and you will be the first person sought by their lances. So, you will either remain the best of this nation in person and in lineage, or the one whose blood is spilled most vainly and whose family is humiliated the most.”

Al-Husain (خلاف) asked him, “Where should I go?” Muḥammad said, “Settle in Mecca. If you do not find yourself comfortable there, you should seek the sands and mountain passes, and you should move from one country to another till you see what the people decide to do. Your view will be the most wise and your actions the most terse when you are ahead of events. Things will be most complicated for you if you turn your back to them.”

Al-Husain (خلاف) said, “Brother! Had there been on earth neither resort nor a hiding place for me at all, I would still refuse to swear the oath of allegiance to Yazīd son of Mu‘āwiyyah...” It was then that Muḥammad interrupted his statement when he burst weeping.

Al-Husain (خلاف) then said to him, “Brother! May Allāh reward you well. You have offered your advice and given a terse suggestion, and I am determined to go to Mecca. My brothers, nephews, and supporters see

---

1Ibn Tāwūs, Al-Luhūf, p. 15 (Saida edition).
2Abu Hanifah al-Dainūrī (henceforth referred to only as al-Dainūrī), Al-Akhbār al-Tiwāl, p. 29.
3It is stated on p. 91, Vol. 2, of Ibn Shahr Āshūb’s Manāqīb that these poetic verses were composed by Mas‘ūd ibn ʿAbrūllāh al-Qaynī.
4On p. 104 of our book Qamar Bani Hāshim, we indicated that he was twenty years old during the battle at Basra. He was ten years older than al-ʿAbbās. He was the standard bearer of the Commander of the Faithful during the battles of the Camel and of al-Nahrawān. On p. 316 of our book Zayn al-ʿĀbidīn, we discussed some of his biography. On p. 79, Vol. 2, of al-Khwārizmi’s book Maqtaḥ al-Husain, there is reference to a letter sent by Ibn al-Hanafīyya to Yazīd after al-Husain’s martyrdom, and that he had met with Yazīd! This is one way to demean his status. I am sure that some people have told lies about him because a magnanimous and zealous person like him could never have done any such things.
what I see, and their view is my view. As for you, you may stay in Medina so that you may keep an eye on them and not conceal anything of their affairs from me.”¹

Imām Husain (ص) left Ibn al-Hanafiyya and entered the [Prophet’s] Mosque as he recited these verses:

```
The eminent ones are not frightened in the morning  
By an assailant, nor shall I be called a Yazid;²  
Should I, fearing death, to injustice yield,  
While the fates watch over me against deviating?³
```

Abu Sa’id al-Maqbari heard him, so he realized that he was undertaking a great matter.⁴

**Umm Salamah’s View**

Umm Salamah said, “Do not cause me grief by going to Iraq, for I heard your grandfather the Messenger of Allāh (ص) saying, ‘My son al-Husain will be killed in the land of Iraq in a tract of land called Kerbala,’ and I have a specimen of your grave's soil in a bottle which the Prophet (ص) had given me.” Al-Husain (ص) said to her, “Mother! And I, too, know that I will be slain unjustly and oppressively, and the Omnipotent has decreed to see my family and followers in chains, seeking help and finding none to offer it to them.”

Umm Salamah then asked him, “How strange! How do you march there knowing that you will for sure be killed?” The Imām (ص) said to her, “Mother! If I do not die today, I will tomorrow, and if not tomorrow, then the day after. By Allāh! There is no avoiding death. And I even know the day when I will be killed, and the time when I will be killed, and the grave in which I will be buried just as I know you, and I look at it just as I look at you. If you wish, mother, I can show you my grave and those of my followers.” She asked him to do so, whereupon he showed her the graves of his companions⁵. Then he gave her a little of that soil, telling her to keep it in a bottle. Once she saw it boiling in blood, she would know that he had been slain. On the tenth day of the month of Muharram, in the after-noon, she looked at both bottles [the one given to her by the Messenger of Allāh and the other given to her by Imām Husain (ص)]; they were both boiling in blood.⁶

---

¹Maqtal Muhammed ibn Abu Tālib. Those who have documented such type of incidents do not mention this excuse. In his book titled Ajwibat Masā‘il Ibn Muhanna, ʿallāma al-Hilli seeks an excuse for Muhammed for not accompanying the departing band on account of his sickness. In his book titled Akht h al-Th r, Ibn N aama al-Hilli states the following on p. 81: “He was afflicted with pus because of some people envying him, so he could not march with al-Husain (ص).” The greatness and famous stands of Ibn al-Hanafiyya, and his recognition of the Imāmate of al-Sajjād (ص), leave no room for us except to submit to the legality of his lagging behind this scene as a whole.

²He is referring to Yazīd ibn Mufrigh.

³On p. 66, Vol. 4, of Ansāb al-Ashrāf, he recited them in Mecca.


his departure very much grieved the daughters of Banū `Abd al-Muttalib who assembled for a group mourning. “I plead to you in the Name of Allāh,” al-Husain (ṣ) said to them after going to their place of gathering, “not to reveal this matter in disobedience to Allāh and His Messenger (ṣ).” They said, “Who should we save weeping and mourning for, since the day of your departure to us is like the place of gathering, “not to reveal this matter in disobedience to Allāh and His Messenger (ṣ).” They said, “Who should we save weeping and mourning for, since the day of your departure to us is like the place of gathering, “not to reveal this matter in disobedience to Allāh and His Messenger (ṣ).” They said, “Who should we save weeping and mourning for, since the day of your departure to us is like the place of gathering, “not to reveal this matter in disobedience to Allāh and His Messenger (ṣ).” They said, “Who should we save weeping and mourning for, since the day of your departure to us is like the place of gathering, “not to reveal this matter in disobedience to Allāh and His Messenger (ṣ).” They said, “Who should we save weeping and mourning for, since the day of your departure to us is like the place of gathering, “not to reveal this matter in disobedience to Allāh and His Messenger (ṣ).” They said, “Who should we save weeping and mourning for, since the day of your departure to us is like the place of gathering, “not to reveal this matter in disobedience to Allāh and His Messenger (ṣ).” They said, “Who should we save weeping and mourning for, since the day of your departure to us is like the place of gathering, “not to reveal this matter in disobedience to Allāh and His Messenger (ṣ).” They said, “Who should we save weeping and mourning for, since the day of your departure to us is like the place of gathering...
The one slain at al-Taff from Banū Hashim
Dishonoured necks from Quraish, so they are abased.

Al-Husain (ṣ) admonished her to be patient, telling her that that was something already decreed.

VIEW OF ʿABDULLAH IBN ʿOMER

Abdullah son of [second caliph] ʿOmer ibn al-Khattāb asked al-Husain (ṣ) to remain in Medina, but al-Husain (ṣ) refused saying, “O ʿAbdullah! One of the reasons why this whole world is worthless in the eyes of Allah is that the head of Yahya (John the Baptist) was given as a present to one of the tyrants of the Israelites, and that my head will be given as a present to one of the Umayyad tyrants. Have you not come to know that the Israelites used to kill seventy prophets as the sun rose then buy and sell as if they did nothing?! Yet Allah was not swift in punishing them. After some time, He seized them, the Omnipotent and the Vengeful Lord that He is.”

Once Ibn ʿOmer was convinced that al-Husain (ṣ) was determined to leave Medina and to face the promoters of misguidance in order to put an end to abominations and to remove the thorns from the path of the sacred Shariʿa, he said to him (ṣ), “O Abu ʿAbdullah! Please uncover for me the place where the Messenger of Allah used to always kiss you.” The Imam (ṣ) unveiled his navel for him which he kissed thrice then burst in tears. The Imam (ṣ) then said to him, “Fear Allah, O father of ʿAbdul-Rahmān, and do not abandon your support for me.”

THE WILL

Before leaving Medina, al-Ḥusain (ṣ) wrote his will in which he stated:

_In the Name of Allah, the Most Gracious, the Most Merciful_

This is the will of al-Husain ibn Ali (ṣ) to his brother Muhammed ibn al-Hanafiyya. Al-Husain testifies that there is no god except Allah, the One and Only God, Who has no partner, and that Muhammed (ṣ) is His servant and Messenger who brought the truth from Him, that Paradise is right, and that hell is right, that the Hour is approaching; there is no doubt about it, and that Allah will resurrect those in the graves.

I did not march out exultingly, nor recklessly, nor seeking to make corruption in the land, nor

---

he cited the following line by Sulaymān ibn Qattah:

_The foremost ones, at al-Taff, from Banū Hāshim consoled_  
One another, so consoling became for the dignified a _sunnah._

On p. 314, Vol. 1, of Ibn al-Jazrī's _Tabaqāt al-Qurrah_, he is referred to as Sulaymān ibn Qatta, with “Qatta” being the name of his mother [rather than that of his father], that he belonged to Taim, and that he was a slave from Basra. He is said as having met Ibn ʿAbbās thrice and ʿĀṣim al-Juhdārī met him once.

There are those who say that the one who had heard the voice was Umm Hāni, but this cannot be accurate, for she had died either during the Prophet's lifetime or during Muʿāwiya's reign as indicated on p. 110, Vol. 1, of Ibn Shahr ʿĀshūb's _Manāqib_. On p. 620 of the Lucknow, India, edition of Ibn Hajar's book _Taqrīb al-Tahthīb_, she had died during Muʿāwiya's reign.

1Ibn Nama and _Al-Luhūf_.

2al-Ṣadūq, _Āmāli_, p. 93, _majlis_ 30.

3Ibn Tawwūs, _Al-Luhūf_, p. 17.
to oppress anyone. Rather, I marched out seeking to reform my grandfather's nation. I desire to enjoin what is right and to forbid what is wrong and to follow the Sunnah of my grandfather and of my father Ali ibn Abu Talib. So, whoever accepts me an acceptance of righteousness, Allah is the Master of what is right, and whoever refuses, I shall persevere till Allah judges between me and the people; surely He is the best of judges. This is my will to you, brother, and my success comes only from Allah; upon Him do I rely, and to Him is my return.

He folded it, sealed it, then handed it to his brother Muḥammad.

With his heart did he raise the flag of guidance,
With his splendour shattered the darkness of the blind.
Through him this Sharʾa was corrected,
And its lofty corners towered.
Glories were built through his determination,
The creed grew green only through his blood.
With his life he bought the life of the creed,
What a precious price he paid indeed!
With his soul he brought life to guidance,
With his wounds the creed's wounds he healed.
Gardens of knowledge with simūm winds dried,
None watered them but the oppressed one's blood.
So mellow leaves their trees grew,
Fragrant, fresh in taste and in hue.
He raised those for whom they did fight and fall,
Till the creed, after he slipped, stood quite tall.
Through him the pillars of Tawḥīd stood,
Since they resorted to their mighty support,
Through him they turned into lofty domes,
And they did become comfortable homes
For knowledge, the Sunnah, and the Book.
Like a spring it gushed forth for its seekers,
With the water of life, though he died of thirst,
Killed with thirst, while in his insides
Is Allah's nourishment for those whom He guides.
His insides from thirst burnt like fire,

---

1Abdullāh Nūr-Allāh al-Bahrānī, Maqṭal al-ʾAwālim, p. 54. al-Khayrārizmī, Al-Maqta, Vol. 1, p. 188, chapter 9. The goal of the holy grandson of the Prophet (ṣa) behind writing this will is unambiguous. He wanted to underscore his noble objective behind his sacred uprising and to introduce himself to the public, to acquaint them with who he was, what his undertaking was, and what his ultimate goal. He continued doing the same till he was martyred in order to refute the claims of the Umayyads and of those who followed in their footsteps and who duped people into thinking that al-Husain (ṣ) had rebelled against the caliph of his time, that he promoted disobedience to him in order to create disunity, and to rally people behind him because of desiring the government for himself and because he was power hungry who wanted to be the top leader. Through such rumors, the Umayyads wished to justify their cruel actions in eradicating the family of the Prophet (ṣa). He maintained such a policy in all situations, he and his family and companions, till they refuted that lie and achieved their march’s objective.
DEPARTURE FROM MEDINA

A. l-Husain (_drive) left Medina for Mecca on the eve of a Sunday, two days before the end of Rajab, accompanied by his offspring, brothers, and the offspring of his brother al-Hasan (drive) together with his family. He kept reciting this verse from the Holy Qur’ān: “So he went out of it fearful, apprehensive. Said he: Lord! Save me from the oppressive people!” (Qur’ān, 28:21). The Imām (drive) took the main highway, whereupon some people suggested to him to take a side route as Ibn al-Zubayr had done, perhaps he would not be caught by those who sought to arrest him. “No, by Allāh,” said the Imām (drive), “I shall not abandon it till Allāh carries out His will.”

He reached Mecca on a Friday, three days after the beginning of the month of Sha’ban as he was reciting, “When he went in the direction of Midyan, he said: Perhaps my Lord will guide me to the right way” (Qur’ān, 28:22). He stayed at the house of al-‘Abbas ibn ʿAbd al-Muttalib where the people of Mecca and those who went there for the ḫumra met him, and so did those who came from the suburbs. [ʿAbdullāh] ibn al-Zubayr was camping near the Ka’ba as al-Husain (drive) kept meeting people. It was hard for him to see al-Husain (drive) entering Mecca because he (drive) was greater than him and more prestigious and because people were more willing to swear fealty to him; so, nobody would go to Ibn al-Zubayr to swear it to Yazīd.

Al-Husain (drive) went out one day to visit the grave of his grandmother Khādijā. He prayed there then supplicated to Allāh for a good while.

---

1 Excerpted from a poem by the authority Shaikh Muhammed Husain al-Isfahānī, may Allāh sanctify him.

2 al-Tabari, Tārikh, Vol. 6, p. 190.

3 al-Mufīd, Irshād.


IN MECCA

In Mecca, al-Husain (шейх) wrote one copy of a letter which he arranged to be circulated to the five individuals charged with collecting the khums from the Muslims of Basra. They were: Mālik ibn Musmi’ al-Bakri,2 al-Ahnaf ibn Qays, al-Munthir ibn Jarūd, Mas’ūd ibn `Amr, Qays ibn al-Haytham, and `Amr ibn ‘Ubayd ibn Mu`ammar. He sent his letter with one of his slaves named Sulaymān, and its text was as follows:

Allāh chose Muhammed (صلى الله عليه وسلم) from among His creation and blessed him with being His Prophet. He chose him to convey His Message, then He took him away after he had advised His servants and conveyed the Message with which he was entrusted. We are his family, supporters, wāsis, heirs, and the most worthy of all people of his status. Yet our people usurped our right, so we put up with it out of fear of disunity and out of love for people's safety, knowing that we were most worthy of what belongs to us than those who took it away from us. I am sending my messenger with this letter to invite you to the Book of Allāh and to the Sunnah of His Prophet, for this Sunnah has been killed, while bid’ā has already been revived. If you listen to me, I shall show you the path of guidance.

Al-Munthir ibn al-Jārūd al-`Abdi handed al-Husain's messenger to Ibn Ziyād who crucified the messenger during the night. Then he went out in the morning to Kāfā in order to reach it before al-Husain.5 Bahriyya daughter of al-Munthir was Ibn Ziyād's wife. Al-Munthir lied to her, saying that that messenger had been sent to spy on Ibn Ziyād. Al-Ahnaf wrote al-Husain (шейх) saying, “Be patient, for Allāh's promise is true, and do not let those who have no conviction take you for granted.”6

As for Yazīd ibn Mas’ūd,7 he gathered Banū Tamīm, Banū Ḥanzalah and Banū Sa’d. When they all

---

1 Excerpted from a poem by Hujjatul-Islam Shaikh Muhammed Ḥusain Kāshif al-Ghīṭā, may Allāh sanctify him.

2 al-Tabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 63 (first edition). While discussing the events of the year 38 A.H./659 A.D., the historians indicate that Mālik ibn Musmi’ supported Banū Umayyah, and that he had sheltered Marwān during the Battle of the Camel.

3 Ibn Hajār al-`Asqālānī, Al-Isāba, Vol. 3, p. 480. Al-Munthir ibn al-Jārūd, according to this reference, was on Ali's side during the Battle of the Camel. He was given the responsibility of dealing with Istakhār and his mother Umāma daughter of al-Nu`mān. Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād appointed him as ruler of India till he died there in 61 A.H./681 A.D. Khalīfa said he was appointed ruler of al-Sind where he died in 62 A.H./682 A.D. On p. 183, Vol. 7 (first edition), in the discussion of the events of the year 71 A.H./691 A.D., Mīs`āb ibn al-Zubayr said to al-Hakam ibn al-Munthir ibn Jārūd: “Al-Jārūd was a donkey living on the island of Ibn Kawān; he was Persian; he took to the coastline, so he claimed to belong to 'Abd al-Qays. No, by Allāh! I do not know anyone alive more evil than them! Then he married his sister off to al-Muka`bar, a Persian, so he did not earn any distinction at all.”

4 This is indicated on p. 200, Vol. 6, of al-Tabari's Tārīkh. On p. 21 of Al-Luhūf of Ibn Tāwūs, he is nicknamed “Abu Razīn,” and on p. 12 of Muthūr al-`Azīz, the author indicates that that letter was sent with Thīrā’ al-Sadūṣī.

5 al-Tabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 200.

6 Ibn Nama, Muthūr al-`Azīz, p. 13.

7 The following information is provided by the author of Muthūr al-`Azīz. But according to al-Tabari and Ibn al-Athīr, he was Mas’ūd ibn `Amr. Ibn Hazm, on p. 218 of Jamharat Ansāb al-`Arab, says that ‘Abbād ibn Mas’ūd ibn Khālid ibn Mālik ibn-Nahshali was a man of nobility. His sister, Layla daughter of Mas’ūd, was wife of [Imām] Ali ibn Abu Ṭālib (шейх). She gave birth to his son Abu Bakr, who was killed fighting on al-Husain's side, and `Abdullāh, who was on the side of Mīs`āb ibn al-Zubayr when the latter
assembled, he said, “O Banû Tamîm! How do you see my status among you and my lineage?” They said, “Very good, very good, indeed! You, by Allâh, are our backbone and the source of our prestige. In distinction, you are the most distinguished one, and in lineage you are ahead of everyone else.” He said, “Then I have gathered you for a matter about which I wish to consult you and for which I seek your support.” They said, “By Allâh! We shall grant you our advice and still find your view the best; so, say what you wish, and let us hear you.”

He said, “Mu`âwiyyah died. It is better, by Allâh, to see him dead and lost! The flank of oppression is now crumbled and the corners of injustice weakened. He had undertaken a fealty for which he thought he did his best to secure. Far away, indeed, is he from the truth, though he tried very hard to achieve what he wanted. By Allâh, he has failed; he sought advice then betrayed those who offered it to him! Yazîd has now taken charge! Yazîd, who drinks wine and is the source of all evil, now claims to be the caliph of the Muslims. He now rules them without their agreement, the youth that he is, and the ignorant one that he is, who does not know where his foot should stand in order to be right. I swear by Allâh a true oath that waging jihad against him is better than waging it against the polytheists. Al-Husain is the son of Ali and the son of the Messenger of Allâh (m), the one whose prestige is pure, whose view is the most wise. His distinction can never be described enough, and his knowledge never ends. He is more worthy of taking charge on account of his record, seniority, accomplishments and kinship to the Prophet (m). He is kind to the young and benevolent to the elderly. He is an excellent caretaker when taking care of his flocks and an excellent Imam among people obedience to whom is mandated by Allâh. Through him is your proof and argument. Wisdom is perfected through him; so, do not be blind from seeing the light of guidance, nor should you remain idle from suppressing falsehood. You betrayed Sakhr ibn Qays during the Battle of the Camel, so wash away that stigma by marching out to support the son of the Messenger of Allâh (m) and by helping him. Should any of you fall short of assisting him, he will be given by Allâh the shame that his offspring will inherit, while his tribe's number will be diminished. Here I am outfitted for war. One who is not killed will still die, and one who flees will never escape from death; so, be good, may Allâh have mercy on you, in providing your answer.”

Banû Hanzalah said, “O Abu Khâlid! We are the arrows in your quiver and the knights of your tribe! When you fight with us, victory will be on your side, and when you assault, you will be the conqueror. By Allâh! You shall not enter in any battle without us, nor will you, by Allâh, face hardship without us being on your side. We shall support you with our swords and protect you, if it pleases you, even with our bare hands.”

Banû `Amir ibn Tamîm spoke out saying, “O Abu Khâlid! We are your brothers and allies! We are not pleased when you are angry, nor do we stay when you depart. The matter is in your hands, so order us as you please.”

Banû Sa`d ibn Zayd spoke out saying, “O Abu Khâlid! The most hateful to us is to do anything against your wish or to disobey you. Sakhr ibn Qays had ordered us to abandon the battlefield during the Battle of the Camel, so we abided by his order and maintained our honour. Grant us a respite, therefore, so that we may consult each other, then we will let you know of our decision.” He said to them, “Should you do that, may Allâh never remove oppression from you or stop you from killing one another…”

He then wrote al-Husain (c) saying, “Your letter reached me, and I understood the task for which you seek my assistance. You have called upon me to shoulder my share of the responsibility of obeying you so that I may win the rewards of having supported you. Allâh has never deprived the world of a doer of

marched to fight al-Mukhtar. He was killed when al-Mukhtar's men fled away.” On p. 101 (second edition) of my book Zayd al-Shahîd, I quoted what the historians have said with regard to his being killed at al-Mathar, a Basra suburb, and that nobody knew who had killed him. While discussing the miracles performed by Imam Ali (c) in his book Al-Kharâ’îj, al-Rawandi says, “He was found slain in his tent, and nobody knew who had killed him.”
good, or without someone to guide others to the path of salvation. You are the Argument of Allah against
His creation and His trust on earth. You branched out of an Ahmedi olive tree the stem of which is the
Prophet (ﷺ) while you are its branches. Come to us, may you be the recipient of glad tidings, for the
descendants of Tamim are at your service, and I have left them racing to obey you faster than thirsty camels
seeking water. Banu Sa`d, too, are at your command: rain water washed their hearts of any uncleanness, so
they shine as brightly as lightning.”

When al-Husain (ﷺ) read his letter, he said, “May Allah grant you security on the Day of Extreme
Fear, and may He grant you dignity and permit you to quench your thirst on the Day of extreme thirst.”
(When Ibn Mas`ud was making preparations to march, news of al-Husain (ﷺ) being killed reached
him, so he was very grieved and sorrowful for having lost the opportunity to realize eternal happiness
through the avenue of martyrdom.)

Mariyya daughter of Sa`d (or Munqith) was a bondmaid and a sincere Shi’a. Her house was the place
where other Shi`as used to meet to discuss the virtues of Ahl al-Bayt ( radiy Allahu `alayhim). Yazid ibn Nabit, who belonged to
the tribe of `Abd al-Qays, said to his ten sons, “Who among you will join me in marching?” Two of them,
namely `Abdullah and `Ubaydullah, came forth. At the house of that lady, he was addressed by his followers
thus: “We fear for you the retribution of Ibn Ziyad.” He said, “By Allah! Should camels' hooves be flattened
because of the lengthy way, I would still place myself at the service of the one who has sought my
support.” Amir, his slave, accompanied him, and so did Sayf ibn Malik and al-Adham ibn Umayyah. They
joined al-Husain (ﷺ) at Mecca, adding their strength to his, till they reached Kerbalah where they were all
martyred.

THE KUFIANS’ LETTERS

While still in Mecca, al-Husain (ﷺ) received the letters sent to him by the people of Kafa. Some
letters were written by single individuals, others contained two, three, or four signatures, all
requesting him to go there because they did not have an Imam. They wrote saying that they never
prayed congregational nor Friday prayers with al-Nu`man. Many letters were delivered to him, so much so
that he received a total of as many as twelve thousand letters. He did not answer any of them. The last letter
he received was sent by Shabath ibn Rab`i, Hijar ibn Abjar, Yazid ibn al-Harith, `Izrah ibn Qays, `Amr ibn
al-Hajjaj, and Muhammed ibn `Omayr ibn `Utairid. The latter's letter stated the following: “The people are
waiting for you. They accept no views other than yours; so, hurry, O son of the Messenger of Allah, for the
grass is green, the fruits are ripe, and the trees are full of leaves. Come, if you will, for you will be coming to
hosts already recruited for you.”

As many as the seeds were the letters he did receive:
Saying: Come to Iraq, to those who connive and deceive;
Caliphate has no guardian nor anyone worthy of it,
While you are the best of those who deserve it.

2al-Tabari, Tarikh, Vol. 6, p. 198.
3Thakhirat al-Darayn, p. 224.
4Ibn Nama, Muthir al-Ahzarn, p. 11. On p. 193, Vol. 10, chapter 10, al-Khawrizmi indicates the details of the meetings held by
the Kufrans and their correspondence with al-Husain ().
So he came with hardened men like lions,
Like the leopards in their forests,
Mounted were those whose faces were
Like the moons shining, glorious, virtuous.
He crossed the sierra, reaching al-Taff and
In their courtyards he did settle.
The horse stopped, so he said: Kerbal’ is this,
Why did not your eyes avoid it at all?
Alight, for its flanks
Are cut only for our graves.
Descending, mending his sword
To cut the helmets on their heads,
As he looked around, he saw the flags
Of betrayal, of treachery.
Never for a moment did I believe it could or it might
A shining moon would in the desert be so bright,
And the sons of the blue woman would in its light
And in its halo receive the night.¹

AL-ḤUSAIN (ṣ) RESPONDS

When letters filled two saddlebags, al-Husain (ṣ) wrote them one letter which he gave to Ḥānī ibn Ḥānī al-Subay’ī and Saʿīd ibn ʿAbdullāh al-Hanafi. These were the last of his messengers. Its text was:

In the Name of Allāh, the Most Benevolent, the Most Merciful

Ḥānī and Saʿīd brought me your letters, and they are the last to deliver them to me. I understand what you narrate, and the gist of most of your letters is: “We have no Imām; so, come to us, perhaps Allāh will gather us with you on the path of guidance and righteousness.” I have sent you my brother and cousin and the confidant of my Ahl al-Bayt and ordered him to write me with regard to your conditions, views and intentions. So, if he writes me saying that your view is united with that of those of distinction and wisdom from among you and in agreement with what your messengers and letters state, I shall, by the Will of Allāh, come to you very soon. By my life, an Imām is one who acts upon the Book [of Allāh] and implements justice and follows the path of righteousness; he dedicates himself to follow Allāh's Commandments, and peace be with you.²

He handed his letter to Muslim ibn ʿAqīl saying, “I am dispatching you to the people of Kūfah, and Allāh shall deal with you as He pleases. I wish that I and you should be in the status of the martyrs; so, proceed with Allāh's blessing and help. Once you get there, stay with the most trustworthy of its people.”³

---


MUSLIM STARTS HIS TRIP

With Muslim ibn `Aqil (€), al-Husain (€) sent Qays ibn Mushir al-Saidawi, `Imarah ibn `Abdullah al-Sallali, and `Abdul-Rahman ibn `Abdullah al-Azdi. He enjoined Muslim to fear Allâh, and to find out what the people of Kûfa had collectively decided to do. If he saw them united and trustworthy, he should rush a letter to him.¹

Muslim left Mecca on the fifteenth of the month of Ramadan² using the Medina highway. He reached Medina and went to the Mosque of the Prophet (µ), then he bade his family farewell³ after having hired two road guides from the tribe of Qays. One night the road guides were lost, and they became extremely thirsty. And it was very hot. They said to Muslim (€) once they recognized some road marks, “Take yonder road and follow it, perhaps you will be saved.” He, therefore, left them, following their advice. Both road guides died of thirst.⁴ He could not carry them because they were about to pass away. What those road guides had actually seen was not the road itself but some landmarks leading thereto. The distance between them and water was not known, and they were unable to ride on their own, nor could they ride with someone else. Had Muslim (€) stayed with them, he, too, would have perished. The most urgent matter was to preserve precious lives and to continue the march till water could be reached, hence his decision to abandon them where they were. Muslim and those serving him barely survived till they reached the highway and the water source where they rested for a while.

Muslim sent a letter to al-Husain (€) with a messenger whom he hired from those who settled near that water source. He told him about the death of the road guides, about the hardship he underwent, and that he was staying at a narrow passage at Batn al-Khabt awaiting his instructions. The messenger met al-Husain (€) at Mecca and delivered the letter to him. Al-Husain (€) wrote him back ordering him to continue his march to Kûfa without any delay.

Having read the letter, Muslim immediately resumed his trip and passed by a watering place belonging to the tribe of Tay. He alighted there then departed. He saw a man shooting and killing a deer, so he took it as a sign of good omen: the killing of his foe.⁵

ENTERING KÛFA

On the twenty-fifth of Shawwal, he entered Kûfa⁶ and stayed with al-Mukhtar ibn Abu `Ubayd al-Thaqafi⁷ who was highly respected among his people, a generous man, a man of ambition and daring, one well experienced and determined, and a formidable opponent of the enemies of Ahl al-Bayt, peace be upon them. He was a wise man, a man of great discretion especially with regard to the rules of the battle and the means of subduing the foe. His experience taught him wisdom. He underwent calamities from which he learned self-discipline. He kept company with the Progeny of the most holy

¹al-Mufi'd, Al-Irshâd.
³al-Tabari, Târikh, Vol. 6, p. 198.
⁴al-Dainûri, Al-Akhbâr al-Tiwâl, p. 232.
⁵al-Mufi'd, Al-Irshâd.
⁷al-Tabari, Târikh, Vol. 6, p. 199.
THE OATH OF ALLEGIANCE

The Shī‘as went in hordes to meet Muslim as he stayed at al-Mukhtar’s house and expressed to him their obedience. This increased his happiness and elation. When he read to them al-Husain’s letter, `Ābīs ibn Shībīb al-Shākiri stood and said, “I do not speak about the people, nor do I know what they conceal in their hearts, nor do I deceive you in their regard. By Allāh! I can tell you what I personally have decided to do. By Allāh! I shall respond to your call, and I shall fight your enemy. I shall defend you with my sword till I meet Allāh desiring nothing except what He has in store for me.”

Habīb ibn Muzāhir said, “You have briefly stated your intention, and by Allāh, the One and only God, I feel exactly the same.”

Sa‘īd ibn `Abdullāh al-Hanāfī made a similar statement.1

Other Shī‘as came to swear the oath of allegiance to him till his ḏīwān counted as many as eighteen thousand men,2 whereas some historians said they were as many as twenty five thousand men.3 According to al-Sha‘bī, the number of those who swore allegiance to him reached forty thousand.4 It was then that Muslim wrote al-Husain (†) a letter which he handed to `Ābīs ibn Shībīb al-Shākiri informing him of the consensus among the people of Kāfā to obey him and to wait for his arrival. In it, he said, “A scout does not lie to his people. Eighteen thousand Kāfians have already come to me; so, hurry and come here as soon as this letter reaches you.”5 That was twenty-seven days prior to Muslim’s martyrdom.6 The Kāfians, too, added to it their own letter wherein they stated the following: “Hurry and come to us, O son of the Messenger of Allāh! A hundred thousand swords are in Kāfā on your side; so, do not tarry.”7

This angered a group of the Umayyads with vested interests. Among them were `Omer ibn Sa‘īd ibn Abū Waqqāṣ, `Abdullāh ibn Muslim ibn Rabī‘ah al-Hadramī, and `Imarah ibn `Uqbah ibn Abū Mu‘īt. They wrote Yazīd warning him of the arrival of Muslim ibn `Aqīl and the rallying of the people of Kāfā behind him, adding that al-Nu‘mān ibn Bāshīr was not strong enough to stand in his [‘Aqīl’s] way.8

Yazīd solicited the advice of his slave Serjun9 who was also his scribe and entertainer. Serjun said, “`Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād is your man!” “There is no good in him,” said Yazīd. Serjun asked him, “Had

---

1Ibid.
4Ibn Nama, p. 11.
6Ibid., p. 224.
9The following comment is stated on p. 158, Vol. 2, of Muhammed Kurd Ali’s book Al-Islam wal Hadīrta al-‘Arabiyya: “Serjun ibn Mansūr was a Syrian Christian who was employed by Mu‘awiyah. His father, Mansūr, was in charge of Syria’s treasury since the days of Heracles, before the country fell to the Muslims. He assisted the Muslims in fighting the Romans (Byzantines). Like his father, Mansūr ibn Serjun ibn Mansūr also served the government, and [second caliph] `Omer ibn al-Khattāb used not to appoint Christians in a government job except after they had embraced Islam.”
Mu‘awiyyah been alive and suggested to you to employ him [as governor of Kāfa], would you then do so?” Yazid answered in the affirmative. “Mu‘awiyyah had given him his own seal, and nothing stopped me from recommending him except my knowledge of how much you hate him.” Yazid, therefore, dispatched `Ubaydullāh to Kāfa and deposed al-Nu’mān ibn Bashir. He wrote the latter saying, “One who is praised will one day be condemned, and one who is condemned will one day be praised. You are named for a task wherein the first part of this statement applies to you.”

Elevated, you were, reaching the clouds and beyond, What ails you so you, crippled, watch the sun?!1

He ordered Ibn Ziyad to rush to Kāfa in the company of Muslim ibn ‘Omer al-Bāhili, al-Munthir ibn al-Jarūd, and `Abdullāh ibn al-Harīth ibn Nawfāl escorted by five hundred soldiers whom he hand-picked from among the people of Basra. Ibn Ziyād rushed to Kāfa, paying no attention to anyone who fell off his horse due to exhaustion even if he were one of his own closest friends. Even when Shurayk ibn al-‘Awār fell on the way, and even when `Abdullāh ibn al-Harīth fell, thinking that Ibn Ziyād would slow down for their sake, Ibn Ziyād paid no attention to them for fear al-Husain (ṣ) would reach Kāfa before him. When he reached al-Qadisiyyah, his slave Mahrān fell down. Ibn Ziyād said to him, “If you remain thus on foot and reach the [governor's] mansion, your reward will be a hundred thousand [dinars].” Mahrān said, “By Allāh I cannot do that!” `Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād abandoned him on the highway then disguised in Yemeni clothes and put on a black turban. He rode alone and whenever he passed by a checkpoint, its guards thought that he was al-Husain (ṣ), so they said, “Welcome, O son of the Messenger of Allāh!” He remained silent till he reached Kāfa via the Najaf highway.2

When he arrived, people welcomed him and said in one voice: “Welcome, O son of the Messenger of Allāh!” This only intensified his ire. He continued his march till he reached the governor's mansion. Al-Nu’mān did not open the gate for him, and he spoke to him from the mansion's roof-top. Said he, “I shall not return the trust to you, O son of the Messenger of Allāh!” Ibn Ziyād said to him, “Open the gate, for your night has extended for too long!”3

---

1 al-Balāthirī, Ansāb al-Āshraf, Vol. 4, p. 82.
2 Ibn Nama al-Ḥilli, Muthūr al-ʿAlzān.
3 Historians maintain no consensus with regard to [Ubaydullāh] Ibn Ziyād's date of birth. Those who did state it cannot be accurate even if it is to be taken by way of guessing. On p. 283, Vol. 8, of his book Al-Bidāya, Ibn Kathīr quotes Ibn `Asākir citing Ahmed ibn Yūnus al-Dabī saying that `Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād was born in 39 A.H./660 A.D. If that is the case, he was, on the Battle of Taff, near the close of 60 A.H./680 A.D., twenty-one years old. This means that he was fourteen years old when his father, Ziyād, died in 53 A.H./673 A.D. This, however, does not agree with the date stated by Ibn Jarīr [al-Ṭabarī] on p. 166, Vol. 6, of his Ṭārīkh. Says the latter, “Mu‘awiyyah appointed `Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād as the wāli [provincial governor] of Khurasan in 53 A.H./673 A.D.” But it is highly unlikely that a fourteen years old can be appointed to govern a vast country such as Khurasan. What Ibn Jarīr says must be based on assumption, for he says on the same page that “In 53 A.H./673 A.D., Mu‘awiyyah appointed `Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād, who was twenty-five years old, as the wāli of Khurasan.” This would put his date of birth in 53 A.H./673 A.D. and his age during the Battle of Taff as thirty-two years. His statement agrees with what is stated by Ibn Kathīr who, on p. 283, Vol. 8, of his book Al-Bidāya, quotes al-Fadl ibn Rākin ibn `Ubaydullāh saying that [`Ubaydullāh] Ibn Ziyād was twenty-eight years old when al-Husain (ṣ) was killed.” Based on this, his year of birth must have been 32 A.H./653 A.D. and that of his death at the age of twenty-one must have been 53 A.H./673 A.D. On p. 271 of Ibn Hajar's book Ta’līl al-Manfa'a (which was printed in Hyderabad, India), the author says, “Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād was born in 32 A.H./653 A.D. or in 33 A.H./654 A.D.” He, therefore, was twenty-seven or twenty-eight years old when the Battle of Taff took place at the beginning of 61 A.H./681 A.D.

At any rate, his mother, Marjāna, was Zoroastrian. On p. 383, Vol. 8, of Ibn Kathīr's book Al-Bidāya, and also according to al-`Aynī who, on p. 656, Vol. 7, of his book `Umdat al-Qāri fi Sharh al-Bukhārī, “Kitāb al-Fadā’il,” discusses al-Husain's merits, saying that Marjāna was a war captive from Isfahān, and that she was said to be Zoroastrian.

116
A man heard his voice and recognized him. He, therefore, said to the people, “He is Ibn Ziyād, by the Lord of the Ka‘ba!”1 They, thereupon, dispersed, each going back home.

In the morning, Ibn Ziyād gathered people at the grand mosque. There, he delivered a speech warning them against mutiny and promising them generous rewards for conforming. Said he, “Anyone found to be sheltering one of those who scheme against the authority of the commander of the faithful and who does not hand him over will be crucified on the door of his own house.”2

MUSLIM’S STAND

When Muslim ibn ‘Aqīl came to know about Ibn Ziyād’s speech and his explicit threats, and having come to know about people's conditions, he feared being assassinated. He, therefore, left al-Mukhtar’s house after the dark and went to the house of Hānī ibn ‘Urwah al-Mathṭājī who was a

1al-Bukhārī, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 201.
2al-Mufīd, Al-Irshād.
very zealous Shi‘a. He was also one of Kūfa’s dignitaries, one of its qāris of the Holy Qur’ān, and the shahīkh and chief of Murad. He could easily raise four thousand troops fully armed and eight thousand cavaliers. If he includes his tribe’s allies from Kindah, the number would swell to thirty thousand. He was one of the closest friends of the Commander of the Faithful Imām Ali ibn Abu Ta’līb (ṣ) on whose side he fought in all his three battles. He had seen and was honoured by being a companion of the Prophet (ṣ). When he was killed, he was more than ninety years old.

Muslim ibn ‘Aql stayed at the house of Shārīk ibn ‘Abdullāh al-Awār al-Harīthi al-Hamadānī al-Basrī, one of the main supporters of the Commander of the Faithful, peace be upon him, in Basra, a man who enjoyed great prominence among our men. He had participated in the Battle of Siffin and fought side

---

1 Ibn al-Athīr, Al-Kāmil, Vol. 4, p. 10.
2 al-Dainūrī, Al-Akhdār al-Tīwāl, p. 235.
8 Ibid.
9 On p. 201, Vol. 1, of his book Maqta al-Husain, al-Khwārizmī says, “The great religious authority, Sayyid al-Amin, is confused when he identifies Sharīk as ‘al-Hamadānī.’ Both al-Khwārizmī, in his book Maqta al-Husain, and Ibn Nāma, in his book Muthīr al-Aḥzān, are confused about him despite the fact that in his Appendix to Vol. 12 of his work Tārīkh al-Umam wal-Mulūk, Ibn Ṣarīr [al-Tabari] makes a reference to him. The genealogy of Sharīk actually belongs to al-Ḥārith ibn al-A’war, one of the companions of the Commander of the Faithful [Imām Ali (ṣ)]. The confusion stems from historians identifying Sharīk as the son of al-A’war al-Harīthi, overlooking the fact that Sharīk belonged to Mathhaj, whereas al-Ḥārith al-A’war was from Hamadān.” Among those who have accurately referred to Sharīk as “al-Mathhajī” is Ibn Durayd who says on p. 401 of his book Al-Iṣhtīqāq, “Among the notables of Hamadān is Sharīk ibn al-A’war who addressed Mu‘āwiyyah with a poem that included this verse:

   Does Mu‘āwiyyah son of Harb really taunt me
   While my sword is unsheathed and my tongue is with me?”

The same author goes on to state the following on pp. 397-398: “The men belonging to Sa’d al-’Ashīra are named after Mathhaj who is Mālik ibn Adād. Among their distinguished families are those of: ’Abd al-Madan, one of the three main distinguished families of the Arabs, Zurārah ibn ’Adas, who belongs to Banū Tamīm, Huthayfah ibn Badr, who belongs to Fizāra, and ’Abd al-Madan of Banū Ḥārīth among whose notable men is Sharīk al-A’war who addressed Mu‘āwiyyah and with whom he had a discussion.” The dialogue between Mu‘āwiyyah and Sharīk is documented by al-Hamadānī on p. 229, Vol. 2, of his book Al-Iklīl (Egypt: 1386 A.H./1967 A.D.) which contains the three verses of poetry mentioned by Ibn Ḥajja in his book Thamarāt al-Awrāq which comments about the contents of p. 45, Vol. 1, of Al-Mustazraf, in Chapter 8 which contains silencing answers. He also states responding statements made by the Hāshemite but makes no reference to the said poetic lines. He states only six lines on p. 70, Vol. 1, of Al-Hamāsa al-Basriyya. Under the heading “‘awa” of Tāj al-’Arūs, a reference is made to the same dialogue. So is the case when al-Zamakhshari records in his Rabī’ al-Abūr a list of silencing answers, citing four lines from the same poem. What makes us feel comfortable with attributing him to Mathhaj is the fact that he resided at Kūfah at the house of Hāni ibn ’Urwah, one of his immediate kinsmen and tribesmen. Had this son of al-Ḥārith been from Hamadān, he would have stayed over his father’s house. Al-Ḥārith al-Hamadānī died in 65 A.H./685 A.D.

by side with `Ammār ibn Yāsir.\(^1\) Due to his distinction and prominence, `Ubaydullah ibn Ziyād appointed him as Governor of Kerman on behalf of Mu`awiyah.\(^2\) He used to be in contact with and in the company of Hānī ibn `Urwah. He fell very seriously ill, so Ibn Ziyād went to visit him. Before his arrival, Sharīk said to Muslim (\(\text{شّمـ} \)), “Your objective and that of your Shī` as is his annihilation; so, you should stay inside the storage room. Once he feels secure at my house, you should come out and kill him, and I shall spare you having to deal with him in Ka`fa while you yourself remain in good health.”\(^3\)

As they were thus engaged in their dialogue, the arrival of the ameer (provincial governor) at the door was announced, so Muslim entered the storage room. When Sharīk thought that Muslim had taken too long to come out, he kept taking his turban off and putting it on the ground then putting it back again, doing so several times as he recited the following verses of poetry in an audible voice which Muslim could hear:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Why do you not Sulma greet?} \\
\text{Greet her and those whom she does greet.} \\
\text{A pure drink is what I desire when thirsty,} \\
\text{Though drinking it brings sends me to eternity.} \\
\text{If you fear Sulma's watchful eyes, for sure} \\
\text{Against her conniving you will never feel secure.}
\end{align*}
\]

He kept repeating these lines as he cast quick glances at the storage room. Then he raised his voice so that Muslim could hear him saying, “Give it to me to drink even if my death lies therein.” It was then that `Ubaydullah turned to Hānī and said, “Your cousin, on account of his sickness, is surely hallucinating.” Hānī said, “Sharīk has been hallucinating since he fell sick, and he does not know what he says.”\(^4\)

Sharīk, at a later time, asked Muslim, “What stopped you from killing him?” He said, “Two reasons: first, one hadith of the Messenger of Allah (\(\text{صـ} \)) narrated by Ali (\(\text{عـ} \)) says, 'Faith stops where murder begins; a faithful man does not murder others.' The second reason is Hānī's wife. She pleaded to me in the Name of Allāh not to do so in her house, and she wept before my very eyes.” Hānī said, “Woe unto her! She has killed me and killed her own self! That from which she fled, in it have I fallen.”

---

\(^{1}\) al-Tabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 203.


\(^{3}\) Ibn Nama, Muthīr al-Ahzān, p. 14.

\(^{4}\) Riyād al-Masāʾib, p. 60. al-Tabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 1, p. 204, where Sharīk is cited saying, “What do you think of Sulma? Why do you not greet her? Give it to me to drink though in it lies my own death.”

\(^{5}\) Ibn Nama, Muthīr al-Ahzān, p. 14.


\(^{7}\) Ibn Nama, Muthīr al-Ahzān, p. 14. Such a statement, coming from a scholar of Ahl al-Bayt (\(\text{صـ} \)) and a vicegerent of the Master of Martyrs in both religious and secular matters, is useful for religiously conscientious people who follow in their footsteps in order to comprehend the fiqh of the holiest Prophet (\(\text{صـ} \)). Such fiqh prohibits treachery. Pure souls refuse to expose a host to any hardship on account of his guest. Such are the sacred teachings of the Umma, only if its members contemplate. There is another minute mystery and implication viewed by the “mansion's martyr” the essence of which we sensed and found to be unique. It exists when the
Sharık died three days later. Ibn Ziyād performed the funeral prayers for him\(^1\), then he was buried at al-Thuwayya. When it became clear for Ibn Ziyād that Shark used to instigate people to have him killed, he said, “By Allah! I shall never perform the funeral prayers for anyone from Iraq! Had it not been for Ziyād's grave being in their land, I would have exhumed Sharık's grave.”\(^2\)

The Shi'as kept meeting Muslim ibn 'Aqīl secretly at Hāni's house without attracting the attention of Ibn Ziyād, admonishing each other to keep it to themselves. Ibn Ziyād, therefore, could not know where Muslim was. He called Ma`qil, his slave, to meet him. He gave him three thousand [dinars] and ordered him to meet the Shi`as and to tell them that he was a Syrian slave of Thul-Kila`, that Allah blessed him with loving Ahl al-Bayt of His Messenger (ص), that it came to his knowledge that one of the members of Ahl al-Bayt (ع) had come to that country, and that he had with him some money which he wanted to hand deliver to him. Ma`qil entered the grand mosque and saw Muslim ibn 'Awsajah al-Asadi offering his prayers. Having seen him finish his prayers, he came close to him and made the above claim to him. Muslim prayed Allah to grant him goodness and success. He then accompanied him to the place where Muslim ibn 'Aqīl was. He delivered the money to Muslim and swore the oath of allegiance to him.\(^3\) The money was handed over to Abu Thumama al-SA`idi who was a far-sighted and a brave Shi’a dignitary appointed by Muslim to receive the funds and to buy thereby weapons.

That man kept meeting Muslim every day. No secrets were kept from him, so he kept gathering intelligence and getting it to reach Ibn Ziyād in the evening.\(^4\)

**HĀNI'S STAND**

When the matter became clear to Ibn Ziyād, who by now knew that Muslim was hiding at the house of Hāni ibn 'Urwah, he had Asma` ibn Khārijah, Muhammed ibn al-Ash`ath and 'Amr ibn al-Hajjāj brought to him. He asked them why Hāni had not been coming lately to visit him. They told him that it was due to his sickness, but he was not convinced especially since his informers had already told him that Hāni used to sit at the door of his house every evening. These same men rode to Hāni and asked him to meet the sultan, for “He cannot stand you staying away from him,” they said, pressuring him till he yielded. Hāni, therefore, rode his mule and went. As soon as Ibn Ziyād saw him, he said, “His feet, the feet

---


\(^{4}\)al-Mufūd, *Ar-Irshād*. 

120
of the treacherous one, have brought him to you.”¹ Then he turned to his judge Shurayh and cited this verse of poetry:²

I seek his pleasure while he seeks my death,
Now from your fellow you have an excuse
To carry out what you intend to do.

Then Ibn Ziyād turned to Hāni and said, “You brought `Aqīl's son to your house and gathered weapons for him, did you not?” Hāni denied, and when their argument became heated, Ibn Ziyād ordered Ma'qīl to be brought to him. Hāni, hence, understood that that man was actually Ibn Ziyād's spy, so he said to Ibn Ziyād, “Your father had done me great favours, and I now wish to reward him. Why do you not listen to my good advice and safely depart for Syria with your family and wealth? Someone who is more worthy than you and your friend³ of taking charge has come here.” Ibn Ziyād said, “And under the foam is the pure sour milk.”⁴

Ibn Ziyād then said to him, “By Allāh! You will not stay out of my sight before you bring him to me.” Hāni said, “By Allāh! Had he been under my foot, I would not have lifted it!” Ibn Ziyād then spoke rudely to him and even threatened to kill him. Hāni, therefore, said, “In that case, there will be plenty of swords around you,” thinking that the tribesmen of Murād would protect him from Ibn Ziyād who then pulled Hāni's braids, hitting his face with his sword, breaking his nose and scattering the flesh from his cheeks and forehead on his beard. He then jailed him at his mansion.⁵

`Amr ibn al-Hajjāj heard that Hāni had been killed. Hāni's wife, Raw`a, who is well known as the mother of Yahya son of Hāni, was the sister of `Amr ibn al-Hajjāj. The latter, therefore, rode with a multitude from the tribe of Mathhaj, and they all surrounded the mansion. When Ibn Ziyād came to know

¹On p. 19, Vol. 1, of his book Mujma’ al-Amthāl, al-Maydāni says that this verse was composed by al-Hārith ibn Jibillah al-Ghassāni as he seized al-Hārith ibn `Afīf al-`Abdi who had composed poetry defaming him.

²According to p. 274, Vol. 2, of Al-Isāba (of Ibn Hajar al-`Asqalāni), where Qays ibn al-Makshūh's biography is detailed, the author says that this verse was composed by `Amr ibn Ma`di-Karb wherein he referred to his sister's son from whom he had distanced himself. On p. 32, Vol. 14, of Al-Aghānī, Abul-Faraj al-Ifsahānī says, “The Commander of the Faithful (ṣ) cited this verse when Ibn Muljīm al-Murādī came to swear the oath of allegiance to him.” On p. 97, Vol. 3, of his Tārikh, published by the Hayderi Press (Najaf, Iraq), al-Ya’qūbi says, “It came to the knowledge of Abu al-`Abbās al-Saffāh that Muhammed ibn `Abdullāh raised an army in Medina to fight him, so he wrote the latter in this regard and included this verse:

I seek his love while he seeks to murder me,
What your friend seeks is now your own excuse.

`Abdullāh wrote him back saying,

How could he thus seek while you are
Like the arteries of his heart?
How could he thus seek while your forearm
Derives its strength even from his own?
How could he thus seek while you are
To Hāshim a head and a guide?”


⁵Ibn Nama, Muthīr al-Ahzān.
about it, he ordered Shurayh, the judge,⁴ to see Häni and then to tell those horsemen that Häni was still alive. Shurayh narrates saying, “When Häni saw me, he said in a loud voice, ‘O Muslims! Should ten persons enter here, you must come to my rescue!’ Had Hamid ibn Abu Bakr al-Ahmari, the policeman, not been with me, I would have conveyed his message, but I had to simply say instead that Häni was still alive. ’Amr ibn al-Hajjaj then praised Allah and went back accompanied by the other men.”⁵

**MUSLIM’S UPRISING**

When Muslim came to know about what had happened to Häni, he feared being assassinated; therefore, he rushed to rise prior to the date which he had set with the public. He ordered ’Abdullah ibn Hazim to call upon his men, who had then filled the houses surrounding him, to gather together. Four thousand men assembled. They were shouting Badr's call which was: “O Supported One! Annihilate them!”

’Ubaydullah ibn ’Amr ibn ’Azīz al-Kindi was placed in command of the Kindah and the Rabī‘ah quarters. “March ahead of me,” said Muslim, “in command of the cavalry.” Muslim ibn ’Awṣajah al-Asadi was placed in command of Mathhaj and Bānā Asad. “Take charge of the infantry,” Muslim ordered him. Abu Thumāmā al-Sā`idi was placed in charge of Tamīm and Hamadān, whereas al-‘Abbās ibn Ja’dah al-Jadli was given the command of the Medina troops.

They marched towards the governor's mansion. Ibn Ziyād fortified himself inside it, locking all its gates. He could not resist because there were only thirty policemen with him and twenty of his close men and slaves. But the substance from which the people of Kūfah were made was treachery; so, their standards kept disappearing till no more than three hundred men remained out of the original four thousand.⁶ Al-Ahnaf ibn Qays described them as a whore who demanded a different man every day.⁷

When those inside the mansion called upon the people of Kūfah saying, “O Kūfians! Fear Allāh and do not expose yourselves to Syrian cavaliers whose might you have already tasted and whom you have already tested on the battlefield,” the remaining three hundred dispersed, so much so that a man would come to his son, brother, or cousin and tell him to go home, and a wife would cling to her husband till he returned home.⁸

Muslim offered the evening prayers at the [grand Kūfa] mosque accompanied by only thirty men. Then, when he went to Kindah's quarters, only three men accompanied him.⁹ He hardly proceeded for a

---

⁴On p. 330, Vol. 1, of his book *Al-Tabāqāt*, Khalīfah ibn ’Amr says that Shurayh was one of the “sons” who were in Yemen, attributing his lineage to the Kindah tribe, and that he died in 76 A.H./695 A.D. On p. 16, Vol. 1, of his own commentary on *Al-Tabaṣqāt*, Suhayl Zakar identifies the “sons” as “the descendents of the Persians who had accompanied Sayf ibn Thu Yazan to help the latter in kicking the Ethiopians out of Yemen.” He adds saying, “These `sons' constitute a special class in Yemen: their fathers are Persian while their mothers are Arab.”

⁵al-Tabari, *Tārīkh*, Vol. 6, p. 206. According to Ibn Nama and Ibn Tāwūs, the name of Häni’s wife was Rowayha daughter of ’Amr ibn al-Hajjāj.


short while before finding himself without anyone at all to show him the way.\(^1\) He alighted from his horse and cautiously traversed Kāfa’s alleys not knowing where to go.\(^2\)

When people abandoned Muslim, their noise died down, and Ibn Ziyād could not hear the voice of any of their men. Ibn Ziyād ordered his bodyguards to inspect the mosque's courtyard to see whether there were any men lying in ambush. They, therefore, kept lowering their lanterns down its walls and lighting reeds then lowering them down with ropes till they reached the mosque's courtyard. They could not see anyone, so they informed Ibn Ziyād who ordered his caller to call people to assemble at the mosque. When they filled the mosque, he ascended the pulpit and said, “‘Aqīl's son has caused the dissension and disunity with which you all are familiar; so, there is no security henceforth to any man in whose house we find him. Anyone who captures him and brings him to us will be paid his blood money. O servants of Allāh! Fear Allāh and safeguard your obedience and oath of allegiance, and do not expose yourselves to peril.”

Then he ordered al-Hasīn ibn Tamīm, chief of his police force, to search homes and highways, warning him that he would kill Muslim should the latter succeed in fleeing from Kāfa.\(^3\)

Al-Hasīn stationed his guards at highway crossroads and pursued the dignitaries who had supported Muslim, arresting `Abd al-A`la ibn Yazīd al-Kalbi and `Imārah ibn Salkhab al-Azdi. He threw them in jail then killed them. Then he jailed a group of prominent leaders as a safeguar against what they might do. Among them were al-Asbagh ibn Nubātah and al-Ḥarīth al-A`war al-Hamādī.\(^4\)

AL-MUKHTĀR IS JAILED

When Muslim marched, al-Mukhtār was at a village called Khatwāniyya\(^5\). He came accompanied by his supporters raising a green standard while `Abdullāh ibn al-Ḥarīth was raising a red one. Having planted his standard at the door of `Amr ibn Harth's house, he said, “I want to stop `Amr.”\(^6\) It became obvious to them that both Muslim and Hāni had been killed, and it was suggested to them that they would feel more secure in the company of `Amr ibn Harth, and so they did. Ibn Harth testified that they had both avoided Muslim ibn `Aqīl... Ibn Ziyād ordered them jailed after having reviled al-Mukhtār and hit his face with a lance, gouging one of his eyes.\(^7\) They remained in prison till Imām al-Husain, peace be upon him, was martyred.\(^8\)

Ibn Ziyād ordered Muhammed ibn al-Ash`ath\(^9\), Shabth ibn Rab`i, al-Qa'qa` ibn Shawr al-Thuhli\(^10\),

\(^{1}\)al-Shareeshi, Sharḥ Maqāmāt al-Ḥarīrī, Vol. 1, p. 192, at the conclusion of the tenth maqām.

\(^{2}\)Ibn Nama, Al-Luhūf, p. 29.


\(^{4}\)On p. 169, Vol. 6, of Ibn Sa`d’s Tabagāt, Sadir's edition, the author says, “Al-Ḥarīth al-A’war died in Kūfa during the caliphate of ’Abdullāh ibn al-Zubayr, and his governor over it was ’Abdullāh ibn Yazīd al-Ansārī al-Khatmī. He performed the funeral prayers for him according to his own will.”


\(^{6}\)al-Ṭabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 215.

\(^{7}\)According to p. 253 of his Al-Ma`ārif, Ibn Qutaybah, in a chapter dealing with those with deformities, and also on p. 303 of Ibn Habīb's Mahbār, U`baydullāh ibn Ziyād hit al-Mukhtār on the face with his whip, causing him to lose the vision from one of his eyes.


\(^{9}\)According to p. 331, Vol. 1, of Khalīfah's Tabagāt, Muhammed ibn al-Ash`ath is the son of Qays; his mother is Umm Farwah.
Hijar ibn Abjar, Shimr Thul-Jawshan, and `Amr ibn Harth to surrender and to discourage people from rebelling. A number of men, who were controlled by fear, responded positively to his call in addition to others who coveted rich rewards and were thus deceived, whereas those whose conscience was pure went underground, waiting for an opportunity to launch an attack on the camp of falsehood.

**MUSLIM AT THE HOUSE OF TAW`A**

Ibn `Aql's feet took him to the quarters of Banu Jiblah of the tribe of Kindah. He stood at the door of a house of a freed bondmaid named Taw`a who had a number of sons. She used to be the bondmaid of al-Ash`ath ibn Qays who freed her. Asid al-Hadrami married her, and she gave birth to his son Bilal who was in the crowd when his mother was standing at the door waiting for him. Muslim requested her to give him some water, which she did. He then requested her to host him, telling her that he was a stranger in that land without a family or a tribe, that he belonged to a family capable of intercession on the Day of Judgment, and that his name was Muslim ibn `Aql. She took him to a room which was not the same one where her son used to sleep, and she served him some food. Her son was surprised to see her entering that room quite often, so he asked her about it. She refused to answer his question except after obtaining an oath from him to keep the matter to himself.

But in the morning he informed Ibn Ziyad of where Muslim had been hiding. Ibn Ziyad dispatched al-Ash`ath accompanied by seventy men who belonged to the Qays tribe in order to arrest him. Upon hearing the horses' hoofs ploughing the ground, Muslim realized that he was being pursued, so he hurried to finish a supplication which he was reciting following the morning prayers. Then he put on his battle gear and said to his hostess Taw`a: “You have carried out your share of righteousness, and you have secured your share of the intercession of the Messenger of Allah (ص). Yesterday, I saw my uncle the Commander of the Faithful (الرحمن خير الله) in a vision telling me that I was going to join him the next day.”

He came out to face them raising his unsheathed sword as they assaulted the house, succeeding in repelling their attack. They repeated their attack, and again he repelled them as he recited these poetic verses:

```
It is only death; so, do whatever you devise,
For you shall no doubt meet your demise;
So I shall be patient about the Command
Of Allah, His Glory is Grand!
```
Allah’s decree is always done 
In His creation; this is well known.

He killed as many as forty-one of their men, and he was so strong that he would take hold of one man then hurl him on the rooftop.  

Ibn al-Ash`ath sent a messenger to Ibn Ziyād requesting reenforcements. The messenger came back to him carrying the latter's blame of his incompetence. He, therefore, sent him this message: “Do you think that you went me to one of Kāfa's shopkeepers, or to a Nabatean from Hīrā?! Rather, you sent me to one of the swords of [Prophet] Muhammed ibn `Abdullāh”) Ibn Ziyād then assisted him with additional soldiers.  

Fighting intensified. Muslim and Bakir ibn Hamrān al-Ahmari exchanged blows. Bakir struck Muslim on the mouth, cutting his upper lip, wounding the lower one and breaking two of his lower teeth. Muslim fiercely struck him with one blow on his head and another on his shoulder muscle, almost splitting his stomach, killing him instantly.  

Then they attacked him from the house's rooftop, hurling rocks at him. They kept burning reed bales then throwing them at him. He attacked them in the alley as he quoted the following rajaz verses composed by Ḥamrān ibn Malik:  

I swore not to be killed except as a free man,  
Though I found death something repelling;  
Every man will one day face evil,  
And what is cold will be mingled with what is hot.  
The soul's ray returned, so it did settle,  
I fear only being charged with lying or being tempted.  

---

2Shaikh `Abbās al-Qummi, Nafs al-Mahmūm, p. 57.  

No historian who wrote about battles during the jihāliyya period makes any reference to such a battle. But on p. 64, Vol. 7, of Yāqūt al-Hamawī's encyclopedia Mu`jam al-Buldān, on p. 1062, Vol. 3, of al-Bakrī's Mu`jam bima Ista`jam, and p. 310, Vol. 9, of Tāj al-`Arūs, this name is given to a mountain where a battle, in which Banū `Āmir lost, took place. On p. 321 of al-Qalqashandi's book Nihāyat al-`Arab, the author says, “Banū Qarn are one of the branches of the tribe of Murād. Among them is Oways al-Qarnī.” Yet all of this does not really tell us the whole truth. Yes, Muhammed ibn Habīb, the genealogist, on p. 243 of Risālat al-Mughṭāfīn [a dissertation about those assassinated], which is listed among the seventh group of rare manuscripts researched by `Abd al-Salām Harūn, it is indicated that [the tribe of] Khat‘ām killed al-Samīl, brother of Thul-Jawshan al-Kīlābī, so Thul-Jawshan raided them assisted by `Ayyeenaḥ ibn Ḥaṣīn on the condition that the latter would take the booty. They fought Khat‘ām at Fazār, a mountain, killing some of their men and taking booty. Hamrān ibn Mālik ibn `Abd al-Mālik al-Khat‘ām was fought at the mountain. He was ordered to surrender, whereupon he recited these lines:
I swore never to be killed except as a free man; I saw death something abominable; I loathe being deceived or tempted.

Then he was killed. His sister composed a poem eulogizing him in which she said:

Woe upon Hamrân, one who did not give himself away, He did more than his share of goodness, He owed others nothing at all, A valiant fighter who stubbornly fought: How could he possibly accept the shame?

---

3 On p. 126, Vol. 4, of Ibn al-Athîr's book *Al-Kâmîl*, in the discussion of the events of the year 71 A.H./690 A.D., Muslim ibn `Amr al-Bâhili is identified as Qutaybah's father. On p. 185, Vol. 7, of al-Tabari's *Târikh* (first edition), where the events of the year 71 A.H./690 A.D. are discussed, the author says that Muslim ibn `Amr al-Bâhili was killed at a Catholic convent, and that he was in the company of Mis‘ab ibn al-Zubayr when the latter's army clashed with that of `Abd al-Malik.
Muslim did not greet him. The guard asked Muslim, “Why did you not greet the ameer?” “Keep your mouth shut,” said Muslim, “he is not my ameer.”1 It is also said that he said to Ibn Ziyād, “Peace be upon whoever followed the right guidance, feared the consequences in the hereafter, and obeyed the Exalted King,” so Ibn Ziyād laughed and said, “Whether you greet or not, you shall be killed.”2 Muslim said, “If you kill me, someone worse than you had already killed someone much better than me. Besides, you shall never abandon committing murders, setting a bad example, thinking ill of others, being mean; having the upper hand will be the doing of anyone else but you.”

Ibn Ziyād said, “You disobeyed your imām, divided the Muslims, and sowed the seeds of dissension.” Muslim said, “You have uttered falsehood. Rather, those who divided the Muslims are Mu‘āwiyyah and his son Yazīd. The seeds of dissension were sown by your father, and I wish Allah will grant me to be martyred at the hand of the worst of His creation.”3

Then Muslim asked permission to convey his will to some of his people. He was granted permission, so he looked at those present there and saw ‘Omer ibn Sa‘d. “There is kinship between me and you,” said Muslim to him, “and I need a favour of you which you should oblige, and it is a secret between us.” But he refused to listen, whereupon Ibn Ziyād said to him, “Do not hesitate from tending to your cousin's need.” ‘Omer stood with Muslim in a way that enabled Ibn Ziyād to see them both. Muslim conveyed his desire to him to sell his sword and shield and pay a debt in the amount of six hundred dirhams4 which he had borrowed since he entered Kāf, to ask Ibn Ziyād to give him his corpse to bury it, and to write al-Husain (p.) to tell him what happened to him. ‘Omer ibn Sa‘d stood up and walked to Ibn Ziyād to reveal the secret with which he had just been entrusted by Muslim! Ibn Ziyād said to him, “A trustworthy person never betrays you, but you have placed your trust in a treacherous person.”5

2al-Ṭurayhi, Al-Muntakhab, p. 300.
4On p. 241 of al-Dāiní’s book Al-Akhbār al-Tiwāl, his debt was a thousand dirhams.
5al-Mufād, Al-Irshād. al-Tabari, Tārikh, Vol. 6, p. 212. This statement runs like a proverb. It has been made by Ahl al-Bayt, peace be upon them. For example, on p. 643, Vol. 2, of Al-Wasā'il by al-Hurr al-‘Āmilī, in chapter 9, it is stated that a treacherous person should never be trusted. Relying on the authority of Mu‘āmmar ibn Khal ād, al-Kulaynī says, “I heard the father of al-Ḥasan, peace be upon him, saying that Abu Ja’far [Imām al-Bāqir], peace be upon him, used to say, ‘The trustworthy one did not betray you, but you placed your trust in a treacherous person.’”

Muslim, the mansion's martyr, was not unfamiliar with the nature of ‘Omer ibn Sa‘d, nor was he ignorant of the meanness of his origin, but he wanted to let the Kūfians know the extent of this man’s “manliness” and his lack of safeguarding a secret so that nobody would be deceived by him. He had another reason: He wanted to let the Kūfians know that Ahl al-Bayt, peace be upon them, and those charged with authority among them, desired nothing but reforming the nation and the promotion of the Divine call. This man [Muslim], whom they entrusted, did not stretch his hand to bayt al-mūl although he had the full authority over it to do whatever he pleased. But he, instead, spent his days, which were sixty-four in number, borrowing money. Thus should those charged with authority behave. They should not regard the wealth which belongs to the poor as a booty. This treacherous person, as a matter of fact, reminds me of the incident that took place to Khālid Al-Qasri with regard to safeguarding a secret because this is one of the characteristics of the Arabs’ norms of manliness and one of the Islamic morals and ethics, in addition to disrespect to the Prophet of Islam (ص) and the abusing of the master of wāṣīt [Imām Ali, peace be upon him] from the pulpits and saying about him what no writer finds appropriate to state. Al-Walīd ibn ʿAbd al-Malik once wanted to perform the hajj, so a group of men decided to assassinate him, and they sought Khālid’s participation in their plot, but Khālid refused. They, therefore, asked him not to reveal their plot, but he instead went to Al-Walīd and advised him not to go to the pilgrimage that year because “I fear lest you should be assassinated.” Al-Walīd asked him, “Who do you fear may assassinate me? Tell me of their names.” But he refused to name them. Said he, “I only advise you and will never name them to you.” “In that case,” responded al-Walīd, “I shall hand you over to your enemy, Yousuf ibn ‘Omer.” “Even if you do so,” he said, “I shall not name them.” Al-Walīd handed him over to Yousuf who tortured him, but the man still refused to name them, whereupon he was jailed. A huge stone was placed on his chest that finally killed him in 126 A.H./744

127
Then Ibn Ziyād turned to Muslim and said, “O son of `Aqīl! You came to a united people and disunited them.” Muslim said, “No, indeed, I did not come to do that, but the people of this country claimed that your father killed their best men, shed their blood, and did what Kisra and Caeser do, so we came to them in order to enjoin justice, and to invite all to accept the judgment of the Book [of Allāh].”

Ibn Ziyād said, “What do you have to do with all of that? Have we not been dealing with them with equity?” Muslim said, “Allāh knows that you are not telling the truth. You, in fact, kill when angry, out of enmity, and for mere suspicion.” Ibn Ziyād then verbally abused him and abused Ali (ṣ), `Aqīl, and al-Husain (ṣ), whereupon Muslim said, “You and your father are more worthy of being thus abused; so, issue whatever decree you wish, you enemy of Allāh!”

It was then that Ibn Ziyād ordered a Syrian to go to the top of the mansion and to behead Muslim and throw both the head and the body to the ground. The Syrian took Muslim to the flat rooftop of the mansion as the latter kept repeating, “Subhān-Allāh! La ilāha illa-Allāh! Allāhu Akbar!” He also kept repeating, “O Allāh! Judge between us and the people who deceived, betrayed and lied to us,” then he faced Medina and saluted al-Husain (ṣ).

The Syrian struck Muslim's neck with his sword and threw his head and body to the ground then hurried down. He was very startled. Ibn Ziyād asked him what was wrong with him. “The moment I killed him,” said he, “I saw a black man with an extremely ugly face standing beside me biting his finger, so I was frightened.” “Perhaps you lost your mind for a moment,” said Ibn Ziyād.

Hāni was taken to an area of the marketplace where sheep were sold; his arms were tied. He kept saying, “O Mathhaj! Any man from Mathhaj to help me today?! O Mathhaj! Where has Mathhaj gone away from me?!?” Having seen that there was none to respond to him, he somehow managed to get one of his arms out of the ropes and said, “Is there anyone who would hand me a stick, a knife, a rock, or even a bone so that a man may be able to defend himself?” Guards attacked him and tied him again. He was ordered to stretch his neck so that they might strike it with their swords. “I am not going to give it away to you sogenerously. I shall not assist you at the cost of my own life.” A Turkish slave named Rasheed owned by `Ubaydullah ibn Ziyād struck him with his sword, but he missed. Hāni said, “To Allāh is my return! O Allāh! To Your Mercy do I come and to Your Pleasure!” Rasheed hit him again and killed him. This same slave was killed by

A.D. He was then sixty years old. He was buried in a suburb. `Āmir ibn Sahl al-Ash’ari hamstrung his horse on his grave, so Yousuf whipped him seven hundred lashes. Nobody in all of Arabia dared to eulogize him despite his open-handedness except Abu al-Shaghāb al-`Abasi who said,

Truly, the best of men alive or living Is a captive with them in chain, By my life! You thus immortalized his prison And caused it a great deal of pain: Should you imprison the Qasri, you should not Imprison his name, nor his virtues among the tribes.

These verses are recorded on p. 79, Vol. 5, of Ibn `Asākir’s Taqrib.

1Ibn Nama, Al-Luhūf, p. 31.
4Ibn Nama, Mutāḥir al-Azhān, p. 18.
Ibn Ziyād ordered the corpses of both Muslim and Hānī to be tied with ropes from their feet and dragged in the market places. He crucified them upside-down at the garbage collection site, then he sent their severed heads to Yazīd who displayed them at one of the streets of Damascus.

`Ubaydullāh Ibn Ziyād wrote Yazīd saying:

Praise to Allāh Who effected justice on behalf of the commander of the faithful and sufficed him having to deal with his foes. I would like to inform the commander of the faithful, may Allāh bless him, that Muslim ibn `Aqīl had sought refuge at the house of Hānī ibn `Urwaḥ al-Murāḍī, that I assigned spies for them and let men infiltrate their assemblies and plotted against them till I forced them out. Allāh gave me the upper hand over them, so I killed them and sent you both of their heads with Hānī ibn Abu Hayyā al-Wādī`ī al-Hamadānī and al-Zubayr ibn al-`Arwāḥ al-Tamī`ī who both are from among those who listen to and who obey us; so, let the commander of the faithful ask them whatever he pleases, for there is knowledge with them, truth, understanding, and piety. And peace be with you.

Yazīd wrote Ibn Ziyād saying,

You do not cease being the source of my delight. You have behaved with strictness and assaulted with courage, maintaining your composure. You have done very well and testified to the correctness of my good impression about you. I invited your messengers and asked them and confided in them, and I found their views and merits just as you indicated; so, take good care of them. It has also come to my knowledge that al-Husain ibn Ali has marched towards Iraq. You should, therefore, set up observation posts, prepare with arms, be cautious

---

1It is also called “bahr jurgan” [the sea of jurgan], that is, the Georgian Sea, “bahr al-baskoon,” the Basque Sea, Tabaristan Sea, “bahr al-daylam,” “bahr jilān,” “bahr shirwan,” “bahr Baku,” and “bahr saracee.” Islam reached the Caspian on a large scale during the early 9th century A.D. — Tr.

2al-Ţurayhi, Al-Muntakhab, p. 301. On p. 266, Vol. 2, of Tārikh al-Kamīs, where [first caliph] Abu Bakr's sons are discussed, the author says, “Mu`awiyah ibn Khadij ordered Muḥammad ibn Abu Bakr to be dragged on the highway, and that the dragging party should pass by the house of `Amr ibn al-Ás, knowing how much the latter hated to see Muḥammad ibn Abu Bakr killed. Then he ordered his corpse to be buried. A donkey was stuffed with the corpse, then it was set on fire...” On p. 153, Vol. 11, of Ibn al-Athīr's book Al-Kāmil, where the events of the year 555 A.H./1160 A.D. are discussed, citing Murūj al-Thahab, the author says, “When Zāhir ad-Dīn ibn al-Attār was killed, an order was issued to tie his penis with a rope and to drag the body on the streets; an ink-pot was placed in one of his hands, and a pen was placed in the other, so people were shouting, 'Mawla! Please sign for us!'” On p. 12 of Midmār al-Haqūq by Muḥammad ibn Taqī al-Ayyūbī, governor of (the Syrian town of) Hama, it is written that, “Certain individuals cut his [Zāhir’s] ear off on Thul-Qi`da 15, 575 A.H. (April 19, 1180 A.D.” [Islam prohibits mutilating or burning corpses, be they the corpses of Muslims or of non-Muslims.]

3Ibn Shahr Āshūb, Manāqib, Vol. 2, p. 21. Al-Khawārizmi, Maqtal al-Husain, Vol. 1, p. 215. Such a heinous action is not committed except by one who reneges from the Islamic creed and whose heart does not contain one iota of mercy or compassion. Al-Hajjāj had likewise done to the corpse of [the sahib] `Abdullāh ibn al-Zubayr as we read on p. 268, Vol. 5, of al-Balāthirī's book Ansāb al-Ashrāf, and on p. 481 of Ibn Ḥabīb's book Al-Mahbūr. On p. 116 of Ibn al-'Arabī's book Mukhtasar Tārikh al-Duwal, we read the following: “Nero, the king [of ancient Rome], killed two disciples of Christ then crucified them upside-down.” In Hayāt al-Haywān, we are told that Ibrāhīm al-Fażārī was found guilty of committing many heinous deeds such as ridiculing belief in Allāh and in the prophets, so the faqīh decreed that he, too, should be killed then crucified upside down. His corpse was taken down then burnt. On p. 481 of Al-Mahbūr (Hayderabad edition), it is stated that al-Hajjāj ibn Yousuf al-Thaqafī crucified the corpse of Abdullāh ibn al-Zubayr in Mecca upside down.
for mere suspicion. Kill anyone whom you suspect.¹ Your tenure is put to the test by this Husain rather than by anyone else, so is your country and your own self as governor. The outcome will determine whether you will be freed or whether you will return to slavery;² so, you have to either fight him or arrest and transport him to me.³

O cousin of al-Husain! Tearful eyes of your Shi`as may
With blood provide you with water to drink.
Tearful eyes shall never cease
Greeting you as they come and go,
For you were not given to drink,
Not even once, as your fractured teeth
Fell into the drink.
From the mansion did they hurl you,
Having tied you; were you not their prince
Only the day before?
Should you spend without anyone mourning you?
Is there anyone in the land to mourn you?
Is there anyone in the land to cry over you?
Should you die, in Zarūd there are
Many a mourner mourning you in the night and the day.⁴

THE JOURNEY TO IRAQ

W hen it came to Husain's knowledge that Yazid had appointed `Amr ibn Sa'id ibn al-'Ās as the head of an army, ordering him to take charge of the pilgrimage caravans and to kill al-Husain ( gà ) wherever he could find him,⁵ he decided to leave Mecca before finishing the pilgrimage and be satisfied with performing only the `umra because he hated that the sanctity of the House might otherwise be

⁴These poetry lines are excerpted from a poem by Sayyīd Bāqīr al-Hindi, may Allāh have mercy on his soul. It is not a secret that there are three viewpoints with regard to the date when Muslim was martyred: The first is that he was martyred on the third of the month of Thul-Hijjah. This is stated in Al-Akhbar al-Tiwāl. It seems that Ibn Tawūs, in his book Al-Luhūf fi Qatlāl-Tufuf, agrees with this view. Says he, “Al-Husain ( gà ) left Mecca on the third of Thul-Hijjah,” adding, “on the same day when Muslim was killed.” The other view is that he was martyred on the eighth of Thul-Hijjah. This is stated in Al-Watwāt on p. 210 of his book Al-Khasīs. This date seems to be the one accepted by Abu al-Fidā` as stated on p. 19, Vol. 2, of his Tārīkh, and the same is stated on p. 139 of Tathkirat al-Khawās of Ibn al-Jawzī, the grandson. Both authors have stated that Muslim was killed on the 8th of Thul-Hijjah, implying, from their wording, that it was on the eve preceding the third day which would have been the Day of `Arafa. This is what al-Mufid says in his book Al-Ishād and al-Kaf`amī in his book Misbāh al-Kaf`amī. This is also what Ibn Nama says in his book Muthir al-Ahzān and al-Tabari on p. 215, Vol. 6, of his Tārīkh, as well as the author of Murūj al-Thahab [al-Mas`ūdī] who states the same on p. 90, Vol. 2, of his book. These authors say that Muslim was seen in Kūfah in public on the 8th of Thul-Hijjah and was killed one day after making his uprising public. Al-Mas`ūdī, in his book Murūj al-Thahab, makes a statement to the effect that al-Husain ( gà ) left Mecca on the ninth of Thul-Hijjah. So, if Muslim had been killed one day after al-Husain's departure, his martyrdom would have been on the first day of `Id al-Adha.
⁵Shaikh Lutfallāh al-Gulpaygānī, Muntakhab al-Athar fī Akhbār al-Imām al-Thānī `Ashar, Raḍiyy ad-Dīn al-Qazwīnī, p. 304, 10th night.
Before departing, al-Husain (шей) stood up to deliver a sermon. He said,

All praise is due to Allâh. The Will of Allâh be done. There is no might except in Allâh. Allâh has blessed His Messenger. Death is inscribed on Adam's children like a necklace on a girl's neck. My passion to be reunited with my ancestors is like that of Jacob for Joseph, and the demise I shall soon meet is better for me. I see my limbs being torn by speeding steeds in the desert between al-Nawâвис and Kerbalâ’, so they shall fill, through my death, hollow bellies and starved pouches. There is no avoiding a day recorded by the Pen. Whatever pleases Allâh also pleases us, we Ahl al-Bayt. We shall be patient as we face His trial, and He shall give us in full the rewards due to those who persevere. The Prophet's offspring shall not deviate from His path. Rather, they shall be gathered before him in the presence of the most Holy One. His eyes shall be cooled upon seeing them assembled, and he shall fulfill his promise. Anyone among us who is ready to sacrifice himself and is determined to meet Allâh should join our departing party, for I shall depart in the morning if Allâh Almighty so wills.

His departure took place on the 8th of Thul-Hijjah, 60 A.H./September 12, 680 A.D. He was accompanied by his family, slaves, and Shi’as from the people of Hijâz, Basra and Kûfâ who joined him during his sojourn in Mecca. He gave each one of them ten dinars and a camel to carry his luggage.

A group of his family members, in addition to others, asked him to postpone his trip till he could get to know the condition of the public. They feared the treachery of the Kûfâns and were apprehensive of a possible reversal in the situation. But the “Father of the Oppressed” was unable to reveal the knowledge with him about his fate to everyone he met. The facts, as they stand, are not to be revealed to just anyone who seeks them due to the different levels of people's comprehension and the differences in their ability to absorb. He, peace be upon him, had to answer each person according to his own condition and ability to comprehend.

He, for example, said to [‘Abdullâh] Ibn al-Zubayr, “My father told me once that there is a ram in Mecca through which its sanctity would be violated, and I do not like to be it. Should I be killed outside Mecca even the distance of a span, it is better for me than being killed inside it.” By Allâh! Had I been inside...
one of these holes, they would have taken me out of it and done what they wish to do. By Allāh! They shall oppress me and transgress just as the Jews oppressed and transgressed the sanctity of the Sabbath.”

As soon as Ibn al-Zubayr had left, al-Husain (لى) said to those in his company, “There is nothing in this world this man loves more than seeing me depart from Hijaz. He knows very well that people do not equate him with me, so he wished to see me leave so that the space will be all his.”

During the same night following which al-Husain (لى) left for Iraq, Muhammed ibn al-Hanafiyya came to him and said, “You know very well how the Kāfians betrayed your father and brother, and I fear lest your case should be like theirs. Stay here, then, for you are the most respected one in the haram, and the most secure.” Al-Husain (لى) said to him, “I fear lest Yazid son of Mu‘awiyyah should assassinate me inside the haram, thus becoming the one on whose account the sanctity of this House is violated.” Ibn al-Hanafiyya suggested to him to go to Yemen or to other parts of the peninsula, so Abu ‘Abdullah (لى) promised him to think about it.

During the early hours of the morning, al-Husain (لى) started the preparations for his departure. Ibn al-Hanafiyya again came to him and held the reins of the she-camel upon which al-Husain (لى) had already mounted, saying, “Did you not promise me to think about my suggestion?” “Yes,” al-Husain (لى) answered, “But after your departure, the Messenger of Allāh (لى) came to me in a vision and said, ‘O Husain! Get out! Allāh Almighty has decreed to see you slain.’” Muhammed ibn al-Hanafiyya said, “Innā lilāhi wa innā ilayhi raji‘oon” (We are Allāh’s, and to Him is our return). He asked him about the reason for letting his family accompany him. Al-Husain (لى) said, “It is the Will of Allāh to see them taken captives.”

‘Abdullah son of Ja‘fer al-Tayyār, and also his sons ‘Awn and Muhammed, wrote him saying, “I plead to you in the Name of Allāh to go home once you read this letter, for I fear lest you should be killed and your Ahl al-Bayt (لى) be eradicated. If you get killed, the light on earth will be put out, for you are the standard of guidance and the hope of the faithful. Do not hurry in marching, for I shall see you shortly after you read this letter, and peace be with you.”

‘Abdullah took a letter from Yazid's governor over Mecca, 'Amr ibn Sa‘id ibn al-`Ās, granting al-Husain (لى) security. He brought it to al-Husain (لى) who was then accompanied by Yahya ibn Sa‘id ibn al-`Ās, and he tried very hard to dissuade al-Husain (لى) from marching to his destination, but Abu ‘Abdullah (لى) refused. He informed ‘Abdullah that he had seen the Messenger of Allāh (لى) in a vision giving him an order which he had to carry out. He asked him what he had seen. “I have not narrated this vision to anyone,” said Imam Husain (لى), “and I shall not narrate it till I meet my Lord, the most Exalted One, the most Great.”

Ibn ‘Abbās said to him, “O cousin! I seek solace, but you are not solacing me, and I fear for you if you do it lest you should perish and be eliminated. The people of Iraq are treacherous; so, do not go near them. Stay in this land, for you are the master of the people of Hijaz. If the people of Iraq want you, as they claim, then let them unseat their governor and enemy, then you should go to them. If you insist on going out, go to Yemen, for it has fortresses and valleys, and it is a wide and spacious land, and your father has many supporters there. You will be insulated from [the evil] people. You will then be able to write people, dispatch your messengers and disseminate your message, for you will then realize your objective in good health.” Al-Husain (لى) said to him, “O cousin! By Allāh! I know that you are an advisor with compassion, yet I have already decided to go.” Ibn ‘Abbas then said, “If you insist on going, do not take your women and children, for I fear lest you should be killed as they look on.” Al-Ḥusain (لى) said, “By Allāh! They [the

---

1 Ibn al-Athīr, Al-Kāmil, Vol. 4, p. 16.
WHY DID THE IMĀM (ḡ) LEAVE?

This is the ultimate end of anyone seeking to know why al-Husain (ḡ) did not tarry before going to Iraq. The father of `Abdullāh [Imām al-Husain, peace be upon him] was not unfamiliar with the nature of the Kafians or with their treachery and hypocrisy. But what could he do after they had expressed their loyalty, obedience and submission to his orders? Can the Imām of a nation be excused for not providing guidance when he is solicited, or from redeeming them from the claws of misguidance and guiding them to what best pleases the Lord of the World, especially since their dissension and disunity had not yet become manifest? The reason he gave for marching to meet them, despite their treacherous nature, which manifested itself in the way they treated him, his father and brother (ḡ), would prompt those who look at the exterior appearance of matters to blame him. The Imām chosen for the guidance of the public is greater than doing anything that would be used as an argument against him. The country to which Ibn `Abbās and others referred has no security, and what happened between Bishr ibn Arta’ah and the people of Yemen underscores the latter’s weakness of resistance and inability to face an oppressor.

Such is the view expressed by al-Shaikh al-Shushtari, may Allāh elevate his status. He has said, “Al-Husain (ḡ) had two obligations: a real one, and an evident one: a) As for the real one that caused him to face death and to expose his family to captivity and his children to slaughter, despite his knowledge [of such an imminent fate], it is due to the fact that the tyrants from among Bana Umayyah had convinced themselves that they were right and that Ali and his offspring and supporters were wrong, so much so that they made cursing him part of their Friday congregational prayers... One of them forgot once to curse Ali (ḡ) in his Friday sermon, so they had to remind him of it. Since he was travelling, he had to repeat his prayers as qaza! Had al-Husain (ḡ) surrendered and sworn the oath of allegiance to Yazīd, there would have been no trace of the truth left. This is so because there were many who thought that entering into a covenant with the Umayyads was indicative of their legitimacy and good conduct. But after al-Husain (ḡ) had fought them, exposing his sacred life and those of his family and children to the atrocities that befell them, it became quite clear to the people of his time, and to succeeding generations, that right was on his side and that those who oppressed him were the misguided ones. b) As regarding the superficially evident cause, he (ḡ) sought to safeguard himself and his family by all possible means, but he could not do so. They prohibited him from going anywhere. Yazīd wrote his governor over Medina to kill him. He, therefore, had to get out of it fearing for his life, then he sought refuge with Allāh's Sacred House, the safe haven of anyone in apprehension. But they sought him even there to either arrest or to kill him even if he had been found clinging to the curtains of the Ka’ba. He had no choice except to perform a singular `umra rather than a complete hajj. Then he went to Kāfā because its people had written him and sworn the oath of allegiance to him, stressing the importance of his going to meet with them in order to save them from the evil of the Umayyads. He evidently was, therefore, morally obligated to go along with what they had suggested in order to bring his argument against them home, and so that they would not argue on the Day of Judgment saying that they sought refuge with him and solicited his help against the oppression of the oppressors, but he accused them of dissension and did not help them. Had he not gone to them, where else would he have gone especially since the earth suddenly became straitened before him despite its vastness? This is the meaning of his saying to Ibn al-Hanafiyya, ‘Had I entered inside one of these land cracks, they would have taken me out of it and killed
me!"

The Imam (MAN) had likewise said to Abu Harrah al-Asadi once, “Banū Umayyah confiscated my wealth, yet I remained patient. And they defamed my honour, and I again remained patient. Then they sought to kill me, so I fled.”

Everyone in Mecca was grieved to see him leave. When they persisted in their attempts to dissuade him from leaving, he quoted poetic verses composed by a poet from the Aws tribe who had been warned by one of his cousins against participating in the jihād in support of the Messenger of Allah (SAW):

I shall proceed, for there is no shame
In death to a man who set his mind
To follow the truth
And to perform jihād as a Muslim.
He consoled the righteous men in person,
Leaving behind the depraved,
Opposing the criminals.

Then he cited the verse saying, “And Allah's Command is a decree already passed.”

He loathed peace in humiliation,
Honour loathes a free man being subdued,
So he said: O soul! Refrain from shame:
At the time of death, what is bitter tastes good!
Surrounded he became by his family's best youth
A family to which sublime honour and prominence belong
If it marches in the darkness of the night it shines:

Its shiny faces over-shining the brightest of the stars
By brave knights on wading steeds
In whose walk there is pride and grace.
Swift in the sahara, dignified in stature,
Might in his help, subdued for him the conveyance.
Slapping the earth's face, red in hue
Not by slapping reddened but by the enemy's blood.
These are the folks from Ali the conqueror
The darkness through them dissipates
And harm at bay is kept.
Thousands do they meet, courageous and bold
If and when their banners unfold
On a day when the face of death frowned,
When sharp swords did smile,
When the day of death is in black and in woe,
Their faces with delight become bright and mellow

---

1Al-Khasa’is al-Husainiyya, p. 32 (Tabriz edition).

2On p. 137 of Tathkīrat al-Khwās of Ibn al-Jawzi, the grandson, al-Ḥusain (MAN) cited these verses when al-Ḥurr warned him against disputing with Banū Umayyah.
As the faces of startled brave men turn yellow.
They stood on the battlefield only to cross
To death: the bridge is awaiting everyone who walks.
They assault, while heroes out of fear hesitate
And lions are accustomed to assault.
Till they were spent under the clouds of dust
On a battle resembling the Assembly Day!
Nay! Less terrifying is the Assembling Day!
They died in dignity, for them the war testifies
That they were men of honour when faced by what terrifies.
White bandages decorated their every head,
Blood outfitted them with outfits of crimson red.
Again and again the Oppressed One went back to his foes
With his sword and mare helping him to give them blows.
On the day of struggle with dust he covered every face
Of his troops as horizons grew pale shrouding the place.
If his lance composes poetry in one's heart,
His sword writes prose on his foes' necks on its part.
So one is not one when the swords clamour,
Nor two are two when lance clashes with the armour:
Had he wished to finish his foes at hand
He would have shaken existence itself at his command.
But decree had already passed, so he opted to march
To death patiently, for patient are the oppressed.
On the hot desert sands he dawned
A corpse that fell a prey
To every sword and lance in every way.
Between the ends of the lances he was spent
Thirsty, his corpse trampled upon by trained steeds
O son of Hasan! I complain to you for these are
Agonies crowding my heart
Do you know how much trial and tribulation
Your revered offspring faced at the Taff?
Let me console you in their regard,
For they approached death with heart.
Not a drop wetted their thirst,
Buried under the heat, in the desert,
Wind burying them with the dust...
What will you, O bereaved one, assault and be
Turning the blood of your foes into a sea?
Will you close your eyes when revenge can you take
From seeing the blood which, though on the right guidance
Dawned having none to console?
Near the Taff are the youths of Hāshim
Buried under the lances' tips, their blood is sought
By everyone! No respite there shall be till you
Raise it so nothing can stand in its way.
A fire you shall light, a war no mighty host can subdue
How many times did Umayyah stir your wounds
No healing of the wound till the Meeting Day,
No healing to babes whom Umayyah nursed with death
Instead of breasts’ milk, blood was given instead.
Here they lie dead, here the arrows embrace them,
Here the sands make their every bed.
A free lady who used to be confined
Dawned on the plains hot like timber lit by the heat
And a pure woman not used to mourning
Is now with whips driven, rebuked.
And a startled youth whose heartbeat almost
Sparks with fright... And another confused,
By the sight of steeds not at all amused,
Welcomed the night without a haven, without resort
Her veil, in enemy hands,
Is being passed from this to that,
So with her hands she seeks to hide
What with her veil she used to shield
Walked unveiled before the enemy eyes.
From one country to another she cries...
They grew up confined, they never knew
What slavery was, what’s the plain or the terrain.
Now they were insulted and dismayed,
By their enemy were they now displayed
For all to jeer at and to see:
A war trophy they now came to be...
Taken from land to distant land,
Handled by a filthy hand.1

AL-TAN’IM

A l-Husain (ئ) marched on his way out of Mecca via al-Tan’im2 where he met a caravan laden with merchandise and clothes sent to Yazîd ibn Mu‘âwiya by Bahîr ibn Yasîr al-Himyari, his governor over Yemen. Al-Husain (ئ) seized it and said to those who tended to the camels, “Whoever among you wishes to join us in our march to Iraq will be paid in full, and we will keep him good company. And whoever prefers to part with us, we shall compensate him according to the distance he travelled.” Some of

---


2On p. 416, Vol. 2, of Yâqût al-Hamawi’s Mu’jam al-Buldân, it is said to be a place located two farasangs from Mecca. It is named as such because on its right there is a mountain called Na’îm and another on its left called Nâ’îm, while the valley is called Na’îmân, and a mosque is there. On p. 60 of Ahmed ibn Muhammed al-Khaḍrâwî’s book Fadâ’il al-Balad al-Amîn, it is said to be three or four miles from Mecca.
Al-Husain (ṣ) considered that caravan his own wealth which Allāh Almighty put at his disposal on account of his being the Imām appointed by the Omnipotent, Praise to Him. Yazīd and his father had already confiscated what belonged to him as well as what belonged to the Muslims, so it became mandatory on him to take control of the Muslims' spoils to distribute to the needy among them. He, indeed, gave of it generously to the bedouins who accompanied him on the way and who complained to him of the pain of poverty from which they were suffering. But it was a destiny that the Master of the Youths of Paradise could not give what the oppressors had confiscated of Prophet Muhammed's nation back to its rightful owners, although his precious sacrifice removed from visions the veils of the misguidance of those who transgressed on Divine Authority.

AL-ṢIFĀH

At al-Sifāh, al-Husain (ṣ) met al-Farazdaq ibn Ghālib, the poet, so he asked him about the people whom he had left behind. Al-Farazdaq said, “Their hearts are with you; the swords are with Banū Umayyah, and Destiny descends from the heavens!” Abu `Abdullah (ṣ) said, “You have said the truth. To Allāh belongs the affair, and Allāh does whatever He pleases. Every day, our Lord deals with a matter. If Destiny descends with what we love, we shall praise Allāh for His blessings, and He is the One Whose help we seek so that we may thank Him enough. But if we are destined not to attain our desires, then none whose intention is to effect righteousness, and whose heart is full of piety, has transgressed.” Al-Farazdaq asked the Imām (ṣ) about his verdicts regarding issues such as nathr, rituals, etc. After that, they parted.¹

It is narrated that al-Farazdaq said, “I went out of Basra seeking to perform the `umra. I saw an army in the desert and inquired who it belonged to. I was told that it was the army of al-Husain ibn Alī (ṣ), so I decided to express my gratitude to the Messenger of Allāh (ṣ). I came to him and greeted him. He asked me, ‘Who is the man?’ I said, ‘Al-Farazdaq ibn Ghālib.’ He said, ‘This is a short name!’ Said I, ‘Your name is even shorter! You are the son of the daughter of the Messenger of Allāh!’”²

¹al-Tabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 218. Al-Khawārizmi, Maqta al-Husain, Vol. 1, p. 220. Ibn Kathīr, Al-Bidāya, Vol. 8, p. 166. Shaikh Al-Mufid, Al-Irshād. Ibn Nama, Muthir al-Ahzān, p. 21. Ibn Abul-Hadid, Sharh Nahjul Balagha, Vol. 4, p. 327 (first Egyptian edition). All these references say that the wealth confiscated by al-Husain (ṣ) had been transported to Muʿāwiyah ibn Abu Sufyān, and that al-Husain (ṣ) wrote Muʿāwiyah in its regard saying, “A caravan coming from Yemen carrying merchandise, outfits, and amber passed by us on its way to you so that you may deposit it in the coffers of Damascus to thereby elevate the status of your father's offspring after you take of it whatever satisfies you. I need it, so I am taking it.” Muʿāwiyah wrote him back saying, “You took that wealth while you were unworthy of it after your admission that it belonged to me. The wālī has a greater right to fare with the wealth; moreover, he has expenses to pay. By Allāh! Had that wealth been left alone till it reached me, I would not have diminished your share of it, but there is in your head a certain desire, and I very much like to see it come out during my own time so that I may recognize your value and overlook what you have done. But I, by Allāh, fear lest you should be tried by one who does not regard you more than he regards a she-camel's hiccup.”

²al-Tabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 218. Ibn al-Athir, Al-Kāmil, Vol. 4, p. 16. Al-Thahbi, Tathkira t al-Huffaz, Vol. 1, p. 338. This meeting is referenced in al-Mufid's Irshād as well. al-Thahbi says that the meeting between al-Husain (ṣ) and al-Farazdaq took place at Thāt 'Irq, whereas in Yāqūt al-Hamawi's Mu'jam al-Buldān, it is said to have taken place at al-Sifāh between Hunayn and the haram's nusub, on the west side upon entering Mecca.

THAT `IRQ

Abu `Abdullāh (r) heedlessly marched on. At That `Irq he met Bishr ibn Ghālib and asked him about the people of Kūfa. “The swords are with Būnī Umayyah,” he said, “and the hearts are with you.” “You have said the truth,” said the Imām (r). 1

Al-Rayyāsh narrated about those who met al-Husain (r) on his way to Kūfa. This narrator says, “Having performed the pilgrimage, I set out on the highway alone. As I thus walked, I noticed a number of tents, so I went in their direction and inquired who they belonged to. I was told that they belonged to al-Husain son of Ali and Fatimah, peace be upon all of them. I went to see him, and I saw him leaning on the entrance of the tent reading a book in his hand. I said, ‘O son of the Messenger of Allāh! May my parents be sacrificed for your sake! What brought you to this desolate land which has neither countryside nor strongholds?’ He, peace be upon him, said to me, ‘These people [the Umayyads] terrorized me, and here are the letters of the people of Kūfa, my assassins. So, once they do it, leaving no sanctity of Allāh without violating it, Allāh will send them those who will kill them till they become more debased than a bondmaid’s rag’.” 2

AL-HĀJIR

Having reached al-Hājir 3 from the direction of al-Rumma, he sent the people of Kūfa the answer to the

1 According to p. 317, Vol. 2, of Al-Bahr al-Rāʾiq by the Hanafī author Ibn Najīm, it is located at the distance of two stages between That `Irq and Mecca. On p. 216, of Ibn Muflih’s book Al-Furūʿ, it is said to be located at the distance of two days' travel. It is named as such after a small mountain in its locality as indicated on p. 8, Vol. 7, of Tāj al-ʿArūs. According to Sunnis, That `Irq marks the timing zone of the people of the east, including Iraq and Khurasan. Traditions recorded by Imāmīs, however, say that the Messenger of Allāh (ṣ) marked al-ʿAqiq as the timing zone for the people of Iraq, which is recommended by Imām al-Shāfīʿī who says so on p. 118, Vol. 2, of his book Al-Umm, believing that there is no hadīth designating That `Irq for such timing, and that it was [second caliph] Omer who designated it as such; this is what al-Bukhārī tells us as he quotes [the caliph’s son, `Abdullāh] Ibn ʿOmer. On p. 257, Vol. 3, of Ibn Qudāmāh’s book Al-Mugnī, Ibn Abd al-Birr is cited as saying that the wearing of the ḵirām garb is better done at al-ʿAqiq, despite the fact that it was That `Irq that designated the timing zone for all the people of the east [i.e., Muslims residing in the eastern region of the then Islamic domain]. On p. 250, Vol. 3, of Fath al-Bāri, it is indicated that al-Ghazālī, al-Rāfīʿī, al-Nawawi, and those who documented al-Shāfīʿī emphatically insist that there is no tradition designating That `Irq a timing zone as such. The Hanafis, Hanbalis, and Shāfīʿī are have all testified to this fact. On p. 199, Vol. 6, of Muʿjam al-Buldān, it is indicated that al-ʿAqiq is situated in the valley of Thu Ḥalīfa, and it is closer to Mecca. Imāmīs faqīhs have been cautious, recommending not to wear the ḵirām at That `Irq which lies at the end of al-ʿAqiq.

2 IbnNama, Muthīr al-Aḥzān, p. 21.

3 On p. 169, Vol. 8, of Al-Bidāya, however, this statement is altered to read: “... more lowly than a bondmaid's scarf,” but I could not make much sense of it, nor is it supported linguistically! The accurate wording is what is indicated above. The rag referred to is used by a woman to insert in her vagina to absorb her menstrual blood.

4 According to Muʿjam al-Buldān, “al-hājir” is a water jetty built at the borders of a valley as a safeguard against the flood. On p. 290, Vol. 4, however, it is also referred to as a resting area for those travelling from Basra to Međina, a place where the people of Kūfa and Basra meet. On p. 136, Vol. 3, of Tāj al-ʿArūs, it is said to be a place on the highway to Mecca. On p. 195, Vol. 1, of Tārikh al-Adab al-ʿArabī (History of Arab Literature), where Zuhayr ibn Abu Sulma’s biography is detailed. The latter is quoted as saying that al-Hājir is located in the south of today’s city of Riyadh, in Najd. According to p. 219, Vol. 2, of Muʿjam al-Buldān, it is indicated that it lies within the expanse of al-Rumma, a plateau in Najd. Rida Kahhālah, in a footnote on p. 274 of his book Jughrāfyat Shubb Jazīrat al-ʿArab (Geography of the Arabian Peninsula), quotes Ibn Durayd saying that al-Rumma is a spacious low land in Najd in which the rainfall pours from several valleys. Ibn al-ʿArabī says that al-Rumma is wide and expansive and is traversed by one
travelling for a full day, a place upon the high lands of which Banū Kilāb descend, then they depart therefrom, whereupon Abas and Ghatfān people do likewise, then Banū Asad. Al-Asmaʾi says, “Al-Rumma's low land is a huge valley acting as a barrier to the right of Falja and al-Duthayna till it passes through the quarters of al-Abyad and al-Aswād which are separated by a distance of three miles.” He continues to say, “Al-Rumma extends from the Ghawr [deep low land] to Hijāz. The high areas of Al-Rumma are inhabited by the people of Medina and to Banū Salīm. Its middle part is inhabited by Banū Kilāb and Ghatfān, while its south is populated by Banū Asad and Banū Abas, then it ends at the sand dunes of al-ʿUyūn.”

1On p. 152 of Ali ibn Muhammed al-Fattāl al-Naishapurī's book Rawdat al-Wāʾizīn, it is indicated that he was dispatched by ʿAbdullāh ibn Yaqtur and another with Qays ibn Mushīr. On p. 492, Vol. 3, of Al-Isāba (of Ibn Ḥajar al-ʿAsqalānī), following the discussion of Qay's lineage, the author says, “He was with al-Husain (ع) when he [al-Husain (ع)] was killed at the Taif.” This is incorrect. Ibn Ziyād killed the man at Kūfa.


3al-Mufīd, Al-Irshād.

4It is named after Khuzaymah ibn Hāzim and it is located one stage after Zarūd on a traveller's way from Kūfa to Mecca. In the arrangement of these stages, we rely on Muʾjam al-Buldān.
Who shall mourn folks driven by fate
To their destiny, to fulfill a promise sworn?"

He said, “O sister! Whatever is decreed shall come to pass.”

ZARÚD

When al-Husain (шей) reached Zarūd, Zuhayr ibn al-Qayn al-Bijli, who did not support him and even hated to be near him, alighted near him. Water gathered them somehow at the same place. As Zuhayr and his group were eating, a messenger sent by al-Husain (шей) came to them inviting Zuhayr to meet his master Abu ʿAbdullāh (шей). Zuhayr hesitated to say anything, but his wife, Dulham daughter of ʿAmr, urged him to meet the Imām (шей) and to listen to what he had to say.

Zuhayr, therefore, went and swiftly returned elated with his face showing signs of excitement. He ordered all is belongings to be packed. He also ordered everyone to go to the Master of the Youths of Paradise (shall). He said to his family, “Go to your family, for I hate to see you receiving any harm on my account.” Then he said to those around him, “Whoever among you loves to support the son of the Messenger of Allāh (шей), let him join us; otherwise, this should be the last time I see you.”

Then he narrated to them what Selmān al-Fārisī had foretold him with regard to the imminent battle. Zuhayr said, “We invaded Ballinger and we were victorious, so we acquired a great deal of booty and we, therefore, were very glad. When Selmān al-Fārisī saw how excited we all were, he said, ‘If you ever meet the Master of the Youths from the Progeny of Muhammed, peace of Allāh and blessings be upon him and his progeny, you should then be more elated for fighting on his side than you now are elated on account of your booty; as for me, I now bid you farewell.’”

Zuhayr’s wife said, “Allāh has chosen this honour for you, and I request you to remember me on the
Day of Judgment and say a good word on my behalf to al-Husain's grandfather, peace be upon him.”¹

At Zarūd, the Imam (_TRUNCATED) was informed of how Muslim ibn `Aqil and Hani ibn `Urwah were killed, so he kept repeating: *Innā lillāh wa innā ilayhi rajii `ān* (We belong to Allāh, and to Him shall we return), as he wept, pleading to Allāh to have mercy on them². With him the Hashemites wept, too, and there was a great deal of wailing coming from the women's quarters, so much so that the whole place was shaken because of Muslim ibn `Aqil being killed. Tears poured profusely.³

Abdūllah ibn Salīm and al-Munthir ibn al-Mashma`il, both from the tribe of Asad, said to the Imam (_TRUNCATED), “We plead to you in the Name of Allāh, O son of the Messenger of Allāh, to go away, for you will not find any supporter in Mecca.”

`Aqil's offspring stood up and said, “We shall not leave before seeking revenge or taste of what our brother has tasted.” Al-Husain (_TRUNCATED) looked at them and said, “There is nothing good in life after these folks.”⁴

O `Aqil's son! May you be sacrificed by every soul
For your calamity is the greatest of all...
Let's mourn it with hearts grieved,
For what values our every salted tear?
How many daughters of yours are bereaved,
With hearts within set on fire not fear?
Consoled by the Prophet's grandfather?
So she may near him be pleased.
Now says she, “An uncle of mine is now gone,
“Now who shall his own orphan console?
“Bereaved, spending the night stung by pain,
“Expelled, from her home exiled?”
And how many a courageous warrior
In whose heart did she the fire of grief ignite?
Your cousin, on the Taff, did you support,
With his counselling family did he mourn you.
Surrounded by youths like the morning shine,
Youths whose lineage to everyone is known.
We mourned your youth and tragedy
Marked with death and sad destiny.

¹Ibn Nama, *Muthir al-Ahzān*, p. 23. Ibn Tāwūs, *Al-Luhūf*, p. 40. On p. 224, Vol. 6, of Tabari's *Tārīkh*, first edition, it is stated that Zuhayr said to his wife, “You are divorced! So go back to your family, for I do not wish any harm to reach you on my account.” But I do not understand what his objective behind this divorce might have been! Did he wish to exclude her from inheriting him, or did he permit her to remarry after three months, or did he not wish her to be his wife in the hereafter?! The Commander of the Faithful (_TRUNCATED) had divorced some of the Prophet's wives. Imam al-Rida (_TRUNCATED) had divorced Umm Farwa, al-Kāzim's wife [Imam Mūsá al-Kāzim being his {al-Rida’s} father]. This free woman had actually done him [Zuhayr] a favour: she paved for him the path to eternal happiness through martyrdom. Our only solace is the fact that the person who had narrated that “tradition” was none other than al-Suddi...


³Ibn Tāwūs, *Al-Luhūf*, p. 41. But I could not find even one reliable reference stating that al-Husain (_TRUNCATED) took Muslim's daughter Hamīda by the head, so she sensed that something terrible must have happened.

A ma’tam he held for you despite his condition
And even white deer wailed for you.
He called upon his near in kin:
“Avenge his death, O family of the Fatiha!”
Into the mire of death did he lead them,
But now the deer are the ones mired.
Says he, “O folks stingy with their souls!
“Your battle, though serious, is mocked,” he calls.

AL-THA`LABIYYA

At al-Tha’labiya, a man came to Imam al-Husain (ṣ) and asked him about the meaning of the verse saying, “(Remember) the Day when We will call every people by their Imam” (Qur’an, 17:71). He, peace be upon him, said to him, “An Imam calls others for guidance and is answered positively, while another imam calls others to misguidance and is also answered positively: this group shall be in Paradise, and that shall be in hell, and it is the explanation of the verse saying, ‘A party shall be in Paradise, and another shall be in the burning fire’ (Qur’an, 42:7).”

At the same place, a man from Kufa met him. The Imam said to him, “By Allah! Had I met you in Medina, I would have showed you the marks Gabriel had left in our house and the place where he used to descend with revelation to my grandfather, O brother of Kufa! It is from us that knowledge initiates. Have they become learned while we became ignorant? This shall never be.”

Bajir, of al-Tha’labiya, narrates saying, “Al-Husain passed by us when I was a young lad. My brother said to him, ‘O son of the daughter of the Messenger of Allah! I see your followers to be very small in number.’ With his whip he pointed to a saddlebag a man was carrying [for him] and said, ‘This is full of letters.’”

AL-SHUQQŪQ

At al-Shuqqūq, al-Husain (ṣ) saw a man coming from Kufa, so he asked him about the people of Iraq. He informed the Imam (ṣ) that they were all against him. He, peace be upon him, said, “The affair is with Allah; our Lord does whatever He pleases. Our Lord, Praise to Him, each day manages the

1 al-Sadūq, Āmāli, p. 93. Al-Tha’labiya was named after a man belonging to Banū Asad named Tha’labah who had been there and who was able to dig a well in it. It is one stage after al-Shuqqūq for one travelling from Kufa to Mecca as we are told by Mu’jam al-Buldān. On p. 35, Vol. 2, of al-Samhādi’s book Wafā’ al-Wafā’, it is an area located near a watering place called al-Tha’labiya. On p. 311 of al-Yaqubī’s book Al-Buldān, and also according to the offset edition of Ibn Rastah’s book Al-Aʿlāq al-Nafṣa, it is a city surrounded by a bulwark.

2 al-Saffār, Baṣā’ir al-Darajāt, p. 3. It is also recorded in al-Kāfi’s Usūl, in a chapter headed “Knowledge Derived from the Fountainhead of the Prophet’s Family.”


4 According to p. 213, Vol. 2, of Ibn Shahr Ašūb’s book, it is one stage following Zubālā on the way of one who travels from Kufa to Mecca, and it belongs to Banū Asad. According to Mu’jam al-Buldān, al-Ābādī’s grave lies there.

5 On p. 233, Vol. 1, of his book Maqtal al-Ḥusain, al-Khwārizmi claims he was al-Farazdaq, the poet, but this is an error which he made.
affairs.” Then he quoted the following verses of poetry:

If this abode is held as dear,
In the abode of Allah, the rewards
Are more sublime and noble.
If wealth is hoarded to be left behind,
Why should one be miser with what is left?
If sustenance is destined in proportion,
To be less concerned about it is more beautiful.
And if the bodies are for death made,
One killed for the sake of Allah is surely better.
So peace of Allah be upon you,
O family of Muhammed!
For I see myself from you soon departing.

ZUBĀLA

At Zubāla, he was informed that ʿAbdullāh ibn Yaqtur, the man dispatched by al-Husain (I) to Muslim ibn ʿAqīl, had been killed. Al-Ḥasān ibn Ṣaʿd arrested him at al-Qadisiyya and sent him to ʿUbaydullāh ibn Ziyād who ordered him to ascend the pulpit and to curse the liar son of the liar. When ʿAbdullāh ibn Yaqtur looked at the people from the pulpit, he said, “O people! I am the messenger of al-Husain son of ʿAlī to you so that you may support and assist him against the son of Marjān,” whereupon ʿUbaydullāh ordered him thrown from the mansion’s rooftop. He was hurled down from there. His bones were crushed, but he did not die. A man named Ṭābiʿ ibn Buldān came to him and cut his throat. When the latter was shamed for having done so, he said, “I killed him in order to put an end to his suffering.” It is also said that the man who killed him was tall and that he looked like Ṭābiʿ ibn Buldān.

The Imām (I) informed those who were in his company of what had happened, giving them the option to leave. They dispersed right and left. Those who remained with him were his own companions who had come with him from Mecca. Actually, a large number of bedouins had joined him thinking that he was going to a land where he would be welcomed by supporting natives. He, peace be upon him, hated for them to march with him except with their knowledge of what to expect, knowing fully well that if he permitted them to leave, only those who were ready to support him to the end would remain.

IN THE HEARTLAND OF AL-ʿAQABA

The Imām (I) left Zubāla, reaching al-ʿAqaba's heartland where he said to his companions, “There is no doubt in my mind that I am going to be killed. In a vision, I saw myself being mauled by dogs the

---

1Ibid. But al-Khwārizmī does not quote the fifth line of the original Arabic text, attributing these lines to the Imām, peace be upon him.

2al-Tabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 226. It is located after al-Shuqūq on a traveller's way from Kūfah to Mecca. There is a fort there and a mosque for Banū Asad named after Zubāla daughter of Masʿar, a woman belonging to the ʿAmāliqah. The Battle of Zubāla is well known to the Arabs, and there are some narrators of ḥadīth whose last names are derived from Zubāla as we are told by Muʿjam al-Buldān.
most fierce among them was spotted."  

`Amr ibn Lawthan, of Banu `Ikrimah, suggested to him to return to Medina due to the treachery and betrayal upon which the people of Kufa were bent. Abu `Abdullāh, peace be upon him, said, “I am not unfamiliar with their attitude, yet Allāh's will shall never be overruled.” Then he, peace be upon him, said, “They shall not leave me till I am dead, and once they have done it, Allāh will send upon them those who will humiliate them till they become the most abased among all nations.”

SHARĀF

Al-Husain (ع) left al-`Aqaba then set up his camp at Sharāf. In the pre-dawn, he ordered his servants to fill their water bags with water. At midday, he heard a man among his companions crying, “Allāhu Akbar!” Al-Husain (ع) asked him about the reason. “I did so upon seeing palm-trees,” said the man, but those who were in his company denied that there could be any palm-trees in such a place, and that what he saw could have been lances and horses' ears. Al-Husain (ع) said, “I am of the same view,” then he asked them whether they could shelter themselves anywhere. They suggested a place called Thu Ḥasam on their left side. Al-Husain (ع) swiftly moved there and set up his camp.

Soon, al-Hurr al-Riyāhi came to them face-to-face escorted by a thousand cavaliers. He was dispatched by `Ubaydullāh Ibn Ziyād in order to prohibit al-Husain (ع) from going back to Medina, to arrest him, and to bring him to Kufa. It was a very hot midday when al-Hurr and his men confronted al-Husain (ع).

When the Master of Martyrs (ع) saw how thirsty that band was, he ordered his followers to serve water to them and to their horses. They gave each and every one of them water, then they filled water pots and brought them near the horses each one of which drank three to five times of them till they all drank to their fill.

Ali ibn al-Ti`an al-Muhārībi was in al-Hurr’s company. He happened to be the last to be served, so he was suffering acutely of the pangs of thirst. In his Hijāzi accent, al-Husain (ع) said to him, “Ankhi al-rāwliya,” but the man did not understand what he (ع) meant. The Imam (ع), therefore, repeated his statement, this time using classical Arabic: “Ankhil-jamal.” When the man tried to drink, he caused the water to run wastefully out of the water-bag, so the Fragrant Flower of the Messenger of Allāh (س) now said to him,
“Ankhi al-siqā,” but the poor man did not know exactly what to do due to his inability to think because, again, of the thirst from which he was severely suffering. This time the Imam (ɛ) stood up and adjusted the water-bag for that man in person till he drank enough, then he (ɛ) watered his horse as well. Such is the kindness and compassion of the most Oppressed One towards that band that met in a desert where each drop of water was as precious as life itself. Surely he was fully aware of the situation being so precarious, knowledgeable of the consequences should water run out the next day, knowing that it could be the sole cause of death... But the Prophet's blood that ran in his veins, and the exemplary generosity of his father Ali (ɛ), did not leave him any choice.

O son of al-Zahrā’, heart of Ali the valiant,
O soul of the guiding Prophet!
Strange how these people did not
Come to you to sacrifice themselves for you;
But they did not value your precious soul:
How can dust be compared with the mountain?
How wondrous to see Allāh's Clemency
When they, as He watched, violated your sanctity!
How strange, the favourites of Allāh became
For Yazīd and for Ziyād a booty to claim!

Then al-Husain (ɛ) welcomed them. He praised Allāh and glorified Him then said:

This is to seek pardon of Allāh, the most Exalted One, the most Mighty, and of your own selves: I did not come to you except after having received your letters which your messengers delivered to me, requesting me to come to you, saying, “We have no Imām, so come to us, perhaps Allāh will gather all of us under the shade of His guidance.” So if the case is as such, then I have come to you; therefore, provide me with that whereby I can trust your promises and covenants. But if you hate my arrival, then I shall leave you and go to where I had come from.

The men did not utter one word. Al-Hajjāj ibn Masrūq al-Ju‘fī called the athān for the noon prayers. It was then that al-Husain (ɛ) asked al-Hurr, “Would you like to lead your men for the prayers?” He answered: “No. Rather, we will all pray behind you.” The Imām (ɛ) led the prayers.

Having finished the prayers, the Imām (ɛ) faced them, praised and glorified Allah and blessed Prophet Muḥammad (ṣ), then said,

O people! If you fear Allāh and wish to get to know who follows righteousness, it will please Allah better. We, the family of Muḥammad (ṣ), are more worthy of you in Shouldering the responsibility of authority, more so than these who lay a claim to what does not belong to them, whose tradition is oppression and transgression. If you insist on hating us and ignoring our right, and if your view now is different from what your letters to me described, then I will part from you.

Al-Hurr said, “I do not know what letters you are talking about.” Al-Husain (ɛ) immediately ordered `Uqbah ibn Sam`ān to bring out two saddlebags full of letters. Al-Hurr said, “I am not among their senders, and I have been ordered not to part with you once I meet you till I bring you to Ibn Ziyād in Kūfa.” Imām al-
Husain (‡) said, “Death is closer to your reach than that.” He ordered his companions to ride, and the women, too, rode, but al-Hurr forbade them from going to Medina, so al-Husain (‡) said to al-Hurr, “May your mother lose you! What do you want of us?” “Should anyone else other than you say so to me,” al-Hurr responded, “and he is in the same boat as you now are, I would not hesitate to let his mother lose him no matter who he may be! By Allah! I have no way to refer to your mother except in the very best of way of which we are capable. But let us come to a mid-way between both of us which neither leads you to Kufa nor takes you back to Medina till I write Ibn Ziyād, perhaps Allah will grant me safety and not try me with anything relevant to your issue.” After a short while he added saying, “I admonish you to remember Allah with regard to your life, for I testify that should you fight, you will be killed.” Al-Husain (‡) said, “Are you scaring me with death?! Will your calamity really lead you to kill me? In that case, let me say what the brother of the Aws [tribe] said to his cousin who desired to support the Messenger of Allah, peace of Allah be upon him and his Progeny.:

I shall proceed: There is no shame
A man to his death goes.
If he truly intends so and
As a Muslim struggles,
And if he the righteous with his life consoles,
Leaving a depraved one, opposing a criminal.
So if I live, I shall not regret or be shamed
But if I die, surely I shall not be blamed
Humiliation suffices you if you accept to be oppressed.”

Having heard him say so, al-Hurr stayed away from him. Al-Husain (‡), therefore, rode with his companions in one area while al-Hurr and his fellows rode in another.

AL-BAYDA

At al-Bayda, the Imam (‡) delivered a speech to al-Hurr’s companions after having praised and glorified Allah. In it he said,

O people! The Messenger of Allah (‡) has said, “If one sees an oppressive ruler, who makes lawful what Allah has made unlawful, and he does not get him to alter his conduct through something he does or says, it will be incumbent upon Allah to resurrect him in that ruler’s company. These folks have upheld Satan and abandoned their obedience to the most Merciful One, demonstrating corruption and making mischief evident. They idled the limits (set forth by Allah) and took to their own selves what belonged to others, prohibiting what Allah has permitted and permitting what He has prohibited. I am the best suitable person to change the situation. Your letters reached me, and so did some of your messengers who brought me your

1Reference to his citing these verses has already been indicated above.

2al-Mufid, Irshād. On p. 193, Vol. 2, of his book Al-Manaqib, Ibn Shahr Āshūb adds the following verses to them:

My soul do I present, not sparing it,
To meet a lion in the battle, a charging one.

3It is located between Wāqiṣa and ‘Uthayb al-Hajanāt and is a spacious land inhabited by the offspring of Yarbū` ibn Hanẓalāh.
oath not to hand me over [to my foes] nor to betray me. If you, therefore, complete the terms of your oath of allegiance, you will achieve the right guidance, for I am al-Husain son of Ali and Fátima daughter of the Messenger of Allāh (ṣ). My soul is with yours, my family is with your families, and you have in me a model of conduct. But if you do not, and if you violate your promise and renge in your oath of allegiance to me, then, by my life, it will not be the first time that you do so: you did so to my father, to my brother [Imām al-Hasan (ṣ)], and to my cousin Muslim. Deceived is whoever trusts you. Surely it is to the detriment of your own luck that you thus err, rendering your lot a loss. Whoever reneges, he, indeed, reneges against his own soul, and Allāh shall suffice me for you, and peace be with you and the mercy and blessings of Allāh.¹

AL-RUHAYMA

At al-Ruhayma², a Kafian named Abu Harām met the Imām (ṣ) and said to him, “O son of the Messenger of Allāh! What made you leave the sanctuary of your grandfather?” The Imām (ṣ) said, “O Abu Harām! Banā Umayyah taunted my honour, and I took to patience. And they confiscated my wealth, and I again took to patience. Then they sought to kill me, so I fled. By Allāh! They will kill me. Allāh will then cover them with an overwhelming humiliation and with a sharp sword which He will place over their heads, a word that will abase them till they become more abased than the people of Saba' (Sheba) who were ruled by a woman over their wealth and their lives.”³

AL-QĀDISIYYA

At al-Qādisiyya, al-Hasin ibn Namir al-Tamimi arrested Qays ibn Mishir al-Saydāwi, al-Husain's messenger to the people of Kāfa. Al-Hasin had been ordered by Ibn Ziyād to station cavaliers to guard the area between Khafrān and Qatqatānā. When he wanted to search the messenger, the latter took the letter out and shredded it. He was brought to Ibn Ziyād who asked him why he had shredded the letter. He told Ibn Ziyād that he did so in order that they would not know what it contained. But Ibn Ziyād insisted that he should tell him about its contents. Qays refused, whereupon Ibn Ziyād said to him, “Ascend the pulpit and curse al-Husain and his father and brother; otherwise, I will cut you to pieces.” Qays ascended the pulpit, praised and glorified Allāh and blessed the Prophet (ṣ) and his Progeny (ṣ) and was profuse in imploring Allāh's blessings on the Commander of the Faithful (ṣ) and on al-Hasan and al-Husain (ṣ). Moreover, he cursed `Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād and his father and all Banū Umayyah, then he said, “O people! I am the messenger of al-Husain (ṣ) to you! I have left him in such-and-such a place; so, you should rush to his aid.” Ibn Ziyād ordered him to be thrown from his mansion's rooftop. He was thrown; his bones were crushed, and he died.⁴ Some accounts say that he did not die immediately, so Ḥabd al-Malik

²According to Mu'jam al-Buldān, it is located about three miles from Khifya, and the latter is located westward more than ten miles from al-Rahba.
³al-Sadūq, Āmāli, p. 93, majlis 30.
⁵According to Vol. 3, p. 451, of Mu'jam al-Buldān, Khafrān is a place near Kāfa where there is a well near a village inhabited by the offspring of 'Eisa ibn Mūsā al-Hāshimi. On p. 125, Vol. 7, al-Qatqtatānā is located more than twenty miles from Ruhayma.

---

147
ibn `Umayr al-Lakhmi slit his throat [as stated above]. When he was blamed for doing so, he said, “I only wanted to put an end to his suffering.”

**AL-'UTHAYB**

At `Uthayb al-Hajanāt, al-Husain ( ağ ) met four men who were leaving Kāfa on camel-back, taking with them “al-Kāmil,” a horse belonging to a man called Nafi` ibn Hilāl. They were: `Amr ibn Khalid al-Saydawi, his slave Sa`d, Majma` ibn `Abdullah al-Mathhaji, and Nafi` ibn Hilāl. Their guide, al-Tarmāh ibn `Adīyy al-Ṭā`i, was chanting the following verses:

O my she-camel! Do not complain of my impatience,
And set out just before the sun rises,

So we may join the best of riders and embark
Upon the best journey till we reach
One beautified with the best of descent,
The munificent, the free, the open-hearted one
Whom Allah brought for the best of affair:
May He preserve him as He preserves time!

When they reached al-Husain, peace be upon him, they chanted those verses for him, so he ( ağ ) said, “By Allah! I hope what Allah fares with us will be good, whether we are killed, or whether we win victory.”

Al-Husain ( ağ ) asked them about the public opinion. They said, “Prominent personalities have received great bribes; people's hearts are with you, while the swords are turned against you.” They informed him of Qays ibn Mishir al-Saydawi having been killed, so he, peace be upon him, quoted the Qur'ānic verse saying, “... of them is he who accomplished his vow, and of them is he who awaits” (Qur’ān, 33:23). “O Allah!,” he added, “Make Paradise our home and theirs, and include us and them in Your mercy and in all what is desired of Your treasured rewards.”

Al-Tarmāh has said, “I saw people before my departure from Kāfa meeting outside. I asked them about it, and they said to me, `They are being paraded, then shall they be sent away to fight al-Husain.' I, therefore, plead to you in the Name of Allah not to go to fight them, for I see none aiding you. If only this group fights you, the same one I see watching you, they will suffice to put an end to you. Come with us in order to settle at our mountain, `Aja. It protected us from the kings of Ghassān and Himyar, from al-Nu`mān ibn al-Munthir, and from al-Aswad and al-Ahmar. By Allah, after no more than ten days, Tay's men will come to your aid riding or on foot. I guarantee you twenty thousand men from Tay who will defend you with their swords till it becomes clear to you what you wish to do.”

Al-Husain ( ağ ) prayed Allah to reward him and his people with goodness then said, “A covenant binds us to the people, and we cannot depart till destiny deals between us and them.” Al-Tarmāh then asked his permission to get provisions to reach his own family, promising that he would hurry back to support

---

2`Al-`Uthayb is a valley inhabited by Banū Tamīm where a Persian garrison is [then and there] stationed. The distance between it and al-Qādisiyyah is six miles. It was named so because the horses of al-Nu`mān, king of Ḥira, used to graze there.
him. He granted him permission as others accompanied him.

Al-Tarmah delivered the provisions to his people then quickly returned. Having reached `Uthayb al-Hajanāt, he came to know that al-Husain, peace be upon him, had been killed, so he went back.1

QASR BANI MUQĀTIL

A

l-Husain (ئ) marched from `Uthayb al-Hajanāt till he reached Qasr Bani Muqātil.2 There, he saw a tent, a lance planted in the ground, and a mare waiting. He inquired about them and was told that they belonged to `Ubaydullāh ibn al-Hurr al-Ju‘fī. Al-Husain (ئ) sent him al-Hajjāj ibn Masrūq al-Ju‘fī as his messenger. Ibn al-Hurr asked him what he wanted. He said, “I have a gift for you and I have esteem, if you only accept. Al-Husain (ئ) invites you to support him. If you fight for him, you will be rewarded, and if you get killed, you will be a martyr.” Ibn al-Hurr said, “By Allah! I did not leave Kafā except on account of the large number of people whom I saw going out to fight him, and on account of his own Shi‘ as betraying him; so I realized that he was certainly going to be killed and that I am unable to do


[2] ‘Qasr Muqātil’ means: the castle of Muqātil, namely Muqātil ibn Hassan ibn Thu‘labah who, according to Yāqūt al-Hamawi’s Mu’jam al-Buldān, descended from Imrī’ul-Qays ibn Ya‘zīd ibn Manāt ibn Tamīm [the famous poet]. It is situated between ‘Ayn al-Tamr and al-Qatqaṭāna. It was demolished by Eisa ibn Ali ibn ‘Abdullāh ibn al-‘Abbās, then he rebuilt it.

[3] On p. 168, Vol. 7, of al-Tabarī’s Tārīkh, and also on p. 385 of Ibn Hazm’s book Ansāb al-‘Arab, it is stated that this man was a staunch follower of ‘Uthmān [ibn ‘Affān]; this is why he went out to support Mu‘āwiyyah against Ali (ئ) in the Battle of Siffin. On p. 169, Vol. 7, first edition of Tabarī’s Tārīkh, a number of incidents are narrated with regard to his violation of the Sharī‘a, his confiscation of wealth, and even his involvement in highway robberies. On p. 112, Vol. 4, of his book, Ibn al-‘Āthir says the following about him: “When he over-extended his stay in Syria, the brother of his wife married the latter off to ‘Ikrimah ibn al-Khabīs. When the man heard about it, he returned and raised a complaint against ‘Ikrimah to Ali ibn Abu Tālib (ئ). Ali (ئ) said to him, ‘You have [only recently] fought against us on the side of our enemy...’ Ibn al-Hurr said, ‘Does this mean that you are going to deprive me of your justice on that account?’ The Imām (ئ) answered, ‘No.’ The Commander of the Faithful (ئ) took the woman, who was by then pregnant [by ‘Ikrimah] and entrusted her to the custody of someone whom he could trust till her delivery. Once she gave birth, she was ordered to hand the newborn over to ‘Ikrimah. Then he (ئ) reunited her with ‘Ubaydullāh who went back to Syria till the time when Ali, peace be upon him, was killed.” To this incident does Muḥammed ibn al-Hasan refer on p. 136, Vol. 10, of his book Al-Mabṣūt, in a chapter dealing with the Kharijītes, but he did not mention the name of ‘Ubaydullāh ibn al-Hurr. During the reign of ‘Abd al-Malīk [ibn Marwān ibn al-Hakam, an Umayyad “caliph,” cousin and bearer of the seal of third caliph ‘Uthmān ibn ‘Affān], in the year 68 A.H./687 A.D., ‘Ubaydullāh was killed near al-Anbār. On p. 297, Vol. 5, of al-Balātūrī’s book titled Ansāb al-Ashrāf, his killer is identified as ‘Ubaydullāh ibn al-‘Abbās al-Salāmī. Once he was seriously wounded, he boarded a boat to cross the Euphrates. The followers of his killer wanted to seize the boat, so he, being extremely frightened of them, hurled himself into the river as he was bleeding and died. On p. 268 of Rīḍāl al-Mugḥallīn by Ibn Ḥabīb, his name is included in the seventh group of rare manuscripts examined by Harun ‘Abd al-Salām. That page states that ‘Abd al-Malīk dispatched ‘Ubaydullāh ibn al-Hurr-al-Ju‘fī to fight Mis‘ab with a large army, but the army had lagged behind him till all those in his company were killed. It was then that he was confronted by ‘Ubaydullāh ibn al-‘Abbās al-Salāmī who fought him, forcing him to flee. Having fled, he boarded a ferry to cross the Euphrates. ‘Ubaydullāh ibn al-Salāmī threatened to kill the ferry’s attendant if the latter succeeded in transporting the fugitive to the other side of the river bank, so he attempted to take him back, but Ibn al-Hurr embraced him, causing him to drown with him. Ibn al-Hurr’s corpse was taken out of the river and installed as a practicing target. On p. 492 of his book Al-Mahbār, Ibn Ḥabīb says that Mis‘ab ibn al-Zubayr displayed Ibn al-Hurr’s head at Kūfah. On p. 583 of his book Jamharat Ansāb al-‘Arab, Ibn Hazm says that ‘Ubaydullāh ibn al-Hurr’s sons are: Sadaqah, Barrah, and al-As‘ḥar who all participated in the Jamā‘ītī Battle fighting on the side of Ibn al-As‘hāth. On p. 289 of Al-Akhbār al-Tīwāl of al-Dainūrī, it is stated that when al-Mukhtar decided to seek revenge for al-Husain (ئ), ‘Ubaydullāh ibn al-Hurr al-Ju‘fī was on the mountain staging assaults on people’s properties, so al-Mukhtar sent him a message inviting him to take part in his bid to avenge the killing of Imām al-Husain (ئ), but he did not send him any answer. Al-Mukhtar, therefore, demolished his house after confiscating all its contents and took his wife whom he jailed in Kūfah. Had he sincerely repented for lagging behind, rather than supporting the oppressed Imām (ئ), he would have assisted al-Mukhtar in killing those who had killed al-Husain (ئ). How could he have been able to attain repentance, having refused to respond to the invitation of the Master of Martyrs who knowingly walked to his Place, crowned with the divine light and surrounded by his family members?
much for him; I do not like him to see me, nor do I like to see him.”¹

Al-Hajjaj relayed what he had heard to al-Husain (ḍ) who stood up and, accompanied by a number of his family members and companions, entered al-Hurr's tent. The latter seated the Imam (ḍ) in the middle. Ibn al-Hurr himself narrated later saying, “I never saw in my life anyone better looking or greater than al-Husain, nor did I ever feel sorry for anyone as much as I felt sorry for him when I saw him walking surrounded by very young men. I looked at his beard and found it as dark as a raven's wing, so I asked him whether it was naturally black or whether he had dyed it. He said to me, ‘O Ibn al-Hurr! Gray hair hastened to me; so I realized that he had dyed it.’”²

Having settled there, Abu `Abdullāh (ḍ) praised Allāh and glorified Him then said, “O Ibn al-Hurr! Your countrymen wrote me saying that they were unanimous in supporting me. They asked me to go to them, but it seems it is not as they claimed. You have committed a great many sins; so, would you like to seek repentance whereby you wipe out your sins?” He said, “And how is that, O son of the Messenger of Allāh?” Al-Husain (ḍ) said, “You should support the son of your Prophet's daughter and fight on his side.”³

Ibn al-Hurr said, “By Allāh! I know that whoever supports you will be happy in the hereafter, but how much help can I afford you, having left in Kāfa none to support you? I, therefore, plead to you in the Name of Allāh to agree to this plan of mine, for I hate to die! My mare, al-Mulhiqa, is such that I never pursued anything except that it caught up with it, nor did anyone pursue me except that I outran him. Take her; she is yours.” Al-Husain (ḍ) said, “Should you prefer your own safety over supporting our cause, we have no need for your mare nor for you⁴: ‘You should not take those who mislead others for friends' (Qur'ān, 18:51). I advise you just as you advised me that if you can, do not hear our cries, nor should you witness our battle, for by Allāh, whoever hears our mourners and refuses to come to our rescue will be hurled by Allāh into the fire of hell headlong.”⁵

Ibn al-Hurr regretted having lost the opportunity to support al-Husain (ḍ), so he composed the following poetic lines:

So long as I live, so shall my sigh 
Reverberating between my chest and my choke 
When he did say to me at the mansion: 
‘Should you really leave us and from us depart?’
Husain in humility seeks my support 
Against the people of enmity and dissension. 
Should sighing cleave a freeman's chest, 
My heart would now be cleft. 
Had I defended him with my life 
I would have earned mercy on the Day of Meeting.

¹al-Dainüri, Al-Akhbār al-Tiwāl, p. 246.
³Shaikh Ḥabīb al-Qummi, Nafs al-Mahmūd, p. 104.
⁵al-Dainüri, Al-Akhbār al-Tiwāl, p. 249.
⁶al-Ṣādiq, Al-Īmāl, p. 94, majlis 30.
⁷Khizānāt al-Adab, Vol. 1, p. 298.
Had I fought beside Muhammad's son, may I
For him sacrifice my life;
So bid farewell and hurry to set out,
Surely winners are those who support Husain,
While deeds of others, the hypocrites, will be in vain.

At the same place, `Amr ibn Qays al-Mashfari and his cousin met al-Husain (ξ) who asked them whether they had met him in order to support him. They said to him, “We have a large number of dependents and we have many items which belong to others. We do not know what will happen, and we hate not to give people back what they had entrusted to us.” He, peace be upon him, said to them, “Go, and do not hear our women mourn, nor should you see us wearing black, for whoever hears our women wailing or sees our black without supporting us, it will be incumbent upon Allah, the most Exalted, the most Great, to hurl him in hellfire headlong.”

THE TAFF VILLAGES

When the night came to a close, the Imam (ξ) ordered his servants to fill their water bags and to leave Qasr Bani Muqātil. On their way, al-Husain (ξ) was heard repeating: Innā lillāh wa innā ilayhi rajī `ān, wal hamdu lillāhi rabbi `ā lamīn... (We belong to Allah and to Him shall we return, and all Praise belongs to Allah, the Lord of the worlds). His son, Ali al-Akbar, heard him and asked about the reason which prompted him to keep repeating these statements. Said the Imam (ξ), “I drowsed for a moment, whereupon I saw a horseman saying, ‘These people are marching as fates march towards them,’ so I realized that we are being eulogized.” “May Allah never permit you to see any evil,” said Ali al-Akbar, “Are we not right?” “We are, by the One to Whom all the servants shall return,” al-Husain (ξ) answered. “O father! In that case, we do not mind at all having to die so long as we are right,” said Ali. Al-Husain (ξ) said, “May Allah reward you for being such a good son with the best of rewards whereby He rewards a son on behalf of his father.”

Al-Husain (ξ) kept marching till he arrived at Nineva. There, an armed man riding a camel was seen coming in their direction. They waited for him. He turned out to be a messenger sent by Ibn Ziyād to al-Hurr carrying a letter wherein he was ordering al-Hurr to be rough in treating al-Husain (ξ) and not to permit him to set up his camp anywhere other than in the wilderness where there was neither access to water nor any natural fortifications.

Such was the letter which al-Hurr himself had read to al-Husain (ξ) who said to him, “Let us camp at Nineva, or al-Ghādiriyah, or Shfayya.” “I cannot do that,” said al-Hurr, “for the man [governor] has already assigned men to spy on me.”

---

2 al-Tabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 231. On p. 48 of Maqtal al-surname (of 'Abdullāh Nūr-Allāh al-Bahrānī), it is stated that “Al-Husain (ξ) took a nap in the after-noon at al-Uthayb. He saw in a vision someone saying, ‘You are speeding, yet death is speedily taking you to Paradise.’” According to p. 226, Vol. 1, of al-Khawārizmi's book Maqtal al-Husain, al-Husain (ξ) reached al-Tha' labiyah where he slept in the after-noon. He woke up weeping. His son, Ali al-Akbar, asked him why he was weeping. ‘Son! This is an hour in which no vision tells a lie! Just as I felt drowsiness overtaking me..., etc.”
3 According to Vol. 10, bound edition No. 7, dated 1330 A.H./1912 A.D., it was one of the Taff villages, a town full of scholars and scholarship. It reached its zenith during the time of Imam Ja'fer al-Ṣādiq (ξ). At the beginning of the third century, it did not amount to anything.
4 al-Mufād, Kitāb al-Irshād.
Zuhayr ibn al-Qayn said, “O son of the Messenger of Allâh! Fighting this band is easier for us than fighting those who will come after them. By my life! Armies will come to us which our eyes had never seen before.” Al-Husain (ṣ) said to him, “I shall not be the one who fights them first.” Then Zuhayr said, “There is a village nearby at the bank of the Euphrates; it is defensible and it overlooks the Euphrates from all but one direction.” Al-Husain (ṣ) asked him about its name, and when he came to know that it was called “al-`Aqr,” [which means in Arabic “hamstringing”], the Imâm (ṣ) said, “We seek refuge with Allâh against hamstringing.”

Al-Husain (ṣ) then turned to al-Hurr and asked him to keep on marching further. They all marched till they reached an area called Kerbalâ’. There, al-Hurr and his company stopped in front of al-Husain (ṣ), forbidding him from going any further, saying, “This place is near the Euphrates.” It is said that as they were marching, al-Husain’s horse stopped and refused to move just as Allâh had caused the she-camel of the Prophet (ṣ) to stop at the Hudaibiya2. It was then that al-Husain (ṣ) inquired about the name of that place. Zuhayr said to him, “Keep on marching and do not ask about anything till Allâh brings us ease. This land is called al-Taff.” He, peace be upon him, asked him whether it had any other name, so he told him that it was also called “Kerbalâ’”. It was then that the Imâm (ṣ) started weeping³. He said, “O Allâh! I seek refuge with You against the kerb [affliction] and belâ’ [trial and tribulation]!” Here shall we camp, and here will our blood be spilled and our graves be dug! My grandfather the Messenger of Allâh (ṣ) had told me so.⁴

By Allâh! Never shall I forget, even if all do,
How his charging mare stood at al-Taff,
O mare of his! Did the hand of fate tie you

---

¹al-Ghâdiriya is named after Ghâdira, a clan of Banû Asad. It is said to lie to the north of `Awn’s grave. In Manâhîl al-Darb by Sayyid Ja’fer al-A’râj al-Kâzîmî, a manuscript at the private library of the authority Shaikh Agha Buzurg al-Tehrâni, `Awn is the son of ‘Abdullâh ibn Ja’fer ibn Mar‘i ibn Ali ibn al-Hasan al-Banâfsaj ibn Idrîs ibn Dâwûd ibn Ahmed al-Mas’ûd ibn ‘Abdullâh ibn Mûsa al-Juhn ibn ‘Abdullâh ibn al-Mahz ibn al-Hasan II ibn [Imâm] al-Hasan (ṣ) son of the Commander of the Faithful (ṣ). He lived at the holy city of al-Hâ’ir, and he had an estate two farasangs from Kerbalâ’ where he died. He was buried there, and his grave lies under a dome. His shrine is sought by pilgrims and by those who have nafr. Many people are confused about him. Some say he is the son of Ali ibn Abu Tâlib (ṣ), whereas others say he is the son of ‘Abdullâh ibn Ja’fer al-Tayyâr, since the latter was buried at the martyrs’ cemetery at al-Hâ’ir. There are ruins there of a citadel known as Banû Asad’s citadel. As regarding Shfayya, it is a well belonging to Banû Asad. Al-`Aqr used to be the area where the people of Bachtnuzzer used to reside. The Battle of `Aqr is the one wherein Yazîd ibn al-Muhallab was killed in 102 A.H./720 A.D. All these places are villages close to each other. On p. 95, Vol. 3, of his concordance titled Al-Mu’jam fima Ista’jam, al-Bakrî says, “People used to say that the offspring of Harb sacrificed their religion in the Battle of Kerbalâ’; the offspring of Marwân sacrificed their manliness in the Battle of `Aqr. It means that the first did so when they killed al-Husain (ṣ) at Kerbalâ’, whereas the other party did so when they killed Yazîd son of al-Muhallab at `Aqr.” On p. 16 of his book Târikh al-Mosul, Ibn Iyas (who died in 334 A.H./945 A.D.) cites Kathîr ibn ‘Abdul-Rahmân al-Khuza’a i saying, “Goodness, by Allâh, was annihilated when the son of al-Muhallab was killed.” And on p. 16, it is stated that al-Farazdaq eulogized Yazîd ibn al-Muhallab with verses one of which is the following:

No female ever conceived nor did any deliver
Anyone after the one killed at `Aqr.


³Ibn Shadqâm, Tuhfat al-Azhâr (a manuscript). On p. 209, Vol. 3, of Siyâr A’lam al-Nubalâ’, al-Thahbî writes saying that when al-Husain (ṣ) asked which land it was, and when he was told it was called Kerbalâ’, he said, “Karba (affliction) and balâ’ (trial and tribulation).”

⁴al-Majlisi, Bihâr al-Anwâr, Vol. 10, p. 188.

⁵See Al-Luhûf of Ibn Tawûs.
So you stood and refused to budge?
You used to be faster than a cloud's lightning;
Calamity descends whether you speed or not.
Should you not have avoided the road and strayed
From that valley to the wide expanse?
How did you take him to perdition, may you lose your father, how dared you?
Why did you not refuse, why?
O what a great stand when
Those throngs did gather and stand!
A great stand that shook the foundations
Of Allah's `Arsh a great shaking,
So shall Yazid stand One Day
When it will be said to Ahmed:
“Stand up and intercede!”
A stand, it was, followed by a fall
That gave us a drink hard to take
A stand, it was, that caused Muhammed's progeny
To always grieve till the Pretender, for eternity.¹

KERBALÁ’²

His arrival at Kerbalá’ took place on Muharram 2, 61 A.H./October 5, 680 A.D.² He gathered his children, sisters, and other family members. He cast a look at them then burst in tears. He supplicated saying, “O Allah! We are the progeny of Your Prophet Muhammed! We have been expelled and estranged from our grandfather's sanctuary, and Banu Umayyah oppressed us. O Allah! Seek revenge on them on our behalf, and grant us victory over the oppressing people.”

He approached his companions saying, “People are the worshippers of this life, giving religion their lip-service; they uphold it as long as their livelihood is profitable. Once they are afflicted with a trial, few, indeed, will be those who uphold religion.”³

¹Excerpted from a 93-line poem by Shaikh Muhammed ibn Sharif ibn Falâh al-Kâzimi, the same poet who had composed the “Kerrâri Poem” in praise of the Commander of the Faithful (ṣ), one critiqued by as many as eighteen of his contemporary poets. Both poems are among the manuscripts at the library belonging to the authority critic al-Amîn, author of the Al-Ghadîr encyclopedia.

²This date is provided by al-Tabari on p. 233, Vol. 6, of his Târikh, by Ibn al-Athîr on p. 20, Vol. 4, of his book Al-Kâmî, and by al-Mufîd in his book Al-Irshâd.

³al-Majlisi, Bihâr al-Anwâr, Vol. 10, p. 198. Al-Khawârizmi, Maqta'l al-Husain, Vol. 1, p. 237. The reader cannot escape the implication of al-Husain, peace be upon him, inquiring about the name of that land. All things related to the Master of Martyrs are obscure mysteries. To us, Imâmites, an Imâm is acquainted with what goes on in the cosmos of events and epics, knowledgeable of the characteristics which Allâh, the most Exalted One, decreed to the beings, the Creator of the heavens and earth that He is, Exalted is He. In this book’s Introduction, we provided proofs for this statement. The secret behind his inquiry about the name of the land which they were prohibited from crossing, or about the fact that Allâh Almighty caused his horse to halt just as He had caused the she-camel of the Prophet (ص) to halt at the Hudaibiya, is to acquaint his companions with that land, the stage of the sacrifice which they had been promised as was the Prophet (ص) or his wasi, peace and blessings of Allâh be upon them, were foretold, so that the hearts might feel contented, and so that the men might be tested, so that the determination may remain firm, and so that sacrifice would be for the sake of the truth. It is then that the knowledge of their cause increases; it is then that they prepare themselves to attain their objective, so that there will be no room for anyone to cast any doubt about Kerbalâ’, his resting place. These issues are not haphazard especially since similar ones had already been reported about the Prophet (ص) who had asked about the names of both men.
Then he praised Allāh and glorified Him, blessing Muhammed and his Progeny, adding,

Our affair has reached the point which you can see. Life has changed and turned against us. Its goodness has abandoned us, leaving nothing but a trickle like a pot dripping and a life of hardship like an afflicted pasture. Do you not see how righteousness is not upheld and how falsehood is not shunned? Let every believer desire the meeting with Allāh. I see death as nothing but a source of happiness while living with the oppressors as sure displeasure.¹

Zuhayr stood up and said, “We have heard your statement, O son of the Messenger of Allāh! Had life been secured for us forever, we would still have preferred to rise with you rather than remain therein.”

Burayr stood up and said, “O son of the Messenger of Allāh! Allāh has blessed us with your company so that we may fight defending you till our parts are cut off for your sake, then your grandfather will intercede on our behalf on the Day of Judgment.”²

Nāfī’ ibn Hilāl said, “You know that your grandfather the Messenger of Allāh (ص), could not instill his love in the heart of people nor make them obey him and do what he liked them to do, and there were many hypocrites among them who promised to support him while hiding their treacherous intentions against him. They would meet him and speak to him words sweeter than honey then depart from him with those more bitter than colocynth till Allāh took his soul away. Your father Ali underwent the same. There were folks who were unanimous in supporting and fighting with him against those who broke their promises, who regarded themselves as more fair than him, and who abandoned the creed altogether, till he met his fate. He went to a mercy from Allāh and pleasure. Today, you are with us in the same situation: there are those who reneged from their promise of support and who abandoned their oath of loyalty. These shall not harm except their own selves, and Allāh shall suffice you for them; so, march with us, being rightly guided and in good health, be it to the east of the earth or to the west. By Allāh, we are not too scared to meet Allāh's destiny, nor do we hate to meet our Lord. We are determined to befriend whoever befriends you and be the enemy of whoever antagonizes you.”³

who once stood to milk his she-camel and about both mountains on his way to Badr. Was not the Prophet, peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him and his progeny, knowledgeable of all of that? Of course he was. He knew, but reasons hidden from us prompted him to raise the questions. We have referred to such questions on p. 90 of our book, Muslim, the Martyr, under the heading “Muslim is not superstitious.” Such sort of questioning is labelled by the scholars of oratory “rhetorical.” Consider how the Creator of everything, the One Whose knowledge encompassed everything small and big, asked Moses, “And what is that in your right hand, O Moses?” (Qur‘ān, 20:17). He also asked Jesus, “Did you tell people to take you and your mother as two gods?” (Qur‘ān, 5:116). There is a reason why He raised such questions. He, Glory to Him, had also asked His Friend Abraham: “Have you not already believed [that I can bring the dead back to life]?” (Qur‘ān, 2:260). The Almighty was fully knowledgeable of Abraham’s conviction. An Imām whom He installs in order to safeguard His Sharī’a cannot be thus ignorant. Also, the Master of Martyrs (ع) was not superstitious when he sought refuge with Allāh against afflictions, trials and tribulations, when he heard the word “Kerbalā.” A superstitious person is not knowledgeable of what will happen to him. Rather, he bases his superstition on certain things the Arabs used to regard as ominous. Al-Husain (ع) was convinced of what would happen to him of Allāh’s destiny at the Ta’ff land. He had already been informed of the affliction that would befall him, his family and companions. He was foretold of all of that more than once.


²Ibn Tāwūs, Al-Luhūf, p. 44.

³al-Bahārānī, Maqta al-‘Awālim, p. 76.
With my father's life do I sacrifice
Those who, with their own demise,
Opted to meet and support al-Husain.
They stood to thwart the lances,
And the arrows, like solid statues.
With white necks did they shield him against the swords,
With their glorious faces they kept arrows from him.
A band, they were, that
In a night battle, their lances would sparkle
And if the swords sing, and the cups of death go round,
And everyone sober is elated with joy,
They distanced themselves from the swords,
They separated the foes' souls from their bodies.
Their greatest feast was when they joined al-Husain
So they became his sacrifice at the Taff.
Never shall I forget, though distant from them,
How lofty their glory was though their foe
Numbered as much as the valley's waterflow.
Defending the Prophet's creed he was
With a spark that removes the darkness of shirk.
So hearts would fly away in terror at his sight,
Whenever he mounted his steed as though on wings;
Then when thirst, and the sun, and the bleeding,
When his arms weighed heavily on him,
He stood for a short respite; it was then when
Fate shot him with an easy arrow,
And the throne fell on the ground,
And with the ashes of the calamity
All was covered with the dark.
My heart was on fire for Zainab when she
Saw how in the dust, heavy with wounds, was his body.
Stole her tongue away was the calamity,
So she addressed him with her tears which were
More eloquent than words could ever be:
O one who shatters misguidance, who brightens the night,
O shade from the heat, O bright light of the day!
You were for me a fortified haven, a cool shade,
When life was still within you,
Can you see how the people
Whenever we pass by you, prohibit us
From mourning you, from weeping, from wailing?
If my humiliation rests easily with you,
If my estrangement with the foes, if my exile,
And if my being a captive in the hands of the foes
Riding on bare she-camels,
Is against my wish to see you
Lingering among dark lances and white swords,
Your corpse on the sands, your head raised on lance's tips.
How I lament those who drank of the pool of death,
How they were kept away from accessible Euphrates...
How I lament those who wore reddened attires
Decorated by wanton winds...¹

Al-Husain (ؑ) bought the lots where his grave now stands from the residents of Nineva and al-Ghādiriyya for sixty thousand dirhams. He then turned and gave it back to them as charity on one condition: they lead people to his grave-site and host whoever visited it for three days. Al-Husain's sanctuary, which he bought, was four miles long by four miles wide. It is lawful for his offspring and those loyal to him and is prohibited from those who oppose them. It is full of bliss. Imām al-Ṣādiq (ؑ) has said that those people did not fulfill that condition.²

When al-Husain (ؑ) camped at Kerbalā’, he wrote Ibn al-Hanafiyya and a group from Banū Ḥashim saying, “It is as if this life has never been, and as if the hereafter has always been, and peace be with you.”³

IBN ZIYĀD MEETS AL-ḤUSAIN (ؑ)

A l-Hurr sent a message to Ibn Ziyād telling him that al-Husain (ؑ) was camping at Kerbalā’, whereupon Ibn Ziyād wrote al-Husain (ؑ) saying, “O Husain! It has come to my knowledge that you have camped at Kerbalā’. The commander of the faithful, Yazīd, had already written me ordering me not to sleep on any soft bed nor drink enough wine till I send you to the Munificent One, the all-Knowing, unless you submit to my authority and to that of Yazīd, Wassalām.” Having read this letter, al-Husain (ؑ) threw it away saying, “They shall never succeed those who buy the pleasure of the creatures with the price of the Creator's Wrath.”

The messenger asked him to respond to the letter, but the Imām (ؑ) said to him, “I have no answer for him because he has already been condemned with the torment.”

She saw him riding one of two,
As the war gnawed its teeth:
Either he surrenders or

¹This poem was composed by the scholar Sayyid Rida son of Ayatullāh Sayyid Muḥammad al-Hindi.
²Shaikh al-Bahā’i, Kashkool, Vol. 2, p. 91 (Egyptian edition), quoting Kitāb al-Ziyārāt by Muḥammad ibn Ahmed ibn Dāwūd al-Qummi. He is quoted by al-Sayyid Ibn Tawūs in the latter’s book Mīshāh al-Zā’ir. It is amazing to read on p. 245 of Kitāb al-Matājir how the author did not believe that al-Husain (ؑ) had bought four miles of land surrounding his sacred grave, claiming he could not verify this incident from whatever he had read of what other scholars have documented. Actually, the Commander of the Faithful (ؑ) had bought the area between al-Khawarnaq and al-Hira from one direction, and from there to Kūfah from the other, for forty thousand dirhams. He told those who criticized him for doing so that that land was barren. “I heard the Messenger of Allāh (ص),” said the Imām (ؑ), “that there are two Kūfas: the first will answer the call of the second; seventy thousand shall be gathered from there to enter Paradise without reckoning; so I desired that they would do so from my own property.” See also p. 29, Chapter Two, of Ibn Tawūs’s book Farhat al-Ghari (Najaf: The Hayderi Press).
Death is to be faced
By a soul whose surrender honours refused;
So he said to her: Seek refuge with destiny,
For honour is a dignified man's decoration.
If you find no attire other than humiliation,
Then through death will the body be dismantled.
He saw firmness till death as the mark of honourable men,
A cause of pride, an ornament;
He got ready for the battle
Wherein knights were subdued by death,
To the depth of the heavens did he ignite it,
Red in blaze, burning in heat.
He stood though the ground beneath him did shake
Under the warriors' feet like an earthquake...¹

The same messenger informed Ibn Ziyād of what Abu `Abdullāh (тяж) had said. His rage intensified² and he ordered `Omer ibn Sa`d to march out to Kerbala’. The latter had been camping at Hammām A`yān with four thousand men who were being dispatched to Dustaba where the people of Daylam had declared mutiny³. Ibn Sa`d wrote him a promise to place him in charge of governing Rey, Dustaba's fortified border, as well as Daylam⁴.  Ibn Sa`d asked him to relieve him of such a task, so Ibn Ziyād required him to return his written promise to him, giving him one night's respite to reconsider. ‘Omer ibn Sa’d gathered his advisers who advised him not to march to fight al-Husain (тяж). His sister's son, Hamzah ibn al-Mughirah ibn Shu’bah, said to him, “I plead to you in the Name of Allāh not to march to fight al-Husain and thus cut off your offspring and commit a sin against your Lord! By Allāh! If you depart from this world after having lost all your wealth and authority, it will be much better for you than having to meet Allāh stained with Husain's blood.”⁵ Ibn Sa’d said, “If Allāh so pleases, I will do so.” He spent his night contemplating upon his affairs. He was heard saying:

Should I abandon the domains of Rey
Though it is my ultimate desire?
Or should I return in ignominy,
Shamed for killing al-Husain?
For killing him there is nothing but the fire
One from which there is no shield though I

¹This poem was composed by Sayyid Hayder al-Hilli, may Allāh have mercy on his soul.
³According to the text at the beginning of p. 76, Vol. 1, of Tajrīd al-Aghānī by Ibn Wāsil al-Hamawi, who died in 697 A.H./1298 A.D., he stated so as he started narrating the events of the Battle of Hunayn. Said he, “This bath-house was known after A’yān, doorman of Bishr ibn al-Hakam.” On p. 334, Vol. 3, of Mu’jam al-Buldan, however, it is attributed to A’ān, a slave of Sa’d ibn Abu Waqqās.
⁴al-Ṭabarī, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 232.
⁵al-Dainūrī, Al-Akhkhār al-Tīwādī, p. 251. According to p. 58, Vol. 4, of Mu’jam al-Buldan, “Dustaba” is written as “Dastaba,” a town between Hamadan and Rey. One part of it is known as “Dustaba al-Razi,” whereas the other is known as “Dustaba Hamadan.” Due to the efforts exerted by Abu Mālik, Ḥanzalah ibn Khālid al-Tamīmī, it was annexed to Qazwīn (the Caspian).
The following is stated on p. 385 of al-Maqdisi's book Ahsan al-Taqsim: “The city of Rey caused the annihilation of the wretch Sa’d till he killed al-Husain son... as he himself admits, may Allāh humiliate him.” Then he cited both verses of poetry as indicated here with the exception of his saying that to be the governor of Rey is his desire.

In the morning, he met Ibn Ziyād and said to him, “You have put me in charge of a mission of which people have already heard; so, let me carry it out, and send to the battlefield those who are no less competent than I am.” He then named a number of Kāfā's dignitaries. Ibn Ziyād said, “I do not receive orders from you with regard to who I dispatch. If you march, do so with our troops; otherwise, hand me over the covenant which I had written you.” When he saw how persistent Ibn Ziyād was, Ibn Sa’d agreed to march. He, therefore, went to face al-Husain (ṣ) with four thousand men, and al-Hurr and everyone with him joined his forces. ‘Omer ibn Sa’d ordered ‘Irṣa ibn Qays al-Aḥmasi to meet al-Husain (ṣ) and to ask him about what had brought him here, but ‘Irṣa requested to be relieved of having to do so, saying that he was one of those who had written al-Husain (ṣ). He asked the other prominent chiefs with him, but they, too, asked to be excused for the same reason...

Kathīr ibn ‘Ubaydullāh al-Sha’bi stood up, and he was quite a daring man. He leaned on his cane and said, “I can meet him, and if you wish, I shall kill him, too.” Ibn Sa’d said, “No, do not kill him but ask him about what had brought him there.” Kathīr came to meet the Imām (ṣ); he was recognized by Abu Thumāmah al-Sa’idi who stood up in his face and shouted at him to put his sword on the ground before entering the Imām's tent. He refused, so he was turned away. ‘Omer ibn Sa’d called upon Qurrah ibn Qays al-Hanzali to ask al-Husain (ṣ) the same question. Qurrah delivered the message which he had brought from Ibn Sa’d to the Imām who responded by saying, “The people of your land wrote me asking me to go to them; so, if you now hate my presence, I shall go somewhere else.” The messenger went back and conveyed these words to Ibn Sa’d who, in turn, wrote Ibn Ziyād informing him of what al-Husain (ṣ) had said. Soon the answer came: “Give Husain and his band the option to swear the oath of allegiance to Yazīd. If he does, we will decide what to do with him.”

\textbf{I N B N Z I Y Ā D D E L I V E R S A S P E E C H}

Ibn Ziyād gathered people at Kāfā's grand mosque where he delivered a speech to them, saying,

O people! You tried Abu Sufyān's offspring and found them just as you like, and you have come to know how good in conduct the commander of the faithful, Yazīd, has been and how generous to his subjects. The highways have become, during his regime, quite safe. So was the case during the time of his father Mu‘āwiya. His son, Yazīd, is even more generous towards Allāh's servants, enriching them with wealth. He has doubled your payment and ordered me to make funds available to all of you and to require you to come out to fight his enemy, al-Ḥusain; so, you should listen to him and you should obey.

---

\textsuperscript{1}The following is stated on p. 385 of al-Maqdisi's book Ahsan al-Taqsim: “The city of Rey caused the annihilation of the wretch Sa’d till he killed al-Husain son... as he himself admits, may Allāh humiliate him.” Then he cited both verses of poetry as indicated here with the exception of his saying that to be the governor of Rey is his desire.

\textsuperscript{2}Ibn al-Athīr, Vol. 4, p. 22. Ibn al-Jawzi, on p. 161, Vol. 3, of Safwat al-Safwa, says that a man in Basra, who was one of the commanders of Ibn Ziyād, fell from his rooftop, breaking his legs. Abu Quālaḫah visited him and said to him, “I wish this incident will bring you goodness.” His prediction materialized: The man received an order from Ibn Ziyād to join the troops fighting al-Husain (ṣ), so he said to the messenger, “Just look at my condition!” After seven days, news came to him about al-Husain (ṣ) being killed, whereupon he praised Allāh for not having anything to do with it.

\textsuperscript{3}al-Ṭabarî, Tārikh, Vol. 6, pp. 233-234.
As soon as he came down from the pulpit, he distributed money then went out to al-Nukhayla¹ where he
camped. He called to his presence al-Hasín ibn Namir al-Tamimi, Hijar ibn Abjar, Shimir ibn Thul-Jawshan,
Shabth ibn Rab’i, ordering them to go to Ibn Sa’d’s aid. Shabth sent word saying that he was sick², so he
sent him a letter in which he said, “My messenger informs me of your pretending to be sick, and I fear lest
you should be among those who, when they meet the believers, say that they believe, and when they meet
their demons say: ‘We are with you! We only laugh at them!’ So, if you are one of our subjects, come
swiftly to us.” He went to meet him after the evening prayers so that he would not clearly see that there were
actually no signs of any sickness showing on his face. He agreed to do what he [Ibn Ziyād] had required of
him.³

`Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād put Zajr ibn Qays al-Ju’fī in charge of five hundred cavaliers, ordering him to
station his troops at the bridge in order to prohibit anyone from reaching al-Husain (iverse). `Āmir ibn Abu
Salāmah ibn `Abdullāh ibn `Arār al-Dalānī passed on the bridge, so Zajr said to him, “I know exactly where
you are going; so, go back.” `Āmir charged at him and at his company, forcing them to flee. None of them
dared to come close to him. He reached Kerbalā’ and joined al-Husain (iverse) and stayed with him till he
was killed in his defense. He had previously participated in all the wars waged by the Commander of the
Faithful, Ali ibn Abu Talib, peace be upon him.⁴

**AL-ḤUSAIN (VERSE) MEETS THE KŪFIANS**

People never ceased expressing their hatred towards having to fight al-Husain (iverse), the son of the most
revered Messenger of Allāh (verse) and Master of the Youths of Paradise. They had not forgotten all the
statements made by the Prophet (verse) in his honour and in honour of his father the wasi (verse), as well as
in honour of his chosen brother (verse). They all realized his status with Allāh when Kāfa was hit by a drought
and by a famine, so they complained to his father (verse) who took out this same martyr to pray for rain. It was
by the blessings of his holy soul and that of his noor, which is made of that of Muhammed (verse), that Allāh
Almighty responded, sending rain upon the earth till grass grew after an extended period of drought. He was
also the same person who secured the watering area during the Battle of Siffin, thus making water available
for the Muslims who had by then been exhausted by acute thirst⁵. They also knew how he provided
water for al-Hurr and for all the one thousand men and their horses in that desolate desert; that was the
incident about which the Kūfians were talking everywhere.

How could anyone, hence, meet him face to face and fight him, had it not been for succumbing to
inclinations, going to extremes in oppression, and due to the weakness of people when facing temptation?
This is why many of those who marched out to meet him deserted and stole their way to safety, so much so
that only a small number of them remained by the time they reached Kerbalā’. When Ibn Ziyād came to
know about the large number of those who deserted, he sent al-Suwayd ibn `Abdul-Rahmān al-Mīnqārī in
charge of a regiment of cavaliers, ordering him to tour Kāfa’s alleys and quarters to announce the beginning

---

¹It is the same as al-’Abbāsiyya, according to Ibn Nama, and it is presently called al-’Abbāsiyyāt. It lies near Thul-Kifl. On p. 147, Chapter 46, of *Al-Ya'in* by Rādiyy ad-Dīn ibn Tāwūs, al-Nukhayla is two farasangs from Kūfa.


of the war against al-Husain (א) and to bring him all those who lagged behind. Among those brought to him was a man from Syria who had gone to Kāfa seeking an inheritance belonging to him. Once he was brought to Ibn Ziyād, the latter ordered him to be killed. When people saw how ruthless Ibn Ziyād was, they all went out.¹

THE HOSTS

Al-Shimr marched out² with four thousand or more; Yazd ibn al-Rikāb marched out with two thousand; al-Hasin ibn Namīr al-Tamīmī marched out with four thousand; Shabth ibn Rabʿi marched out with one thousand; Kaʿb ibn Talhah marched out with three thousand; Hijar ibn Abjar marched out with one thousand; Mudayrīr ibn Rahmah al-Māzīnī marched out with three thousand, and Nasr ibn Harshah was in command of two thousand³, thus the total number of those who assembled under the command of Ibn Saʿd on the sixth of Muharram totalled twenty thousand strong⁴. Ibn Ziyād kept sending reinforcements to Ibn Saʿd till the number of the latter’s troops swelled to thirty thousand.

Imām Abū `Abdullāh, Jaʿfar al-Sādiq (א), has narrated saying, “Al-Husain (א) visited his brother al-Hasan (א) during his sickness that caused his martyrdom. Having seen his condition, he wept. Al-Hasan (א) asked him, ‘O father of `Abdullāh! What grieves you?’ ‘I am grieved on account of the harm inflicted on you,’ he answered. Al-Hasan, peace be upon him, said, ‘What has been administered to me is only a poison to kill me, but there is no day like your own day, O father of `Abdullāh, when thirty thousand strong, all claiming to belong to the nation of our grandfather, Muhammed, alleging adherence to the Islamic faith, will assemble to kill you and shed your blood and violate your sanctity and arrest your offspring and women and plunder your wealth. It is then that Banū Umayyah will be cursed and the sky will rain ashes and blood, and everything, even the beasts in the jungles and the fish in the seas, will mourn you.’⁵

Ibn Ziyād wrote Ibn Saʿd saying, “I have not left you any excuse with regard to providing you with plenty of horses and men; so, you should not receive the evening nor the day thereafter before I hear good news about you.” He urged him on the sixth day of Muharram to start the war.⁶

They assembled their hosts against Muhammed's son, At Taff, when they remembered their ancestors...

¹Al-Dainūrī, Al-Akhbār al-Tiwāl, p. 253.
²According to p. 10, Vol. 6, of Al-Bidʿ wal Tārikh, his name is written as Bishr ibn Thul-Jaws han. In 'Ujālat al-Mubtadī' fil Nasab by the ḥāfiz Abu Bakr Muhammed ibn Abu ʿUthmān al-Hazimī al-Hamādānī (d. 584 A.H./1188 A.D.), his name is Shūr ibn Thul-Jawshān. His father is said to be a narrator of traditions, and Shūr quotes him.
⁴Ibn Nama, Al-Luhfā, p. 71 (majlis 30). According to Matālīb al-Saʿāl, their number was twenty thousand. According to Ḥāmish Tathkīrat al-Khawās, they were one hundred thousand, whereas Ibn Shaqam, in his book Tuhfat al-Azhār, says that they numbered eighty thousand. According to p. 237 of Asrār al-Shahāda of Sayyid Kāzīm al-Hāʾirī, they were six thousand horsemen and one thousand footmen. On p. 190, Vol. 2, of his Tārikh, Abu al-Fidāʿ refers only to Ibn Saʿd's marching in four thousand and to al-Hurr in two thousands. On p. 656, Vol. 7, of Umdat al-Qāri by al-ʿAynī, in his “Kitāb al-Manāqib,” Ibn Ziyād's army numbered a thousand horsemen headed by al-Hurr and in their vanguard was al-Ḥasīn ibn Namīr.
⁵Radiyy ad-Dīn ibn Nabi al-Qazwīnī (d. 1134 A.H./1722 A.D.), Tazallum al-Zahrāʾ, p. 101, and also Maqta al Muḥammad ibn Abu Ṭalīb.

160
Allahu Akbar! O pillars of this earth! Dissolve!
The son of piety has to face the hosts
Whose banner the son of the blood-shedder tied,
How insolent they were when they met
His forehead with their very swords...!

THE WATERING PLACE

Modesty never wetted their faces
Even if they had walked through the Safa,
Even its stones would have felt modest.
How can such Umayyad faces know modesty,
Having shed, by sinning pleasures, their modesty?
They subdued, through their might,
The offspring of al-Zahra’, and they,
Through their swords, dethroned their princes.

They overpowered them till they
Deprived their corpses of being buried.
The world became too small for it so
Wherever it went, death was before and behind.
The back of death they rode, riding dignity even from
The back of the humiliation they rode.
The fangs of death were shown to a band
For which the swords were fates and destiny
Whose hearts were tested by the Almighty...
At a stand where patience and endeavour were put to test.
The might and swords of Muhammed's family used to be
Against those who cried for help and against the enemy.
Even death hated to meet them in such a way,
Yet Allah loved that they should thus meet Him,
So they leaped with thirsty hearts that
Found nothing to drink except the taste of death.
Yet I find you, O cloud, spreading your wings
On people to shade, satisfying those who thirst,
Though the hearts of the Prophet's sons were cracked
With thirst in a desolate land, burning their insides.
The worst cup they drank of all the calamity
Was the oppressors' unveiled of Muhammed's daughters:
The veils of Prophethood and the curtains were violated,
So their insides were further burnt even as
The hands of the foes vied to grab their garments...
How Clement Allāh is as He did see
How long they kept their wailing and their cries!
How Clement Allāh is as He did see
How in agony they sighed and in grief cried:
    With one hand each tried to stay alive,
    With the other she tried to shun the foes.
How painful to Muhammed's heart it must be,
How heavy with al-Batool the calamity!

Ibn Sa’d posted his horsemen to guard the Euphrates in order to prohibit the Master of Martyrs (ṣ) from reaching it. Al-Husain's followers found no access to water. Thirst bit them severely. Al-Husain (ṣ) took an axe and walked behind the women's tent nineteen steps in the direction of the Qibla then dug a well of potable water from which they drank, but soon it dried up. Ibn Ziyad sent a letter to Ibn Sa’d saying, “It has come to my knowledge that al-Husain is digging a well and reaching water, so he and his company are drinking of it. As soon as this letter reaches you, you must prohibit them, as much as you can, from digging wells. Expose them to the severest of hardships.” He instantly dispatched Ṭāʾīr ibn al-Hajjāj with five hundred horsemen to the watering place three days before al-Husain's martyrdom.

THE SEVENTH DAY

On the seventh day, the siege around the Master of Martyrs (ṣ) and those with him intensified, and they were blocked completely from reaching the water. Their water supply had already depleted, so each one of them had to deal with the flames of the thirst on his or her own. Naturally, the children were moaning on account of the pain of thirst. Some of them were pleading for water while others were trying anything they could think of to quench their thirst. All of this was taking place before the eyes of Abu ʿAbdullāh and the honourable ones of his family and companions. But what could he have done since swords and lances stood between them and the water? Yet the man who quite often served water to the thirsty could not tolerate that condition any longer.

Should the daughters of Fāṭima ever be in pain
And against the pain of thirst to him complain
With sighs high as the current of the Euphrates?
Had he sought al-Majarra river to quench his thirst,
It would surely have raised itself and done so first,
It would have turned its current into a ladder to reach.
Had Double-Horns closed it against him,
His determination would have surely undermined it.
In his left hand is a watering bag,
In his right hand a trained sword,
Like a cloud he aimed to reach Fāṭima's offspring,

---

1These verses are excerpted from a poem by Sayyid Hayder al-Hilli, may Allāh be pleased with him.
But the foe was certain to stone him with everything...

At that juncture, al-Husain (ṣ) assigned his brother al-‘Abbās to shoulder this responsibility. The latter had already been burning with the desire to do just that. Al-Husain (ṣ) asked him to bring water for the ladies and the children, giving him command over a detachment of twenty men each carrying a water bag. They went to the Euphrates at night paying no attention to those who were charged with guarding the watering place. After all, they were in the company of the lion of Muhammed's Progeny (ṣ). Nāfi’ ibn Hilāl al-Jamli advanced, so ‘Amr ibn al-Hajjāj shouted at him to identify himself. He said to him, “We came to drink of this water from which you have prohibited us.” “Drink then and cool your eyes,” said he, “but do not carry of it to al-Husain.” Nāfi’ said, “No, by Allāh, I shall never drink one drop while al-Husain and the Ahl al-Bayt with him and their supporters are thirsty.” He then called upon his companions to fill their water bags. It was then that those under the command of Ibn al-Hajjāj attacked them. Some of them kept watering their bags anyway while others were defending them headed by the one who grew up in the very lap of Hayderi bravery, namely Abul-Fadl, al-‘Abbās. They brought the water while none of their enemies could even contemplate getting near them out of fear of that same brave hero. The ladies and the children, hence, were able to quench their thirst.

We cannot overlook the fact that the amount of water brought to them was very little. What could that quantity do to a band that numbered more than a hundred and fifty men, women, and children, or maybe even two hundred, all parched by thirst, drinking no more than once? Soon thirst returned to them; so, to Allāh and to His Messenger is one's complaint.

If the Pool's Waterer on the Day of Gathering be Hayder, Then the Waterer of the thirsty at Kerbalā’ is Abul-Fadl. Yet the heart of people's waterer on the Day of Gathering Is cooled, whereas this one's heart with the heat boils. I stood by the water of the Euphrates and I still have been Telling it, though others are better in speech than I: “Why do you flow—may you not—and tended one day “To wash your own shame! “Have not the livers of Muhammed's Progeny flame-dried? “They were not cooled by water or by rain. “You ought to fold your branches and cause them to wither “Out of grief and shame of their withered lips.” Said the Euphrates: “Listen, if you will, to what I say, “Accept my excuse, and do not increase your blame. “What you see are my tears when “Wailing after them became my affair.” May Allāh reward on their behalf their uncle Abul-Fadl, O should only you have seen Abul-Fadl! He was a sword crafted by Ali in his right hand,

---

¹These lines are excerpted from a poem by Sayyid Ja’fer al-Ḥilli, may Allāh fill his grave with noor.

²Maqṭal Muḥammad ibn Abu Tālib. According to this report, their seeking water must have taken place on the seventh day which may explain why the seventh day is dedicated to the memory of al-ʿAbbās. According to p. 95, maǰlis 3, of al-Sadūq's Āmālī, Imām al-Husain ibn Ali (ṣ) dispatched his son Ali al-Akbar with thirty horsemen and twenty footmen to fetch water.
So his cub needed no polishing at all.
When Prophet Muhammed's sons are counted,
Among their brothers he will surely be numbered.
Never have I seen one thirsty around the water,
Without drinking of it though his heart is on fire.
His concern was only loyalty; few can be seen like that,
Few can be so loyal to their loved ones.
By your severed right hand do I swear,
And by your left one, the gatherer of all,
By your perseverance in defending the Prophet's son
At Kerbala’, though terrifying,
Something my mind cannot comprehend:
He proved loyal to you not knowing
Whether losing you terrified him
Or whether the `Arsh was by fates subverted.
Brother! You were both my shield and my sword
Yet I lost both: No shield do I now hold
Nor even my own sword...

**CONCEIT OF IBN SA’D**

Al-Husain (ش) dispatched `Amr ibn Qarzah al-Ansāri to Ibn Sa’d asking for an evening meeting between both warring factions. Each came out escorted by twenty cavaliers. Al-Husain (ش) ordered those in his company, with the exception of al-`Abbās and his oldest son, Ali al-Akbar, not to lag behind. Ibn Sa’d did likewise, keeping his son, Hafs, with him together with his slave.

Al-Husain (ش) said, “O Ibn Sa’d! Are you really fighting me?! Don’t you fear Allāh to Whom you shall return?! I am the son of you know very well who. Why don't you come to my side and leave these folks, for that will surely be better for you with Allāh?” Omer ibn Sa’d said, “I fear lest my house should be demolished [if I do so].” “I shall rebuild it for you,” was al-Husain's answer. “I fear lest my estate should be confiscated,” said Ibn Sa’d. The Imām, peace be upon him, said, “I shall compensate you for it with one even better from my property in Hijāz.” It is said that the Imām (ش) promised Ibn Sa’d to give him his own estate called al-Bughaybhga, a vast tract of land containing palms and many other fruit trees. Mu‘āwiya had offered the Imām (ش) one million dinars for it, but he refused to sell it to him. Ibn Sa’d then said, “I have in Kaffa many children, and I fear lest Ibn Ziyād should kill them all.”

When al-Husain (ش) lost all hope of winning him over, he stood up as he said, “What is the matter with you, may Allāh soon kill you on your bed, and may He never forgive you on the Day of Gathering?! By Allāh! I wish you will only eat a little of the wheat of Iraq.” Ibn Sa’d responded by saying sarcastically, “Barley suffices me!”

The first Sign of Allāh's Wrath, which this man witnessed, was the loss of his anticipated post as the

---

1 Excerpted from a poem by Shāikh Muhsin Abul-Hā’iri, may Allāh have mercy on his soul.
3 The word “million” does not exist in Arabic; instead, the Arabs say “a thousand thousands.” — Tr.
governor of Rey. When he returned from Kerbala’, Ibn Ziyād required him to bring him the covenant wherein he promised to make him governor of Rey, but Ibn Sa’d claimed that he had lost it. He pressured him to bring it to him, so Ibn Sa’d said, “I left it being read for the old women of Quraysh as means to apologize to them. By Allāh! I had advised you with regard to al-Husain with one piece of advice which, had you conveyed it to my father Sa’d, you would have paid him what you owe him.” ‘Uthmān ibn Ziyād, ‘Ubaydullāh’s brother, said, “Yes, he has said the truth! I wish there is a ring in the nose of each and every person belonging to Banū Ziyād till the Day of Judgment, and that al-Husain had never been killed.”

One of the ways whereby al-Mukhtar dealt with him was that when he granted him security, he hired women to mourn the death of al-Husain at the doorstep of `Omer ibn Sa’d's house. This attracted the attention of passers-by to the fact that the person living inside was the one responsible for killing the Master of the Youths of Paradise. This caused a great deal of embarrassment to Ibn Sa’d who requested al-Mukhtar to have them removed from there. Al-Mukhtar said to him, “Does not al-Husain (ṣ) deserve to be mourned?” And when the people of Kāfā wanted `Omer ibn Sa’d to be their governor, following the death of Yazīd son of Mu’āwiyah, the women of the tribes of Hamadan and Rabī’a came to the grand mosque screaming and saying, “Was not Ibn Sa’d satisfied with killing al-Husain so he now wants to be the governor?” People wept, turning away from him.

CALUMNY OF IBN SA’D

Ibn Sa’d attributed to Imām Husain (ṣ) doing something which he actually never did. He wrote Ibn Ziyād claiming that he desired the reform of the nation and the beauty of unity. He stated the following in his letter:

Allāh has put out the fire of dissension, united the views, and reformed the nation's affairs. This Husain has offered me to go back to where he had come from, or to go to one of the border towns and be one of the Muslims receiving what other Muslims receive and shouldering the same responsibilities like anyone else, or that the commander of the faithful, Yazīd, comes and places his own hand in Husain's and both men may discuss their views. All of this meets your pleasure, and there is in it goodness for the nation.

Far away it is that such a man of dignity could do any such thing. He is the one who taught people how to persevere when facing what they dislike and when meeting death. How could he place himself at the service of Marjānā’s son or follow the views of the son of the liver-chewing woman?! Al-Husain (ṣ) had said to his brother, al-Atraf, “By Allāh! I shall never submit to lowliness.” To Ibn al-Hanafiyya he said once, “I know of certainty that in that place shall I meet my death and the death of my companions; none shall survive except my son Ali.” To Ja’fer ibn Sulaym ‘an al-Zab’ī he said, “They shall never leave me till I am dead.”

The last statement he made during the Battle of Ṭaff was:

The bastard-son and the son of the bastard-son gave me the option to either accept a reward or to succumb to humiliation. Far away it is from us to do that! Allāh refuses, and so does His Messenger, and so do the believers. [We are] good and purified families, dignified people, and honourable men who prefer to be killed in dignity rather than obey the abased.

---

1al-Tabari, Ṭārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 268.
2Sayyid Muhammed Rida al-Asterbādi al-Hilli, Al-`Iqd al-Farūd, in a chapter bearing the heading “Al-Mukhtar's Uprising.”
3al-Mas’ūdi, Murūj al-Thahab, Vol. 2, p. 105, where Yazīd is discussed.
The statement made by Uqbah ibn Sam`an explains the condition from which Abu `Abdullah, peace be upon him, was suffering. Said he, “I accompanied al-Husain from Medina to Mecca, and from the latter to Iraq, and I did not part with him till he was killed. I heard all his statements, but never did I ever hear him say what people claim, i.e. that he wanted to put his hand in Yazid's hand. I never heard him say so when I was with him in Medina nor in Mecca or on any highway, in Iraq or at his own camp, till he was killed. Yes, I heard him say, ‘Let me go in this spacious land.”

AL-SHIMR'S OPPRESSIVENESS

Having read Ibn Sa`d's letter, Ibn Ziyad said, “This is a letter of someone who advises his people and who is compassionate towards them.” He was about to respond to it when al-Shimr stood up as he said, “Do you really accept such an offer from him after his having settled in your land? By Allah! If he ever departs from your land without making an agreement with you, he will get even stronger, while you will get

---


2Ibn Kathir, on p. 188, Vol. 8, says, “Al-Husain (ṣ) used to narrate to his companions at Kerbalá’ what his grandfather (ص) used to tell him, which was: ‘It is as if I see a spotted dog licking the blood of my Ahl al-Bayt (ṣ).’ When he saw that al-Shimr was leprous, he immediately said, ‘He is the one who shall kill me!’” On p. 222 of his book Al-A`lāq al-Nafsah, Ibn Rastah says, “Al-Shimr Thul-Jawshan, who killed al-Husain (ṣ), was leprous.” On p. 449, Vol. 1, of his book Al-I`tidāl, al-Thahbi says, “Shimr son of Thul-Jawshan was one of those who killed al-Husain, peace be upon him.” This narrative, therefore, is not an original. When he was asked, “Why did you side with the enemies of the son of Fatima (ṣ)?” he said, “Our men of authority ordered us. Had we disobeyed them, we would have been more wretched than red camels.” Al-Thahbi says, “This is only an ugly excuse; obedience is due to what is right.” On p. 303 and on the following pages of his book titled Siffin (Egyptian edition), Nasr ibn Muzahim says, “Shimr ibn Thul-Jawshan was with the Commander of the Faithful (ṣ) at Siffin. From the company of Mu`awiya came out Adham ibn Muhriz challenging anyone from Ali's army for a duel. Shimr ibn Thul-Jawshan went out, and they exchanged two blows. Adham struck Shimr on his forehead, causing his sword to reach the man's bones. When Shimr responded with a blow of his own, he could not harm Adham in the least; therefore, he went back to his camp to drink some water. He took a spear and composed these lines of poetry:

I have reserved for the brother of Bahlil
A swift blow, only should I live
A final blow shall I strike him with,
A blow like death, or death itself.

He charged at Adham, pierced him with his sword, causing him to fall from his horse. Adhma's fellows carried him away, so Shimr left. On p. 143, Vol. 2, of his book Nafrat al-Tūb ('Eisa al-Babi Press), al-Maqrīzī says, “Al-Samīl ibn Hātim ibn al-Shimr ibn Thul-Jawshan was a chief of Mudar who bore a great deal of grudge against the Yemenites.” This is stated on p. 222 of the Beiruti edition edited by Muhammed Muhyi ad-Din.” In a footnote in the same book, Hātim, son of al-Shimr, was with his father at Kufa. When al-Mukhtar killed Shimr ibn Thul-Jawshan, it is stated that Hātim fled to Qinnasrin. On p. 145, he says that al-Samīl was governor of Serqasta. He left it to be the governor of Tulaytala. On p. 67, Vol. 1, of his book Al-Hulla al-Sayrā, Ibn al-Abār says, “When al-Mukhtar appeared in Kufa, al-Shimr ibn Thul-Jawshan, who killed al-Husain ibn Ali (ṣ), fled to Syria accompanied by his wife and sons. He stayed there in dignity and security. It is said that al-Mukhtar killed him, whereas he fled till Kulthumm ibn `Iyād al-Qushayrī went out to invade al-Maghreb. Al-Samīl was one of the dignitaries selected by the army from among the people of Syria. He entered Andalusia under the authority of Balaj ibn Bishr who looked after the Mudarites in Andalusia when Abu al-Khattār al-Husām ibn Dirār al-Kalbi demonstrated his fanaticism in support of the Yemenites. Al-Samīl died in the prison of `Abdul-Rahmān ibn Mu`awiyyah in the year 142 A.H./759 A.D. He was a poet.” On p. 234, Vol. 1, of his book Tārīkh `Ulamā` al-Andalus, Ibn al-Fawtī says the following, “Shimr ibn Thul-Jawshan al-Kil`ā’, a Kufian, is the one who presented the head of al-Husain (ṣ) to Yazid ibn Mu`awiyyah at the Balaj garrison. He is grandfather of al-Samīl ibn Hātim, al-Shimr al-Qaysi, a fellow of al-Fahri.” What is really accurate is the account narrated by al-Dainīrī on p. 296 of his book Al-Akhbār al-Tīwāl: “Shimr ibn Thul-Jawshan was killed by the supporters of al-Mukhtar at al-Mathār. His head was sent to Muhammed ibn al-Hanāfiyya.” On p. 222 of his book Al-A`lāq al-Nafsah, Ibn Rastah says, “Al-Shimr ibn Thul-Jawshan was leprous.” On p. 122, Vol. 7, of his Tārīkh, al-Ṭabari says the same, and so does Ibn al-Athīr in his book Al-Kāmil.
Weaker.” Ibn Ziyād found his statement to be the wisest, so he wrote Ibn Sa’d saying, “I did not dispatch you to al-Husain so that you would spare him, nor to negotiate with him, nor to give him any glimpse of hope of security, nor did I dispatch you so that you would intercede on his behalf with me. See if Husain and his company surrender to my authority; if so, send them to me safely; if not, attack them and kill them and mutilate their bodies, for they surely deserve it. If al-Husain is killed, let the horses trample over his chest and back. I do not think that this will hurt him after his death, but this is in fulfillment of a promise which I had made to do just that. If you carry out our order, we shall reward you as someone who listens to us and who obeys, but if you refuse, then remove yourself from our business and our troops, and let Shimr ibn Thul-Jawshan take charge of the army, for we have granted him authority to do so.”

When Shimr brought this letter, Ibn Sa’d said to him, “Woe unto you! May Allāh never make your home near, and may He reveal the ugliness of what you have done! I believe you are the one who discouraged him from doing it and thus foiled our hopeful attempt to bring about reconciliation. By Allāh! Husain shall never surrender, for there is an honourable soul within him.” Al-Shimir said to him, “Tell me what you are going to do: Are you going to carry out your prince's order or not? If not, let me take charge of the army.” ‘Omer ibn Sa’d answered him by saying, “I shall do it, and no thanks to you; but you should be in charge of the infantry.”

SECURITY

As loudly as he could, Shimr shouted: “Where are the sons of our sister?! Where is al-‘Abbās and his brothers?!” The latter ignored his calls, whereupon al-Husain (ṣ) said, “Answer his call though he may be a debauchee.” They asked Shimr what he wanted. Said he, “O sons of my sister! You are safe and secure! Do not get yourselves killed with al-Husain! Maintain your obedience to the commander of the faithful Yazid!” Al-‘Abbās said, “The curse of Allāh be on you and on your security! Do you grant us security while the son of the Messenger of Allāh has no security at all?! Do you order us to be obedient to the damned folks and the offspring of the damned?!"

Did that rogue think that he could win over a man with full awareness and zeal and thus bring him into the pits of humiliation? Could the father of al-Fadl exchange the light with the dark or abandon the standard-bearer of the Prophetic call and enlist under the standard of Maysoon's son?! No way!

When al-‘Abbās returned, Zuhayr ibn al-Qayn stood up and said, “Shall I narrate one hadith for you which I learned very well?” When al-‘Abbās answered him in the affirmative, Zuhayr said, “When your father

---

1Ibn al-Athīr, Al-Kāmil, Vol. 4, p. 23.
2al-Tabari, Tāรกhkh, Vol. 6, p. 236.
3On pages 261 and 265 of his book Jamhārat Ansāb al-‘Arab, Ibn Hazm says, “Eleven are the sons of Kilāb ibn Rabī’ah ibn ‘Āmir ibn Sa’sā’ah ibn Mu‘awiyyah ibn Bakr ibn Hawāzīn ibn Mansūr ibn ‘Ikrimah ibn Hafṣah ibn Qays-Ghaylān. Among them are Ka’b and al-Dabāb. Among Ka’b’s offspring are Banū al-Wahdī from whom descended Umm al-Baneen daughter of Hazam ibn Khālid ibn Rabī’ah ibn al-Wahdī who was wife of Ali ibn Abu Tālib (ṣ) and who gave birth by him to Muḥammed Asghar [Muḥammed Junior]. ʿUthmān, Ja’fer, and al-‘Abbās.” On p. 270, the author discusses the offspring of al-Dībāb saying, “Among them is Shimr son of Thul-Jawshan who killed al-Husain. The real name of Thul-Jawshan is Jamīl ibn “al-A war’ ḤAmr ibn Mu‘awiyyah, the latter is nicknamed “al-Dībāb”. Among the latter’s offspring is al-Samīl ibn Hātim, son of Shimr ibn Thul-Jawshan. He came to be a man of authority in Andalusia where he left offspring.” On p. 83, Vol. 2, of Al-‘Iqd al-Farād, when reference to Mathhaj is made, the author says, “Al-Dībāb belongs to Banū al-Hārith ibn Ka’b, whereas al-Dabāb belongs to Banū ‘Āmir ibn Sa’sā’ah. Since al-Shimr belonged to Banū ‘Āmir ibn Sa’sā’ah, his kin is al-Dībāb [rather than “al-Dabāb”].”
4Ibn al-Jawzī, the grandson, Tathkīrat al-Khwās, p. 142. This statement is quoted by Abul-Faraj al-Isfahānī, author of Al-Aghānī, his grandson, as stated in Al-Muntazam and also on p. 28 of ʾlām al-Wara by al-Tibrīzī.
5Ibn Nama, p. 28.
[the Commander of the Faithful, Imam Ali ibn Abu Tālib, peace be upon him] wanted to get married, he asked his brother, `Aql, who was fully knowledgeable of Arabs’ genealogies, to select a woman born to the most valiant from among the Arabs so that he would marry her and she would give birth to a brave son who would support al-Husain at Kerbalā’. Your father, hence, treasured you for a day such as this one; so, do not fall short of supporting your brother or protecting your sisters.”

Al-`Abbās said, “Do you really encourage me, O Zuhayr, on a day such as this?! By Allāh! I shall show you something your eyes have never seen.” He, therefore, killed renown heroes and turned standards upside down and fought as one who was not concerned at all about being killed or about paying any heed to the bravery of famous heroes. His only concern was to get water to his brother’s children.

He plays al-Karrār as he charges,
He echoes his pristine words in his qualities
The hand of Allāh is but his father,
And the Might of Allāh is manifested in him.
So he is the hand of Allāh and this is his arm
His stands suffice you for a proof.
His valour is like that of his
Lest I should exaggerate, I would have said:
Exalted is his might!

BANŪ ASAD

Habīb ibn Muzāhīr sought the permission of Imam Husain (ع) to go to Banū Asad who were domiciled nearby, and permission was granted to him. When he came to them and identified himself as one of their tribesmen, they, indeed, came to recognize him. He, then, asked them to support the son of the daughter of the Messenger of Allāh (ص), for that, he told them, would bring them honour in this life and honour in the life hereafter. Ninety men responded to his call. One man slipped away from their quarters to inform Ibn Sa’d of what had happened there. The latter instantly sent four hundred men as enforcement to al-Azraq’s men in order to intercept that small band on the highway. A fight broke out, and a number of men belonging to Banū Asad were killed while those who survived fled away back home. Banū Sa’d, fearing a sudden attack from Ibn Sa’d, moved out of that area in their entirety under the cover of the night. Habīb went back to al-Husain (ع) and told him about what had happened. The Imam (ع) said, “La hawla wala quwwata illa billahil `aliyy al-`azeem,” that is, “There is neither power, nor might, except in Allāh, the most Exalted One, the Great.”

DAY NINE

In the eve preceding Thursday, on Muharram 9, 61 A.H./October 12, 680 A.D., Ibn Sa’d stood up and called upon his army to attack al-Husain (ع) who was sitting in front of his tent leaning on his sword. Heaviness descended upon him and he saw, by way of a fleeting vision, the Messenger of Allāh (ص) saying, “Shortly you will join us!” Zainab, his sister, heard the men's voices, so she said to her brother, “The enemy is getting

---

1Sayyid Kāzīm al-Hā’iri, Asrār al-Shahāda, p. 387.
2From a poem by the authority Ayatullāh Shaikh Muhammed Husain al-Isfahāni, may Allāh sanctify his soul.
close to us.” Al-Husain (ṣ) said to his brother al-ʿAbbās, “Ride, may I be your sacrifice’, so that you may meet them. Ask them about the reason why they had come and about what they want.” Al-ʿAbbās set out escorted by twenty men, including Zuhayr and Habib, on horseback. He asked them, and their answer was: “An order from the amīr (governor) came that we should make you an offer either to surrender to his authority or we shall fight you.” Al-ʿAbbās (ṣ) went back to inform al-Husain (ṣ) as his escorting party stood to admonish those folks. Habib ibn Muzāhir said to them, “By Allah! The worst people in the sight of Allah tomorrow [in the hereafter] are those who come to Him after having killed the offspring of His Prophet, his Progeny, his Ahl al-Bayt (ṣ), the worshippers of this land who offer tahajjud in the pre-dawn and remember Allah quite often.” ʿIzrah ibn Qays said to him, “You can keep on lauding yourself as long as you like.” Zuhayr said to him, “O ʿIzrah! Allah has already lauded and guided my soul! So, fear Allah, O ʿIzrah, for I am only admonishing you. I plead to you in the Name of Allah, O ʿIzrah, not to be among those who support the people of misguidance in killing the pure souls.” ʿIzrah then said, “O Zuhayr! You are not in our regard as one of the Shiʿa as of Ahl al-Bayt but a man who thought the opposite of their thinking.” Zuhayr said, “Do you not conclude, having seen where I stand with their regard, that I am one of such Shiʿas? By Allah! I never wrote him a letter, nor sent him a messenger, nor promised to support him, but a meeting with him on a highway tied me to him; so, when I saw his face, I thought the opposite of their thinking.” Zuhayr said, “Do you not conclude, having seen where I stand with their regard, that I am one of such Shiʿas? By Allah! I never wrote him a letter, nor sent him a messenger, nor promised to support him, but a meeting with him on a highway tied me to him; so, when I saw his face, I thought the opposite of their thinking.” Zuhayr said, “Do you not conclude, having seen where I stand with their regard, that I am one of such Shiʿas? By Allah! I never wrote him a letter, nor sent him a messenger, nor promised to support him, but a meeting with him on a highway tied me to him; so, when I saw his face, I thought the opposite of their thinking.” Zuhayr said, “Do you not conclude, having seen where I stand with their regard, that I am one of such Shiʿas? By Allah! I never wrote him a letter, nor sent him a messenger, nor promised to support him, but a meeting with him on a highway tied me to him; so, when I saw his face, I thought the opposite of their thinking.”

Al-ʿAbbās informed his brother Abu Ḥabīd that those folks were up to. Al-Husain (ṣ) said, “Go back to them and ask them to give us this evening as a respite till tomorrow so that we may pray to our Lord, supplicate to Him, and seek His forgiveness, for He knows how much I love prayers, the recitation of His Book, the abundance of invocations, and the seeking of His forgiveness.”

Al-ʿAbbās went back and negotiated an evening’s respite. Ibn Saʿd stood up and asked his companions what they thought. ʿAmr ibn al-Hajjāj said, “Glory to Allah! Even if they had been from Daylam and made such a request, you ought to have granted it to them.” Qays ibn al-Ash`ath said, “Grant them what they ask, for by my life, he [al-Husain] shall fight you tomorrow.” Ibn Saʿd said, “By Allah! If I am sure that he will do so tomorrow, I will not then postpone the fighting till tomorrow!” Then he sent the following message to al-Husain (ṣ): “We have postponed fighting you till tomorrow. If you surrender, we shall send you to the governor ʿUbaydullāh] Ibn Ziyād, but if you refuse, we shall not leave you alone.”

Umayyah strayed from the goal
When swords met to do battle.
They wanted to drive an unyoked horse

al-Ṭabarī, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 137. Ali ibn Muḥammad al-Fattāl al-Naishapuri, Rawdat al-Wāʿīzīn, p. 157. al-Muṣīd, Al-Irshād. Ibn Kathīr, Al-Bidāya, Vol. 8, p. 176. The implication of this golden statement is not hidden, an implication that defies reason. How could he soar to the zenith of the truth that comes from a holy one? It is fathomed only by a discreet critic. Do not be misled, dear reader, into thinking that this statement is insignificant especially after the ʿImām (ṣ), reciting the ziyyārat of the martyrs, had said, “By both of my parts, you have proven your good mettle, and good is the land wherein you are buried.” The ʿImām (ṣ), by doing so, is not actually the one who is addressing them. He was actually teaching this text to Safwān, the camel lessor, admonishing him to address them thus. The incident, as narrated by the mentor al-Ṭāsi in Misbāḥ al-Mutahajjīd says that Safwān had sought ʿImām Jaʿfar al-Ṣādiq (ṣ) to perform the pilgrimage (ziyyārat) to the shrine of ʿImām al-Husain (ṣ) and to teach him what he should do and say. ʿImām al-Ṣādiq (ṣ) said to him, “O Safwān! Fast for three days before you start your trip..., etc.” Then he continued to say, “When you reach al-Hāʾir, say: Allāhu Akbar!” Then the ʿImām continued to describe the ritual to him till he said, “Then exit out of the door next to the feet of Ali ibn al-Husain (ṣ); face the martyrs and say: ʿĀssalāmū Alaikom, O friends of Allāh..., etc.”

al-Ṭabarī, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 337.
Like one subjugated in yoke.
And in their hand they wanted him to be
Servile, though the father of lions he may be.
Unattainable, it seems, to `Omer to subdue
The Prophet's son, the pure, the sublime.
Umayyah aimed to attain what they could
So they paid no heed to what they ought and should.
They eyed the mirage with an eye,
Towards glory surely sly,
And slanted, and was seduced,
Ignorance its soul induced.
The ignorant only temptation produced.

THOSE WHOSE CONSCIENCE IS FREE

One night before his martyrdom, al-Husain (as) went to his companions to say:

I glorify Allāh in the best of glorification and praise Him for both ease and adversity. Lord! I praise You for having honoured us with Prophethood, taught us the Qur’ān, made us faqih in the creed, made for us the hearing, the vision, and the understanding, and You did not let us be among the polytheists. I know no companions more worthy, nor better, than mine, nor any members of a family more joining of the ties of kinship than my Ahl al-Bayt (as); so, may Allāh reward all of you on my behalf. My grandfather, the Messenger of Allāh (ص), told me that I would be taken to Iraq and settle in a land called `Āmūra and Kerbala’ where I would be martyred. That very time has come quite close. I think that our day of confronting these enemies shall be tomorrow, and I have given you permission, all of you, to freely go. You are not obligated henceforth to stay with me. The night has already covered you, so ride it as a camel, and let each man among you take with him one man from my Ahl al-Bayt (as); so, may Allāh reward you all! Disperse to your cities and villages, for these folks are after me, and if they get hold of me, they will not seek others.

The Imām’s brothers, sons, nephews and the sons of `Abdullāh ibn Ja’fer said, “And why should we do that? Just to survive you? May Allāh never permit us to see that day.” The first to speak from among them to make this statement was al-`Abbās ibn Ali ibn Abu Ṭalib (as) followed by the offspring of Hashim.

Al-Husain (as) turned to `Aqil's sons and said, “Suffices you of the loss the killing of Muslim. Go, for I have permitted you to leave.” They all said, “What would people, in that case, say about us, and what can we say to them? Shall we tell them that we left our mentor, master, and the son of the best of our uncles without

---

1These verses are from a poem by al-Ka’bi, may Allāh have mercy on his soul.
2al-Fadl ibn Shāthān, Ithbāt al-Raj’a. This reference ought to be regarded as a book about the occultation, for it contains only one single hadith referring to the raj’a (the return).
4Ithbāt al-Raj’a.
having shot an arrow or stabbed with a lance or dealt a sword blow in his defense, and that we do not know what they did? No, by Allah! We shall never do anything like that! Rather, we shall sacrifice our lives, wealth and families for you, and we shall fight on your side till we meet your fate. We loathe life after you.”

Souls insisted on upholding their father's legacy
So they are either shot or are shooting.
Their souls are to the battlefield accustomed
Just as their feet are to the pulpits used.  

Muslim ibn `Awsajah said, “Are we the type of people that would abandon you?! And what excuse shall we produce before Allah for not having carried out our responsibilities towards you?! By Allah! I shall never part with you till I stab their chests with my lance and strike them with my sword so long as my hand can hold it. And even if I have no weapon to fight them, I shall hurl stones at them till I die with you.”

Sa’id ibn ‘Abdullah al-Hanafi said, “By Allah! We shall never abandon you till Allah ascertains that we safeguarded our word to His Messenger in his absence with regard to you. By Allah! Had I come to know that I shall be killed, then I die, then I shall be burnt alive, then my ashes will be strewn, and this will be done to me seventy times, I shall still refuse to part with you till I meet my death defending you. And why should I not do so since it is only one time's killing followed by eternal bliss?!”

Zuhayr ibn al-Qayn said, “By Allah! I wish I will be killed, then brought back to life, then killed again, and so on for thousands of times, and that Allah, the most Exalted, the Great, will let such fighting keep you and these youths from among your Ahl al-Bayt (î) alive.”

The rest of the companions made similar statements, so al-Husain (î) invoked Allah to reward them well.  

Meanwhile, someone said to Muhammed ibn Bashîr al-Hadrami, “Your son has been captured in the outskirts of Rey.” He said, “I do not like him to be arrested while I survive him.” Al-Husain (î) said to him, “You are relieved from your oath of allegiance to me; so, go and secure the release of your son.” “No, by Allah,” said he, “I shall never do so; may the wild beasts devour me should I ever part with you!” The Imam (î) said to him, “Then give your [other] son these five outfits so that he would utilize them in securing his brother's release,” and their value was estimated at one thousand dinars.  

A band raced to defend him, one that
Inherited glories, young and aged.
Whoever solicits them for what he dislikes
Will find them lions enraged.
They rushed when a war caller called
Trampling in Kerbalâ’ the plains.
Lions whose ornaments are the swords
Whose clothes are the shields.
They took water-bags as their eyes' decoration,


2 These verses are cited on p. 17 of Ibn Nama’s book Muthîr al-Ahzân.

3 al-Mufîd, Al-Irshâd. al-Tabari, Târikh, Vol. 6, p. 239.

4 Ibn Nama, Al-Luhûf, p. 53.
They dyed their hands with ponds,
Leaning as though the deer sang for them
And as though they served them their cups.
Their swords shone, so they rained
With their blood as the ground turned into clouds,
As though they were welcoming the hûris:
Thus did they welcome the lances and the swords.
They found death in defending Muhammed's offspring
Sweet in taste, yet life after them is pain, unpleasing.¹

Once he realized how sincere they were in defending him, he acquainted them with what they did not know of fate. Said he, “Tomorrow, I shall be killed and so shall you, and none of you will survive,² not even al-Qâsim, nor `Abdullâh, my infant son, with the exception of my son Ali Zayn al-`Abidin, for Allâh will not permit my family line to discontinue should he be killed, and he shall be the father of eight Imâms.”³

They all said, “All praise is due to Allâh Who has granted us the blessing of being your supporters and honoured us with dying with you! Should we refuse to be in your degree [of divine bliss], O son of the Messenger of Allâh (ﷺ)!” The Imâm (‡), therefore, wished them well⁴ then unveiled from their vision what Allâh has in store for them of the bliss in Paradise, showing them their mansions therein.⁵ This is not too much to expect in his regard due to the Divine Will of the most Exalted One, nor was it a strange conduct coming from an Imâm. When they believed in Moses (‡) and Pharaoh was about to kill them, Moses the prophet showed them their places in Paradise.⁶

In a statement, Imâm Abu Ja`fer, al-Bâqir, peace be upon him, said to his companions, “Good news for you about your entering Paradise! By Allâh! We shall stay as long as Allâh wills after whatever happens to us, then Allâh will bring us and you back to life when our Qa’im reappears, so he will seek revenge against the oppressors. I and you shall witness them chained and shackled and suffering from various types of pain.” He was asked, “Who is your Qa’im, O son of the Messenger of Allâh?” “He is the seventh from among the offspring of my son, [Imâm] Muhammed ibn Ali al-Bâqir (‡); he is al-Hujjah son of al-Hasan ibn Ali ibn Muhammed ibn Ali ibn Musâ ibn Ja`fer ibn Muhammed son of my son Ali; he is the one who will remain in occultation for a long time then shall he reappear and fill the world with justice and equity just as it had been filled with injustice and inequity.”⁷

THE NIGHT PRECEDING `ÂSHûRA

The night that preceded `Âshûra was the hardest on the hearts of the family that descended from the Messenger of Allâh (ﷺ). It was filled with unpleasant things and with calamities. It followed evil and was filled with presentiments of imminent dangers. The very hard time Banû Umayyah had cut them off from

¹These verses were composed by the `allâma Sayyid Rida al-Hindi, may Allâh have mercy on him.
³Sayyid Kâzim al-Hâ’iri, Asrûr al-Shahûda.
⁵al-Râwînî, Al-Kharâ`î.
⁶al-Mas`ûdi, Akhbâr al-Zamân, p. 247.
⁷Ithbât al-Raj’a.
any necessities of life. Women were wailing; children were crying on account of the acute thirst, and dark agony was looming in the air.

But what was the condition of the men who sought glory, the companions of Husain (ṣ), the honourable men who descended from Hashim, with regard to such calamities? Did they leave them any strength at all whereby they could stand on their feet? Did they have any morale to lift them and to empower them to struggle for survival, knowing that the war would most surely take place the next day?

Yes! The valiant ones from Abu Ṭalib's family, as well as the elite from among the Imām's followers, were most ecstatic! They were more firm in their determination to fight to the last drop of their blood than any time before! They were elated on account of the divine bliss and happiness awaiting them! Whenever the bad situation worsened, they even smiled more, teased one another, became happier and more rejuvenated.

Since at Nineva they opted for death
Seeing some marks for treachery
This one smiled, that laughed
In happiness and in ecstasy
Though death never wears a smile.

Burayr joked with `Abdul-Rahmān al-Ansāri, whereupon the latter said, “Is this the time for indolence?!”. Burayr said, “My people know very well that I never liked indolence in any phase of my life, but I am in high spirits on account of what we will be receiving [of Allah's rewards]. By Allah! The only barrier between us and the hūris with large lovely eyes is that these folks assault us with their swords! I sincerely wish they do so this very moment!”

Hābīb ibn Muzāhir came out of his tent wearing a big smile. Yazīd ibn al-Ḥasan al-Hamadānī said to him, “This is not the time to smile about anything.” Hābīb said to him, “On the contrary: what other time is more worthy of smiling?! As soon as these folks attack us with their swords, we will find ourselves embracing the hūris!”

Glory leaves on their faces its marks
In contentment, though the faces of the valiant
Are in fright constrained.
Like moons shining in the darkest of night
As they appear on their steeds riding,
So they raced like bleeding to meet their death,
As if in death lies their very ecstasy
Their souls embraced their swords
Then the embracing was in the Garden for the hūris.

They remained quite energetic, alternating between a deep involvement in acts of adoration and the readying of their weapons for the fight, as if they were bees in a bee-hive in the noise of their commotion! Some were standing in prayers while others were sitting or bowing. One of them, al-Dahhak ibn `Abdullāh al-Mashriqi, said, “A regiment of cavaliers belonging to Ibn Sa`d passed by us, and one of their men heard al-

---

3. Excerpted from a poem by the `allāma Sayyid Muhammed Ḥusain al-Kishwān, may Allāh have mercy on his soul.
Husain (a) reciting the verse saying, ‘Let not those who disbelieve think that Our granting them respite is better for their souls; We grant them a respite only so that they may add to their sins, and they shall have a disgraceful chastisement. On no account will Allah leave the believers in the condition in which you are till He distinguishes the evil [doers] from [the doers of] good’ (Qur’an, 3:178-179). That man commented saying, ‘We, by the Lord of the Ka’ba, are the doers of good; He has distinguished us from you.’ Burayr said to him, ‘O man of debauchery! Shall Allah really count you among the doers of good?! Come to our camp and repent your great sins, for by Allah, we are the good ones while you are the bad ones.’ The man [citing a verse from the Holy Qur’an] said sarcastically to him, ‘And I am a witness to that!!!’

It is reported that on that same night, as many as thirty-two men defected from the camp of Ibn Sa’d and joined al-Husain's camp after having seen how the latter were supplicating and praying, demonstrating the most sincere devotion and submission to Allah Almighty.

Ali ibn al-Husain (a) has said, “I heard my father on the night preceding the day on which he was killed saying, as he was mending his sword,

O Time! Fie upon you for a friend!
How many do you have, at dawn and at dusk
Of friends and of vengeance seekers,
While Time with a substitute is never pleased?
But the affair is with the Mighty One
And every living being will go his way.

“He repeated them twice or thrice; therefore, I understood his implication, so I was overcome with tears, yet I remained silent, knowing that fate was near. As for my aunt, Zainab (a), once she heard those verses, she leaped and went to see him. She said to him, ‘Woe unto me! Shall I survive you?! I wish death had deprived me of life! My mother, Fatima (a), has just died followed by my father Ali (a) then my brother al-Hasan (a)! O vicar of the past generations and the best remnant of those that remain!’ Al-Husain (a) consoled her and admonished her to persevere, telling her, ‘O sister! May Allah console you! Be informed that earthlings die, and that even those who live in the heavens do not live forever. Everything shall perish except His countenance; my consolation, and that of every Muslim, is that the Messenger of Allah (saww) is our best example.’ She, peace be upon her, said to him, ‘Do you force yourself on it? This causes my heart to swell even more, and it surely is harder on my soul.’ The women wept when they saw her weeping, beating their cheeks. Umm Kulthum cried out, ‘O Muhammed! O Ali! O mother! O Husain! How lost we are after you!’ Al-Husain (a) said, ‘O sister! O Umm Kulthum! O Fatima! O Rubab! Pay attention to me. Once I am killed, you should not tear your pockets nor scotch your cheeks nor utter any verbal abuse.’ Then al-Husain (a) instructed his sister, Zainab, to refer to Ali ibn al-Husain (a) with regard to any ahlkām and to convey the same to the Shi’a as a measure to protect the new Imām.”

Ahmed ibn Ibrāhīm testifies to the authenticity of the above; he has said,
I visited Hakīma daughter of Muhammed son of [Imām] Ali al-Rida (…) and sister of [Imām] Abul-Hasan al-`Askari (…) in 282 A.H. (895 A.D.) in Medīna, and I spoke to her from behind a curtain. I asked her about her religion, so she named the Imāms whom she emulated, naming one of the sons of [Imām] al-Hasan (…). I asked her whether she was emulating them due to her observation or on account of what is reported on their behalf. She said, “By way of what is transmitted by Abu Muhammed who recorded it for his mother.” I asked her, “Should I emulate one who instructs a woman?!” She said, “It is emulating al-Husain ibn Ali in Abu `Ṭalib (…) who instructed his sister Zainab in the open;” so I realized that anything which was being attributed to Zainab was done only to protect the identity of Ali ibn al-Husain (…). Then she said, “You are people who record what goes on. Have you not reported saying that the ninth from among the offspring of al-Husain (…) shall distribute his estate during his own lifetime?”

She was actually referring to p. 275, chapter 49, first edition of al-Sadīq's book Ikmāl ad-Dīn wa Itmām al-Nī`ma.

Then the Imām (…) ordered the tents to be pitched beside one another so that they would be able to face the enemy from one direction. He also ordered a ditch to be dug behind them and to be filled with firewood which was then lit so that the enemy’s horses would not attack from that direction. Fighting, hence, would be confined to one front.¹

He, peace be upon him, went out in the depth of the night outside the tents in order to inspect the hills and plateaus and to find out whether there was anyone lying in ambush for them, or a place from which the cavalry might attack. Then he, peace be upon him, returned holding the hand of Nāfi` as he was saying, “This is it, by Allah, a promise which can never be broken.” Then he said to him, “Why don't you make your way between both of these mountains and save yourself?” Nāfi` fell down kissing the Imām's feet and saying, “May my mother lose me! I bought my sword for a thousand [dinars] and my horse for the same; by Allah Who has blessed me with your company, I shall never abandon you even if they both are exhausted because of my attacks and retreats.”

Then al-Husain (…) entered Zainab's tent as Nāfi` remained outside it on guard waiting for al-Husain (…) to come out. He heard Zainab saying to him, “Have you verified the intentions of your companions? I fear lest they should abandon you once the attack starts.” He said to her, “By Allāh! I have done so and found them brave and valiant, friends who are more eager to die for me than an infant for his mother's milk.”

Nāfi` said, “When I heard him say so, I wept and went to see Habīb ibn Muzāhir to tell him what I overheard of the dialogue between him [al-Husain] and his sister Zainab.”

Habīb ibn Muzāhir said, “By Allāh! Had I not have to wait for his orders, I would have attacked them this very night. I have left him with his sister, and I think the women are terrified. I shared their feeling of depression; so, could you please gather your companions and say something nice to these ladies?” Habīb then stood up and shouted, “O men of zeal! O lions!” They rushed from their tents like fierce lions. To Banū Hāshim he said, “Go back to your places; may your eyes never be deprived of sleep.” Then he turned to his fellows and narrated to them what he and Nāfi` had witnessed and heard. They all said, “By Allāh Who has blessed us with such a stand! Had we not been waiting for Husain's orders, we would have hurried this very minute to attack; so, calm yourself and cool your eyes.” Al-Husain (…) supplicated to Allāh to reward them with goodness.

Then he said, “Let us all go to see the ladies to comfort them.” Habīb accompanied him together with his companions. They shouted out, “O honourable ladies of the Messenger of Allāh! Here are the swords of your slaves who have vowed never to thrust them except in the necks of anyone who wishes to harm you! Here are the lances of your slaves who have sworn never to plant them except in the chests of whoever terrorizes your

¹al-Ṭabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 240.
quarters!” Hearing them, the women came out crying and wailing and said, “O men of goodness! Please do protect the daughters of the Messenger of Allah and the ladies of the Commander of the Faithful!” Everyone cried, so much so that the earth seemed to get dizzy...¹

In the predawn of the same night, al-Ḥusain (麝) dozed off for a short while then woke up and informed his companions that he saw in a vision dogs charging at him and mauling him, the most fierce among them being a spotted one, and that the one who would kill him from among those men would be leprous. In another vision he saw the Messenger of Allah (麝) accompanied by a group of his companions and was saying to him, “You are this nation’s Martyr, and those in the heavens have congratulated each other on account of your martyrdom, and so have those who occupy the High Plane. Let your breakfast be with me, and do not be late, for here is an angel who has descended from the heavens in order to take your blood in a green glass vase.”²

Subdued by thirst became the defender of the Sharī’a
Never could he wet his palate with the Euphrates water,
Becoming a target for Banū Umayyah's arrows,
Till he was spent thirsty on the battlefield,
As he was sought by every spear.
The steeds of the people of shirk on his ribs trampled
In haste, turning, making around him circles,
Just as wise ladies of Ahmed who
Never left their chambers became
Assaulted by the steeds even in their own homes.
How many hearts were frightened,
The hearts of those about whose veils
The foes disputed with one another?
How many were the orphans who were terrified to see
How their protector to the ground did fall,
How they lost their head-covering in their fright,
How they fell upon al-Husain's corpse
With broken hearts,
About to melt by their very sighs,
Falling upon his body and his neck with cries,
To their tears responded their eyes,
Tasting the pain of the whips...?
So they call upon their people's defenders...
But where are the defenders since at Taff
Their blood spilled by Umayyah's swords and spears?
Where are the protectors? Here are their sons
Slaughtered, thirsty, lying on the sands.
Where are the protectors and here are your girls

¹Muhammed Jawād Shubbar, Al-Dam‘a al-Sāḥiba, p. 325. The name of Hilāl ibn Nāfi’ is mentioned twice in his statement, which is an error. It is confirmed that the name is Nāfi’ ibn Hilāl, as recorded in the ziyārat of the area, al-Tabari's Tārīkh, and Ibn al-Athīr’s Al-Kāmil.

²Shaikh ‘Abbās al-Qummi, Nafs al-Mahmūm, p. 125, where Imām al-Ṣādiq (麝) is quoted.
Carried on the humps by their own foes?
Despite their creed were they carried away
Having lost those who would protect them.
Tearful, repeating in agony their sighs
So who, after Ahmed, shall console Fātima
About her sons being killed
And about her daughters taken captive?!

`ĀSHŪRA

“I see death as nothing but happiness, while living with the oppressors is nothing but annoyance.”

— Abu `Abdullāh, al-Husain (t)

Had `Āshūra Day only known
What calamity in it went on.
Its aura would not have dawning,
Its light would not have shown,
Its sun would not have been bright,
Its grief stole from the days their light.
And so every month, and so every day.
O Allāh! What a momentous day!
It removed my patience, out did it my sleep wear,
Everyone from the family of Ayat al-Tathīr
Was either slain or in the dust rubbed;
That Day the life of every hāfiz was robbed,
And the creed in grief almost passed way.
That very Day...
The foes' eyes slept
As the faithful's eyes wept.
Woe upon me and many a woe
How under the hooves the ribs were low,
And atop every spear
A severed head did appear.
And on the plains the corpses did scatter:
Grieving women coming out of the chamber
Wailing, crying, frightened by the danger,
And a suckling woman lolling at her babe, crying:
On the sands lying, moaning, panting, dying,

1These verses were composed by the `allāma Sayyid Muhammed Ḥusain al-Kishwān whose biography is detailed on p. 3, Vol. 8, of Shau'arā’ al-Gharti.
And women taken captive on she-camels bare
Their veils taken away, agonized, wearing a stare;
Their protectors from them did depart,
Killed by every fiend having no heart.
The concern of the people whom Allah did hail
Was only to mourn, to weep, and to wail,

On a day deep grief is to be upheld at least,
Whereas the Turks eat, drink, laugh and feast...

That day was spent by the family of Muhammed, peace of Allah be upon him and his progeny, by continuous weeping and wailing. Its pain penetrated the hearts, incinerating them. The eyes were filled with bloody tears. You could hear nothing except the cries of those who suffered the loss of a dear one and hear the sighs of those deeply depressed. You could see only those whose hair stood up and who demonstrated their exhaustion because of the tragedy. There were those who kept covering their heads with the dust as a sign of grief, those who beat their chests in agony, those who beat their forehead and were struggling to stay alive while putting one hand on the chest and another to beat it. People looked as though they were intoxicated, but they were not; the horror of the painful tragedy made them look like that. Had you been able to hear how those in the Higher Plane were wailing, you would have realized the cry of the cosmos and the wailing of the ħāris in the chambers of Paradise as they moaned and groaned, cried, sighed and lamented. All the Imāms of Guidance were likewise tearful, wailing and weeping.

There is no exaggeration here at all. The Martyr had in him the fragrance of the Message, the glow of the caliphate, and the wreath of the Imāmate. He is none other than the grandson of the Chosen Prophet (ص), the son of Fāṭima al-Zahrāʾ (ع), the chosen wasī, and the brother of the other grandson of the Prophet (ص), the Ḥujjah against the creation. Yes, he is the treasured Sign, the joined mercy, the safeguarded trust, and the gate wherewith people are tried.

His tragedy is no less worthy of such tears or condolences. Had the hearts been split into bits and pieces, and had those grieved died grieving over such a great calamity, it would still have been less than it deserves. Do you see life being worthy of anything so long as the very essence of life is he himself, the living and the pure essence? What is the value of tears shed as long as Allah's "Vengeance on Earth" is thus bereaved? Should the eye be cooled as it sees the victims from Muhammed's family slaughtered on the ground, their parts cut off, their bodies cut to pieces by the swords, lances having feasted on them, and arrows having pierced them? They were spent thirsty on the bank of the flowing Euphrates wherein the dogs wade and from which wild beasts drink while the family of Muhammed (ص) was prohibited from drinking of it.

The greatest calamity is that
Upon the chest of the Prophet's son al-Shimr sat.
May his hands be paralyzed:
How he with his sword severed his head!
What a youth Umayyah's steeds trampled upon
His corpse charging, racing, crushing, on and on!
So my heart for him does go

---

1This poem by the Islamic authority, Āyatullāh Shaikh Hádi Al Kāshi' al-Ghitāʾ, may Allah sanctify him, is recorded on p. 62 of Al-Maqūla al-Ḥusainiya.
How the steeds' hooves drenched in his blood.\textsuperscript{1}

What a true follower, who emulates the great Prophet (ص), ought to do is to cry as this great Prophet (ص) did for the mere mentioning of his name and the remembrance of his tragedy\textsuperscript{2}, to hold mourning ceremonies commemorating the martyrdom of the Master of Martyrs, and to require everyone in his house to mourn him. And let them console one another on account of what happened to al-Husain (ع) just as Imâm al-Bäiqir (ع) has said, “May Allâh increase our rewards and yours for mourning al-Husain (ع), and may He count us and your own selves among those who seek revenge for him in the company of His wâli, al-Mehdi (ع), from the Progeny of Muhammed, peace be upon them.”\textsuperscript{3}

`Abdullâh ibn Sinân came once to visit Imâm al-Sâdiq (ع) on `Ashâra. He found the colour of his complexion to have changed. He was grief-stricken; tears were trickling down his cheeks like pearls. He said to him, “Why are you weeping, O son of the Messenger of Allâh?” He, peace be upon him, answered him by saying, “Are you oblivious to the fact that al-Husain (ع) was martyred on this day?” Then he ordered him to look like one who has just been afflicted by a great calamity, to unbutton his shirt, uncover his arms, to leave his head uncovered, and to fast for an entire day and to break his fast with water one hour after `asr time, since that was the time when Muhammed's Progeny became bereaved with that great loss. Then he said to him, “Has the Messenger of Allâh (ص) been alive, he would be the one to console.”\textsuperscript{4}

Imâm al-Kázim (ع) was never seen smiling during the first ten days of Muharram. He looked very sad, and on the tenth day, such sadness reached its peak, so it was his day of grief and agony.

Imâm al-Rida (ع) has said, “It is for people like al-Husain (ع) that the mourners should weep. The memory of the day when al-Husain (ع) was martyred surely causes our eyelids to swell. Our man of dignity was humiliated in the land of kerb and balâ’.”

Saluting his grave-site, al-Hujjah from among Muhammed's Progeny, may Allâh hasten his reappearance, says, “So I shall mourn you in the morning and in the eve, and with tears of blood shall I over you weep.”

So, should we not abandon merriment and put on the robes of grief? Should we not cry? Should we not learn how to glorify Allâh's Signs by mourning the martyr who died thirsty on the tenth of Muharram?

Today the foundations of the creed,
Of guidance, crumbled down
And the religion of the truth is now worn out.
Today whoever seeks guidance is misled
And whoever seeks hope is shunned.
Today those who seek their hopes
Are rubbed in the dust.
Today calamity has marked their every face
Today glory on him threw the attire.

\textsuperscript{1}This poem was composed by Shaikh Ja`fer al-Hilli as stated on p. 93 of Al-Durr al-Nađîd.


\textsuperscript{3}Ibn Qâwlawykh, Kâmîl al-Ziyârât, p. 175. al-Tâsi, Misbâh al-Mutahajjîd, p. 39.

\textsuperscript{4}Ibn al-Mashhadi, Mazâr. The author is one of the prominent figures of the sixth century A.H. (the twelfth century A.D.).
Today honours for him lowered their heights.
Today glory's necklace refused its pearls.
Today their sublimity is idled.
Today Mudar's glory is in the dark.
Today death descended upon its valley.
Today al-Zahra' stood to wail.
Today Asiya joined her to console.
Today apostasy returned to the creed.
Today Banu Hind achieved their desire.
What apology will Hind's sinners on the Judgment Day have
When their opponent is the Chosen One and their Judge is Allah?
What is their excuse when his sons' blood
Became on their feast the dye for their hands?!

AL-ḤUSAIN (ε) ON ‘ĀSHURA

Both Ibn Qawlawyah and al-Mas'udi have said that when it was the tenth of Muharram, al-Husain (ε) led the morning prayers for his band then stood up to deliver a sermon. He praised Allah and glorified Him then said, “Allah Almighty has permitted your being killed today; so, you should persevere, and you should fight.” Then he prepared them for the battle in one line. They were eighty-two horsemen and two footmen. He let Zuhayr ibn al-Qayn be in the right wing and Habib ibn Muzahir on the left. He and his family members remained in the center. He gave his standard to his brother al-`Abbās, having found the moon of the Hashemites the best qualified of all the men with him to carry it, the most safeguarding of the trust, the most kind, the most zealous in calling for his principles, the one who was the best to unite his kinsfolk, the most valiant in protecting them, the most firm in the battle, the most composed and the most courageous.

1According to p. 540, Vol. 5, of Shu' arā' al-Hilla, this poem was composed by Shaikh Hádi al-Naḥwi who died in 1225 A.H./1810 A.D.
5Historians differ with regard to the number of al-Husain's companions. One view says they were thirty-two horsemen and forty footmen; this is what al-Shaikh al-Muṣafī says in his book Al-Irshād, al-Tibrīsī on p. 142 of his book I`lām al-Wara', al-Fattāl on p. 158 of his book Rawdat al-Wā`īzin, Ibn Jārīr [al-Tabari] on p. 241, Vol. 6, of his Tārīkh, Ibn al-Athir on p. 24, Vol. 4, of his book Al-Kāmil, al-Qarmānī on p. 108 of his book Akhbār al-Duwāl, and al-Dainūrī on p. 254 of his book Al-Akhbār al-Tiwāl. A second view says they were eighty-two footmen, as we are told on p. 327 of Al-Dam`a al-Sākiba of Muḥammed Jawād Shubbar where al-Mukhtar is cited. A third view says they were sixty men. This is what al-Dimyari states on p. 73, Vol. 1, of Hayūt al-Haywān as he discusses Yazid's reign. The fourth view says that they were seventy-three. Such is the view stated by al-Sharāshī on p. 193, Vol. 1, of his book Sharh Maqāmāt al-Hard. The fifth view says they were forty-five horse-men and about one hundred footmen; this is what Ibn `Asākir says on p. 337, Vol. 4, of his book Tahthīb Tārīkh al-Shām. The sixth view says they were thirty-two horsemen and forty footmen; this is what al-Khawārizmi indicates on p. 4, Vol. 2, of his book Maqta al-Husain. The seventh view, which is expressed by al-Mas'udi on p. 35 of his book Ithbūt al-Wasiyya (published in Najaf at the Hayderi Press), counts sixty-one men. An eighth view says they were forty-five horse-men and one hundred footmen as stated by Ibn Nama on p. 28 of his book Muthir al-Ahzān and on p. 56 of his other work titled Al-Luḥāf, where he relies on a tradition wherein Imām al-Bāqir, peace be upon him, is quoted. The ninth view says they were seventy-two men; this is what al-Shabrāwī states on p. 17 of his book Al-Ithbūt bi Hubbl al-Ashraf. The tenth view, which is indicated on p. 31, Vol. 1, of al-Thahbi's book Mukhtasar Tarikh Duwal al-Islam, says that the Imām (ε) was escorted by seventy horsemen as he departed from Medina. (And Allāh surely knows best).
Commanding a force of thirty thousand strong, `Omer ibn Sa‘d marched to confront al-Husain, peace be upon him. Chiefs of the Kūfa quarters at that time were: `Abdullah ibn Zuhayr ibn Salim al-Azdi, who headed the Medenites, `Abdul-Rahmān ibn Abu Sabrah al-Hanafi, who headed Mathhaj and Asad, Qays ibn al-Ash‘ath, who headed Rab‘ah and Kindah, and al-Hurr ibn Yazid al-Riyāhī, who headed Tamīm and Hamdān. With the exception of al-Hurr al-Riyāhī, all the other men took part in fighting al-Husain (/popperp).

Ibn Sa‘d put ‘Amr ibn al-Hajjāj al-Zubaydi in charge of the right wing. On the left wing, he gave charge to Shimr ibn Thul-Jawshan al-‘Amrī. The cavaliers were commanded by ‘Izrah ibn Qays al-Ahmasi. The footmen were commanded by Shabth ibn Rab‘i. The standard was with the latter’s slave, Thuwayd.

They came circling around the tents, seeing how the fire was raging in the ditch. Shimr shouted as loud as he could: “O Husain! Have you resorted to the fire soon enough before the Day of Judgment?” Al-Husain (/popperp) asked, “Who is the inquirer? It seems as if he is Shimr ibn Thul-Jawshan!” The answer came in the affirmative, whereupon the Imam (/popperp) said to him, “You son of the goat herder! You are more worthy of the fire than I!” Muslim ibn ‘Awsajah was about to shoot him with an arrow, but al-Husain (/popperp) prohibited him saying, “I hate to start fighting them.”

**AL-HUSAIN (/popperp) SUPPLICATES**

Having cast a look at the troops that resembled a torrent, al-Husain (/popperp) raised his hands to supplicate thus:

Lord! You are my trust in every adversity, my hope in every hardship! You are to me my trust and treasure for whatever afflicts me! How many worries have You removed and dissipated that over-burdened my heart, exhausted my plans, betrayed my friends, and elated my enemy which I complained to You, having placed my hope upon You? You are the Originator of every blessing and the ultimate end of every wish.

**THE FIRST SERMON**

Al-Husain (/popperp) called for his camel. Having mounted it, he called out loudly enough to be heard saying:

O people! Listen to my speech and do not rush till I admonish you with that which I owe you, and so that I tell you why I have come here; so, if you accept my excuse and believe my statement and fare with me with equity, you will be much happier, and you will see no reason to expose me to this. But if you do not accept my reason and do not fare with me with equity, then gather your affair and your accomplices, and do not feel sorry for what you do but effect your judgment in my regard and do not grant me any respite; surely my Lord is Allāh Who revealed the Book and He looks after the righteous.

---

1On p. 81, Vol. 1, of his book Sharh Nahjul-Balāgha (Egyptian edition), the author says that their respite in Kūfa lasted for one week.


When the women heard his statement, they cried and wailed, and their voices grew loud, whereupon he sent them his brother, al-`Abbās, and his son, Ali al-Akbar, to ask them to remain quiet and not to cry. Once the ladies were quiet, al-Husain (ṣ) praised Allāh again and glorified him, blessed Muhammed and all angels and prophets, delivering a speech which no orator before or after him was more outspoken¹. Then he said,

O servants of Allāh! Fear Allāh and be on your guard with regard to this life which, had it remained for anyone at all, the prophets would have been the most worthy of it and the most pleased with fate. But Allāh created this life so that it would perish. What is new in it will soon grow old. Its pleasure diminishes and its happiness is fleeting. A man's home is but a mound, and one's house is a fort; so, get ready for the next, for the best with which you prepare yourselves is piety. Fear Allāh so that you may be the winners². O people! Allāh, the most Exalted One, created life and made it a temporary abode, taking its people from one condition to another. Conceited is whoever gets fascinated by it, and miserable is whoever gets infatuated by it. So, do not let this life deceive you, for it shall disappoint whoever trusts and desires it! I can see that you have all set your minds on doing something because of which you have caused Allāh to curse you and to turn His Glorious Countenance away from you, causing you to be the object of His Wrath. Kind is our Lord, and mean servants of His are you! You declared obedience to and belief in Muhammed the Messenger (ḥ), then you put your ranks together to kill his Progeny and offspring! Satan took full control of you, making you forget the remembrance of Allāh, the Great. Perdition, hence, is your lot and ultimate end! We belong to Allāh, and to Him is our return. These are people who have turned apostates after having believed, so away with the oppressive people³. O people! Identify me and find out who I am! Then go back to your evil selves and blame them, then see whether it is lawful for you to violate my sanctity. Am I not the son of your Prophet's daughter, the son of his wasi and cousin, the foremost to believe, the one who testified to the truth of what he had brought from his Lord? Is not Hamzah, the Master of Martyrs, my uncle? Is not Ja`fer al-Tayyār my uncle? Have you not heard that the Messenger of Allāh had said about me and about my brother: “These are the masters of the youths of Paradise”? So if you believe what I say, which is the truth, let me swear by Allāh that I never deliberately told a lie since I came to know that Allāh hates lying and liars, and that lying is detrimental to those who invent it. But if you disbelieve in me, there are among you those who, if you ask them, can inform you of the same. Ask Jabir ibn `Abdullah al-Ansāri, Abu Sa’īd al-Khudri, Sahl ibn Sa`īd al-S`ā`idi, Zayd ibn Arqam, and Anas ibn Malik, and they will tell you that they have heard these ahadith of the Messenger of Allāh with regard to myself and to my brother. Is this not sufficient to curb you from shedding my blood?! Al-Shimr then said, “He worships Allāh by a letter, had he known what he is saying!” Habīb ibn Muzāhir said to him, “By Allāh! I see you worshipping Allāh on seventy letters, and I testify that you are truthful when you say that you do not know what he is saying! Allāh has surely sealed your heart!”

³Muhammed ibn Abu Ṭalib al-Ḥa’iri, Maqta al-Husain.
On p. 164 of his book Jamhar at Ans~bal-`Arab, Ibn Hazm says, “Followers of al-Harith ibn Rashd, a descendant of `Abd al-Bayt ibn al-Harith, reneged from Islam during Ali’s caliphate, so he (~) fought them, killing them and taking their women and children captive. Misqalah [ibn Habirah] al-Shaybání paid their ransom and set them free, then he fled to Mu‘áwiyyah. Ali (~), nevertheless, went ahead and approved their being set free.”

The voice of Alláh stood to speak and to admonish
But they turned deaf against his lights' sanctity
And they did become blind.
Said he: Identify me now then behold:
Is it permissible for you to shed my blood?
But they found none but arrows at his neck shot
For their answer, and deeds are always weighed.
As soon as the Prophet's grandson realized
That his grandfather's creed was no more
And no more among the people remained a Muslim on earth
He sacrificed himself in supporting the creed
Riding perils so the Muslims would be saved.
Said he: Take me, O fates, take me!
Here I am, O swords, take me!
My limbs for you now are booty
Far it is from me to yield to what is wrong

Even if on the very lances is my seat.
So he charged and the world shrunk,
And fate was effected, and a torrent
Filled the valley of apostasy.
Since he to Alláh prostrated to glorify,
Magnified Alláh between the swords and did sanctify,
Al-Shirmr came to him to lift his head
With the sword he struck him so
Alláh's `Arsh shook and His light was dimmed,
The face of earth shone, the cosmos dim,
And when the pillar of the universe leaned
And almost with everything overturned,
And when he fell to the ground it remained still
And turned greater even than the heavens,
So my heart burns for him when he was left alone
Surrounded by his foes' throngs.
They increased in ignorance as he in clemency increased.
My heart burns how he, thirsty, his last breathed,
Even as the Euphrates near him flowed
Free for all, but from him banned.
My heart burns for him how his corpse was lying
On the sands as the steeds his ribs kept smashing,
Grinding, stampeding, trampling...
And my heart goes for you, O son of Muhammed!
Your body is grabbed by their swords and arrows,
And your belongings became among them a booty,
So my heart burns for the pure one how he
A stoning post for them came to be...¹

A MIRACLE AND GUIDANCE

A number of men, including `Abdullāh ibn Hawzah al-Tamīmi², came charging in the Imām's direction.
“Is Husain among you?” shouted `Abdullāh once, twice, and thrice. After the third call, al-Husain's companions said, “Al-Husain (/popper) is right here; what do you want from him?” He said, “O Husain! Let me convey to you the good news of your going to hell!” Al-Husain (/popper) said, “Liar! Rather, I shall meet a Lord Who is Forgiving, Gracious, Obeyed, and He accepts intercession..., but who are you?” “I am the son of Hawzah,” the rogue said, whereupon al-Husain (/popper) raised his hands till the whiteness of his arm-pits became visible as he supplicated thus: “O Lord! I invoke You to hurl him into the fire!” Ibn Hawzah became so angry that he instantly charged at the Imām (/popper). A small dry rivulet was in the way between them. As the charger leaped over it, the rider fell. One of his feet remained hooked in the stirrup. His other foot as well as leg and thigh remained hanging. The horse kept dragging him, causing him to hit the rocks and tree stumps in its way³, finally hurling him into the burning fire of the ditch. He died instantly by burning. It was then that Imām Husain (/popper) prostrated to thank Allāh, praising Him for swiftly responding to his invocation, raising his voice as he said, “Lord! We are the Ahl al-Bayt of Your Prophet, his offspring and kinsfolk, so do split the spine of those who oppressed us and usurped what belongs to us, surely You hear, and You are ever near!”

¹Excerpted from a poem by the authority Shaikh Muhammed Husain Kāshīf al-Ghīṭā’ quoted in its entirety in my book Qamar Bānī Ḥāshīm.

²On p. 159 of his book titled Rawdat al-Wāiniz (first edition), al-Fattāl says, “He was the son of Abu Juwayrah al-Mazni; his horse jolted him, hurling him into the fire in the ditch.”

³Ibn al-Athīr, Al-Kāmil, Vol. 4, p. 27.
Muhammed ibn al-Ash’ath [sarcastically] asked the Imām, “What kinship do you have with Muhammed (و)?” Al-Husain (خ) said, “Lord! Muhammed ibn al-Ash’ath says there is no kinship between me and Muhammed! Lord! Show me today how You swiftly humiliate him!” Allah did, indeed, swiftly respond to the Imām's supplication: Muhammed ibn al-Ash’ath came out of the army, alighted from his horse and started defecating. As he was thus engaged, a black scorpion bit him, leaving him polluted with his own feces¹, killing him just as the villain's private parts were thus exposed².

Masraq ibn Wā’il al-Hadrami has said, “I was in the vanguard of the horsemen who came to fight al-Husain son of Ali (خ) hoping to cut his head off and win by it favour with Ibn Ziyād. Having seen what happened to Ibn Hawzah, I realized that there is a sanctity and a special status of Ahl al-Bayt (خ) with Allāh, so I left the people saying, ‘I shall not fight them and thus be hurled into the Fire.’”³

ZUHAYR IBN AL-QAYN DELIVERS A SPEECH

Zuhayr ibn al-Qayn came out on a horse with a huge tail, fully armed. He shouted out:

O people of Kafā! Be forewarned of a torment from Allāh! It is the obligation of each Muslim to admonish his brethren. Till now, we are still brethren following the same religion so long as the sword does not interfere between us. You deserve to be admonished; so, once the sword starts doing its thing, none of you shall be protected from such a torment. We will then be one group and you will be another. Allāh has tried us and your own selves through the offspring of His Prophet Muhammed (و) in order to see what we and you will be doing. We call upon you to support them and to abandon the tyranny of Yazīd and `Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād, for you should not expect from them except evil so long as they rule over you. They will gouge your eyes and amputate your hands and legs. They will mutilate you and crucify you on palm trees. They will kill the best among you, and they will kill those among you who know and recite the Qur'an such as Hajar ibn `Adiy and his fellows and also Hāni ibn `Urwah and his likes.

They taunted him and praised `Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād and even supplicated for him. Then they said, “We shall not leave this place before killing your friend and all those who accompany him, or we safely send him and them to `Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād.” Zuhayr said, “O servants of Allāh! The descendants of Fātimah (خ) are more worthy of being loved and supported than the son of Sumayya! But if you do not support them, I seek refuge with Allāh against you killing them! Save this man from Yazīd, for by my life! Yazīd will be satisfied with your obedience to him even if you do not kill al-Husain (خ).”

Shimr shot him with an arrow saying, “Shut your mouth! May Allāh forever silence your voice! You have bored us with talking too much!” Zuhayr said, “You! You son of the man who urinates on his heels! I was not addressing you, for you are, by Allāh, an animal, and I do not think that you fully understand even two verses from the Book of Allāh! So, be prepared to be shamed on the Day of Judgment, and be prepared for a very painful chastisement!” Shimr said, “Allāh will soon kill you and your friend.” Zuhayr said to him, “Are

---


³Ibn al-Athīr, Al-Kāmil, Vol. 4, p. 27.
you scaring me with death? By Allāh! To die with him is more pleasing to my heart than to have to live forever among you, folks.” He then loudly called out to them, “O servants of Allāh! Let not this crude ruffian and his likes deceive you with regard to your creed! By Allāh! Muhammed's intercession shall never reach those who spill the blood of his offspring and Ahl al-Bayt (ع) nor those who kill their supporters and who protect their women.” A man from among his group called out to him saying, “Abu `Abdullāh is telling you to go back, for the believer from among the family of Pharaoh had admonished his people and was quite eloquent in doing so. You have admonished these folks and you have been quite eloquent had admonishment and eloquence been of benefit for such people.”

BURAYR'S SPEECH

Burayr ibn Khdayr sought al-Husain's permission to deliver a speech. He was a mentor, a ṭābiʿi, a qārī, actually one of the most prominent qāris of Kāfa's grand mosque. Among the people of Hamdān he enjoyed a great deal of honour and prestige.

Having acquired permission, he stood near the enemy and said:

O people! Allāh sent Muhammed (ص) as bearer of glad tidings, a warner, a caller to Allāh's Path and a lantern of noor. Here is the water of the Euphrates wherein black boars and dogs wade, yet it has been made taboo for the son of the daughter of Allāh's Messenger! Is this how you show your gratitude to Muhammed (ص)?!2

They said to him, “O Burayr! You have already said too much, so spare us for, by Allāh, al-Husain (ص) shall suffer of thirst just as those before him had suffered.” He said, “O people! Muhammed's offspring are now among you! These are his offspring, progeny, daughters and ladies; so, let us know what you have in mind, what you are planning to do with them.” They said to him, “We intend to put them at the disposal of the governor `Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād who will fare with them as he sees fit.” He asked them, “Are you not satisfied if they go back to whence they had come from? Woe unto you Kāfians! Have you forgotten the letters you wrote and the pledges you made, invoking Allāh to be a Witness over you and over what you said therein?! Did you invite the family of your Prophet, claiming you would defend them with your own lives, then, when they came to you, you now want to hand them over to Ibn Ziyād and even prohibited them from drinking of the Euphrates' water?! Evil, indeed, is the way how you succeeded your Prophet (ص) in faring with his offspring! What is the matter with you?! May Allāh deprive you of drinking on the Day of Judgment, for surely you are a most evil people!” Some of them said to him, “Man, we do not know what you are talking about!” Said he, “All Praise is due to Allāh Who blessed me with more insight than you. Lord! I invoke You to testify that I dissociate myself from the deeds of these people! Lord! Direct their mischief against their own selves so that they may meet You and You are angry with them.” It was then that arrows started pouring on him, forcing him to retreat.3

AL-ḤUSAIN'S SECOND SERMON

---

1al-Tabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 243.

2According to p. 96, majlīs 30 (first edition), of al-Ṣadūq's Āmāli (or Majālis), it is stated that when thirst took its toll on al-Husain (ع) and those in his company, Burayr sought his permission to address those folks, and permission was granted to him.

3al-Majlisī, Bihār al-Anwār, Vol. 10, where Muḥammed ibn Abu Tālib is quoted.
A

l-Husain (ع) rode his horse and took a copy of the Holy Qur’an which he spread over his head then stood in front of those people and said, “O people! The Book of Allah and the Sunnah of my grandfather, the Messenger of Allah (ص), are the arbitrators between you and me.” Then he asked them whether the sword, the battle gear, and the turban which he was wearing belonged to the Prophet (ص), and they all testified that they, indeed, were. Then he asked them about the reason why they were planning to kill him. “In obedience to the governor ‘Ubaydullah ibn Ziyād,” they said. He, peace be upon him, then addressed them in these words:

Woe unto you, O people, shame and infamy! You sought our help in earnest, so we came to help you in apprehension, then you unsheathed your swords in violation of your vows, kindling a fire against us which we ignited against our enemy and yours. Now you have sided with your own enemies against your friends. Such enemies have disseminated no equity among you, nor do you hope for their reform; so, be forewarned of calamities! You abandoned us, keeping your swords resting in their scabbards, enjoying your comfort and ease, thinking you are acting wisely! But you opted to fall greedily upon life like the swiftest of all birds, throwing yourselves on it as butterflies fall into the fire! So, thus do you violate your vows! May you be crushed, O slaves of this nation, splinters of the parties! You have forsaken the Book of Allāh, distorted His Word, becoming the party of evil, the breath of the devil, the ones who put out the Sunnah! Woe unto you! Are you really supporting such sort of people while thus betraying us?! Yes, by Allāh! It is your same age-old custom of treachery which goes back to your own roots and upon which your branches grow! You, hence, are the worst fruit, an eyesore to the beholder, a morsel to the usurper! Truly the bastard-son who is the offspring of the bastard-son has hidden us to either unsheathe our swords or succumb to humiliation! Far, it is, from us to do either! Far, it is, from us to accept humiliation! Allah Himself refuses that we should ever be thus humiliated, and so does His Prophet, and so do the believers! Ours are honourable chambers, men of dignity, souls that refuse to prefer obedience to the lowly over dying in honour and dignity! I most surely am attacking with this family, though small in number, though being betrayed by those who promised to support me...

Then the Imām (ع) cited the following poetry verses by Farwah ibn Musayk al-Murādī:

---

1Ibn al-Jawzi, the grandson, *Tathkirit al-Khawās*, p. 143.


As time subdues some people,
It had already bent the necks of others.

So if we chase, we do so headlong,
But if we flee, none chases us away,
Not out of cowardice at all,
But it is only our fate that we should be
Thus, and because of others' authority;
So tell those pleased with our calamity:
They shall meet what we have just met;
If Death spares some people his throes,
It is only because to others he goes.

Having said so, he continued his speech thus:

By Allāh! You shall not linger after this incident except as long as one stays on his horseback. The grinding stones shall then spin you, shaking you as the axis shakes; this is a promise which my father had been promised by my [grand]father, the Messenger of Allāh (ﷺ): [then he cited the verse saying]: “... then resolve your affair and (gather) your associates, then let not your affair remain dubious to you, then have it executed against me and give me no respite” (Qur’ān, 10:71).

The Imām (шейх) then raised his hands as he supplicated thus:

Lord! Keep rain water from them and send upon them years like those of Yousuf's, and send upon them the slave of Thaqif to make them drink of a most bitter cup, for they lied to us and betrayed us, while You are our God; upon You do we rely, and to You is our destiny.1 Allāh will not let a single one of them without having sought revenge on him on my behalf: my killer shall be killed; whoever deals a blow against me shall be dealt likewise; He shall most certainly seek victory for me, for my Ahl al-Bayt (шейх), and for my supporters.2

**IBN SA`D'S MISGUIDANCE**

A l-Husain (шейх) called upon 'Omer ibn Sa`d to come forward. The latter very much hated to look the Imām (шейх) in the eyes. The Imām (шейх) said to him, “O `Omer! Do you really claim that you will kill me so that the bastard-son will make you the wāli of the land of Rey and Jurjan?! By Allāh! You shall never have such an enjoyment! This is a promise already made; so, do whatever you wish, for you will not be pleased after my demise with either this life or with the life hereafter! It is as though I can see your head mounted on a stick and the children of Kūfā tossing it from one to another, using it as a toy.” `Omer, outraged, turned his face away from the Imām (шейх).3

---

2al-Bahrānī, Maqtal al-ʿAwālim, p. 84.
3Radiyy ad-Din al-Qazwīnī, Tazallum al-Zahrāʾ, p. 110. ʿAbdullāh Nūr-Allāh al-Bahrānī, Maqtal al-ʿAwālim, p. 84. al-Khawārizmi,
AL-HURR REPENTS

Having heard his speech and his plea for help, al-Hurr came to `Omer ibn Sa`d and said, “Are you going to fight this man?” “Yes, by Allâh,” said `Omer, adding, “a fight in the easiest part of which heads will roll down and hands will be cut off.” Al-Hurr asked him, “What is your objection to his offer of departure?” `Omer answered: “Had it been up to me, I would have accepted it, but your governor refuses.” Al-Hurr left him and stood by the others. Beside him stood Qarrah ibn Qays whom he asked, “Have you watered your horse today?” “No,” came the answer. “Do you then wish to do so?” was al-Hurr’s question. Qarrah took that statement to imply that al-Hurr was reluctant to fight al-Husain (长长的) and did not wish to be seen by him defecting, so he walked away from him. Al-Hurr kept getting closer and closer to al-Husain (长长的). Al-Muhajir ibn Aws asked him, “Do you want to charge at him?” Al-Hurr remained silent. He felt chilled to the bones, so he shivered. Having seen him shiver, al-Muhajir felt terrified and said to him, “Had I been asked: `Who is the most daring of all the Kafians?’, I would have given no name other than yours; so, why do I see you look like that?’ Al-Hurr said, “I am giving my soul the option between choosing Paradise or hell. By Allâh! I do not prefer anything over Paradise even if it means I will be burnt alive.” Having said so, he beat his horse in the direction of al-Husain (长长的). Turning his spear upside down and holding his shield the opposite way, he came lowering his head, feeling too shy to look at the Prophet's family in the eyes because of having exposed them to such hardship, bringing them to such a place where neither water nor grass could be found. Loudly he spoke these words:

O Allâh! To You do I surrender, so do accept my repentance, for I have filled the hearts of Your walis and the sons of Your Prophet with fear! O father of `Abdullah! I am repentant; so, can my repentance be accepted at all?

Al-Husain (长长的) said, “Yes. Allâh will accept your repentance.” This statement found its place to al-Hurr’s heart, filling it with joy. He took a moment to contemplate upon the eternal life and the incessant bliss. It now became clear to him what that voice, which had addressed him, meant upon his departure from Kafâ. He had a dialogue with al-Husain (长长的). Among what he said to him was:

When I went out of Kafâ, I was addressed thus: “O Hurr! You are given the glad tidings of [going to] Paradise!” I said to myself, “Woe unto me! How can I be given such glad tidings since I am going to fight the son of the daughter of Allâh's Messenger?!”

---


1 `al-Tabari, Târikh, Vol. 6, p. 244.

2 We read the following on p. 63, Vol. 7, of Ibn Kathûr’s book Al-Bidâya: “During the Battle of Yarmûk, George, a Christian, said to Khâlid ibn al-Walid: ‘What is the outcome of one of us who enters into this matter [i.e. becomes Muslim]?’ Khâlid said, ‘He will have rewards greater than ours because we believed in our Prophet (长长的) who is alive among us receiving revelation from the heavens, and we witnessed the miracles. Whoever among you embraces Islam without having ever heard what we have heard nor seen what we have seen of the wonders and proofs, accepting it in a true intention, will be better than us.’ It was then that George turned his shield upside down and inclined to Khâlid saying, ‘Teach me about Islam.’” On p. 42, Vol. 1, of al-Balâthiri’s book Ansâb al-Ashhrâf (published by Dâr al-Ma’ârif of Egypt), “Whenever the Arabs felt they were in danger and sought refuge and asylum, they would turn their lances upside down.” The same author says the following on p. 43: “Al-Hârith ibn Zâlim came to `Abdullah ibn Jad`àn at `Ukâz when everyone was embroiled in the Battle of Qays, so he turned his lance upside down. Once he was recognized and felt secure, he raised it.”

Al-Husain (Scala) said to him, “You have now acquired a great deal of good and a great reward.” A Turkish slave was with him.2

AL-HU RR ADMONISHES THE KÕFIANS

A l-Hurr sought al-Ḥusain's permission to address the people, and permission was granted to him. As loudly as he could, al-Hurr called out to the Kafians thus:

O people of Kūfa! A foolish and a bad example for others have you surely set when you invited him to come to you then grieved him and surrounded him from all directions, forbidding him from going anywhere in Allāh's spacious land so that he and his family might be safe, rendering him like a captive in your hands, unable to help himself. You have prohibited him, his ladies, his children, and his companions from the flowing water of the Euphrates of which the Jews, the Christians, and the Zoroastrians drink and wherein black swine and dogs wade! Look and see how thirst has subdued them! Evil is the way whereby you have succeeded Muḥammad (saw) in treating his progeny! May Allāh never permit you to drink on the Day of Thirst!

His own men now started shooting him with arrows, so he was forced to retreat till he stood face-to-face with Imām Husain (Scala).3

THE FIRST CAMPAIGN

O mer ibn Sa'd advanced towards al-Husain's troops and shot an arrow saying, “Testify for me with the governor that I shot the first arrow.” Others followed suit. Hardly any of al-Husain's men escaped being shot at by an arrow.4 The Imām (Scala) said to his companions, “Stand, may Allāh be Merciful unto you, and meet the imminent death, for these arrows are messengers of these people to you.” He and his companions charged together and fought for a while. By the time the cloud of dust dissipated, fifty men had been killed.5

It oppressed even as the desert crushed its valiant ones
And the face of the morning its battle curiously examines.
Their faces were with the battle elated.
How many faces of valiant men then turned grim?
Pleased they are when the lances come to them
And music it is to their ears to hear swords' clamour.
Dignified, they are, yielding in hardship to none,
Nor do they fear any calamity,
Only to glory their souls yearn
Only glory do their souls earn,
So if glory in a star does reside,
They would have gone to that side,
And the men of honour always seek
What is honourable and what glorifies.
So their swords on the battle day drip of blood,
And their hands are with glory always dyed.
Their flesh is always with the swords' brink,
And from its blood do the spears always drink,
Till they, like stars, to the ground did fall,
Though after them I wish no star remains at all.

They fell, so say that the brightest stars are no more
They fell, so say the mountains were crushed to the core.¹

Yasār, Ziyād's slave, and Sālim, a slave of `Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād, came out and challenged anyone to fight them in a duel. Ḥabbāb and Burayr leaped to meet their challenge, but al-Husain (姥) did not permit them. `Abdullāh ibn `Amr al-Kalbi, of Banū `Ālim, who was known as “Abu Wahab,” a tall and masculine man with broad shoulders, a man who was held with very high esteem among his people, and a man of courage and martial experience, stood up. Al-Husain (姥) permitted him saying, “I believe he is a match for both of them.” “Who are you?” the challengers inquired. He identified himself to them, but they could not recognize him. One of them said, “We do not know you; let either Zuhayr or Ḥabbāb or Burayr come out.” Yasar stood nearby. The latter said to him, “You son of the adulteress! Do you not wish to fight me?!” then charged at him and engaged him in a sword duel. Meanwhile, Sālim attacked him, so his companions warned him saying, “The slave is now charging at you!” But he did not pay attention to him, so Sālim hit him with his sword. `Abdullāh tried to protect himself from it with his left hand, getting his fingers cut off in the attempt. Then `Abdullāh swiftly turned to him with his own sword, killing him instantly. Having killed both men, he went back to al-Husain (姥) reciting rajaz (martial) poetry.

Having seen how her husband so valiantly fought, Umm Wahab daughter of `Abdullāh, who belonged to al-Nimr ibn Qāsit, took a rod and came to him saying, “May both my parents be sacrificed for you! Do defend the good ones, the offspring of Muḥammad, Allah's peace and blessings be upon him and his progeny!” He wanted to take her back to the tent, but she kept persisting, holding to his clothes and saying, “I shall not leave you till I die with you!” Al-Husain (姥) called out to her saying, “May you be well rewarded on behalf of your

¹Excerpted from a poem by the authority Shaikh Muḥammed Husain Kāshtaf-Ghīṭā, may Allah sanctify his soul. It is published in my book Qamar Banī Ḥāshim.
Prophet's Ahl al-Bayt (шейх)! Go back to the tent! Women are not required to fight!” She did1.

**DUELS BETWEEN TWO OR FOUR WARRIORS**

When the rest of al-Husain's companions saw the large number of those who had been killed from their camp, two, three, or four men simultaneously sought al-Husain's permission to let them defend him and his ladies. Each member of these groups tried his best to protect the other or others as they fought. Two men, both with the last name of al-Jabiri, namely Sayf ibn al-Harith ibn Sar` and Malik ibn `Abd ibn Sare`, both cousins, came out weeping. Al-Husain (шейх) asked them, “Why are you weeping? I hope after a short while you will see what will cool your eyes!” They said, “May Allah accept us as your own sacrifice! We are not mourning our own death, but we are weeping only because we can see how you are thus surrounded while we cannot do much for you.” Al-Husain (шейх) prayed Allah to reward them both with goodness. They both fought near him till they were killed2. `Abdullah and `Abdul-Rahman, sons of `Urwah al-Ghifari, came and said, “People have driven us to you [against our wish].” They kept fighting al-Husain's enemy till they were both killed.

`Amr ibn Khalid al-Saydawi and his slave Sa’d, as well as Jabir ibn al-Harith al-Salmani and Majma` ibn `Abdullah al-`Aithi`, came out and collectively attacked the Kaftans. Once they were in the latter's midst, they were soon circled. Al-Husain (шейх) asked his brother al-`Abbasi to go to their rescue, which he did, but not before all those men received heavy wounds. On their way, the enemy came close to them. Despite their wounds, they kept fighting till they were all killed at the same place4.

**AN APPEAL FOR HELP, AND GUIDANCE**

When al-Husain (шейх) saw that a large number of his companions had died, he took hold of his sacred beard and said, “Allah's Wrath intensified against the Jews for having attributed a son to Him, and His Wrath intensified against the Christians who made Him one of three [Triune], and His Wrath also intensified against the Zoroastrians who worshipped the sun and the moon instead of worshipping Him. And His Wrath intensified against people who collectively agreed to kill the son of their Prophet's daughter. By Allah! I shall never agree with them about anything they want me to do till I meet Allah drenched in my blood.” Then he called out, “Is there anyone who would defend the ladies of the Messenger of Allah?!?” Hearing him, the women cried and wailed.

Two Ansaris, Sa’d ibn al-Harith and his brother Abul-Hutaf, heard al-Husain (шейх) pleading for help, and they also heard the cries of his children. They were both with the army of Ubaydullah Ibn Sa’d. They suddenly turned against al-Husain's enemy around them and kept killing them till they themselves were killed.6

---

3 On p. 94, Vol. 3, of *Al-Istāb* (of Ibn Hajar al-`Asqalani ), Part 3, it is stated that Mujma` ibn `Abdullah ibn Mujma` ibn Malik ibn Iyās ibn `Abd Manāt ibn Sa’d was killed with al-Husain ibn Ali, peace be upon him, during the Battle of Taff.
6 *Al-Hadâ`iq al-Wardiyaa*, a manuscript.


THE RIGHT WING REMAINS FIRM

Having seen how the number of their fighting men became so small, al-Husain's companions resorted to fight individually, i.e. in duels. Thus, they were able to kill a large number of the Ka'fians. `Amr ibn al-Hajjāj then shouted loudly at his men, “Do you really know who you are fighting?! You are fighting the land's knights, the people of vision, those who stay firm till death. None of you comes out to fight them except that he gets killed despite their small number. By Allah! If you throw rocks at them, you will be able to kill them all!” Omer ibn Sa`d said to him, “Yes, you have said the truth. Your idea is the sound one; so, send word to everyone and tell them not to come out to them for any duel. True, if you fight them singly, they will finish you.”

`Amr ibn al-Hajjāj attacked al-Husain's right wing, but the men were able to maintain their ground, kneeling down as they planted their lances. They were thus able to frighten the enemy's horses. When the horsemen came back to charge at them again, al-Husain's men met them with their arrows, killing some of them and wounding others.

`Amr ibn al-Hajjāj kept saying the following to his men, “Fight those who abandoned their creed and who deserted the jamā’ al!” Hearing him say so, al-Husain (ﻫ) said to him, “Woe unto you, O `Amr! Are you really instigating people to fight me?! Are we really the ones who abandoned their creed while you yourself uphold it?! As soon as our souls part from our bodies, you will find out who is most worthy of entering the fire!”

MUSLIM IBN `AWSAJAH

`Amr ibn al-Hajjāj attacked from the Euphrates' side, fighting for a while. This engagement involved Muslim ibn `Awsajah. Muslim ibn `Abdullāh al-Dabābi and `Abdullāh ibn Khashkārah al-Bijli attacked him, causing a huge cloud of dust which, once dissipated, showed Muslim lying on the ground drawing his last breath. Escorted by Hābīb ibn Muzāhir, al-Husain (ﻫ) walked towards him and said, “May Allah be Merciful unto you, O Muslim! ‘Among them are those who died, and among them are those who wait, and they never changed aught in the least’ (Qur’ān, 33:23).” Hābīb came closer to him and said, “Your being killed is truly devastating me, O Muslim! Receive the glad tidings of Paradise!” In a very faint voice, the dying hero said, “May Allah convey to you, too, such glad tidings!” Hābīb said, “Had I not known that I will soon be following you, I would have liked you to convey your will to me with regard to anything on your mind.” Muslim said, “All I want you to do is to look after this man,” pointing to al-Husain (ﻫ), adding, “and to defend him till death.” Hābīb said, “I will Inshā-Allah do exactly so.” It was then that Muslim breathed his last as he was lying between both men. His woman cried out, “Wā Muslimāh [O Muslim!] O master! O son of `Awsajah!” Ibn al-Hajjāj, feeling elated about Muslim's martyrdom, kept shouting in excitement that they killed Muslim.

Shabth ibn Rab`i said to those around him, “May your mothers lose you! Do you really feel elated when a man such as Muslim is killed?! A great stand which I saw with my own eyes involving him was in Azerbaijan where he killed six polytheists even before the Muslim cavalry had enough time to form its ranks!”

1 al-Tabari, Ṭārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 249.
2 Ibn al-Athīr, Al-Kāmil, Vol. 4, p. 27.
3 Ibn Kathīr, Al-Bidāya, Vol. 8, p. 182.
4 al-Ṭabarī, Ṭārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 249.
THE LEFT WING

Al-Shimr and his company attacked the right wing of al-Husain's army, but the latter was able to stay firm in their positions, forcing the attackers to withdraw. In that engagement, ‘Abdullah ibn ‘Omary al-Kalbi participated, killing nineteen horsemen and twelve footmen. Hāni ibn Thabit al-Hadrami charged at him, cutting his right hand off as Bakr ibn Hāyy was cutting his left... He was taken captive and instantly killed. His wife, Umm Wahab, walked towards his corpse and sat at his head, wiping the blood from it and saying, “Congratulations for having earned Paradise! I plead to Allah Who blessed you with Paradise to make me join you.” Al-Shimr heard her and told his slave Rustam to hit her head with a rod, which he did. She died there and then. She was the first woman to be martyred from among al-Husain's companions.

‘Abdullah's head was cut off then thrown in the direction of Husain's camp. His mother took it, wiped the blood from it then grabbed the pillar of a tent and ran in the direction of the enemy's camp. Imām al-Husain (ṣ) sent her back saying, “Go back, may Allah have mercy on you, for you are exempted from participating in jihād.” She went back saying, “O Allah! Do not disappoint me!” Al-Husain (ṣ) said to her, “May Allah never disappoint you!”

Al-Shimr now attacked, piercing al-Husain's tent with his lance and loudly shouting, “Give me a torch of fire to burn the tent and everyone in it!” The women inside the tent screamed in peril as they fled. Al-Husain (ṣ) called out to him saying, “O son of Thul-Jawshan! Are you calling for fire to burn my Ahl al-Bayt (ṣ)?! May Allah burn you with His fire!” Shabth ibn Rab’i asked Shimr, “Have you sunk so low so as to be one who thus frightens women?! I have never seen anyone doing a worse thing than what you have done, nor a situation more ugly than yours.” The rogue felt ashamed of himself, so he went away. Zuhayr ibn al-Qayn, heading a company of ten fighters, attacked al-Shimr's company till they succeeded in distancing them from their quarters.

IZRAH REQUESTS REINFORCEMENTS

When ‘Izrah son of Qays, who was head of the cavalry division, noticed how weak his fellows were and how they failed in their mission whenever they charged, he sent a message to ‘Omer ibn Sa’d asking for more men. ‘Omer ibn Sa’d said to Shabth ibn Rab’i, “Why don't you attack them?” He answered: “Ya Subḥān-Allāh! Are you asking the dignitary of the land to shoulder such a responsibility while there are with you those who can spare him such a task?!” Shabth ibn Rab’i, in all reality, remained all the while too reluctant to fight al-Husain (ṣ). He was even heard saying, “For five years did we fight the offspring of Abu Sufyān on the side of Ali ibn Abu Talib (ṣ) then on the side of his son [al-Hasan] after him, then we transgressed on his son [al-Husain] who is the best man on the face of earth, fighting him in support of Mu‘awiya’s offspring and in support of the son of Sumayya, the adulteress! How we have strayed! By Allah!

---

2This is how it is recorded by Ibn al-Athir. On p. 13, Vol. 2, of his book Maqta al-Husain, al-Khawārizmi, however, says that his left hand was cut off after his right hand had already been cut off.
3al-Tabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 251. Ahmed, Musnad, Vol. 2, p. 100 (Egypt: first edition). It is stated in the latter reference that the Messenger of Allāh (ṣ) passed, while on a military expedition, by the body of a woman who had been killed and banned the killing of women and children.
4Radiyy ad-Dīn al-Qazwīnī, Tazallum al-Zahrā’, p. 113.
The people of this country will never be granted goodness, nor will they ever be rightly guided!” Yet he sent him al-Hasin ibn Namir in charge of five hundred archers, and fighting intensified. Al-Husain's companions suffered most of the wounds, their horses were hamstrung. The riders were thus forced to fight on foot. Yet the enemy forces failed whenever they attacked them from any direction due to the fact that their homes were close to one another. Ibn Sa'd, therefore, dispatched men with instructions to demolish those homes then surround them. Each group of three or four persons from among al-Husain's band would stand before each tent. They would attack and kill every man as he attempted to plunder, shooting him with an arrow from a close distance.

Ibn Sa’d issued his order to burn all the tents. His order was carried out. Women screamed in fright; children were dumbfounded. Al-Husain (ε) said, “Let them burn them, for once they have done so, they would not touch you with any harm. And so it was. 3

ABU AL-SHA‘THĀ’

Abu al-Sha‘tha’, namely Yazid ibn Ziyād al-Kindi, was first fighting on the side of `Omer ibn Sa’d. Having seen what happened to the women and the children, he defected and joined al-Husain’s camp. He was an excellent archer; he knelt down in front of al-Husain (ε) and shot at least a hundred arrows as al-Husain (ε) kept supplicating, “O Allah! Guide his shots and reward him with Paradise!” Having run out of arrows, he stood up and said, “It is clear to me that I have killed five of them”. Then he charged at the enemy and killed nine more before he himself was killed. 4

AT THE TIME OF ZAWĀL

Abu Thumāma al-Sā‘id 6 looked at the sun and saw that it was already after-noon, so he said to al-Husain (ε), “May I be sacrificed for your sake! I can see that these folks have advanced towards you. No, by Allah, you shall not be killed before I die defending you, and I love to return to Allah after having performed the prayers whose time has approached.” Al-Husain (ε) raised his head to the heavens and said, “You have remembered the prayers, may Allah count you among those who uphold the prayers and who remember Him often. Yes, this is the beginning of its time. Ask them to leave us alone so that we may perform the prayers.” Al-Hasin, who had heard the Imām (ε) say these words, commented by saying, “It [your prayer] will not be accepted!”7
Hābīb ibn Muzāhir heard what that rogue had said, so he responded to him by saying, “Do you claim that prayers are not accepted from the Prophet's Family but yours are accepted, you ass?!” Al-Hasin charged at him, so Hābīb slapped the face of al-Hasin's horse, causing it to leap and throw its rider on the ground. Al-Hasin's men had to rush to his rescue and to carry him away to safety1. Hābīb, despite his advanced age, fought them valiantly, killing as many as sixty-two men. Badīl ibn Sarīm attacked him and dealt a sword blow to him as a man from Tamīm hit him with his lance. Hābīb now fell on the ground. As he attempted to stand up again, al-Hasin hit him with his sword on the head, causing him to fall again face-long. The man from Tamīm alighted and severed Hābīb's head. Hābīb being thus killed shook al-Husain (₵) who said, “It is only to Allāh that I complain about what has happened to me and to my companions.”2 For a good while, the Imām (₵) kept repeating the statement: Innā-Lillāhī wa innā ilayhi raji`ūn [We belong to Allah, and to Him is our return].

AL-ḤURR AL-RIYĀHI

A fter him, al-Ḥurr ibn Yazīd al-Riyāhi came out accompanied by Zuhayr ibn al-Qayn who was protecting him from the rear. Whenever one of them attacked and the situation became critical, the other would attack to rescue him, and they kept doing so for a while3. The horse on which al-Ḥurr was riding received hits on its ears and eyebrows, and it was bleeding as its rider was quoting the following verse by Antar ibn Shaddād al-ʿAbasi:

I kept shooting them at its very mouth,
At its chest, till blood drenched it all.

Al-Hasin said to Yazīd ibn Sufyān, “Is this al-Ḥurr whom you wished to kill?” “Yes,” said Yazīd, so the first came out and challenged al-Ḥurr to a duel. It turned out that al-Hasin was asking for a swift death, for it did not take al-Ḥurr long to kill him! Ayyāb ibn Mashrah al-Khaywāni shot al-Ḥurr's horse with an arrow, hamstringing it. The poor horse leaped, so the rider leaped from it like a lion4, holding his sword in his hand. He kept fighting on foot till he killed more than forty men.5 A company from the footmen fiercely attacked him and killed him. Al-Husain's companions carried his body and put it before the tent in front of which they were fighting. They were doing so whenever a man was killed, and al-Husain (₵), each time, kept repeating this statement: “He has been killed as prophets and the offspring of prophets are killed.”6 Al-Husain (₵) turned to al-Ḥurr, who was

---

2 Ibn al-Athīr, Vol. 4, p. 29. al-Tabari, Tārikh, Vol. 6, p. 251. Al-Khwārizmi, Vol. 2, p. 19, where the author says, “Al-Tamīmī cut off Hābīb's head. Some say that it was done by Badīl ibn Sarīm. The severed head was hung around a mare's neck. When the people of Kūfah saw that, one of them, the son of Hābīb ibn Muzāhir, a young teenager, assaulted its rider and cut his head off.”
4 al-Tabari, Tārikh, Vol. 6, pp. 248 and 250.
6 This text is quoted from p. 118 of Tazallum al-Zahrā’ of Radīyy ad-Dīn al-Qazwīnī, from p. 135, Vol. 13, of al-Nu‘mān’s Ghayba.
breathing his last, and said to him, as he wiped out the blood from his face, “You are al-Hurr [which means: the free man], just as your mother named you, and you are free in this life and in the life hereafter.” One of the companions of al-Husain (ئ), who some say was [al-Husain (ئ)’s son] Ali ibn al-Husain⁴, eulogized him with the following verses which some people claim the Imām (ئ) himself had composed:²

How good al-Hurr of Banū Riyāh!
How patient when the lances intertwined!
How good al-Hurr when he defended Husain!
And in the morning his life he sacrificed!

**PRAYERS**

Al-Husain (ئ) stood to perform his prayers. It is said that he led the prayers’ service before the survivors from among his companions. It was a special prayer called *salāt al-khawf*, the prayer said by one fearing for his life. In front of him stood Zuhayr ibn al-Qayn and Sa`īd ibn `Abdullāh al-Hanafi and half of the surviving companions³. Other historians say that he and his companions offered their prayers individually.⁴

Far away it was from being a prayer in fear,
For it was not of death frightened,
Though death was from it quite near.
But the bloody stand did not cause it to bend,
Nor did the army stop it from near nor from far.
It charged, though thirsty,
And the sun was burning,
From it the ground was as though on fire.
It shook the hosts so it was as though
Al-Taff's plains and valleys were not vast at all.
Ask the battlefield about it and you will see
How it stamped it with stabs and with blows,
How it defended Allāh's every sanctity
So it did not harm any glory at all
Nor did it in fear flee.
How it defended Allāh's creed,
The guided ones were few.

---

²(...)continued

According to p. 256, Vol. 6, of al-Tabari’s *Tārīkh* and p. 30, Vol. 4, of Ibn al-Athīr's book, as well as al-Mufīd's book *Al-Irshād*, a tent was placed on the battlefield, but these authors did not mention al-Husain (ئ) by name due to the magnanimity of the situation.


³Abdullāh Nūr-Allāh al-Bahrānī, *Maqtaal al-`Awālim*, p. 88. al-Khawārizmi, *Maqtaal al-Ḥusain*, Vol. 2, p. 17. In my view, al-Ḥusain's prayer was performed as *qasr* because he had arrived at Kerbalā' on the second of Muharram. Due to the knowledge which he had received from his grandfather, the Messenger of Allāh (ص), in addition to his knowledge that he was going to be killed on the tenth of Muharram, he could not intend to stay there for ten days or more. Those who are not familiar with all of this presumed that he had performed *salāt al-khawf* (prayer of one who fears for his life).

⁴Ibn Nama, *Muthīr al-Āhzān*, p. 44.
Their enemies filled the place
They had arrows and swords but no grace,
About them wrote history:
Their mischief filled the valley.¹

When Sa`īd's wounds became overwhelming, he fell on the ground as he was supplicating thus: “O Allah! Curse them as You cursed the peoples of `Ād and Thamād and convey my Salām to Your Prophet (ص) and tell him about the pain of the wounds which I have received, for I desired Your rewards when I supported the offspring of Your Prophet, Peace of Allah be upon him and his progeny.”² He turned to Imām al-Husain (ع) and asked him, “Have I carried out my obligation, O son of the Messenger of Allah?” “Yes,” said the Imām (ع), “and you shall reach Paradise before I do.”³ Then the hero died. As many as thirteen arrows were found planted in his body in addition to the blows which he had sustained from swords and lances.⁴

Having finished his prayers, al-Husain (ع) addressed his companions thus:

O honourable men! Here is Paradise with its gates wide open for you, with its rivers joining one another, with its fruits ripened, and here is the Messenger of Allah and the martyrs who were killed in the Cause of Allah: they all are waiting for you to join them. They are congratulating one another on your account; so do defend the religion of Allah and of His Prophet (ص), and do protect the women of the Messenger of Allah (ص).

They all said to him, “May our lives be sacrificed for yours, and may our blood protect yours! By Allah! So long as blood flows in our veins, no harm shall reach you or your ladies.”⁵

THE HORSES HAMSTRUNG

Omer ibn Sa`īd dispatched `Amr ibn Sa`īd in charge of a company of archers to shoot arrows at al-Husain's companions and to hamstring their horses⁶. Not a single horseman remained with al-Husain (ع) except al-Dahhāk ibn `Abdullāh al-Mashriqi who recounted this report:

Having seen how the horses of our fellows were being hamstrung, I came with my horse and entered a tent belonging to our fellows. They fought most fiercely. Whoever wanted to come out to fight would bid al-Husain (ع) farewell and say, “Peace be upon you, O son of the Messenger of Allah!” Al-Husain (ع) would then respond to him by saying, “And upon you, too, be peace, and we shall soon join your company.” Then he would quote the Qur’ānic verse saying, “... so of them is he who accomplished his vow, and of them is he who yet waits, and they have

¹This poem was composed by the authority Sayyid Muhammed son of Āyatullāh Sayyid Jamāl Gulpaygani.

²Abdullāh Nūr-Allāh al-Bahrānī, Maqta al-`Awālim, p. 88.

³Thakhkhirat al-Dārayn, p. 178.

⁴Ibn Nama, Al-Luhūf, p. 62.

⁵Sayyid Kāzim al-Hā’iri, Asrār al-Shahāda, p. 175.

⁶Ibn Nama, Mithār al-Ahzān, p. 34.

⁷al-Ṭabari, Tārikh, Vol. 6, p. 255.
not changed in the least” (Qur‘ān, 33:23).  

ABU THUMĀMAH

Abu Thumāma al-Sā`idi came out and fought till he was very heavily wounded. He had a cousin named Qays ibn `Abdullāh who was fighting with ‘Omer ibn Sa`d, and there was a great deal of enmity between them both. The latter attacked him fiercely and killed him.

ZUHAYR AND IBN MUḌĀRIB

Selmān ibn Mudārib al-Bijli, a cousin of Zuhayr ibn al-Qayn al-Bijli, came out and fought till he was killed. He was followed by Zuhayr ibn al-Qayn who put his hand on al-Ḥusain's shoulder and sought permission to fight with these verses:

Advance, may you guide, O guided one!  
For today shall I your grandfather the Prophet meet!  
And I shall meet al-Ḥasan and Ali the pleased one!  
And the one with Two Wings, the valiant youth greet,  
The lion of Allāh, the living martyr!  
Zuhayr am I and the son of al-Qayn  
With the sword do I defend Husain!

Al-Ḥusain (шей) responded by saying, “And I, too, shall follow.” As he fought, Zuhayr kept reciting this verse:

Zuhayr am I and the son of al-Qayn  
With my sword do I defend Husain!

He killed a hundred and twenty men. Kathār ibn `Abdullāh al-Sā`bi and al-Muhājir ibn Aws jointly attacked and killed him. It was then that al-Ḥusain (шей) stood up and said, “May Allāh never keep you distant from us, O Zuhayr, and may He condemn those who killed you as He had condemned those whom He turned into apes and pigs.”

`AMR IBN QARZAH

Amr ibn Qarzah al-Anṣārī came and stood before al-Ḥusain (шей), protecting him from the enemy and exposing his own chest and face to their arrows. Thus, al-Ḥusain (shall) was not harmed. But when his wounds overpowered him, he turned to Abu `Abdullāh (shall) and said, “Have I carried out my responsibility towards you, O son of the Messenger of Allāh?” The Imām (shall) said, “Yes, indeed, and I will be the next person to be in Paradise; so, convey my Salām to the Messenger of Allāh (peace) and inform him that I will soon follow.”

3According to p. 345 of Ibn Hazm’s book Ansāb al-ʿArab, he was a descendant of `Amr ibn `Āmir ibn Ziyād-Manāt ibn Mālik al-Aghar. His father is the poet whose poetry overflows with praises, namely Qarzah ibn Ka`b ibn `Amr, [the latter is] also a poet. Qarzah had two sons: `Amr, who was killed while fighting on the side of Imām al-Ḥusain (шей), and another son who fought on the side of Ibn Sa`d and whose name the said genealogist does not mention.
Having heard these words, the man fell dead.¹

His brother, who was fighting on Ibn Sa‘d’s side, shouted, “O Husain! You liar! You deceived my brother till you got him killed!” The Imam (†) said, “I did not deceive your brother; rather, Allāh is the One Who showed him the right guidance while leaving you to stray.” “May Allāh kill me,” the man responded, “if I do not kill you!” Having said so, he attacked al-Husain (†) with the intention to stab him, but Nāfī’ ibn Hilāl al-Jamali intercepted and stabbed him seriously but not fatally. His friends carried him away and treated him till he was healed.²

NĀFI’ AL-JAMALI

Sing poisoned arrows, Nāfī’ ibn Hilāl al-Jamali al-Mathhaji shot arrows on which he had written his name¹ as he recited these verses³:

I shoot it, and its tips trained
In poison, on the wind borne,
To fill the earth with shots, and the soul
Is not benefitted by fear at all.

He killed twelve men, not counting those whom he injured. Having run out of arrows, he pulled his sword to fight them, but he was hurled with stones and spearheads till his arm was broken, and he was taken captive.⁵

Al-Shimr and those in his company dragged him away. [‘Omer] Ibn Sa‘d asked him, “What caused you to do to yourself what you have done?” He said, “My God knows what I want.” A man who saw how blood was pouring down his face and beard said to him, “Can’t you see in what condition you are?” He said, “By Allāh, I have killed twelve of your men, not counting the ones I injured, and I have no regret at all for resuming the jihad against you if I remain alive and if I have any strength at all, had you only not taken me captive.”⁶ Al-Shimr pulled out of its scabbard to kill him, but Nāfī’ said to him, “O Shimr! Had you been Muslim at all, you would have found it very hard to meet Allāh stained with our blood; so, all Praise is due to Allāh Who caused our death to be at the hands of the very worst of His creatures.” Al-Shimr pulled him and struck his neck with his sword.⁷

WĀDIH AND ASLAM

When Wadih, a Turkish slave of al-Hārith al-Mathhaji, received a heavy blow, he sought the help of al-Husain (†) who came to him and hugged him. Having seen that, he retorted saying, “Who can be as lucky as I am when the son of the Messenger of Allāh (ﷺ) puts his cheek on mine?!” Having said so,

¹ Abdullāh Nūr-Allāh al-Bahrānī, Maqtal al-‘Awālim, p. 88.
² Ibn al-Athīr, Vol. 4, p. 27.
⁴ Abdullāh Nūr-Allāh al-Bahrānī, Maqtal al-‘Awālim, p. 90. On p. 184, Vol. 8, of his book Al-Bidāya, Ibn Kathīr cites portions of these verses, and so does al-Sadūq in his book Al-Āmālī, though the latter provides the name of Hilāl ibn Hajjāj as the poet.
his pure soul parted from his body.\(^1\) Al-Husain (ensus) walked to Aslam, his slave, and hugged him. He was breathing his last and was able to smile. He felt proud and died with a smile lighting his face.\(^2\)

**BURAYR IBN KHDAYR**

Yazid ibn Ma’qil\(^2\) called out, “O Burayr! How do you see what Allah has done to you?” Burayr answered: “Allah has done very well to me while afflicting you with evil.” Yazid said, “You have lied, and before today you were never known to lie. Do you remember the day when I was walking with you in the quarters of Banu Lawthān\(^3\), when you said that Mu’āwiya had strayed and that the Imam of guidance is Ali ibn Abu Talib?” Burayr answered: “Yes, I testify that such is my view.” Yazid said, “And I bear witness that you are among the misguided!” Burayr then challenged him to a Mubahala; they both raised their hands and supplicated to Allah, Glory to Him, invoking Him to curse the liar and to kill him. Then they fought one another. Burayr hit the man on his head with his sword, splitting it in two halves. Yazid fell as Burayr's sword was still planted in his head. As he was trying to take it out, Radiyy ibn Munqith al-'Abdi attacked Burayr and engaged him in a fight for some time. Burayr subdued this one, too, sitting on his chest. The loser screamed for help, whereupon `Afif ibn Zuhayr ibn Abu al-Akhnas shouted at him saying, “This is Burary ibn Khdayr, the qāri who used to teach us the Qur’ān at Kufa’s mosque,” but he did not pay him any attention and stabbed Burayr in the back. Burayr fell on Radiyy and bit him on the face, cutting the tip of his nose off. Ka’b used his lance to remove him from the man's chest then hit him with his sword, killing him.

The al-'Abdi man stood up to remove the dust from his clothes saying, “O brother of the Azd! You have done me a favour which I shall never forget.”

When Ka’b ibn Jābir returned to his family, his wife, al-Nuwār, rebuked him saying, “You have sided with the enemies of Fāṭima's son and killed the master of [Kufa’s] qāris...; you have done something monstrous... By Allah! I shall never speak to you a word.” He said in his answer the following verses:

\begin{quote}
Ask about me and you will be told,
Even if you may be held in low esteem,
How al-Husain fared when the lances were bold
Did I not do the most of what I did seem?
Hate and no fear did I feel from what I did.
With me was my sword never disappointed,
White, sharp edged, cutting,
So I unsheathed it against a gang
Whose creed is not mine at all.
And I know who the son of Harb and call
Him what he really is. Never have eyes
Seen anyone like them in their time
\end{quote}

---

\(^1\) Abdullāh Nūr-Allāh al-Bahrānī, *Maqṭal al-’Awālim*, p. 91. Iḥsār al-’Ayn, p. 85. al-Khwārizmi, *Maqṭal al-Husain*, Vol. 2, p. 24. In the latter reference, the author says that the Turkish slave was one of the slaves of al-Husain (ensus) who used to recite the Holy Qur`ān and was familiar with Arabic. When he fell, al-Husain (ensus) placed his own cheek on his, so the dying slave smiled.

\(^2\) Thakhirat al-Dārayn, p. 366.

\(^3\) According to p. 247, Vol. 6, of al-Tabari's Tārikh, he belonged to Banū `Umayr ibn Rabī’ah and was an ally of Banū Sulayma ibn Banū `Abd al-Qays.

\(^4\) In Tūj al-`Arūs and under the word “lawth,” his name is given as Lawthan ibn `Abd-Wudd ibn Zayd ibn Jasham ibn Hāshid.
Nor before their time even in my youth  
More striking with the sword on the battlefield,  
Except one who protects his honour to the extreme.  
They for the blows and the stabs persevered  
Though they had none to protect,  
And they would have dueled, had it been of any use.  
So tell ʿUbaydullāh if him you meet  
That I obey the caliph, that I hear and obey.  
Burayr did I kill: a bliss I carried, became excited,  
Of Abu Munqith when he to duel invited.

Radi son of Munqith al-ʿAbdi responded to him with these verses:

If my Lord willed, I would not have fought them at all,  
Nor Jābir's son would have sought my bliss.  
That day was nothing but a curse and a shame  
Sons after friends will call it by its name;  
So how I wish before killing him I better knew  
And on Husain's Day was in the grave, too.¹

HANZALAH AL-SHABAMI

Hanzalah ibn Saʿd al-Shabāmi called out, “O folks! I fear for you the like of the day of al-Ahzāb, the like of the people of Noah, of ʿĀd, of Thamūd, and of those who came after them. Allah never intends to deal unjustly with His servants. O people! I fear for you the Day of Arguing, when you go without having anyone to protect you from Allah. Whoever Allah permits to stray, none can guide him. O people! Do not kill Husain else Allah should chastize you with a terrible chastisement, and those who falsify shall be disappointed.” Al-Husain ( Zubida) prayed Allah to reward him well for having made such a statement saying, “May Allah have mercy on you! They have now become worthy of the chastisement because they rejected your call to the truth and rose to spill your blood and that of your companions; how is it now that they have killed their righteous brethren?” Hanzalah said, “You have said the truth, O son of the Messenger of Allah! Are we not going to the hereafter?” Al-Husain ( Zubida) then permitted him to go to perform jihād, so he bid al-Husain ( Zubida) farewell and advanced. He fought till he was killed.²

ʿĀBIS

Abis ibn Shabib al-Shākiri came to Shawthab³, a slave of Shākir. Shawthab was a sincere man whose house was always frequented by the Shiʿas; it was there that they discussed the merits of Ahl al-Bayt ( Zubida). He said, “O Shawthab! What do you intend to do?” Shawthab said, “I shall fight on your side till I am

¹al-Tabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 248.
²Ibid., p. 254.
³According to p. 145 of al-Tībrisī’s book Iʿlām al-Warā, his name appears as Shawthān, but the text recorded by al-Mufid, in his book Al-Irshād, agrees with ours here.
killed.” He prayed Allāh to reward him well then said to him, “Advance to greet Abu ‘Abdullāh (r) so that he may pray for you just as he prayed for the others, for this is a day when we seek as much reward as we can.” Shawthab advanced and greeted al-Husain (r) then fought till he was killed.

`Abis stood before Abu ‘Abdullāh (r) and said: “None on the face of earth received the night, be he a near or a distant kin, who is dearer to me than you. Had I been able to ward off injustice from you with anything more precious than my life, I would have done so. Peace be with you, and I testify that I am on your and your father's guidance!” He walked towards the enemy with his sword raised despite a wound which he had already received on his forehead. All men who saw him shouted, “O men! Stay away from him!” They knew very well that he was most courageous. Observing the situation, ’Omer ibn Sa’d shouted, “Kill him with your stones!” He became the target of a shower of stones. Having seen that, he put down his shield and charged, causing as many as two hundred men to flee away from him. Soon they surrounded him from all directions and killed him.

A number of them disputed with one another about who among them would take his head covering as a booty. Ibn Sa’d said, “This man was not killed by one single person.” He distributed the slain hero’s head-gear among them.1

JOHN

J ohn2, a slave of Abu Tharr al-Ghifārī, stood before al-Husain (r) requesting him to grant him permission to fight. The Imām (r) said, “O John! You followed us seeking your good health, so you are excused.” But the old man fell on the Imām’s feet kissing them and saying, “I in the time of prosperity lick what is served on your tables; so, should I in the time of hardship betray you? My smell is surely bad; my lineage is lowly; my colour is black; so do bestow upon me a breeze from Paradise so that my smell will be good, my lineage will be honoured, and my colour will be whitened! No, by Allāh, I shall never abandon you till this black blood mixes with yours!” Al-Husain (r), therefore, granted him permission3. He killed as many as twenty-five men before he himself was finally killed. Al-Husain (r) stood by his corpse and supplicated saying, “O Lord! Whiten his face, make his smell good, join him with Muhammed (s) and link him to the progeny of Muhammed (s)!”

Whoever thereafter passed by the battleground was able to smell his corpse emitting a fragrance sweeter than that of musk4.

ANAS AL-KĀHILI

A nas ibn al-Hārith ibn Nabī al-Kāhili was an old man and a renown sahābi who had met and listened to the hadīth of the Prophet (s) and fought in his company the battles of Badr and Hunain. He, too, sought al-Husain’s permission to go and fight. He came out tying his waist with a turban, his forehead bandaged. Having seen him looking like that, al-Ḥusain (r) cried and said, “May Allāh thank you, O shaikh, for what you

---

1 al-Tabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 254.


4 Abdullāh Nūr-Allāh al-Bahrānī, Maqtal al-‘Awālim, p. 88.
Amr ibn Junādah came out after his father had been killed. He was only eleven years old. He sought al-Husain's permission to fight, but al-Husain (ئ) refused saying, “This is a young boy whose father was killed in the first campaign, and perhaps his mother hates to see him go, too.” But the boy said, “It was my mother who ordered me to do so!” It was then that the Imam (ئ) permitted him to fight. It was not long before he was killed and his head was thrown in the direction of Husain's camp. It was taken by his mother who wiped the blood from it and used it as a weapon to hit a man nearby, killing him instantly. She went back to the camp and took a rod or, according to other accounts, a sword, and recited these verses:

An old women and a weakling am I
Crumbling, skinny, and old;
Yet I with force strike you and try
To defend Fatima's son, the honourable and bold.

Al-Husain (ئ) took her back to the tent after she had killed two men using a tent pole.

Al-Ḥajjāj al-Juʿfi

Al-Ḥajjāj ibn Masrūq al-Juʿfi fought till his body became soaked with blood. He went to al-Husain reciting:

Today shall I meet your Grandfather, the Nabi,
Then your father, the generous one, Ali,
The one we know as the wasi.

---


2This is recorded by both Ibn Shahr Āshūb on p. 219, Vol. 3, of his book and al-Khawārizmī on p. 22, Vol. 2, of his book Maqtal al-Husain. This should not strike the reader as far-fetched especially if he reads p. 137 of the book written by the great mentor al-Mufid about the Battle of the Camel (second edition). There, the author says, “Once his leg was cut off, he used it to hit a man, instantly killing him.” Both al-Tabari, on p. 180, Vol. 5, of his Tārikh, and Ibn al-Athīr, on p. 35, Vol. 3, of his book Al-Kāmil, cite him reciting the following poetic lines after having killed that man:

Do not mind, O thigh,
I do in earnest beg,
The fact is that with me is my
Arm whereby I save my leg.

On p. 140, Vol. 2, of his book Al-Kāmil, Ibn al-Athīr says, “A man from among the followers of Musaylamah [the Liar] cut off the leg of Thābit ibn Qays, so Thābit took it and hit the same man with it, instantly killing him.”

Al-Husain (¢) responded by saying, “And I, too, shall meet them soon after you.” He, therefore, went back and fought till he was killed.¹

**SUWĀR**

Suwar ibn Abu Humair, a descendant of Fahm ibn Jābir ibn `Abdullāh ibn Qādim al-Fahmi al-Hamdāni, was involved in a fierce engagement till he was overwhelmed with wounds² and was taken captive. Ibn Sa’d wanted to kill him, but his people sought to intercede on his behalf, so he stayed with them as long as he was wounded; he died six months later.³

When people go for the ziyāra of the sacred places, they recite the following:

Peace be upon you, O wounded captive, O Suwār ibn Abu Humair al-Fahmi al-Hamdāni, and upon the bereaved one, ‘Omer ibn `Abdullāh al-Jundā`i.

**SUWĪD**

When the wounds inflicted upon Suwīd ibn `Amr ibn Abul-Mutā became too much to bear, he fell face-long, and people thought that he had died. When al-Husain (¢) was martyred and he heard people talking about it, he took out a knife which he had with him whereby he fought till he was overwhelmed by their masses and killed. He was the last of the companions to die after al-Husain’s martyrdom.

The refuge of the asylum seeker they are
When in fright, and the hope of the hopeful.
If the fire of the battle dies down,
With their swords they would light and say:
Ignite! Heavy in steps but for the battle light,
With swift steps, sure of their march.
If they raise their lances you would think
They are stars in the light of the pitched dark,
Or if under the dust clouds the regiments collide,
One after another they would seek death.
They charged even when the steps of the valiant stray
And the person of death under the dust makes its way.
They turned away from injustice so they
On the ground they did fall:
A master after a master, each and all.
They fell to the ground and the swords on them feasted.
Their bodies bare, by their virtues attired,
The Grandson kept turning his eyes
Seeing only their corpses on the ground lying

³ Al-Hadā‘iq al-Wardiyâ (a manuscript). Its text agrees with what is stated by Al-Ikhl, that is, that he died because of his wounds, but the author does not refer to his captivity.
Seventy thousand surrounded him so he
Kept them at bay: like ostriches did they flee,
And the unsupported one stood among their crowds
Alone defending Muhammed's law,
Till he fell on the ground, may they first be paralyzed
And his heart could not quench the fire of thirst.

He fell, so Tawhīd did fall down
And guidance was obliterated, losing its crown,
And the pillars of the creed crumbled and fell
Though before they had stood very well.
Allah support him, how his heart yearned for water
But was spent on the ground that burnt like fire.

He fell in the burning heat of the sun
With his face dusted, shaded by the spears
And the steeds kept on his chest going back and forth
Going to battle and returning therefrom,
And a woman cried from the side of her tent
She lost her protector, beating her cheek she kept.
The whips hurt her, so she under them bends;
She cries, and her voice oft
Causes even the stones to get soft.
She was carried on lean beasts in captivity
From a place to place displayed as booty.
She went away led by asses: Umayyad,
From one apostate to another she was led.¹

---

**MARTYRDOM OF AHL AL-BAYT (ة)**

**Ali al-Akbar**

No one remained with al-Husain (ة) except his Ahl al-Bayt who were determined to face death with their might and to maintain their dignity. They came bidding each other farewell² the first being Abul-Hasan³ Ali al-Akbar⁴ who was twenty-seven years old. He was born on the 11th of Sha’bān, 33 A.H./653 A.D.⁵

¹Al-Hujjah Sayyid Muhammed Husain al-Kishwān, may Allah have mercy on his soul, composed this poem.
³On p. 14 of our dissertation of Ali al-Akbar, we quoted Imám Abul-Hasan al-Rida (ة) saying that he was married to a “mother of sons,” hence his kunya “Abu [father of] al-Hasan” after his son by her, al-Hasan. His ziyyarat, which is stated on p. 239 of Kāmil al-Ziyārat of Ibn Qawlawayh, underscores this fact. Instructing Abu Hamzah, Imám Ja’fer al-Sādiq (ة) instructed the first to say: “Allah bless you and your progeny and family and bless your fathers, your offspring, and your mothers, the good ones from whom Allah removed all abomination and whom He purified with a perfect purification.” “Offspring” implies a number of persons, at least two.
⁴In our dissertation on Ali al-Akbar, we quoted historians saying that he was older than Imám al-Sajjād (ة). We shall quote Zayn al-‘Affī [al-Sajjād] recognizing this fact when we discuss the post-martyrdom events in a dialogue between the Imám (ة) and Ibn Ziyād.
⁵As quoted in Anīs al-Shī‘ah, a manuscript written by Sayyid Muhammed `Abd al-Ḥusain al-Ja’fer al-Ḥā’iri which he wrote for (continued...
and he was a mirror reflecting the Prophet's own beauty and a model of his own sublime code of ethics, a specimen of his wise speech. One poet of the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) praised him saying:

Never have any eyes seen better than you
Never have women begotten more beautiful than you
Fault-free you have been made
As if you as you wished were made.

Al-Madīh al-Akbar says⁴:

No eyes saw him have ever seen
Anyone walking, bare-footed or not.
Flesh boils till when it is ripe,
The eater finds it not expensive at all,
Whenever fire for it was lighted,
He with lofty honour ignited.
Just as a poor person sees it in hope,
Or a lone man with no family.
Never did he prefer his life over his creed,
Nor did he sell what is right for a misdeed.
I mean the son of Layla, the one of the dew,
I am describing the son of high lineage to you.

Ali al-Akbar is the one who branched out of the tree of Prophethood, the man who inherited the great merits. He was truly worthy of being a caliph had it not already been determined by the Lord of the Heavens. The most Glorified One had recorded their names in the tablet brought by Gabriel (ـ), to the Messenger of Allāh, peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him and his progeny.

He inherited the merits his legacy
From every valiant warrior and brave
In Hamzah's might, in Hayder's bravery
In al-Husain's loftiness, in Ahmed's dignity
Good in make and in conduct,
Wise in speech like the Prophet Ahmed.²

Once he was about to start his role in defending Ahl al-Bayt ( ), it rested extremely heavily for the ladies who grew up in the lap of Imamate because he was the one upon whom they rested their hopes for their protection and security, their only hope after al-Husain ( ) is gone. One of them would see the Message about to be muted with his death, while another would see the sun of Prophethood nearing an eclipse, while yet another would see Muhammed's code of ethics coming to an end. They all surrounded him and pleaded to him saying, “Have

⁴(...continued)

suīfān Fath Ali Shah.

¹According to p. 32 of Muqāṭīl al-Tālībiyyīn, this poem was written in memory of Ali al-Akbar [Ali Senior].
²These verses and the ones to follow were composed by the authority Ayatullāh Shaikh ʿAbd al-Ḥusain Ṣādiq al-ʿĀmili, may Allāh sanctify him.
mercy on our being strangers in this land! We cannot bear your separation!” But he did not pay them any attention because he could easily see how his enemies were to the end determined to spill his pure blood. He sought his father’s permission then came out riding a horse belonging to al-Husain (잪) named Lahiq.

From the camp of Layla, mother of Ali al-Akbar and daughter of Maymâna daughter of Abu Sufyân, a man shouted, “O Ali! You have kinship with the commander of the faithful Yazid, and we wish to safeguard it; so, if you wish, we can grant you security.” He (牋), said, “The kinship I have with the Messenger of Allah, peace of Allah and His blessings be upon him and his progeny, is now more worthy of being safeguarded,” then he recited these rajaz verses, identifying his holy self and his sublime objective:

I am Ali son of al-Husain son of Ali
We, by the House’s Lord, are more worthy of the Nabi.
By Allah! We shall never be ruled by the da’i
With the sword shall I defend my family
And strike like a young Hashemi, Qarashi! 4

Al-Husain (牋) could not help flooding his eyes with tears and shouted at  `Omer ibn Sa’d: “What is the matter with you?! May Allah cut off your lineage just as you have cut off mine and just as you have not respected my kinship to the Messenger of Allah, peace and blessings of Allah be upon him and his progeny, and may He send upon you someone to slay you on your own bed!” Then he uncovered his hair and raised his hands to the heavens supplicating thus:

O Allah! Bear witness against these folks that a man who looks most like Your Messenger Muhammed in his physique, manners, and eloquence has come out to fight them! Whenever we missed seeing Your Prophet, we would look at him. O Allah! Deprive them of the blessings of the earth, create dissension among them, and make them into many parties, and do not let their rulers ever be pleased with them, for they invited us to support us, then they transgressed on us and fought us!

Then he recited the Qur’anic verse saying, “Allah surely chose Adam, Noah, the family of Abraham and the

---

1 According to p. 178 of Fadl al-Khayl by `Abd al-Mu’min al-Dimyâtî (d. 805 A.H./1402 A.D.), one of al-Husain’s mares was named Lahiq, and on p. 183 the author says, “Al-Husain son of Ali (牋), had a mare named al-Yahmûm and another named Lahiq upon which he carried his son Ali al-Akbar ibn al-Husain during the battle of the Taff where they were both killed.”

2 Ibn Hajar al-`Asqalâni, Al-Iṣâba, Vol. 4, p. 178, where the biography of Abu Murrah is discussed.

3 Abu Nasr, Sirr al-Sîsîla, p. 57, in the discussion of genealogy in general and that of Mis`ab ibn al-Zubayr of Quraish in particular.

4 The rest of these verses are recorded by Shaikh al-Mufîd, may Allah sanctify him, in his book Al-Irshâd.

5 Ibn Nama, Muthîr al-Ahzân, p. 35. al-Mufîd, Al-Irshâd.


family of Imran over all people, offspring of one another, and Allah is Hearing, Knowing (Qur'ān, 3:34).\textsuperscript{1}

He kept charging at their right and left wings, diving in their midst. Whenever a group of fighters met him, he would repulse them, all of them, and whenever a brave man faced him, he would kill him:

He assaults the regiments as the ground closes in on them
All because of his fiery might,
So he forcibly sends them back on their tails
In his might he resembles the angry lion.

He killed a total of one hundred and twenty knights. Thirst took its toll on him, so he returned to his father to rest and to complain about suffering from thirst\textsuperscript{2}. Al-Husain (‡) wept and said, “O help! How quickly shall you meet your grandfather who will give you a drink after which you shall never suffer of thirst.” He gave him his tongue to suck then his ring to put in his mouth\textsuperscript{3}.

He returns to bid farewell, and he is heavy-hearted,
His heart is thirsty, his iron is heavy,
His insides burn, his sword's thirst is quenched with dew,
But his own thirst was not, mind you.
Yet he with his saliva preferred him over his own self
Had only his saliva not dried yet.
As soon as he was bent to meet his death with a smile,
Death, from his ears and sight, stayed only for a while.
He turned the battle around and moved its grinding stone,
With his sword he struck their flesh and their bone,

With his withered shoulders he meets their braves
And places his sword in the necks of their knaves,
While on his body it leaves its mark
From their midst he disappeared and did not come back,
Mounting his steed though almost bear.
Time stumbled on him, so his body now
Is food for every sword and every bow.

Ali went back to the battlefield feeling very happy about the good news which he had just heard from the Imām, the Ḥujjah (‡), who had told him that he would soon meet his grandfather, the chosen one, peace of

\textsuperscript{1}al-Khawārizmi, \textit{Maqta\l\ al-Husain}, Vol. 2, p. 30.


\textsuperscript{3}al-Khawārizmi, \textit{Maqta\l\ al-Husain}, Vol. 2, p. 31. \textdegree{} Abdullāh Nūr-Allāh al-Bahrānī, \textit{Maqta\l\ al-`Awālim}, p. 95. According to p. 51, Vol. 2, of al-`Abbāsi’s book \textit{Ma`āhid al-Tansīs}, when Yazīd ibn Mazīd al-Shaybānī was pursuing al-Walīd ibn Tarīf, and when thirst took its toll on him, he put his ring in his mouth and kept pursuing al-Walīd till he stabbed him with his lance. In his book \textit{Al-Kāfī}, al-Kulaynī quotes Imām Ja`fer al-Sādiq (‡) saying that it is alright for a fasting person to suck on his ring. Such is the \textit{fatwa} of religious scholars. It is possible one of the reasons for it is that it stimulates the glands; therefore, there is no particular function played by the ring but by what those glands do when a stone or such thing is put in the mouth.
Allah be upon him and his progeny. He, therefore, advanced towards them with courage reminiscent of [his grandfather] Imam Ali (τ). He met the enemies face-to-face. The latter could not tell whether it was Ali al-Akbar who was chasing the enemy or whether it was the wasi (τ), roaring like a lion on the battlefield, or whether thunderbolts came emitting in an array from his sword. He kept killing the Kafians till the number of those whom he killed reached fully two hundred.¹

Murrah ibn Munqith al-‘Abdi² said, “I shall bear all the sins of the Arabs should I not succeed in causing his father to lose him for good!”³ He stabbed him with his lance in the back⁴ and hit him with his sword on the head, splitting it in half. Ali embraced his horse that carried him to the enemy camp. There, he became the target of their swords, so they cut his body into bits and pieces⁵.

He wiped out shame, Allah fight the shame
A crescent in the dark, a shining one
The one sought by both houses of Hashim
The haven of both honour and loftiness

How could death to you reach?
You have not hesitated nor tarried.
May my life be for him a sacrifice
Like a fresh flower that dried
In the ocean of thirst and the heat of the sword.
Early did witherness visit his fresh flower,
Withering is the foe of a fresh flower.
By Allah! What a moon on them did he shine!
The sword mixed his substance with its gold,
The water of youth and the blood both flew
Within him, and his heart was still on fire.
Never shall I him forget
How he was turbaned with the youth of the deer
Among the warriors, wearing only their every spear,
Drenched in blood was he yet the Euphrates was
Turning green what was still black.

He called out saying, “Peace be upon you from me, O father of Abdullah!⁶ My grandfather has given me a drink with his own cup after which I shall never suffer any thirst, and he says that there is another one

reserved just for you!” 1 Al-Husain ( يكن ) came to him and placed his cheek on his as he said, “There is no good in life after you... How dare they defy the most Merciful One, and how dare they violate the sanctity of His Messenger! 2 Hard it is upon your grandfather and father that they cannot respond to you when you call upon them, and that they cannot help you when you ask for their help.” 3

Then he took a handful of his pure blood and threw it towards the heavens. Not a drop of it fell. This explains the recitation in his ziyarat of the following statement:

May my father and mother be your sacrifice! How you were slaughtered without having committed a crime! May my father and mother be your sacrifice! How your blood ascended to the one loved by Allāh! May my father and mother be sacrificed for you! He mourns you with a burning heart, raising your blood to the depth of the heavens, not a drop whereof returns, nor one sigh of your father finds an ease! 4

He ordered his servants to carry him to the tent. His corpse was brought to the tent in front of which they were fighting. 5

The honourable ladies who grew up in the home of revelation kept looking at him as he was carried away with blood covering him with its red mantle of dignity. Stabs and wounds had spared no place in his body. They welcomed him with very heavy hearts, their hair uncovered, their wailing defeaning the world. Before them stood the wise lady of Bana Hashim, namely Zainab, the great one, daughter of Fātima daughter of the Messenger of Allāh (صلى الله عليه وسلم), crying and wailing 6. She threw herself on the corpse of her nephew, hugging it, grief-stricken, for he was the guardian of her home and its pillar 7.

My heart goes for the ladies of the Prophet
When thus they saw him in that condition.
Their wailing and their cries did intensify

---


2 al-Ṭabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 265.

3 Abdullāh Nūr-Allāh al-Bahrānī, Maqta’il al-‘Awālim, p. 95.

4 Ibn Qawlawayh, Kāmil al-Ziyārat, p. 239. This statement is supported by accurate isnād and is taught by Imām Ja’fer al-Ṣādiq ( يكن ) to Abu Hamzah al-Thumālī. In our discussion of the Eleventh Night, we will refer to Sunni texts saying that the Prophet (صلى الله عليه وسلم) used to preserve the blood of his Ahl al-Bayt ( يكن ) and that of the sahābah.


6 According to p. 256, Vol. 6, of al-Tabari’s Tārīkh and p. 185, Vol. 8, of Ibn Kathīr’s book Al-Bidāya, Hamīd ibn Muslim has said, “When Ali al-Akbar was killed, I saw a woman coming out of the tent crying, ‘O nephew!’ She went and fell on his corpse. Al-Husain ( يكن ) took her in his hand and brought her back to the tent. I asked about who she was, and I was told that she was Zainab [granddaughter of the Messenger of Allāh, peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him and his progeny].”

7 According to p. 256, Vol. 6, of al-Tabari’s Tārīkh and p. 31, Vol. 2, of al-Khawārizmi’s book Maqta’il al-Husain, Zainab daughter of Fātima ( يكن ) came out screaming and fell on his corpse. Al-Husain ( يكن ) took her back to the tent. Should the head lady of those bereaved women, the lady who was trying her best to comfort them, come out in such a manner, can anyone expect that there were ladies who remained inside the tent?
So the minds and the souls were baffled by their cry.
The wise ladies mourned their protector
And so did virtues and merits.
My heart goes for her when she seeks
The Messenger's help,
The mountains were almost to disappear.
My heart goes for her since she lost
The one she could depend on,
And how can anyone equal the one she lost?
Who can in honour equal the one who was
Like in manners Yasin, like in form Taha?
O Allah help his father when
The light of al-Akbar went out.
He at the Taff saw the Friend of Allah from Mina,
The one whom he sacrificed was now
Sought by the swords.
He was mourned by what can be seen and what cannot
From the zenith of the 'Arsh
To the deepest of the earth.
He was mourned by the master of all creation.
For his calamity was indeed the greatest of all.
He was mourned by the eyes of guidance and uprightness
And by the one appointed as the wasi.¹

His father's condition could best be described thus:

Son! From my heart did I make you, so why
From me you now severed your tie?
Son! Your ties eclipse the hue of death
And the eclipse precedes perfection.
Son! Never shall I ever sleep
While your body on the burning sands lies.
Son! You insisted on reaching the heights,
Leaving for me only the dark nights.
Son! Men's eyes mourn you till the Day
Of Gathering and of Accounting.
Son! The attributes of perfection do you mourn,
And the tenderness of youth and the angels.

You rushed to meet your father the Prophet at the Pool

¹Excerpted from an extemporal poem composed and delivered by Ayatullah Shaikh Muhammad Husain al-Ishahni, may Allah sanctify him.
Having arranged the hearts of men's eyes.

`Abdullāh ibn Muslim
After him `Abdullāh ibn Muslim ibn `Aqīl, son of Abu Ṭālib and Ruqayya, the great daughter of the Commander of the Faithful, Imām Ali (τ), charged as he recited this verse:

Today Muslim, my father, shall I meet
With a band sacrificed for the Prophet's creed.

He killed a number of the enemy troops in three of his assaults. Yazīd ibn al-Ruqād al-Jahni shot him with an arrow which he unsuccessfully tried to avoid with his hand, but it pierced his hand and found its way to his forehead. He could not remove it from his forehead. He, therefore, said, “O Allāh! They have found us few in number, so they humiliated us. Kill them, O Lord, as they have killed us.” As he was thus engaged, a man threw a spear at him which pierced his heart, killing him instantly. Yazīd ibn al-Ruqād came to him, took out the arrow from his forehead as its tip remained inside.

Campaign of the Family of Abu Ṭālib
When `Abdullāh ibn Muslim was killed, the family of Abu Ṭālib undertook a collective campaign. Al-Husain (τ), called out to them saying, “Be patient, O cousins! By Allāh! After today you shall not meet any hardship at all.” The assailants were comprised of `Awn ibn `Abdullāh, son of Ja`fer al-Tayyār and the wise lady Zainab, his brother Muḥammad son of al-Khawṣa, `Abdul-Raḥmān ibn `Aqīl ibn Abu Ṭālib, his brother Ja`fer son of `Aqīl, and Muḥammad son of Muslim ibn `Aqīl.

As many as eighteen wounds were received by al-Ḥusayn (τ) son of Imām al-Ḥasan, [older] grandson of the Prophet (ﷺ), and his right hand was cut off, but he was not martyred yet.

---

1Excerpted from a poem by the authority Sayyid Mehdi al-Bahrāni, may Allāh have mercy on his soul.

2On p. 45 of his book, he attributed the genealogy of Miṣ`ab ibn al-Zubayr to Quraish, adding, “She is the mother of his brothers Ali and Muḥammad.”


4His last name, as recorded on p. 238, Vol. 5, of Ansāb al-Asrāf of al-Balāthirī, is given as “al-Janbi”.

5Abūl-Faraj al-Insāhī, Muqātil al-Tālibiyīn, p. 27 (Iranian edition).

6According to both Al-Irshād and p. 256, Vol. 6, of al-Ṭabarī’s Tārīkh, `Amr ibn Sā`īdī shot him with a couple of arrows one of which found its way to his heart. On p. 239, Vol. 5, of Ansāb al-Asrāf of al-Balāthirī, the name of the person who shot that arrow is said to be Yazīd ibn al-Ruqād al-Janbi.

7al-Ṭabarī, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 179.

8This statement appears on p. 256, Vol. 6, of Ibn Jarīr al-Ṭabarī’s Tārīkh, whereas the call for perseverance is recorded on p. 78, Vol. 2, of al-Khawārizmī’s Maqta al-Husain and on p. 64 of Al-Luḥūf of Ibn Ṭāwūs,..

9On p. 57 of his book Al-Mufīr, Ibn Ḥabīb, the genealogist, says, “Khadija daughter of Ali, was the wife of `Abdul-Raḥmān ibn `Aqīl.” On p. 89 of Ibn Qutaybah’s book Al-Mu`ārif, where the biography of Imām Ali (τ) is discussed, the author says that she gave birth to [`Abdul-Raḥmān’s] son Sa`īd. On p. 57 of Ibn Ḥabīb’s book Al-Mufīr, [after the death of her husband] she was married to Abūl-Sanābīl, namely `Abdullāh ibn `Āmir ibn Karīz.

10According to p. 217, Vol. 3, of al-Ṭahhābī’s book Siyār A`lām al-Nubalā’, `Abdullāh and `Abdul-Raḥmān, sons of Muslim ibn `Aqīl ibn Abu Ṭālib, were both killed with al-Husain (τ).
Abu Bakr son of the Commander of the Faithful (ؕ), whose first name was Muḥammed, came out and was killed by Zahr ibn Badr al-Nakh`i.

`Abdullāh ibn `Aqīl now came out and kept fighting till his wounds overwhelmed him, so he fell.

`Uthmān ibn Khālid al-Tamīmi took advantage of the situation, walked to him and killed him.

Arabs are not only names for glory
The sons of `Amr are only offspring,
For there is for Prophethood a crown
And for the Imāmate a necklace worn.
Two ornaments none but they can wear
How can you a wearer with a bare one compare?
From Shaybat al-Ḥamd descended youths who
Happily marched to support the creed
Neither arrogantly nor for a show.
They smile as the heroes frown
Showing pearls their front ones.
Like ships they sailed to the war
And ships are only their vanguards.
Had happiness not been their goal
I would not have left any of their foes at all.
They do not mind as the swords clamour
With warriors covering the plain like an armour.
And the lances collide and sound
And the arrows vary in their round,
And heads get severed from their shoulders
And chests are arranged in their insolence.

Al-Qāsim and His Brother
Abu Bakr, son of Imām al-Ḥasan son of the Commander of the Faithful (ؕ), came out. His first name was `Abdullāh al-Akbar [´Abdullāh senior] and his mother was an “umm wuld” named Ramla. He fought till he


3Ibn Shahr Aṣhūb, Al-Manūqīb, Vol. 221, p. 2. According to al-Khawārizmi's Maqtaḥ al-Husain, his name was Zahr ibn Qays al-Nakh`i. Abul-Faraj al-Isfahānī, in his book Muqtaḥ al-Tālibiyīn, states that his corpse was found in a canal; nobody knew who had killed him.

4These verses were composed by the authority Shaikh `Abd al-Ḥusain Ṣādiq al-`Āmilī, may Allāh sanctify his soul.

5al-Ṭabarī, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 269. Abul-Faraj al-Isfahānī, Muqtaḥ al-Tālibiyīn, p. 34.

6According to Al-Hadāʾiq al-Wardiyah, his mother and the mother of al-Qāsim was Ramla. On p. 103 of Tathkīrat al-Khawāss, where the author, namely Ibn al-Jawzi, the grandson, relies on Ibn Sa`d's Tabaqāt, Nufayla was the mother of al-Qāsim, Abu Bakr, and `Abdullāh, whereas Abul-Faraj al-Isfahānī, in his book Muqtaḥ al-Tālibiyīn, says that she was “umm wuld” whose genealogy was not known. On p. 50 of the same reference, where the author traces Miṣ`ab ibn al-Zubayr's genealogy to Quraysh, it is stated that (continued...)
was killed.¹

After the latter, his full-blooded brother, al-Qasim, came out². He was a lad who had not yet come of age. When al-Husain (เศร้า), looked at him, he hugged him and wept³. Then he permitted him to fight, so he came out with a face looking like a full moon⁴ bearing a sword and wearing a shirt and a mantle. On his feet he wore sandals. He had to fight on foot. The sandal’s string on his left foot was cut off⁵, so he, the son of the great Prophet, peace and blessings of Allah be upon him and his progeny, hated to walk bare-footed on the battlefield. He, therefore, stopped for a moment to tie his sandal⁶, regarding those enemies as no more valuable than his own sandal, paying no heed to their multitude, feeling unconcerned about their thousands.

He leaned to mend his shoe
As the war near him drew
Their war, they knew,
Was no more precious than his shoe,
Carrying his sword, by its sheath shaded,
Do not worry about what he did,
For a branch is rendered to its root.
After the clouds comes the rain
And a cub is but a lions' son.⁷

¹(continued)

al-Qasim and Abu Bakr were both killed at the Battle of al-Taff, leaving no offspring.

¹According to p. 127 of al-Tibrizi’s book I’lām al-Warā and to Al-Mujdi fil Nasab of Abul-Hasan al-’Amri, as well as in Is’af al-Rāghibīn in a footnote referring to p. 202 of Nār al-Absār, he is said to have married Sukayna daughter of al-Husain (เศร้า). On p. 64 of his book Al-Mutarādīfāt, al-Madāʿini, in the first group of rare manuscripts he categorizes, says that Ḥabullah ibn al-Hasan was her first husband.

²All references to the alleged wedding of al-Qasim are not true. Al-Qasim had not yet come of age, and no authentic historical record supports such an allegation. Shaikh Fakhr ad-Dīn al-Turayhi is a greatly knowledgeable man. Nobody can fairly attribute to him such a myth. Its existence is his book is a deliberate and unauthorized addition, and al-Turayhi shall question [on the Judgement Day] whoever incorporated it in his book. I do not know where his eminence Sayyid Ali Muhammed of Lucknow, who is titled the “crown of scholars”, got his information from so he wrote a dissertation about that wedding which he named “al-Qāsimiyya” as we are told on p. 4, Vol. 17, of al-Tehrani’s voluminous work Al-Tharīʿah.

³al-Khawārizmi, Maqtal al-Husain, Vol. 2, p. 27. al-Khawārizmi says that al-Husain (เศร้า) was reluctant to permit him to go, but the chap kept begging him, kissing his hands and feet, till he consented. I say that this claim is contradicted by what is stated in the discussion of the events during the night that preceded Ḥāshura, when al-Husain (เศร้า) informed his companions and family members that they would all be killed, including al-Qasim and his own infant son. Like the tale of al-Qāsim’s wedding, this is a groundless claim.


⁶Thakhkhīrat al-Dārayn, p. 152. Ibsār al-ʿAyān, p. 37. I say that it does not surprise me to see how this descendant of the Chosen Prophet (mas) thus heedless of the odds on the battlefield. Abul-Faraj al-Iṣfahānī, on p. 144, of his book Al-Aghānī, says, “Ja’fer ibn Ṭāhilah ibn Rabʾi ibn Ḥabū Yaghūth ibn Banū al-Hārith ibn Kaʾb was once captured and his shoe string was cut off. He stopped to mend it. A man asked him, ‘Does not the trouble in which you are distract your mind from doing that?’ Ja’fer answered by composing a line of poetry meaning: ‘More hard for me than shoe-string mending is my foe seeing me to troubles succumbing.’”

⁷These verses were composed by the authority Sayyid Mir Ali Abu Tībhīk, may Allāh have mercy on him.
As he was thus engaged, `Amr ibn Sa’d ibn Naf al-Azdi attacked him. Hamid ibn Muslim asked him, “What do you want to do to this lad? Are you not satisfied to see all the crowd that surrounds him?” He said, “By Allah I shall attack him!” He hit al-Qasim with his sword. The lad fell face-long crying out, “O uncle!” Al-Husain (ザ) came out to his help like an angry lion and struck `Amr with his sword. `Amr tried to avoid it with his arm, so the Imam cut it off from the elbow, causing him to let out a very loud scream which was heard by the entire army. The cavalry of Ibn Sa’d charged in order to rescue him. `Amr met them face-to-face, causing their horses to trample upon him and to eventually kill him.

After some time the cloud of dust dissipated, so al-Husain (ザ) was now seen standing at the head of the young boy, examining his feet. Al-Husain (ザ) said, “Away with people who have killed you while their opponent on the Day of Judgment will be your grandfather (ザ)!” Then he said, “Hard it is, by Allah, that you call upon your uncle to help you and he cannot answer your call, or that he does answer it but cannot do much for you. It is a lone voice whose enemies are numerous and whose supporters are few.” Then he carried him away. Al-Qasim was on al-Husain's chest; his legs were dragging on the ground. Al-Husain (ザ) put the corpse beside that of Ali al-Akbar and of those of his family who had been killed1. Then he raised his eyes to the heavens and supplicated thus:

O Allah! Count their numbers, and do not leave any of them alone, and do not forgive a single one of them! Be patient, O cousins! Be patient, O my Ahl al-Bayt! You shall never meet any hardship after today at all.2

Never can I tell you enough about al-Qasim
Son of the chosen one al-Hasan,
Engaged in the war paying no heed
To what in it went on,
As if its swords to him spoke,
As if they were beauties with him flirting,
As if their lances were cups
Served to him by their waiter to drink.
Had he minded any danger or had he
Feared death, he would not have mended a shoe
In its midst before him stood his foe,
As many as the sands in count.
From beneath comes the assault and from high
He would not have worn on his head a shield.
So with his white sword he was painted red,
Except when you did see him being distracted
From the struggle, and souls do slacken,
And that was only a lion’s slumber,
One who paid no heed to the number
Of his foes, of what their sword could do,
So he fell down and for help cried,
And the Prophet's grandson did to him respond,
And it was what it was from its da’i.


The falcon took him and with his peers joined. Their first were killed and so was their last. Oppressed was he, yet the sun's heads were ripe, And only his sharp sword was the harvester, Till became fed-up was the sword, And from the sword the valley overflowed. The dark clouds by the steeds raised Were uncovered showing their riders And what was hidden was revealed. He was seen hugging on his chest a moon Decorated by the blood on his forehead. He took him carrying him to the camp And his eyes were reddened by their tears. On the page of the ground did his feet leave marks Dotted by his tears, followed by his heart. O what a shining moon that removed With his eclipse how he wiped it out!

**Brothers of al-`Abbās (ç)**

When al-`Abbās (ç), saw how such a large number of his family members were being killed, he said to his brothers 'Abdullāh, 'Uthmān, and Ja'fer, “Advance, O brothers, so that I may see you supporting the cause of Allāh and His Messenger (ﷺ).” Then he turned to `Abdullāh, their oldest, and said, “Advance, O brother, so that I may see you receiving the honour of martyrdom.”¹ They fought in front of Abul-Fadl, al-`Abbās, till they were all killed.

How good the Lord's many sacrifices Offered on the banks of the Euphrates! The best of guidance is that Sacrifices come from those who guide,

After having said their prayers Spent to be for the prayers sacrifices.²

**Martyrdom of al-`Abbās (ç)**

Al-`Abbās could no longer bear life after having seen how his companions and the members of his family killed and how the Hujjah of his time was suffering from the great number of the enemies surrounding him after his supply route had been cut off and after hearing the women wailing and the children crying of thirst. He, therefore, sought permission from his brother. Since al-`Abbās (ç) was the most precious asset to the grandson


²These verses were composed by Thiqatul-Islam Shaikh Muḥammed Tāhir from the family of the faqīh Shaikh Radi, may Allāh sanctify him.
of the Prophet (ص), who is soon to be martyred, especially since the foes always dreaded having to fight him and feared his advance, and how the ladies felt a sense of security upon seeing the standard raised high, the sacred soul of the Father of the Oppressed did not accept to part with him. The Imām (ع) said to him, “O brother! You are my standard-bearer!” Al-`Abbās (ع) said, “I am fed-up with these hypocrites, and I want to seek revenge against them.” Al-Husain (ع) ordered him to bring water for the children, so al-`Abbās went to those people and admonished them, warning them of the Wrath of the Omnipotent, but all of that fell on deaf ears. He then shouted: “O `Omer ibn Sa’ d! Here is al-Husain son of the daughter of the Messenger of Allāh! You have killed his companions and family, and here are his children suffering from thirst! Give them some water, for thirst has burnt their hearts!” As he kept repeating his pleas, he also kept saying to them, “Let me go to Rome or to India, and I shall leave Hijāz and Iraq for you all.” There were some people among the enemy ranks who were genuinely moved by those pleas, so they wept, but al-Shimr shouted as loudly as he could, “O son of Abu Turāb! Had the face of earth been entirely covered with water, and had it been in our hands, we would still have not given you a drop of it to drink unless you swear the oath of allegiance to Yazīd!”

Al-`Abbās went back to his brother to tell him of the outcome of his negotiations with those ruffians. Al-`Abbās heard the children crying of thirst, so he could not tolerate the situation any longer. He was fired up with his Hashemi zeal.

The one whose light enables all to see
At Kerblā’ is killed and none to bury,
O Grandson of the Prophet! May He
Reward you with goodness for us and for me,
May your balance of Good Deeds never fall short.
To me you were a mountain where I seek resort.
To be kind to kinsfolk you used to always exhort.
Who now shall to the orphans and the destitute import
And to whom shall the helpless go when in need?
By Allāh! Never shall I fall short of my every deed
By trading you for anyone else's worth
Till I am buried between the sands and the earth.

Then he rode his horse and took the water bag. As many as four thousand archers soon surrounded him and shot him with their arrows, yet their large number did not impede his attempt. He kept chasing those throngs alone as his standard kept fluttering above. Those people could not tell whether that was al-`Abbās who was thus slaughtering their heroes or the wasi roaring on the battlefield. Their men could not maintain their grounds before him, and he succeeded in getting into the Euphrates river heedless of the huge crowd around him.

The mighty lions mourn their youths
And their saviours when calamity overwhelms,
Mourning them with blood. So tell the burning heart
How the red sigh does ascend;
It yearns, but its yearning is crying,

---


2al-Qazwīnī, Tazallum al-Zahrāʾ, p. 118.

218
It mourns, but its mourning is only by sign.¹

The moment he took one handful of water to drink he remembered how thirsty al-Ḥusain (/popper) and those with him were, so he spilled it then said²:

O soul! After al-Husain nobody does count!
After him, you should to nothing amount,
Here is al-Husain nearing his end
While you drink of cool water?!
By Allāh! Such is not a deed
At all enjoined by my creed!³

Then he filled the water bag, rode his horse, and went in the direction of the camp. His path was blocked, so he kept killing those who blocked it till he was able to make his way through them as he was saying:

I do not fear dead when it calls upon me,
Till among the swords you bury me.
My soul protects the one
Who is the Prophet's grandson,
Al-ʿAbbās am I, the water bag do I bear
When I meet evil, I know no fear!

Zayd ibn al-Ruṣād al-Jahni ambushed him from behind a palm tree assisted by Ḥakim ibn al-Tufayl al-Sanbasi, dealing a sword blow to his right arm, completely severing it. He (/popper), said,

By Allāh! If you cut off my right hand,
I shall not cease defending my creed,
And an Imām true to his conviction do I defend,
A son of the trustworthy Prophet whom Allāh did send.

He did not pay attention to the fact that his right hand had been cut off because he was only concerned about getting the water to the children and the family of al-Ḥusain (/popper), but Ḥakim ibn al-Tufayl was still hiding behind

---

¹Excerpted from a poem by Kāshif al-Ghiṭā’, may Allāh sanctify him.
another palm tree when he passed by. Hákim struck him with his sword on his left hand, amputating it, too\(^1\), and soon a large number of men were surrounding him. Arrows fell on him like rain, piercing the water bag and boring a hole in it through which its water was completely spilled. An arrow pierced his chest\(^2\). A man hit him with a pole on his head, severely injuring him.

Beside al-`Alqami he fell, how I wish to witness
Those who subdued him drinking of bitterness.

He fell on the ground shouting, “Peace unto you from me, O father of `Abdulláh!” Al-Husain (\(\_\)) rushed to him\(^3\). How I wish to know in what condition he went to him, with a soul imperiled by this great loss, or by the brotherhood that pulls a brother to his beloved brother...

Yes; al-Husain (\(\_\)) reached him and witnessed how sacrifice is being offered to the Holy One on a plain covered with blood and crowned with arrows. Al-`Abbás had no might nor speech nor anything whereby he could keep his foes away. He could not even see anything; his head was on the ground bleeding.

Is it accurate to say that al-Husain (\(\_\)) saw all of these calamities and still had any strength whereby he could stand on his feet? Only al-Husain remained after the martyrdom of Abul-Fadl. He remained a figure staring in the sky, stripped of all the necessities of life. He, Allah's peace be upon him, described his condition best when he said, “Now my spine has been split and my endeavour is further weakened.”\(^4\)

Disappointment marked his forehead,
So the mountains crumbled for his pain.
Why not since it was the beauty of his face
And on his forehead the pleasure of his heart?
O supporter of his family, waterer of his children,
Bearer of the standard with all his determination!\(^5\)

He left him where he had fell and did not move him anywhere due to a hidden reason which time later unveiled: He was to be buried where he had fallen separately from the other martyrs so that he would have a mausoleum of his own visited by those who seek his intercession with the Almighty to grant them the fulfillment of their wishes, and so that his grave-site would be a place for the ziyārat of the people who seek nearness to the Almighty, Praise to Him, under its dome that stands lofty in the sky, glowing. It is there that dazzling miracles manifest themselves and the nation thereby comes to know his lofty status and station with Allah Almighty. It then carries out its obligation of loving him which is renewed by continuous visits. Greeting him will establish a link between them and Allah, the most Exalted. It was the desire of the Hujjah of his time, the father of `Abdulláh (\(\_\)), and of the Omnipotent, Praise to Him, that the apparent status enjoyed by Abul-Fadl al-`Abbás should be similar to the one preserved for him in the hereafter, and so it was.

Al-Husain (\(\_\)) went back to the camp feeling extremely depressed, tearful. He kept wiping his tears with his cuffs as men raced with one another to assault his camp. He called out: “Is there anyone who helps us?! Is

---


\(^2\)Riyāḍ al-Masāḥīb, p. 315.


\(^5\)Excerpted from a *rajaz* poem by the authority Ayatullāh Muḥammad Husain al-Īṣfahānī, may Allāh sanctify him.
there anyone who grants us security?! Is there anyone who seeks justice, so he supports us?! Is there anyone who fears the Fire, so he defends us?! Sukayna, his daughter, came to him and asked him about her uncle al-`Abbås. He told her of his being killed. Zainab heard him revealing this sad news, so she cried out, “O brother! O `Abbås! O our loss after you!” Women wept, and al-Husain (ε) wept, too, and said, “O our loss after you!”

He called, filling the valleys with his cries
Even solid stones from their horrors are in pain
O Brother! Who after you shall guard Muhammed's daughters
When they seek mercy from the merciless?
My hands after you are paralyzed,
My eyes blinded, and split is my spine,
For others, cheeks are beaten,
But these white deer before my eyes
Are now beating their cheeks.
Between your terrible death and my own
Is like I call you before and you are pleased,
Here is your sword: Who after you
Shall with it subdue the foes?
And here is your standard: Who shall with it advance?
O son of my father! You have dwarfed in my eyes

The death of all my offspring,
And the wound is healed only by
What is more painful, so
He knelt over and his tears
Painted the ground like gold,
He wished to kiss his lips but he found
No place spared from a weapon's kiss.2

THE MASTER OF MARTYRS (ε) ON THE BATTLEFIELD

When al-`Abbås was killed, al-Husain (ε) turned to see none to help him against his foes. He looked and saw how his family members and companions lied slaughtered on the ground. He heard the wailing of the orphans and the cries of the children. As loud as he could, he called out, “Is there anyone who defends the sanctity of the Messenger of Allåh? Is there anyone who believes in the Unity of Allåh and who fears Allåh in our regard? Is there anyone who comes to our rescue and who wishes by doing so to please Allåh?” The women's voices now grew even louder as they cried.3

Al-Sajjåd (ε) stood up. He was leaning on a cane and dragging a sword. He was sick and could hardly

1Al-Muntakhâb, p. 312.
2These verses were composed by Sayyid Ja’fer al-Hilli. They are published in their entirety in Muthîr al-`Aţzan by the `allâma Shaikh Sharîf al-Jawâhiri.
3Ibn Tâwûs, Al-Luhûf, p. 65.
move, but al-Husain (_left) called on his daughter Umm Kulthūm saying, “Confine him so that the world may not run out of the progeny of Muḥammad (right),” so she took him back to his bed.¹

Al-Husain (left) now ordered his dependents to be silent, and he bade them farewell. He was wearing a dark silk jubba (long robe)² and a florid turban with two tresses let loose on the sides and wrapped himself with the same burda (gown) which the Messenger of Allāh, peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him and his progeny, used to wear, and was carrying his [Prophet’s] sword.³

He asked for a thawb (garment) which nobody wanted and which he put underneath his clothes so that nobody would be interested in it and, hence, in removing it from his body, since he knew that he was going to be killed soon. They brought him small trousers but he was not interested in them since they were the outfits of ignominy⁴, so he took a worn out garment which he ripped, placing its pieces underneath his clothes⁵. Then he asked for wrapping trousers which he also tore then put on so that nobody would take them away from his corpse⁶.

THE INFANT

He then ordered his infant son ‘Abdullāh to be brought to him so that he would say good-bye to him. Zainab brought him his baby son ‘Abdullāh⁷ as well as the latter’s mother al-Ruḥāb. He placed him in his lap and kept kissing him⁸ and repeating this statement: “Away with these people when your

¹Shaikh Ja’fer al-Shushtari (may Allāh sanctify him), Al-Khāṣṣa’is al-Husainīyya [Husain’s characteristics], p. 129. Among those who have documented his sickness during the Battle of Kerbala’ are: Mis’ab ibn al-Zubayr as quoted on p. 58 of Nasab Quraish and al-Ya’qūbī on p. 217, Vol. 2, of his Tārīkh. On p. 32, Vol. 2, of his book Maqta al-Husain, al-Khawārizmi says, “Ali ibn al-Husain, who was younger than his brother who had already been killed, was sick and unable to carry a sword..., etc.”

²In his book Al-Kāfī, al-Kulaynī, commenting on the text on p. 105, Vol. 4, of Mir’āt al-‘Uqūl ‘an ʿAlī al-Raṣūl, where Imām al-Bāqir (_left) is quoted, and also al-Ālīṣi on p. 111, Vol. 8, of his book Rūḥ al-Maʿāni, commenting on the verse saying, “Say: Who has prohibited the embellishments of Allāh which He has brought forth for His servants and the good provisions?” (Qur’ān, 7:32), and so do both Ibn Hajar on p. 192, Vol. 9, of his book Majma’ al-Zawā’id and al-Khawārizmi on p. 35, Vol. 2, of his book Maqta al-Husain, all say that al-Husain (left) was wearing a dark silk jubba on the day of ’Āshūra.


⁷On p. 222, Vol. 2, of his book Al-Manāqib, Ibn Shahr Āshūb refers to him as Ali Asghar (Ali Junior). In his book Al-Iqbāl, Ibn Tāwūs states al-Husain’s ziyāra on the day of ’Āshūra. It contains the following: “Peace of Allāh be upon you and upon them and upon your son Ali Asghar whose loss grieved you.” Those who say it was ʿAbdullāh, whose mother was al-Ruḥāb, are: Shaikh al-Mufīd on p. 3 of his book Al-Iḥtiṣās, Abul-Faraj al-Isfahānī on p. 35 of his book Muqtašīl al-Tūlībiyyīn, and Mis’ab ibn al-Zubayr on p. 59 of Nasab Quraish. On p. 30 of Sirr al-Silsila, it is stated that the one who was killed with an arrow as he was in his father’s lap was ‘Abdullāh, but he does not mention the name of his mother.

⁸Ibn Tāwūs, Al-Luḥūf, p. 65. According to p. 218, Vol. 2, of al-Ya’qūbī’s Tārīkh (Najaf’s edition), “As al-Husain (left) was standing, his newly born son was brought to him. He called the athān in his [right] ear and applied the hanūk to him. It was then that an arrow penetrated his son’s mouth, killing him instantly. Al-Husain (left) pulled the arrow out of his son’s mouth and kept staining him with his own blood sand saying, ‘By Allāh! Your status with Allāh is greater even than the she-camel [of prophet Sāliḥ], and the status of Muḥammad (right) is greater than that of Šāliḥ.’ Then he took him and placed him with his other slain offspring and nephews.”
grandfather the chosen one (ثلث) is their opponent.”¹ Then he brought him to those folks and asked for some water for him. Harmalah ibn Kāhil al-Asadi shot the infant with an arrow that slaughtered him. Al-Husain (ع) received his blood in his hand then threw it up towards the heavens.

Imām Abu Ja`fer al-Bāqir (ع) has said, “Not a drop of it fell.”² In this regard, the Huğjah of the Progeny of Muhammed (ص), may Allāh hasten his reappearance, says, “Peace be unto `Abdullāh, the slaughtered infant, the one shot with an arrow, the one whose blood was shed in a most cruel manner and whose blood ascended to the heavens, the one slaughtered with an arrow in his father’s lap! The curse of Allāh be upon the person who shot him, Harmalah ibn Kāhil al-Asadi, and upon his kinsfolk.”³

Hard it is for me how you carried your thirsty babe
And the fire of his thirst could not be quenched.
From the parching of the sun his voice changed,
In a tribulation from which what is solid melts.
You came to the people asking for water,
But how could you reach the watering place?
For the bow surrounded his neck as if
It was a string of the crescent wherein the star rests.
And on the prairie, in the tents, are mourners
Pointing to your babe with agony and repeat;
How many an infant did their arrows suckle
One Fāṭima would have rather nursed?
So my soul weeps for him since the arrow surrounded him
Just as it was decorated before by amulets.
He yearned smiling for the Prophet’s grandson to plant his kiss
To bid him farewell, and what else other than
Such kissing suits him?
My heart goes for the infant's mother when the night descends
Upon her, and when the doves mourn.
In the dark does she see her babe
As his mark showed among the victims;
So once she saw the arrow in his neck planted,
She wished she shared his arrow of death.
In her hands she places him as she kisses his lips
And kisses a neck before her the arrow had kissed.
She brought him closer to her chest in earnest
So once she sings lullabies for him and once she to him talks:
Son! Wake up from the slumber of death!

³This is stated in the ziyārat of that sacred place. The poem that follows the text was composed by the virtuous orator Sayyid Muḥammad Jawād Shubbar.
My breast should you suck.
Maybe my heart will then calm down...
Son! I have milk for you, and I know your thirst
So maybe I thereby quench your burning thirst.
Son! You used to entertain me in my loneliness
And my solace whenever the oppressors oppress.¹

Al-Husain (/popper) said, “What decreases my affliction is the fact that it is witnessed by Allāh Almighty.² O Allāh! It is not less in Your esteem than the life of a son! Lord! If You have kept victory away from us, then let it be so for something even better, and seek revenge on our behalf from the oppressors³, and let what has happened to us in this life be a treasure for us in the hereafter.⁴ O Allāh! You are the Witness against people who killed the one who looked most like Your Messenger Muḥammad, peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him and his progeny.”⁵ He (/popper), then heard a voice saying, “Leave him, O Husain, for there is a nurse for him in Paradise!”⁶ Then he (/popper), alighted from his horse and with his sword dug a grave for him and buried him; his blood was mixed with the sands, then he offered the funeral prayers for him.⁷ Some accounts say that he placed him together with those of his family who had already been killed.⁸

My heart burns for his father when he saw
How, because of the thirst, his eyes deeply sank.
He could find no water for his babe,
So he found no choice except to beg
Though begging for a father is the greatest calamity.
So how when deprivation follows begging?
Of his pure blood he towards the heavens flung,
How great his kindness, how magnanimous!
Had he not thrown it to the heavens,
The earth would have swallowed everyone.
The heavens was painted red from his blood
Woe upon them from Allāh's curse!

---

¹From a poem by the `allūma Shaikh Muḥammed Taqi al-Jawāhiri.
²Ibn Tawūs, Al-Luhūf, p. 66.
⁵Al-Muntakhab, p. 313.
⁶Ibn al-Jawzi, the grandson, Tathkīrat al-Khawāṣṣ, p. 144. Mirza Farhād, Al-Qamqam, p. 385. In the biography of Ibrāhim son of the Messenger of Allāh (ṣ), as stated in Al-Isāba (of Ibn Hajar al-‘Asqalānī), and also according to p. 102, Vol. 1, of al-Nawawi’s book Taḥthīb al-Asmā’, and on p. 214, Vol. 3, of al-Zarqānī’s book Sharḥ al-Mawāḥib al-Laduniyya, in a chapter dealing with the Imām’s sons, it is stated that when Ibrāhim son of the Messenger of Allāh (ṣ) died, the Prophet (ṣ) said, “There is a nurse for him in Paradise.”
⁸al-Mufīd, Al-Irshād. Ibn Nama, Muthīr al-Ahzān, p. 36.
And how was his mother's condition when she did see
Her infant going through what had to be?
He left her like a white pearl
And returned like a red sapphire.
She yearned to him as she would her babe,
She mourned him in the morning and at sunset.
My heart goes for her how she mourned her infant,
A mourning that echoed her painful heart:
Says she: O son! O my ultimate hope!
O my desire and my joy!
My milk when no water was there did dry,
No water to drink, nothing to sustain you by;
So your thirst took you to drink of death,
As if your quenching rested in the foe's arrows.
O tears of mine, the life of my heart!
My greatest calamity that you had to depart.
I wished you would be the best to succeed
And a solace for me from their every vile deed.
Never did I think an arrow would wean,
Till my days showed him how one could be so mean.¹

Al-Husain (τ) advanced towards the enemy raising his sword, losing all hope of survival, challenging them to a duel. He killed all those who accepted his challenge, and their number was quite high². Then he charged on the army's east flank as he recited this verse:

Death is better than accepting ignominy,
While ignominy is better than the Fire!³

and on the left flank as he recited:

I am al-Husain son of Ali
I decided never to bow nor bend,
Protecting my father's family,
Remaining on the Prophet's creed.⁴

¹Excerpted from a rajaz poem by the authority Ayatullāh Shaikh Muhammed Husain al-Isfahānī, may Allāh sanctify him.
³Under the heading “A Discourse in Literature” on p. 171, Vol. 3, of his book Al-Bayān wal Tibyān (second edition), al-Jāḥīz adds the following after having quoted those poetry lines:

Allāh, from this and that, is the Refuge.
`Abdullah ibn `Ammar ibn Yaghath said, “Never have I seen someone surrounded by a huge number of enemies and whose son is slaughtered, and so are his family and companions, and who still maintained his composure, remained relentless, and stayed courageous more than al-Husayn (†). Men kept fleeing in front of him whenever he charged at them, and none kept his ground.”

Omer ibn Sa`d shouted to everyone saying, “This is the son of the quarrelsome one, the one with the stomach! This is the son of the killer of the Arabs! Attack him from all directions!” Four thousand arrows were at once shot at him, and he was forced to alight from his horse. Al-Husayn (†) shouted at them, “O followers of Abu Sufyan! If you have no religion at all, and yet you fear the returning to your Maker, then at least you should remain free in your life, and you should go back to your lineage, if you are Arabs as you claim!”

Al-Shimr addressed him saying, “What are you, son of Fatima (†), saying?” He (†) said, “I am the one who is fighting you, and women are not held accountable; so, keep your rogues away from them and stop them from harming my women as long as I am alive.”

Said he: “Face me, not my women,
My time is come, destiny is done.”

Al-Shimr said, “We shall grant you that.”

He became the target of the fighters, and the fighting intensified. His thirst intensified, too. From the direction of the Euphrates, he attacked `Amr ibn al-Hajjaj who was surrounded by four thousand men, clearing them from the water and forcing his horse into the river. When his horse was about to drink, al-Husayn (†) said to it, “You are thirsty, and so am I, yet I shall not drink before you.” The horse raised his head as if he understood what the Imam (†) had said to him. When al-Husayn (†) stretched his hand to drink, a man asked him, “Do you enjoy water while the sanctity of your women has been violated?” He, therefore, spilled the water and did not drink then went in the direction of the tent.

---


3 Ibn Tawus, Al-Luhuf, p. 67.

4 al-Majlisi, Bihār al-Anwār, Vol. 10, p. 204. `Abdullāh Nūr-Allāh al-Bahrānī, Maqtal al-ʿAwālim, p. 98. Nafs al-Mahmūm, p. 188. Al-Khaṣaʾis al-Husainiyya, p. 46, in a chapter dealing with animal characteristics. But I cannot vouch for the accuracy of this statement alleging the horse’s refusal to drink water and al-Husayn (†) spilling water from his hand merely on account of what his enemies had said. He was fully aware of the fact that what they said was nothing but a trick. But the attributes of that day with regard to the Master of Martyrs and those in his company remaining thirsty are beyond our knowledge, and we have no choice except to take it for granted that the Imam (†) was wise in his actions and speeches, doing exactly what his grandfather (†), who never spoke out of his own inclination, had instructed him. All issues relevant to the Battle of al-Taff are confined, in their circumstances and sites, to mysteries and reasons which only the Lord of the World, Exalted is He, knows. There is something else which was observed by the Master of Martyrs, something the Arabs used to die for, and that was: protecting the ladies with their lives. Abu `Abdullāh (†) was the master of the Arabs and the son of their master. He was never unaware of such a tribute for which he would sacrifice everything precious. When a man shouted out telling him that the sanctity of the ladies had been violated, he refused to drink water in order to let everyone know his deep concern about his honour. Had he paid no heed for the call, people would have concluded that he was lacking in his Arabian manliness, something which the Father of the Oppressed would never have done even if he knew that the call was untrue. The action of the master of the men of honour, his having abstained from drinking even a little of water, is a feat for which a man would receive the highest praise.
Their blood quenches the earth's thirst
As his insides from thirst were burning.
Had the burning of his heart been made manifest,
The most solid of objects would be melting.
The heavens mourns him with blood.
Had it only wept water for his thirsty heart!
O how my heart burns for you,
O son of Muhammed's daughter!
O how the foes were able to achieve their goals!
They prohibited you from reaching
The Euphrates river all the while,
So, may people after you never enjoy
The Euphrates or the Nile.¹

THE SECOND FAREWELL

Then he (çı), bade his family farewell for the second time, ordering them to be patient. He put on the outer mantles as he said, “Get ready for the affliction, and be advised that Allâh Almighty shall protect and safeguard you, and He shall save you from the evil of the enemies and make the ultimate end of your affair good. He shall torment your enemy with various types of torture, and He shall compensate you for this trial with many sorts of bliss and honour; so, do not complain, nor should you say anything that may demean your status.”²

Indeed, anyone may say that that was the most critical situation the Master of Martyrs had to face that day³. The ladies who were raised in the lap of Prophethood saw then the pillar of their security, the bulwark of their protection, the defender of their prestige, and the symbol of their honour telling them of a departure from which he would never return, so they did not know who would after him protect them from the oppression of the foes or who would be their solace once he is gone. No wonder, then, that they all assembled and surrounded him, holding to his clothes as the children were moaning, being stunned by the situation, and little girls kept begging for security against their fear while others kept begging for water. How, then, would have been the condition of the master of those endowed with a conscience and the example of affection as he saw, through his vast knowledge, the trustees of the Message and the ladies who descended from the Infallible Ones, who had never known before anything but honour and prestige, now running in this empty desert wailing, crying in a way that splits the most solid of stones, sighing most depressingly...? They were in a constant danger of being plundered and beaten, having none to protect them besides the Imâm (çı) whom fatigue had exhausted.

Had Job suffered as he did for one day
He would surely have stood to say:
“‘This one is he whose calamity
“Is greater than what happened to me.”

¹Excerpted from a poem by Ayatullah Shaikh Muhammed Husain Kâshif al-Ghiîlâ’, may Allâh have mercy on him.
²al-Majlisi, Jalâ’ al-‘Uyûn (in Persian).
³This is evident from the will of the truthful lady, al-Zahrâ’ (çı), as recorded by al-Majlisi, may Allâh elevate his status. In this text, the author refers to the agony of her children at bidding her farewell. It is also recorded in Vol. 1 of al-Nawari's book Dûr al-Salâm.
As for the wise lady of Banū Hashim, namely Zainab al-Kubra, she saw all of that. We see how the secure niche of the religion was about to be dislocated, the rope of Prophethood to be cut off, the lantern of the Shari`a to be put out, and the tree of Imāmate to wither.

The mighty lions mourn their young,
And their saviour when calamity overwhels
Mourning them with blood, so tell the burning heart
How the red sigh does ascend.
It yearned but its yearning is crying,
And it mourns, but its mourning is only by sign.¹

Al-Husain (‡) turned to his daughter Sukayna who was described by al-Hasan II as one “who was always overcome by a deep meditation upon Allāh,” finding her staying aloof from the other women, crying, wailing. He stood to ask her to be patient and to solace her. His condition could best be described in these verses:

This is my farewell, my dear one, and we shall meet
On the Day of Judgment at the Pool of Kawthar
So bid your tears good-bye and come to greet
And enjoy the fruits of your patience forever.
And when you do see me lying on the ground
Bleeding, bear it and do not be by tears bound.²

It was then that `Omer ibn Sa`d said to his men, “Woe unto you! Attack him, since he is distracted and surrounded by his women! By Allāh! Should he direct his full attention to you, your right wing will not be separated from the left!” They, therefore, assailed him with their arrows till the arrows reached his camp and some of them pierced through the clothes of some of the women, causing them to be stunned and frightened. They screamed and entered the tent as they looked at al-Husain (‡) to see what he would do. Al-Husain (‡) attacked the enemy like an angry lion. Anyone who could catch up with him he stabbed with his sword and killed as he was receiving the arrows from all directions, bracing them with his chest and neck.³

He went back to his quarters profusely repeating this statement: La hawla wala quwwata illa billāh al-ʿaliyy al-azīm (There is no might nor power except in Allāh, the Sublime, the Great.)⁴ In such a condition, he asked for some water. Al-Shimr said to him, “You shall not have a taste of it till you reach the Fire.” A man shouted at him saying: “O Husain! Do not you see how the Euphrates water is as clear as the snakes' bellies? You shall not taste of it till you die of thirst.” Al-Husain (‡) said, “O Allāh! Do cause him to die of thirst.” That particular man, to be sure, kept asking for water ever since, and water was always brought to him, yet it would come out of his mouth and never goes down, and he kept doing so till he died of thirst.⁵

¹From a poem by Kāshīf al-Ghiṭā’, may Allāh sanctify him.

²From a poem by the orator Shaikh Muslim son of the orator Shaikh Muhammed Ali al-Jābirī al-Najafi, may Allāh Almighty have mercy on both of them.

³Ibn Nama, Mūṯūr al-Aḥzān.

⁴Ibn Ṭawūs, Al-Luhāf, p. 67.


228
Abul-Hutaf al-Ju`fi shot al-Husain (ـ) with an arrow in his forehead which he pulled out, causing blood to run on his face. The Imam (ـ) said, “O Allah! You see in what condition I am with regard to Your servants, these disobedient ones! O Allah! Decrease their number, kill them and leave none of them on the face of earth, and do not ever forgive them.”

In a loud voice did al-Husain (ـ) shout, “O nation of evil! It is, indeed, evil the way how you succeeded in faring with his ‘Itrat! You shall not kill anyone after me and contemplate on the consequences of killing him; rather, you will think very lightly of it once you have killed me. By Allah! I hope that Allah will grant me the honour of martyrdom then will He seek revenge on my behalf from whence you know not.”

Al-Hasin said to the Imam (ـ), “And how will He seek revenge on our behalf on you, O son of Fatima?!” The Imam (ـ) answered, “He will cause you all to kill one another and thus get your blood spilled, then shall He pour His torment upon you in the most painful manner.”

Having become too feeble to fight, he stood to rest. It was then that a man threw a stone at him, hitting his forehead and causing his blood to run down his face. He took his shirt to wipe his blood from his eyes just as another man shot him with a three-pronged arrow which pierced his chest and settled in his heart. He instantly said, “In the Name of Allah, through Allah, and on the creed of the Messenger of Allah [do I die].” Raising his head to the heavens, he said, “Lord! You know that they are killing a man besides whom there is no other son of Your Prophet's daughter!” As soon as he took the arrow out of his back, blood gushed forth like a drain pipe. He placed his hand on his wound and once his hand was filled with blood, he threw it above saying, “Make what has happened to me easy for me; it is being witnessed by Allah.” Not a single drop of that blood fell on the ground. Then he put it back a second time and it was again filled with blood. This time he rubbed it on his face and beard as he said, “Thus shall I appear when I meet my Lord and my grandfather the Messenger of Allah (ـ), drenched in my blood. It is then that I shall say: 'O grandfather! So-and-so killed me.'”

In the al-Hajeer he fell on the ground,
Under the swords and their every sharp edge.
The stars stood motionless when he fell,
And their motions turned still.
In them the Spirit mourned him as he said.
Sadly echoing the bereaved one's heart:
O conscience of Allah's ghayb, how could you
Be the victims of their very spears?
They pierced from behind His preserved veil,
And swords struck your forehead and they

5(...continued)
also on p. 203, Vol. 10, of Bihār al-Anwār, where al-Muṣfī is quoted, and also according to Ibn Tawūs and Ibn Nāma, when thirst took its toll on him, al-Husain (ـ) went to the Euphrates, but he was not permitted to reach its water.


Without your right hand would have had no right.
You were not, when you were killed, weak in might,
But no help came to your rescue
O by your blood-stained beard, gray in hue,
It is the most glorious of every right hand,
Had you preferred at all in your stand,
The fates would have made everything
Precious for you as though it were nothing,
Or if you had wished your foes to be wiped out,
None of them would have remained on the ground.
You would have removed them from every land,
And you would have raised death-conquering hosts,
So none would remain to light a fire
Nor to build a fort nor a highway,
But a band invited you to spend your all
When their misguidance spread what was buried before.
So you saw that meeting with your Lord
Sacrificing for Him would surely be
Better than to live in misery.
You took to patience even as the deer from thirst on fire
Striking every valiant in a way melting every heart,
And the lances, like ribs, over you bend,
And the white swords over you like lids descend.

So your life did you spend among folks
Who tried to subject you to their yokes,
Folks who are your enemy and mine,
Born in the most vile of womb and of loin.¹

Bleeding soon sapped his strength, so he sat down on the ground, feeling his head being too heavy. Malik ibn al-Nisr noticed his condition, so he taunted him then dealt him a stroke with his sword on the head. Al-Husain (e) was wearing a burnoose which soon became full of blood. Al-Husain (e) said, “May you never be able to eat nor drink with your right hand, and may Allah gather you among the oppressors.” Having said so, the dying Imam (e) threw his burnoose away and put on a turban on top of his capuche cap.²

MUHAMMED IBN ABU SA’ID

Hāni ibn Thabit al-Hadrami has said, “I was standing with nine other men when al-Ḥusain (e) was killed. It was then that I looked and saw one of the children from al-Husain's family wearing a robe and a shirt, and in his ears there were two rings. He held a post from those buildings and stood startled looking right and left. A man came running. Having come close to that child, the man leaned from his horse and killed that

¹This poem is published in the diwan of Sayyid Hayder al-Hilli, may Allah have mercy on him.
That child was Muhammed ibn Abu Sa`id ibn `Aqil ibn Abu Ta'lib. His mother, dazed and stunned, kept looking at him as the incident unfolded before her very eyes...

`ABDULLAH SON OF AL-HASAN (ε)

The enemies of Allah waited for a short while then returned to al-Husain (ε) whom they surrounded as he sat on the ground unable to stand. `Abdullah son of Imam al-Hasan (ε), grandson of the Prophet (µs), who was then eleven years old, looked and saw how his uncle was being surrounded by those people, so he came running towards him. Zainab wanted to restrain him but he managed to evade her and to reach his uncle. Bahr ibn Ka`b lowered his head to strike al-Husain (ε), so the child shouted, “O son of the corrupt woman, are you going to strike my uncle?” The man dealt a blow from his sword which the child received with his hand, cutting it off. The child cried in agony, “O uncle!” Then he fell in the lap of al-Husain (ε) who hugged him and said, “O son of my brother! Be patient with regard to what has befallen us, and consider it as goodness, for Allah, the most Exalted, will make you join your righteous ancestors.” Then he (ε) raised his hands and supplicated saying, “O Allah! Let them enjoy themselves for some time then divide them and make them into parties, and do not let their rulers ever be pleased with them, for they invited us to support us, then they turned their backs to us and fought us.”

Harmalah ibn Kahlil shot the child with an arrow, killing him as he sat in his uncle’s lap. Al-Husain (ε) remained lying on the ground for some time. Had those rogues wished to kill him, they could have done so, but each tribe relied on the other to do what it hated to do itself.

A planting field for the lances he became
A practice target for every blood-shedder,
Dusted whenever eyed by a valiant warrior,
Stealing, of fright, their very color,
Greater than him no war has shown,
As he was slain, turning each valiant a villain.
His forehead dusted, the heavens did think
That on the earth was its own Saturn.
Strange how I see, O stranger in the Taff,
How your cheeks use its heaps for a pillow.
Strange how unfairly you were slain by those
Whose fathers yours had bent, whose idols he broke.
Should you, may the world be your sacrifice,
Be starved, left scorched by thirst?

Al-Shimr shouted, “What are you standing like that for?! What do you expect the man to do since your arrows and spears have wounded him so heavily? Attack him!”

O sorrow how they charged from every side at him,
Hitting his sacred shoulders with blows,
That left him on the ground lying.

Zar'ah ibn Sharrık struck him on his left shoulder with his sword while al-Hasin shot him with an arrow which penetrated his mouth; another man struck him on the shoulder. Sinân ibn Anas stabbed him in his collar bone area of the chest then shot him with an arrow in the neck. Salih ibn Wahab stabbed him in the side.

Hilal ibn Na'fi' has said, “I was standing in front of al-Husain (Æ) as he was drawing his last breath. Never did I ever see anyone whose face looked better than him or more glowing as he was stained with his own blood! In fact, the light emanating from his face distracted me altogether from the thought of killing him! As he was in such a condition, he asked for some water to drink, but they refused to give him any.”

A man said to him, “You shall not taste of water till you reach hell from whose hot boiling water shall you drink.” He (Æ) said, “Am I the one who will reach it? Rather, I will reach my grandfather, the Messenger of Allah, and will reside with him in his abode of truth near an Omnipotent King, and I shall complain to him about what crimes you committed against me and what you have done to me.” They all became very angry. It is as if Allah did not leave one iota of compassion in their hearts.

Had only Ahmed seen you on the ground lying,
He would have spread for you his very insides,
Or had your mother, al-Zahrã’, seen your thirst at al-Taff,
She would have from her tears given you to drink.
How I wish none tastes of the Euphrates at all
So long as the Prophet's sons its waters desire
How many free ladies whose homes the foes did plunder!
How their insides shared the shame, I wonder!
They flee, yet they are by the foes pursued,
Like wild beasts the foes ensued,

She called upon her supporter and defender,
Who remained on a burning ground: to death did he surrender.¹

THE SUPPLICATION

When his condition worsened, al-Husain (إ) raised his eyes to the heavens and said,

O Allāh! Sublime You are, Great of Might, Omnipotent, Independent of all creation, greatly Proud, Capable of doing whatever You please, Forthcoming in mercy, True of Promise, Inclusive of Blessings, Clement, Near to those who invoke Him, Subduing His creation, Receptive to Repentance, Able, Overpowering, Appreciative when thanked, Remembering those who remember Him! You do I call upon out of my want, and You do I seek out of need! From You do I seek help when in fear and cry when depressed! Your help do I seek in my weakness, and upon You do I rely! O Allāh! Judge between us and our people, for they deceived and betrayed us! They were treacherous to us, and they killed us though we are the ʾItrat of Your Prophet and the offspring of the one You love: Muhammed (ص) whom You chose for Your Message and entrusted with the revelation! Do find an ease for our affair and an exit, O most Merciful of all merciful ones!² Grant me patience to bear Your destiny, O Lord! There is no god but You! O Helper of those who seek help!³ I have no god besides You, nor do I adore anyone but You! Grant me to persevere as I face Your decree, O Helper of the helpless, O Eternal One Who knows no end, O One Who brings the dead back to life, O One Who rewards every soul as it earned, do judge between me and them; surely You are the best of judges.⁴

Had Ishmael to slaughter surrendered,
In the lap of the one who would to him have mercy,
Becoming Allāh's sacrifice and was not greeted by
White deer, nor did they shake his hands peacefully,
Husain patiently surrendered his soul
To be slain by the sword of his own oppressor,
And to defend Allāh's creed he surrendered his soul
And every precious one so its pillars would stand tall.
His ribs and body were by the steeds trampled upon
As his ladies on bare beasts to captivity borne.⁵

THE HORSE

¹Excerpted from a poem by Hujjatul-Islam Shaikh Muhammed Husain Kāshif al-Ghitā’.
⁴Riyyād al-Masā‘īb, p. 33.
⁵Excerpted from a poem by the authority Shaikh Muḥammad Taqī Al Șāhib al-Jawāhir.
His horse came circling around him, rubbing his head on his blood.\(^1\) It was then that Ibn Sa`d shouted, “The horse! Get the horse, for it is one of the horses of the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ)!” Horsemen surrounded that horse which kept kicking with its front legs, killing forty riders and ten horses. Ibn Sa`d then said, “Leave him and let us see what he does.” Once he felt secure, the horse went back to al-Husain (Ɂ) to rub his head on the Imam's blood as he sniffed him. He was neighing very loudly.\(^2\) Imam Abu Ja`fer al-Baqir (Ɂ) used to say that that horse was repeating these words: “Retribution! Retribution against a nation that killed the son of its Prophet's daughter!” The horse then went to the camp neighing likewise.\(^3\) When the women saw the horse without its rider and its saddle twisted, they went out, their hair spread out, beating their cheeks, their faces uncovered, screaming and wailing, feeling the humiliation after enjoying prestige, going in the direction of the place where al-Husain (Ɂ) had been killed.\(^4\)

One kneels in earnest at him to hug
While another covers him with a robe,
Another with the flow of his bleeding neck
Her faces does she for glory paint,
And another wishes she was his own sacrifice,
And another does not help kissing him.
Yet another out of fear seeks with his corpse refuge,
And another because of her calamity knows not what to do.\(^5\)

Umm Kulthūm, namely Zainab the wise, cried out, “O Muḥammad! O father! O Ali! O Ja`fer! O Hamzah! Here is Husain in the open slain in Kerbalā!’”\(^6\) Then Zainab said, “I wish the heavens had fallen upon the earth! I wish the mountains had crushed the valley!”\(^8\) She was near al-Husain (Ɂ) when `Omer ibn Sa`d came close to her flanked by some of his men. Al-Husain (Ɂ) was drawing his last breath. She cried out, “O `Omer! Should Abu `Abdullāh be killed as you look on?!” He turned his face away. His tears were flooding his beard.\(^9\) She said, “Woe unto you! Is there any Muslim man among you?” None answered her.\(^10\) Then `[`Omer] Ibn Sa`d shouted at people, “Alight and put him to rest!” Al-Shimr was the first to do so. He kicked the Imam (Ɂ) with his foot then sat on his chest and took hold of his holy beard. He dealt him twelve sword strokes.\(^11\) He then severed his sacred head...

---


\(^3\) \textit{Ibid}.

\(^4\) From the \textit{ziyārat} of the sacred area.

\(^5\) From a poem by al-Hājī Hāshim al-Ka`bi.


\(^7\) al-Tabari, \textit{Tārikh}, Vol. 6, p. 259.

\(^8\) Ibn Tāwūs, \textit{Al-Luhāf}, p. 73.


\(^10\) al-Mufīd, \textit{Al-Irshād}.

AL-ḤUSAIN (α) MAURAUADED

Those folks now took to maurauding the Imam (α). Ishāq ibn Hawayh took his shirt. Al-Akhnas ibn Murthid ibn ‘Alqamah al-Ḥadrāmī took his turban. Al-Aswād ibn Khālid took his sandals. Jam‘ ibn al-Khalīq al-Awdī, but some say a man from Tamūm named al-Aswād ibn Hanzalah, took his sword.

Bajdal came. He saw the Imam (α) wearing a ring covered with his blood. He cut his finger off and took the ring... Qays ibn al-Asḥ’ath took his velvet on which he since then used to sit, so he came to be called “Qays Qatefā.”2 The Imam (α)’s worn out garment was taken by Ja‘‘onah ibn Hawiyyah al-Ḥadrāmī. His bow and outer garments were taken by al-Rahlī ibn Khaythamah al-Ju‘fī, Hānī ibn Shabīb al-Ḥadrāmī and Jarīr ibn Mas‘ūd al-Ḥadrāmī.3 A man from among them wanted to take his underpants after all his other clothes had been taken away by others. This man said, “I wanted to take it off, but he had put his right hand on it which I could not lift; therefore, I severed his right hand... He then put his left hand on it which I also could not lift, so I severed it, too, and was about to bare him and take it off. It was then that I heard something like an earthquake, so I became frightened. I left him and fell into a swoon. While I was unconscious, I saw the Prophet (α), Ali, Fāṭima, and al-Ḥasan (α). Fāṭima was saying, ‘O son! They killed you! May Allāh kill them!’ He said to her, ‘O mother! This sleeping man has severed my right hand!’ She then invoked Allāh’s curse on me saying, ‘May Allāh cut your hands and legs, and may He blind you and hurl you into the fire!’ Indeed, I am now blind. My hands and legs have already been amputated, and nothing remains from her curse except the Fire.”4

O slain one snatched by death away,
Without being helped, without being supported,
They washed him with the blood of his every wound,
They shrouded him with the earth of the ground,
They killed him though they knew,
That he was the fifth of Ashāb al-Kisā’.
O Messenger of Allāh! O Fāṭima!
O Commander of the Faithful al-Murtada!
May Allāh's rewards for you be great,
For the one whose insides were killed
By thirst till he spent,
At Kerbalā’ he struck his tent,
Hardly he erected it before it was no more,
Dead mourned by Fāṭima, by her father and by Ali
The man for him testifies sublimity.
Had the Messenger of Allāh been after him raised,
He would have now been mourning him.
They carried a head whose grandfather they greet,
Be it is out of their free will, involuntarily,
Being handled by them as they pleased.
They neither honoured him nor sanctified...

---

1 Ibn Tawūs, Al-Luhāf, p. 73.
O Messenger of Allâh! If you only eyed
How they kept killing and taking captive,
How they were prohibited from enjoying any shade,
How their thirsty ones were met with the spears

How they were driven, stumbling, one following behind,
Another transported on a bare conveyance, how unkind!
Your eyes would have seen a sight
That would surely have grieved your insides
And would surely have been for your eyes a sore.
Such should not be how the Messenger of Allâh,
O nation of oppression and corruption, be treated
They slaughtered like sacrifices his offspring that day,
Then they drove his family like slaves away.
They kept calling upon the Messenger of Allâh
Whenever marching was hard, whenever they stumbled.¹

PART II

POST-MARTYRDOM EVENTS

O Kâfîans! Do you know what liver of the Messenger of Allâh (ـ) have you cut off? Do you know what blood you have shed? Which daughter of his have you frightened? What sanctity of his have you violated? Should you be surprised if the sky rains blood? Surely in the torment of the hereafter there is more shame, and they shall not be helped!

— “Umm Kulthûm” Zainab

THE ELEVENTH NIGHT

And what a night it was for the daughters of the Messenger of Allâh (ـ) whom lofty eminence never forsook ever since they were born! It was only yesterday that they lived in the pavilions of greatness and the chambers of dignity, lit during the day by the sun of Prophethood and during the night by the star of caliphate and by the lanterns emitting the radiance of sanctity. During this night, they were left in the pitch dark, having lost those shining lights, their belongings plundered, their chambers burnt, fear overwhelming them. They remained among the corpses of those who used to be their protectors. Now they have neither protectors nor defenders. They do not know anyone who could defend them if they were to be attacked, or who would repel those who might terrorize them, or who would calm and pacify those who have lost their loved ones. Yes, there were among them children crying in anguish. There were mothers of children waned by the arrows, sisters of those who were martyred, mothers who lost their sons. And they were mourning their dear ones. Next to them were body parts amputated, corpses slashed and cut, necks covered with blood. And they were in a desolate

¹From a poem by al-Sharîf al-Râdi, may Allâh elevate his status.
desert... Behind the low marshes stood the army of treachery savouring its “victory”: the recklessness of winners and the meanness of vanquishers. Besides all of this, they did not know what the morning would bring them and what the caller would announce. Will he announce their slaughter, or will they be taken captive? None other than the ailing Imām ( المختلف ) could defend them, had he only been able to defend himself against the danger of being killed.

A nurse set out to suckle her infant
With feelings that caused her infant to die of patience.
She saw his cradle, with grief after him overflowing,
And it used to overflow with happiness.
And her breast with her pure milk is weighed
For her infant used to overflow.
Swiftly to the infant's resting place did she go,
Perhaps she would find in him some life so he would suckle,
But she only saw a corpse at a slaughter place,
In it an arrow rested that killed the neck,
So she yearned and over him knelt
With her ribs to shade him from the heat.
She hugged him, though dead,
And from his spilled blood she dyed her chest.
And she wished, having seen his cheeks covered with blood
That with his arrow her own cheeks were split.
Over his grave she poured her heart
With feelings overflowing.
She now eulogizes him with the best of verse.
She sings lullabies once and once she
Hugs his corpse that decorated the pearl.
And she often kneels down and sniffs
Where his neck was slit and then kisses him again,
So how miserable you are and how bereaved
With the like of your tears did al-Khansa’ mourn Sakhr!
Of her emotions and yearnings she had that day
A cage for eternity from which the bird had flown away...¹

Vexation overwhelmed the world of the domain and of the unseen; the hūris in the chambers of Paradise were crying, and so were the angels in the strata between the heavens, as the jinns mourned.²

Ibn Abul-Hadid says, “’Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād built four mosques in Basra to disseminate hatred towards Ali ibn Abu Ṭālib ( المختلف ),”³

¹Excerpted from a poem eulogizing al-Husain ( VARIANT ) by the authority Shaikh `Abd al-Mun`im al-Farṣūsī.


This is not how to reward Allāh's Messenger
O nation of oppression and corruption!
Had the Messenger of Allāh lived after him,
He would have today mourned him exceedingly.

Umm Salamah saw the Messenger of Allāh (ص) in a vision\(^1\) with his hair looking quite untidy, dusty, with earth soil on his head. She asked him, “O Messenger of Allāh! Why do I see your hair looking so untidy and dusty?” “My son,” he (ص) said, “has been killed, and I have not yet finished digging his grave and those of his companions.”\(^2\) She woke up terrified and looked at the bottle containing a specimen of the soil of Kerbalā'. She found it boiling in blood.\(^3\) It was the bottle given to her by the Prophet (ص) who ordered her to keep it. Moreover, she heard in the depth of the night a caller mourning al-Husain (ع) saying

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{O killers of al-Husain out of ignorance} \\
&\text{Receive the news of your torture and annihilation.} \\
&\text{The son of David had cursed you} \\
&\text{And so did Moses and the man of the Gospel.} \\
&\text{All the people of the heavens condemn you} \\
&\text{Every prophet, every messenger, and every martyr.}\(^4\)
\end{align*}
\]

In fact, she heard in the depth of the night other voices mourning al-Husain (ع) but could not see them. Among the poetry she had heard was the following:

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{O eyes! This is a day for your tears} \\
&\text{Receive the news of your torture and annihilation.} \\
&\text{Every prophet, every messenger, and every martyr.} \\
&\text{This is not how to reward Allāh.} \\
&\text{O vision of oppression and corruption!} \\
&\text{Had the Messenger of Allāh lived after him,} \\
&\text{He would have today mourned him exceedingly.}
\end{align*}
\]

\(^1\)On p. 38, Vol. 3, of his book Al-Kāmil, Ibn al-Athīr says, “This can be established if we agree that she lived more than fifty years.” Ibn Na‘īm, as quoted in her biography stated on p. 460, Vol. 4, of Ibn Hajar al-‘Asqalānī's book Al-Isāba, says, “She died in 62 A.H./882 A.D.; she was the last of the mothers of the believers [to die].” According to al-Wāqīḍi, she died in 59 A.H./679 A.D. On p. 362, Vol. 2, of al-Nawawī's Tahthīb al-‘Asmā’, Ahmed ibn Abu Khaythamah is quoted as saying that she died during the reign of Yazīd ibn Mu‘āwiyyah. On p. 137, Vol. 1, of Mir‘ūd al-Jīnī, al-Yāfī’s, the author, says, “Umm Salamah, mother of the faithful, died in 61 A.H. (681 A.D.).” In his book Al-Biḍāya, Ibn Kathīr, in agreement with al-Wāqīḍi, says that the above-cited traditions relevant to al-Husain's martyrdom indicate that she lived till after his death. Al-‘Aynī, who explains p. 427, Vol. 1, of al-Bukhārī's Sahih, where the latter discusses the qunūt, says, “Umm Salamah died in Shawwal of 59 A.H. (August of 679 A.D.).” On p. 341, Vol. 4, of Tahthīb Tārikh Ibn ‘Asākir, al-Wāqīḍi is quoted as saying that Umm Salamah died three years before al-Husain's martyrdom. In his book Al-Kāfī, al-Mufīd cites Ahl al-Bayt (ع) saying that al-Husain (ع) had entrusted the nation's treasures to her in order to pass them on to Zayn al-‘Ābidīn (ع). On p. 142, Vol. 2, of al-Thahbī’s book Siyar A‘lām al-Nubalā’, al-Thahbī says, “Umm Salamah, wife of the Messenger of Allāh (ص), was the last to die from among the mothers of the faithful. She lived till the news of the martyrdom of al-Husain (ع) reached her. She was shaken, and she fainted. She grieved for him a great deal, remaining only for a short while thereafter before departing to Allāh, the most Exalted One.” On p. 146 of the same book, Shahr is quoted as saying, “I came to Umm Salamah to offer my condolences on the death of al-Husain (ع).”


\(^4\)These verses are recorded on p. 341, Vol. 4, of Ibn ‘Asākir’s Tārikh.
So cry hard and spare not.
Who after me shall the martyrs mourn
Over folks led by their fates
To a tyrant in the reign of slaves?1

On the day of `Ashūra, Ibn `Abbās saw the Messenger of Allāh (ﷺ) in a vision with his hair looking very untidy, and he was holding a bottle of blood. He said to him, “May my parents be sacrificed for your sake! What is this?!” “This is the blood of al-Husain (τ) and of his companions;” he said, adding, “I have been collecting it, and I have not yet finished doing so.”2

They kept al-Husain's naked corpse on the ground for three days although he was the essence of existence itself, being part of the Prophet (ﷺ) who is the cause of all causes, the one whose light was derived from the holiest light of the Most Holy One. Three days saw nothing but total darkness, and all this continued for three long days. Nobody should be surprised at seeing the light of the sun diminishing during the period when the master of the youths of Paradise was left naked on the ground, for he is the cause in the cosmos running due to what you have come to know of his being derived from the very truth of Muhammed (ﷺ), the truth which is the cause of all causes.

---


9Ibn Qawlawayh, Kāmil al-Ziyārāt, p. 77. This is the same as our statement saying that it was pitch dark for three days.
and the first reason. It is due to the tradition, which confirms the same, and which is related to how the responsibility of wilāya was offered to everything in existence: whoever accepted it would surely benefit therefrom, and whoever refused would be deprived.

If the talk about the cosmos undergoing some change on account of the birth of a great prophet till the heavens are filled with clouds, and that it rained when a Christian scholar at Surra-man-Rāʾā [Samarrāʾ]1 prayed for rain, although he did not uncover the body of the prophet [but only a bone of whose body he was holding], nor were his limbs cut off; so, how could it not undergo a change, or why should not the sunlight or the moonlight not be obliterated when the [corpse of the] Master of the Youths of Paradise was left on the ground after being mutilated?

Why did not the heavens when he was killed not collide?
Why did the earth when he fell not crack?
I after him excuse the moon of the morn
If it does not appear, and if the sun does not shine.
And the comet if let loose and their clouds, too,
If they departed, and if the beasts do not graze,
And the water if not pure and the trees
If they do not blossom, and the birds
If they do not sing at all,
And the wind if it does not blow
Except becoming storms and gales
And water shall I never drink near him
But stay grieved, heart-rent.
May the foes shoot my heart with a fateful blow
If what the most Exalted Glory did would not let me grieve so.

Borne on a bare and lean hump stayed,
If I ever forget how his offspring were conveyed.2

Yes! The condition of everything changed, and all beings were altered. The wild beasts mourned him with tears in their eyes. The Commander of the Faithful (ṣ) has said, “By my parents! Al-Husain (ṣ) will be killed in the outskirts of Kūfa. It is as if I can see the wild beasts stretching their necks on his grave mourning him all night long till the morning.”3 And it rained blood4. Water urns and jars and every other container was

---

1al-Rawandi, Al-Kharʾij, p. 64 (Indian edition), where the miracles of Imām al-Ḥasan al-ʿAskari (ṣ), are discussed.

2Excerpted from a poem by Shaikh Muhammed son of Sharīf son of Falāḥ al-Kāzimi, author of the Karrārī poem in praise of the Commander of the Faithful which he had written in 1166 A.H./1753 A.D. and which eighteen of his contemporary poets critiqued. This one totals 39 lines as compiled by the authority al-Amīn, author of Al-Ghadīr.

3Ibn Qawlawayḥ, Kāmil al-Ziyārāt, p. 80.

filled with blood. For a long time did its stain remain on houses and walls. Whenever a stone was removed, blood was found underneath it, even in Jerusalem.

When the head was brought into the governor's mansion, the mansion's walls dripped blood and a fire broke out from a number of its walls. That fire ran in the direction of `Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād who, noticing it, ordered those who were in his company to keep what they had seen to themselves. He fled away from it. It was then that the holy head spoke loudly saying, “Where are you running to, O cursed one?! If it does not reach you in this life, the Fire shall be your abode in the hereafter.” The head kept speaking till the fire was out. Everyone in the mansion was amazed.

For two or three months did the people see the walls stained with blood at sunrise and at sunset. Another incident is that of a raven stained with the blood of al-Husain. It flew to Medina and fell on the walls of the house where Fatima, the youngest daughter of al-Husain, was living at the time. She used this incident as a theme in mourning the killing of her father [before its news reached Medina] when she mourned him to the people of Medina, they said, “Here she is reviving the witchcraft of `Abd al-Muttalib's offspring!” It was not long before the news of his martyrdom came. This is narrated by the most eloquent among all the orators of Khawārizm, namely Ahmed ibn Mekki who died in 568 A.H./1173 A.D. as we read on p. 92, Vol. 2, of his book *Maqta al-Husain*. This coincident should not surprise anyone especially when we come to know the fact that al-Husain had another daughter besides Fatima and Sukayna.

Al-Husain's martyrdom was surrounded with super-natural events. It is as though the Almighty, the most Exalted One, wanted then to inform the nation, as well as the succeeding generations, to be acquainted with this epic the like of which has never been witnessed. He wanted to inform them about the extent of cruelty of the Umayyads in dealing with Abu `Abdullāh, the man who sacrificed his all for the sake of the Divine Call. This implies attracting everyone's attention to the status al-Husain enjoys with Allāh, and that his killing will refute all misguidance and will herald the revival of the creed, the survival of which was desired by the Lord of the World, till the Day the dead shall be resurrected.

Du`bal al-Khuza`i narrated a story which he traces back to his grandfather thus:


---

to the mother of Ma`bid al-Khuzâ’i had long been dead. The Prophet ( ﷺ) happened to make his ablution there and he poured the left-overs of his ablution water under that tree. Through such a blessing, the tree was brought back to life: it became green once more, and its produce was quite bountiful. When the Prophet ( ﷺ) died, its produce decreased a great deal, and when the Commander of the Faithful (ع) was killed, all its fruit fell at once on the ground. People continued to use its leaves as a medicine. After some time, they looked at it and noticed how its trunk was literally bleeding. They were terrified for having seen something nobody else had ever seen. When the night brought the mantle of its darkness, they heard someone weeping and wailing without seeing anyone at all. They heard another voice saying:

O martyr, and martyr is his uncle, too
The best of uncles, Ja`fer al-Tayyãr
Strange how a polished one dared to hit you
On the face, and dust had covered you.

It was not long after having witnessed such an odd phenomenon that news came of the killing of al-Husain (ع). Du`bal al-Khuzâ’i dedicated three lines of poetry complementing the above wherein he said,

Visit the best of graves in Iraq
And disobey the ass, for whoever forbade you is an ass
Why should I not visit you, O Husain?
May my life be sacrificed for you,
And may my people and everyone to me dear.
All do not at all with you compare,

For you there is love in the hearts of the wise
Your foe is annihilated; him do we despise.²

The meaning of the second line was borrowed by a Shi`a poet of old and reworded in three lines [the rough translation of which runs thus]:

How strange should a sword blow be dealt to you
On the day when dust high and wide flew!
And strange how arrows snatched you from the ladies
Who called upon your grandfather with tears abundant.
Why did not someone the arrows break?
Should your holy and exalted body them overtake?³

In fact, anyone who touched the sassafran which had been plundered [from Husain's family] was burnt thereby and reduced to ashes. The taste of the meat of the camels which they had looted was more bitter than that of

---

¹On pp. 588-590 of my book titled Allah: The Concept of God in Islam (Qum, Islamic Republic of Iran: Ansâriyan Publications, 1997), as well as on the preceding pages, I provided more details about this miracle. -Tr.


³This poem is recorded on p. 380, Vol. 2, of Ibn Shahr Êshûb's book Al-Manãqib.
colocynth, and they saw fire coming out of it. Nobody had ever seen the sky turning red except on the day when al-Husain (шей) was killed. Ibn al-Jawzi has said,

Whenever anyone among the people was angry, anger left permanent physical marks on his face. Since the Truth, Exalted is He, is far above having a physical form to manifest to people, He manifested His wrath for the killing of al-Husain (шей) through the redness of the horizon on account of the magnanimity of the crime committed... The Prophet (نبي) could not sleep as he heard the moaning of his uncle, al-'Abbās ibn 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib, who had been taken captive and who was tied during the battle of Badr; so, what would his condition have been had he heard the moaning of al-Husain (шей)? When Wahshi, Hamzah's killer, embraced Islam, the Prophet (نبي) said to him, “Get your face away from my sight, for I do not like to see the killer of my loved ones.” This was so despite the fact that Islam wipes out whatever sins one had committed prior to accepting the faith; so, what would his condition have been had he seen the person who killed his [grand]son and who transported his family on camels' bare humps?3

Yes! The [soul of the] Messenger of Allāh (نبي) did, indeed, attend and witness the huge host which was bent on eradicating his family from the face of earth, and he saw the wailing of the orphans and the sobbing of the ladies who had lost their loved ones, and he heard the cries of the children because of thirst. In fact, the army heard a thunderous voice saying, “Woe unto you, O people of Kufa! I see the Messenger of Allāh (نبي) eying you, once looking at you, and once looking at the heavens, holding his holy beard!” But the desires and the misguidance which have taken control of the souls of that greedy host inspired to them that it was just “a mad man” [who was calling]. The crowd among them shouted, “Let it not frighten you!” Abu 'Abdullāh, Imām al-Ṣādiq (نبي), used to say, “I do not think that that voice came from anyone another than Gabriel.”4

Some angels shouted, “O nation that has become confused and misguided after its Prophet! May Allāh never accept your Adha nor Fitr [Eid] prayers!” Imām al-Ṣādiq (نبي) has said, “By Allāh! There is no doubt at all that they were not successful, nor will they ever be, till a revolutionary rises for [the offspring of] al-Husain (шей).”5

Suppose John's blood on the ground did boil, Husain's blood in the hearts did indeed boil. Should Bucht-Nuzzar of old seek for John revenge? His justice was indeed fully redressed, But the blood of the Prophet's grandson shell not Calm down before al-Qā‘im,

---

5. al-Ṣādiq, Man la Yahduruhu al-Faqīh, p. 148.
By Allāh's leave, seeks his revenge.¹

Shaikh al-Bahā’i has narrated saying that his father, Shaikh Husain ibn ʿAbd al-Samad al-Ḥārithi, entered Kāfā's mosque once and found a carnelian stone upon which these lines were written:

I am jewels from the heavens, so scatter me
When the parents of the Prophet's grandson betrothed;
More clear than silver I once used to be
Now my color is that of al-Husain's blood.²

THE ELEVENTH NIGHT IN THE COMPANY
OF AL-HUSAIN (ﻫ)

A nyone who follows the path of the Infallible Imāms, peace be upon them, will surely feel very grieved if he had the opportunity to spend the eleventh night at the grave of the oppressed Imām (ﻫ). Signs of disappointment and depression as well as grief will have painted their marks on his face upon witnessing such a tremendous calamity. He would have heard the moaning and groaning, the sighs and cries of those whom al-Husain (ﻫ) had left behind. He would have closely witnessed the corpses of the Progeny of Muhammed (ﻫ), who had sacrificed themselves for Islam, lying on the ground drenched in their blood as the wind blew upon them in that wilderness: parts cut off by the spears, from whose blood swords drank, and whatever was left was crushed under the horses' hooves...

Whoever had the chance to come close to the ladies, who grew up in the home of revelation, would find them shedding their tears on those sacred corpses. The women were crying, sobbing, beating their chests, their hair protruding on their faces³. He would then console them with his own incessant tears, with his loud cries and generous grief.

It goes without saying that such a grief is related to the truthful one, Fāṭima al-Zahrā’ (ﻫ), to consoling her, and to fulfilling the wish of the Imāms of Guidance, peace be upon them, according to many traditions reported in all such circumstances.

There are traditions from which one may derive such a conclusion if he only contemplates upon them. For example, there is a tradition reported by Mālik al-Juhni who quotes Imām al-Bāqir Abu Jaʿfer al-Sādiq (ﻫ) saying, “Whoever visits al-Husain's grave on ʿAshura and remains there mourning will meet Allāh on the Day of Judgment receiving the rewards due to two million performances of the ḥajj and two million performances of the ʿumra and two million campaigns in the company of the Messenger of Allāh and the Guided Imāms.”⁴

Scholars of Arabic who examined the original text of this statement conclude that all such rewards are

¹Excerpted from a poem by the ʿallāma Shaikh Muhammed Taqi al-Jawhari.

²Excerpted from a poem recorded on p. 17 of the Indian edition of the Kashkūl of Shaikh Yousuf al-Bahrāni.

³On p. 282, Vol. 2, of his book Tahthīb al-Taḥthīb, at the end of a chapter dealing with nathrs, Shaikh al-Tūsī quotes Imām al-Sādiq (ﻫ) saying, “The ladies who descended from Fāṭima (ﻫ) tore their pockets as they grieved and beat their cheeks. It is for al-Husain (ﻫ) that the cheeks should be beaten and the pockets torn.”

⁴Ibn Qawlawayh, Kāmil al-Ziyārāt, p. 174.
due to one who remains there all day long till the night even if he does not spend the night there. But Jabir al-
Ju`fi's tradition, wherein he quotes Abu `Abdullah [Imam Ja`fer al-Sadiq] (/popper), sheds a light that may help
understand it better. He has said, “One who visits al-Husain's grave [shrine] and spends a night there will be as
though he had been martyred in his company.”¹ This statement apparently implies staying there for one night
prior to spending the day at his grave-site.

Discerning this tradition will let one conclude that one who stays at the grave of the one who sacrificed
himself for Islam, and who did so suffering from thirst, for a full day, ought not depart from there during the
[eleventh] night the like of which had never been witnessed by the daughters of the Messenger of Allah (µs) and
the trust of the caliphate. They were left behind in the desert by shining moons and by the elite from among the
men of honour. Beside them lay the parts that the swords of oppression and misguidance had cut off. They were
frightened, not knowing what to expect from the enemies of Allah and of His Messenger. One who pays homage
to them and who spends that night at al-Husain's grave will demonstrate through his grief and mourning his
sadness for being too late to come to his aid and to earn the greatest salvation. He would keep repeating the
statement saying: *Ya laytana kunna ma`akum fa nafooza fawzan azeema*, “How we wish we were with you so
we would earn a great achievement.”² He would console the Lady of all Women (ış) who mourned her son who
was forbidden from drinking water. Tharra, the mourner, saw her once in a vision standing at al-Husain's grave
weeping, and she ordered Tharra to eulogize her son (ış) with these lines:

O eyes! Overflow and do not dry
And do over the one killed at Taff cry.
They left his body in every place hit,
But I could not, alas, tend to it.

No, nor was he sick at all...³

Abu Ali, al-Muhsin ibn Ali al-Tanakh, the judge, quotes his father saying, “Abul-Hassan, the scribe, inquired
once about who the son of the mourner was. Nobody in the meeting place at Karkh⁴ knew the answer besides
myself. I asked him, `What is the context of the question?' He said, `I have a bondmaid who fasts and who
recites *tahajjud* quite often, yet she cannot [besides] correctly pronounce even one Arabic word! Moreover, she
even quotes poetry, and her accent is heavily Nabatean. Last night, she woke up terrified, trembling. Her bed
was close to mine. She cried out to me, `O father of al-Hasan! Come help me!' I asked her what was wrong with
her. She said, `I performed my prayers and supplications then went to bed. I saw myself walking in one of the
Karkh alleys. Soon I saw a clean room, white and beautiful, decorated with teak wood, and its door was open.
There were women standing in it whom I asked about who had died and about what the matter was. They
pointed to the interior of the house, so I entered and found a clean and most beautiful room. In its courtyard
stood a young woman who was the best, the most radiating, the most beautiful woman I have ever seen. She was
wrapped in white clothes, and in her lap there was a head bleeding. I asked her, `Who are you?' She said, `Never
mind..., I am Fatima daughter of the Messenger of Allah (µs), and this is the head of my son al-Husain (ış). Tell

¹Ibid., p. 137, Chapter 71.

²On p. 66 of Shaikh al-Saduq's book *Uyûn Akhbâr al-Rida*, a tradition is narrated about Imam al-Rida (ış) wherein he says to Ibn Shabib, “If you wish to make your abodes the chambers of Paradise in the company of the Prophet (µs), you should curse those who killed al-Husain (ış), and whenever you mention his name, you should say, `How I wish I had been with them so that I would achieve a great achievement!'”


⁴Baghdad's part on the east of the Tigris. It is the same part where the holy city of Kazimiyya is located.
Ibn Asda` on my behalf to eulogize him with this verse:

I did not dress his wound,  
No, nor was he sick at all.'

I, therefore, woke up frightened.”’ She was calmed down by the old lady in the house [apparently the mother of the narrator] till she was able to sleep. Abul-Hasa, the scribe, said to Ali al-Tanâkhi, “O father of al-Qâsim! Since you yourself know Ibn Asda`, you are now morally obligated to convey the message to him.” Al-Tanâkhi agreed saying, “I hear and I obey the order of the Lady of all the Women of the World, peace be upon her.”

All this happened during the month of Sha`bân when people were suffering a great deal from the persecution of the Hanbalis who resisted their going to al-Hâ`ir. I kept pleading to them till I was permitted to go. I reached al-Hâ`ir in the eve of the middle of Sha`bân. I kept inquiring about the whereabouts of Ibn Asda` till I was able to see him. I said to him, “Fâtimâ, peace be upon her, orders you to mourn the martyrdom of her son with the poem starting with:

I did not dress his wound,  
No, nor was he sick at all.

... and I was at that time unfamiliar with that poem. He felt very vexed, so I narrated to him and to those in his company the incident above. They all burst in tears, and everyone who mourned al-Husain (倡) that night used this poem as a eulogy. It starts with

O eyes! Overflow and do not dry  
And do over the one killed at Taff cry.

It is written by a poet from Kâfa. I went back to Abul-Hasan and told him.”’

THE LOOTING

O father of al-Hasan! The one best to protect his neighbour,  
To you do I complain with overflowing tears,  
Let alone a great shame that overspread
Wherein tears are part of my address.
Should you overlook as you today see
How Umayyah's offspring sought and achieved
All their mischievous revenge?
How many for you at the Taff, where
A mourner bitterly mourned,
Were wailing like pigeons in their necks
Iron collars they had to wear?
And how many a child did they scare?
Mourning one who never knew but kindness.
And how many a child decorated with gold

1al-Tanâkhi, the judge, Nashwâr al-Muhâdara, Vol. 8, p. 218.

246
Did they shackle and did they scold?
And with arrows was he shot.
How many a free lady with hair
Uncovered came out of the tent

Having nothing to veil her except her hands?
Should you have witnessed how she
With a heavy heart sighed as her heart burned.
It would have been hard for the Commander of the Faithful
That she should thus come out at all,
In a condition that grieved everyone with a heart.
Who then should tell al-Zahrā’ about Zainab
Being taken into captivity
And being driven among the foes to Damascus?
She has none from the foe to protect
Except one in the robes heavily tied up,
For those who came to Kerbala’
All fell on its ground, one glorious martyr after another.
They spent and the greatness of their glory covered their faces
And died in dignity without kneeling before a tyrant.
No excuse shall be for my heart if I say so,
Should my eyes with tears forever overflow.

When Abu Ṭalib was killed, people fell upon his luggage and belongings looting everything they could find in his tents, then they set the tents ablaze. People raced to rob the ladies of the Messenger of Allāh ( ☼ ). The daughters of Fāṭima al-Zahrā’ ( ✶ ) tearfully ran away, their hair uncovered. Scarves were snatched, rings were pulled out of fingers, ear-rings were taken out, and so were ankle-rings. A man took both ear-rings belonging to Umm Kulthūm, riddling her ears in the process. Another approached Fāṭima daughter of al-Husain ( ✶ ) and took her ankle-rings out. He was crying. “What is the matter with you?” she asked him. “How can I help crying,” he answered, “since I am looting the daughter of the Messenger of Allāh?” She asked him to leave her alone. He said, “I am afraid if I do not take it, someone else will.”

Another man was seen driving the women with the butt of his spear, after having robbed them of their coverings and jewelry as they sought refuge with one another. He was seen by the same Fāṭima. Having realized that she had seen him, he went towards her, and she fled away. He threw his spear at her. She fell headlong and fainted. When she recovered, she saw her aunt Umm Kulthūm, sitting at her head crying.

---

1Excerpted from a poem by the ‘allāma the authority Shaikh Abd al-Mun’im al-Fartūsi.
2Ibn al-Athīr, Al-Kāmil, Vol. 4, p. 32.
5Muḥammed Jawād Shubbar, Al-Damʿa al-Sākiba, p. 348.
She was from her sleep disturbed
Like doves startled after their slumber
Deploring the protection she now lost
By losing the best a woman could lose.
She lost the best pillar,
So she invoked the “manliness” of Banū `Amr.
For moons she mourned and cried
For the one whose spilled blood she sighed.
And through whom everything with light shone,
Now they are slaughtered and their corpses strewn.
Some had their parts scattered and some lost their arms
One after another on the plain they did fall
Did one with his feet to a lion's den walk?
They shattered the pitched darkness,
Now on the ground they lie motionless.1

A woman from the clan of Bakr ibn Wā'il, who was accompanied by her husband, saw the daughters of the Messenger of Allāh (ﷺ) in such a condition, so she cried out, “O offspring of Bakr ibn Wā'il! Do you permit the daughters of the Messenger of Allāh (ﷺ) to be thus robbed? There is no judgment except Allāh's! O how the Messenger of Allāh (ﷺ) should be avenged!” Her husband brought her back to his conveyance2.

The rogues reached Ali son of al-Husain (ṣa) who was sick on his bed unable to stand up3. Some were saying, “Do not let any of them, young or old, remain alive.” Others were saying, “Do not be rash in your judgment till we consult the governor `Amr ibn Sa’ād.”4 Al-Shimr unsheathed his sword with the intention to kill Ali. Hamd ibn Muslim said to him, “Glory to Allāh! Do you really kill children?! He is only a sick lad!”5 He said, “Ibn Ziyād ordered all al-Husain's sons killed.” Ibn Sa’ād went to extremes to stop him6 especially after having heard the wise lady Zainab daughter of the Commander of the Faithful (ṣa) saying, “You will not kill him before killing me first;” so, they left him alone7.

His remedy from them was their whips as they
Hit them then did they say, “May you stay!”
They dragged him and prepared for him the leather mat

1Excerpted from a poem by the authority critic Shaikh `Abd al-Husain al-Hilli, may Allāh have mercy on his soul, from a poem on the birth anniversary of al-Husain (ṣa).
4al-Qazwīnī, Tazallum al-Zahrā`, p. 132.
5al-Tabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 260.
6Shaikh `Abbās al-Qummi, Nafs al-Mahmūm.
7al-Qarmānī, Tārīkh, p. 108.
After having filled his body with thistles and with thorns.

Ibn Sa’d himself came to the ladies who burst in tears upon seeing him. He ordered the men to stay away from them. Those men had already taken all the ornaments those ladies had had and never returned any of them back. He assigned to a group of men the task of protecting them, then he returned to his tent.

Perplexed the ladies were
From their sleep deprived,
Startled when their chambers were assaulted.
In pavilions they lived and thrived.
They camped in honour, from hardship exempt,
From awe almost none comes near them except
The angels that were there to serve,
Now people's hands from mischief do not swerve,
Now the people's hands are free to steal, to plunder
For none is there to stop them, none to hinder.
Yes, she bent her body to chide
Her people, and fire filled her inside.

She rebuked them for fighting over what she had to wear,
For what the foe's snatched, but who will hear or care?

THE STEED

Ibn Sa’d shouted, “Who volunteers to make sure that the chest and the back of al-Husain (¢) are run over by the horses?” Ten men stood up.

Those miscreant “volunteers” were: Ishaq ibn Hawiyah, al-Ahbash ibn Murshid ibn ’Alqamah ibn Salamah al-Hadrani, Hakim ibn al-Tufayl al-Sinbisi, ’Amr ibn Sabih al-’Saydawi, Raja’ ibn Munqith al-’Abdi, Salim ibn Khaythamah al-Ju’fi, Salih ibn Wahab al-Ju’fi, Wakhit ibn Ghanim, Hani ibn Thabit al-Hadrani, and Asid ibn Malik. They rode their horses and trampled upon the body of the fragrant flower of the Messenger of

---

1Ibn al-Athir, Al-Kamil, Vol. 4, p. 32. Mis’ab al-Zubayri says something quite strange: On p. 58 of Nasab Quraish, he says that some of those in the army took Ali ibn al-Husain (¢) and hid him from people. He was very kind and generous to him. But when he heard a caller saying that whoever brought Ali ibn al-Husain (¢) would have three hundred dirhams, he tied his hands to his neck then brought him to Ibn Ziyad and took his reward. Ibn Ziyad, he goes on, wanted to kill him had it not been for the lad’s aunt, Zainab, who threw herself on him saying to Ibn Ziyad, “Kill me before you kill him!” This is the end of his statement. But if you know that despite his sickness, Ibn Ziyad was the only sponsor and protector of the women of the Messenger of Allah (ص); so, Allah would not permit any of His servants to overpower him thus and to keep him away from the family. Such was the condition of the bereaved women. How could it have been had her protector been kept away from them? None of the historians, as a matter of fact, mentioned something like that even by way of conjecture. But al-Zubayri simply wished to besmear his record of deeds with lies.

2These verses were composed by Sayyid Hayder al-Hilli, may Allah fill his mausoleum with light.


4On p. 31, Vol. 4, of Tāj al-’Arus, her name is recorded as “Huwayza.”
Allāh... Then the ten “men” went back to Ibn Ziyād with Asid ibn Mālik in their vanguard reciting this *rajaz* verse of poetry:

> We did crush the chest and the back:  
> Mighty steeds made it like a river track.

Ibn Ziyād ordered generous awards to be given to them.  

What a martyr whose body the sun baked,  
And its rising from his origin is born!  
And what a slaughtered one trampled upon  
By the steeds from whose names the cavaliers freeze.  
Did they not know that Muhammed's soul,  
Like his Qur'an, in his grandfather personified?  
Had those steeds, like their riders, only knew  
That the one under their hooves was but Ahmed,  
They against their riders would mutiny declare,  
Just as they against him rebellious they were.  

Al-Birūnī has said,

> They did to al-Husain ( فإن ) what no other nation had ever done to their most evil ones: killing with the sword or the spear, with stone throwing, and with horse trampling. Some of those horses reached Egypt where their shoes were pulled out and fixed on doors as means of seeking blessings. This became a custom among them, so much so that many of them started making the like of those shoes and hanging them over the doors of their houses.

> May hands that fought you be to pieces chopped,

---


> Till we disobeyed some of the Commandments of Allāh,  
The Omnipotent, when dealing with al-Husain, the Pure One.

2 Excerpted from a poem by Sayyid Sālih son of the `allāma Sayyid Mehdi Bahr al-’Ulūm.


4 al-Karakchi, *Kitāb al-Ta'ajjub*, p. 46.
May feet that oppressed you be forever paralyzed,
May the steeds over your body charged be hamstrung,
Crushing your ribs, having lost to your swords their riders.
You became their victim, so no pleasure shall today be
Nor a moon in the night shall ever be shiny.¹

THE SEVERED HEADS

Ibn Sa’d ordered the heads to be severed from their bodies. They were distributed to various tribes that used them as means to seek favour with Ibn Ziyād. The Kindah tribe took thirteen brought by their envoy, Qays ibn al-Ash’ath. The Hawāzin tribe brought twelve with their “man,” Shimr ibn Thul-Jawshan. The Tamīm tribe brought seventeen; the Banū Asad tribe brought sixteen; the Mathhaj tribe brought seven, and the other tribes brought the rest². The tribe to whom al-Hurr al-Riyāḥī belonged refused to cut anyone’s head or to trample on the Imam’s body with its horses³.

On the tenth day, Ibn Sa’d had already entrusted the head of Imām al-Husain (ع) to Khawli ibn Yazīd al-Asbāḥi and Ḥamīd ibn Muslim al-Azdī. He entrusted the heads of the Imām’s family members and those of his companions to al-Shīr, Qays ibn al-Ash’ath and ʿAmr ibn al-Hajjāj⁴. Khawli’s house was one farasang from Kafa. Khawli hid the head from his Ansārī wife whom he knew to be loyal to Ahl al-Bayt, peace be upon them. But when she saw a light emanating from the bakery oven [where it was hidden], she was terrified. When she came closer, she heard the voices of al-Husain’s women mourning al-Husain in the most somber way. She mentioned this to her husband then went out crying⁵. Since then, she never used any kohl nor any perfume out of her grief for al-Husain (ع). She was called ʿAyoof⁶.

In the morning, Khawli took the head to the governor’s mansion. By then, Ibn Ziyād had returned from his camp at al-Nakhila. Khawli put the head in front of Ibn Ziyād as he recited these poetic verses:

Fill my stirrup with silver or with gold:
I killed the master of every honour told,
Their best when they mention descent.
I killed the best of people, son of the best parent.

But these words, spoken in front of everyone, were met by Ibn Ziyād with outrage. “Since you knew that he was that honourable,” said Ibn Ziyād, “why did you then take part in killing him?! By Allah, you will receive

¹These verses were composed by Abu Thīb Shaikh Yousuf al-Qatīfī who died in 1200 A.H./1786 A.D.
²Ibn Tawūs, Al-Luhf, p. 81. al-ʿAyni, ʿUmdat al-Qārī ʿi Sharḥ al-Bukhārī, Vol. 7, p. 656, where the name of ʿUrwah ibn Qays is included among them.
³al-Ḥājjī Shaikh Muhammed Bāqir ibn Mawla Ḥasan al-Qāʾīnī al-Birjandi al-Ṣāfī (henceforth referred to only as Shaikh Muḥammed Bāqir al-Birjandi al-Ṣāfī), Al-Kibrīt al-Ahmār.
⁴Shaikh al-Mufīd, Al-Irshād.
⁵Rawdat al-Shuhadā’. On p. 190, Vol. 8, Ibn Kathīr says that his wife saw the light emanating from underneath the lid, and it was stretching to the heavens as white birds kept hovering around it. He adds saying that his other wife, Nuwār daughter of Mālik, said to him, “Have you brought the head of the son of the Messenger of Allah, peace of Allah and His blessings upon him and his family, here?! I shall never share a bed with you henceforth.” She separated from him.
DEPARTING FROM KERBALÁ

When Ibn Sa`d sent the heads to Kufa, he remained with the army till the time of zawāl on the eleventh day [of Muharram]. He gathered those killed from his army and performed the funeral prayers for them then buried them, leaving the corpses of the Master of the Youths of Paradise and the fragrant flower of the most honourable Prophet (ص) and those of his Ahl al-Bayt (ص) and companions unwashed, without shrouds, unburied, exposed to the wind and to the wild beasts of the desert.

On the dust, bare, should he remain?
None to mourn him except his women?

Which folks were not touched by his corpse?
Which hearts did not mourn him?

After the time of zawāl, Ibn Sa`d left for Kufa with the women, the children, the bondmaids, and the surviving families of al-Husain's companions. They included twenty women whom they mounted on camels without saddles as was the custom then with Turks or Romans taken captive, although they belonged to the best of all prophets (ص). With them was al-Sajjandi, Ali ibn al-Husain (ص), who was twenty-three years old. He was placed on a lean camel without a saddle, and he was worn out by sickness. His son [later Imam] al-Baqr, who

---

1According to p. 133, Vol. 1, of al-Yafi`i's book Mir`at al-Jin`an, Ibn Ziyad was very angry with him, so he killed him, but the author does not identify the name of the head bearer. On p. 213, Vol. 2, of Al-Iqd al-Farid of Sayyid Muhammed Rida al-Asterbadi al-Hilli, the head bearer is identified as “Khwali ibn Yazid al-Asbah who was killed by Ibn Ziyad.” Historians contend among themselves about who had brought the head and who had said the above verses. According to Ibn Jarir al-Tabari, who indicates so on p. 261, Vol. 6, of his Taurikh, and Ibn al-Athir who states so on p. 33, Vol. 4, of his book Al-Kamil, the poet was Sinan ibn Anas who recited them to `Omer ibn Sa`d. On p. 144 of Tathkirit al-Khawass of Ibn al-Jawzi, the grandson, it is stated that `Omer said to him, “You are insane! Had Ibn Ziyad heard you, he would have killed you!” On p. 193, Vol. 1, of al-Sharishi's Maqama, the author says that the poet recited them to Ibn Ziyad. According to al-Irbi's Kashf al-Ghumma and al-Khawarizmi's p. 40, Vol. 2, of Maqtaal al-Husain, Bishr ibn Makhir recited them to Ibn Ziyad. On p. 76 of Ibn Talhah's Matalah al-Sa'ul, there is the addition of “... and whoever says his prayers in both Qiblas,” whereupon Ibn Ziyad became very angry with him and had him beheaded. On p. 437 of Riyad al-Masrib, it is stated that al-Shimr is the one who recited these verses. Since you know that al-Shimr is al-Husain's killer according to the text of the ziyarat of the sacred area and according to a host of historians, you likewise know that he must be the one who recited them. It is very unlikely that he kills him and lets someone else take the head and use it to seek favour with Ibn Ziyad. We have mentioned the story from Khwali only to follow in the footsteps of those who wrote about the Imam's martyrdom.


3These verses were composed by the 'allama Shaikh Muhammed Taqi al-Jawhari.

4Shaikh `Abbass al-Qummi, Nafs al-Mahmum, p. 204. On p. 234, Vol. 2, of al-Nawari's book Mustadrak al-Wasa'il (first edition), Shaikh al-Mu'addid and Sayyid Ibn Tawus both cite Imam al-Sadiq (ص) saying that he (ص), had prayed two rek`as at al-Qa'im, a place on the highway leading to al-Ghari (Najaf), then said, “Here was the head of my grandfather al-Husain (ص) placed when they went to Kerbalá then carried it to `Ubaydullah ibn Ziyad.” Then the Imam (ص) recited a supplication to be recited following the prayer saying, “This place is called al-Hanana.”

5Mis`ab al-Zubayri, Nasab Quraish, p. 58.

6Ibn Tawus, Al-Iqbal, p. 54.

was two years and a few months old, accompanied him. Among the children of Imām al-Hasan (a) taken captive were: Zayd, ‘Amr, and Hasan II. The latter was captured after he had killed seventeen men. He received eighteen wounds, and his right arm had been cut off. Asma‘ ibn Khārijah al-Fīzārī intervened to get him freed because his mother was also Fīzārī, so Ibn Sa‘d let her husband take him. With them was ‘Uqbah ibn Sam‘ān, a slave of al-Rubābi, al-Husain’s wife. When Ibn Ziyād came to know that that man was al-Rubābi’s slave, he released him. Ibn Ziyād was informed that al-Muraqqa` ibn Thumāma al-Asadi had scattered his arrows around then fled to his tribe where he sought and received protection, he ordered him to be banished to al-Zāra.

How did the modest ladies receive the night
After being “vanquished,” and in defense of the camp died?
Do you see them to captivity surrendering
Or against their wish did their protectors depart?
They departed after their strength was crushed
And after the blows took their toll.
In the blood of martyrdom did they build a throne
One none before them ever built.
Stunned after that by the steeds assaulting,
Where are the men of honour to defend?
The ladies screamed and sought help
From their slain men in slumber,
And from the captives besides every valiant one
A free lady fell pleading for help,

And so did every girl...
They complained from the whips giving them pain.
Have ever suiters sought the help from the slain?
They feebly fall down from the animals’ backs, perturbed,

---


2 al-Majlisi, Bihār al-Anwār, Vol. 10, in a chapter discussing the offspring of Imām al-Hasan (a). According to p. 28 of Is‘āf al-Raghībin, commenting on a footnote in Nūr al-Abṣār, and also according to p. 8 of Al-Luhūf (of Ibn Tāwūs), he treated him at Kūfah, and when he healed, he transported him to Mecca.

3 al-Tabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 261. Ibn al-Athir, Al-Kāmil, Vol. 4, p. 33. According to p. 367, Vol. 4, of Yāqūt al-Hamawi’s Mu`jam al-Buldān, al-Zāra is a village in Bahrain, and there is another in West Tripoli as well as another in the upper Delta of the Nile. According to p. 692, Vol. 2, of al-Bikri’s book Al-Mu’jam minmā Ist’a’jam, it is a place in the Bahrain area where wars waged by al-Nu’mān ibn al-Munthir, who was nicknamed al-Ghārūr [the conceited one], battled al-Aswaris. It also is a city in Persia where a duel took place between al-Bara‘ ibn Mālik and the city’s satrap; al-Bara‘ killed the latter and cut his hand off. He took his belt and both bracelets of which the value was thirty thousand [dinars]. ‘Omēr [ibn al-Khattāb] took the khums of the loot, and that was the first time in the history of Islam when a loot was taxed by 1/5 [and delivered to the caliph]. On p. 10, Vol. 4, of his book Al-Kāmil, Ibn al-Athir says that Ibn Ziyād threatened to banish the people of Kūfah [who refused to fight al-Husain] to Oman’s Zāra. Also on p. 86, Vol. 8, where the events of the year 321 A.H./933 A.D. are discussed, it is stated that Ali ibn Yalīq ordered Mu‘āwiyyah and his son Yazīd to be cursed from the pulpits in Baghdad, whereupon the Sunnis were outraged. There, al-Barbahāri, a Hanbalite, used to stir trouble; he ran away from Ali ibn Yalīq. The latter captured al-Barbahāri’s followers and shipped them in a boat to Oman. It appears from the latter account that Zāra is a place in Oman. On p. 256 of Al-Akhbār al-Tiwāl, Ibn Ziyād banished al-Muraqqā to al-Zabada where the latter stayed till Yazīd’s death and Ibn Ziyād’s escape to Syria. Al-Muraqqā‘, therefore, left it and went back to Kūfah. On p. 9, Vol. 8, of Nashwār al-Muhādara by al-Tanūkhī, the judge, it is stated that Muḥammad al-Muhallabi banished Muḥammad ibn al-Hasan ibn ‘Abd al-‘Azīz al-Hāshimi to Oman in a boat because of something which he had done which angered him.
Whenever the she-camels are by the hadis\(^1\) disturbed.\(^2\)

The ladies pleaded thus: “For the love of Allāh! Please take us to those killed.” When they saw how they had lost their limbs, how the spears had drank of their blood, and how the horses had trampled upon them, they screamed and beat their faces in anguish\(^3\). Zainab cried out, “O Muhammed (ص)! Here is Husain in the desert covered with blood, his limbs cut off! Here are your daughters taken captive and your offspring slaughtered!” These words caused friends and foes alike to weep\(^4\), even the horses' tears ran on their hooves\(^5\). Then she put her hands under his sacred body and lifted it as she supplicated saying, “O Lord! Do accept this sacrifice from us\(^6\)”.

This stand demonstrates to us the fact that Zainab was then elevated to the height of sacred responsibility, that of holding a holy covenant, that she would henceforth carry out a sacred revival like the one started by her brother, al-Husain (ئ), while keeping the difference in mind. Once al-Husain (ئ) carried out his responsibility through his martyrdom, the wise lady, Zainab, started her duty which included presenting the sacrifice to the Mighty Lord and promoting his cause. Then she, peace of Allāh be upon her, shouldered her other responsibilities. This should not be discounted outrightly, for their noor is one and the same, and so is the substance.

She and al-Husain share their complain

Fate decided that they should.

One fell to the swords and to their pain

And the other by life's agonies taken captive.\(^7\)

Sukayna\(^8\) hugged the body of her father al-Husain (ئ) and kept telling him how she had heard him saying:

---

\(^1\)The hādis are men who, in the vanguards of caravans, sing for the camels to maintain their pace.

\(^2\)These verses were composed by the trusted authority Shaikh ʿAbd al-Mehdi Matar al-Najafi.


\(^4\)al-Maqrīzī, Khutat, Vol. 2, p. 280. According to the authors of both Maqta al-Husain and Al-Luhūf, the mourning was even on a much larger scale.


\(^7\)Excerpted from a poem by the authority Mirza Muḥammed Ali al-Urbadī, may Allāh fill his mausoleum with light.

\(^8\)According to p. 163, Vol. 1, of al-Nawawi’s Tahthib al-Asmā’, p. 58, Vol. 1, of al-Manawi’s book Al-Kawākib al-Durriyya, p. 160 of al-Shiblinji’s Nūr al-Absār, and Ibn Khalilīn’s Wafiyāt al-A’yan, where the author details her biography, Sukayna daughter of al-Husain (ئ) died on a Thursday, Rabī’ I 15, 117 A.H./April 8, 735 A.D. According to Abul-Hasan al-ʿAmrī’s book Al-Mujdi and to al-Tibrīsī’s book Iʿlām al-Warā, p. 127, where the biographies of the offspring of Imām al-Ḥasan (ع) are discussed. According to p. 163, Vol. 12, of Abul-Faraj al-Isfahānī’s book Al-Aghāmi, she married her cousin, ʿAbdullāh ibn al-Ḥasan ibn Ali ibn Abū Tālīb (ئ), who was killed during the Battle of al-Taʾff. She did not bear any children by him. But the author of Iʿlām al-Warā says that he was killed before her marriage, that during the Battle of al-Taʾff, she was a little more than ten years old, and that she was born before the death [martyrdom] of her uncle Imām al-Ḥasan (ئ). The statement in her honour made by the Master of Martyrs (ع), “Sukayna is overcome by deep contemplation upon Allāh,” as is recorded by al-Sabbān in his book Isʿāf al-Rāghibīn, clearly outlines for us the status his daughter occupied in the sacred canons of Islam’s Sharīʿa. You are referred to the second edition of my book Lady Sukayna.
O my Shi`as! Whenever of water you drink  
Never from mentioning my name should you shrink.  
And whenever you are a stranger on a sojourn,  
Or see a martyr, me should you remember and mourn.1

Only a number of them could collectively remove her from his corpse, forcefully dragging her away.2

An orphan girl with being orphaned startled  
Her heart is filled with pain,  
Like a bird by an eagle chased,  
One whose nest is assaulted.  
A cry she let out when the horsemen assaulted  
Her, though orphaned, so she now is more startled,  
And to the one lying on the burning sands she went  
Pouring over him from her eyes a river she wept.  
She fell upon al-Husain's body so he kept  
To his chest taking her between a right and a left.  
She seeks refuge with him, having lost her head-scarf,  
And it was hard for him to see her without it;  
He would not have left their whips cause her to seek help  
With her father's body when, from him,  
She was forcibly removed.3

When Ali son of al-Husain (€) looked at his slaughtered family and noticed how al-Zahrâ’ was in a condition which the heavens deplored and for which the earth would split and the mountains crumble, he felt greatly grieved and worried. When Zainab al-Kubra, daughter of Ali (€)4, read his face, she felt upset on his account and took to consoling him and admonishing him to be patient although even the mountains could not match him in his patience and fortitude. Among what she said to him is the following:

Why do I see you pleading for death, O the legacy of my grandfather, of my father and brothers?  
By Allah, this is something which Allah had divulged to your grandfather (m) and to your father (€). Allah took a covenant from people whom you do not know, the mighty ones on this land, and who are known to the people of the heavens, that they would gather these severed parts and wounded corpses and bury them, then shall they set up on this Taff a banner for the grave of your father, the Master of Martyrs (€), the traces of which shall never be obliterated, nor shall it ever be wiped out so long as there is day and night. And the leaders of apostasy and the promoters of misguidance shall try their best to obliterate and efface it, yet it shall get more and more lofty

\footnote{1}{These verses are recorded on p. 376 of the Indian edition of Mishūh al-Kaf`ami.}
\footnote{2}{al-Qazwīnī, Tazallum al-Zahrā’, p. 135.}
\footnote{3}{Excerpted from a poem by the `allāmā Shaikh `Abd al-Mun`im al-Fartūsī.}
\footnote{4}{Zainab, titled “al-Kubra,” is the daughter of Fātīma al-Zahrā’ (€). She is identified as such by al-Tabari on p. 89, Vol. 6, of his Tārīkh and by Ibn al-Athīr on p. 158, Vol. 3, of his book Al-Kāmil. In his book Al-Ma`ārif, Ibn Qutaybah says, “Zainab al-Kubra daughter of Fātīma (€) was the wife of `Abdullāh ibn Ja`fer. She gave birth to a number of sons.”}
To Allāh do I complain about the patience of Zainab the pure
How many a tribulation did she have to endure?
From the calamities and from the pain
From pains, from which death is welcome, she did suffer.
She witnessed the men of dignity from her people of honour
On the ground slaughtered in a row without cover:
The winds on their corpses freely blow,
The beasts over their bodies come and go.
Her people's chief lying slain she saw,
To them did the folks' swords deal many a blow.
She saw heads on the lances carried

And corpses with only sands shrouded.
She saw an infant with an arrow waned
And children after their father orphaned.
She saw the enemies gleeful, with their misery pleased,
She saw how with her brother they dealt every foul deed.

Zajr ibn Qays came to them and shouted at them to leave as he kept whipping them. Others surrounded them and mounted them on camel humps.

Zainab the wise rode her own she-camel. She recollected the days of lofty honour and inviolable prestige, guarded by fierce and honourable lions of `Abd al-Mu'ttalib's offspring, surrounded by anxious swords and polished spears. And she was surrounded by servants who would not enter without her permission.

None like her prestige in the morning was
Nor like her condition on the afternoon.
Where is she going? To what fate?
What is her refuge and what is her aim?
On whose shoulder should she lean
When she was conveyed, and her cameleer rebukes,
And Shimr is her cameleer?
O Muḥammed! Light the house for Zainab so
Even in the night none can see her shadow.
How I wish on the Taff your eyes saw
Your daughters' ornaments to looters did go.
Their ears torn, either slain or widowed,
Moaning like camels that lost their young.
To Allāh do I complain and say:

1Ibn Qawlawayh, Kāmil al-Ziyārāt, p. 361, chapter 88, virtues of Kerbālā' and merits of visiting the grave-site of al-Ḥusain (ʻ).
2This poem by the authority Ayatullāh Shaikh Hádi Kāshīf al-Ghită', may Allāh sanctify him, is recorded in full on p. 61 of Al-Maqbūla al-Husainiyya.
3al-Qazwīnī, Tazallum al-Zahrā', p. 177.
Allāh help him how he was bereaved,  
And suddenly both prestige and men deceased.  
No loss by death is to them a cause of complain  
Except it was done by those who were not humane,  
And with humiliation they were treated,  
They received the night in a condition that

Before it you would stand and feel awfully,  
If only you stand to think about it carefully.¹

**Kūfa**

When the daughters of the Commander of the Faithful (ع) entered Kūfah, the city's residents gathered to see them, so Umm Kulthūm shouted at them, “O people of Kūfah! Do not you have any sense of shame before Allāh and His Messenger so you look at the ladies of the Prophet (صلى الله عليه وسلم)?”²

One of Kūfah's women came to them and saw their condition for which even a most bitter enemy would feel sorry. She asked them what captives they were, and she was told: “We are captives belonging to the Progeny of Muhammed (صلى الله عليه وسلم).”³ The people of Kūfah kept doling out dates, walnuts and bread to the children, whereupon Umm Kulthūm, that is, Zainab al-Kubra, shouted at them that they were prohibited from accepting charity. She threw away what had been given to those children⁴.

O father of Hasan!  
She overlooks and in the slumber she delights  
Now only with her hand can Zainab cover her face  
O father of Hasan!  
Are you pleased with your women in captivity,  
As Banā’ Harb’s women in their chambers veiled with grace?  
Does your side on the bed find comfort and ease,  
While your daughters on the camels to Syria are brought?  
Do you find life pleasing when your wise ladies are uncovered?  
Whenever they cry, with lashes they are whipped.  
To the east they are once taken by the mean gangs,

And once towards the land of shame are taken, to the west.  
None to protect them as they cross every plain,  
None heeds their complaints when they complain.  
Their voices were lost and their hearts melted,  
Their breath by grief is almost snatched away.  
Amazed am I about one who thinks of fate

---

¹Excerpted from a poem by the trusted authority Shaikh Muhammed Tāhir who belongs to the family of the sect’s faqīḥ, Shaikh Rādi, may Allāh sanctify him.


And contemplates upon it and wonders alone:
A fornicator turns about on his throne,
As Husain on the ground is left unburied,
And his head is on a lance openly carried,
And with the crown is crowned the son of a whore.
For three days did Husain stay unburied or more.
One's body is to cruel elements left exposed
As the other covers his with silk and with gold...¹

ZAINAB'S SPEECH

The daughter of the Commander of the Faithful (الحسین) explained to people Ibn Ziyād's villainy and meanness in a speech which she delivered to them. She signaled to the large crowd to calm down. They did, standing as if birds were resting on their heads. Nothing could quieten the commotion nor silence the numerous voices other than the divine dignity and the magnificence of Muhammed (ص) that crowned the wise lady who descended from his Progeny (ص). When Zainab daughter of Ali (الحسین) signaled to people to calm down, they did. They stood speechless and motionless, and even the bells of their animals stopped ringing. It was then that she, calm and composed and with courage reminiscent of that of [her revered father] Hayder (الحسین), addressed them saying,

All Praise is due to Allāh. Peace and blessings be upon my [grand]father Muhammed (ص) and upon his good and righteous Progeny (الحسین). May the resounding [of this calamity] never stops. Your similitude is one who unspins what is already spun out of the desire to violate [a trust]. You make religion a source of your income... Is there anyone among you one who is not a boaster of what he does not have, a charger of debauchery, a conceited liar, a man of grudge without any justification, one submissive like bondmaids, an instigator, a pasture of what is not wholesome, a reciter of a story to someone buried? Truly bad is that which your souls have committed. You have reaped the Wrath of Allāh, remaining in the chastisement for eternity. Do you really cry and sob? By Allāh, you should then cry a great deal and laugh very little, for you have earned nothing but shame and infamy, and you shall never be able to wash it away, and how could you do so? The descendant of the Bearer of the Last Message (ص), the very essence of the Message, the source of your security and the beacon of your guidance, the refuge of the righteous from among you, the one who saves you from calamity, the Master of the Youths of Paradise... is killed. O how horrible is the sin that you bear...! Miserable you are and renegades from the path of righteousness; may you be distanced and crushed. The effort is rendered futile, the toil is ruined, the deal is lost, and you earned nothing but Wrath from Allāh and from His Messenger (ص). You are doomed with servitude and humiliation. Woe unto you, O Kāfians! Do you know whose heart you have burned, what a “feat” you have laboured, what blood you have shed, and what sanctity you have violated? You have done a most monstrous deed, something for which the heavens are about to split asunder and so is the earth, and for which the mountains crumble. You have done something most uncanny, most defaced, as much as the fill of the earth and of the sky.

Do you wonder why the sky rains blood? Surely the torment of the hereafter is a greater chastisement, and they shall not be helped. Let no respite elate you, for rushing does not speed it up, nor does it fear the loss of the opportunity for revenge. Your Lord is waiting in ambush for you.¹

Imām al-Sajjād (ع) said to her, “That is enough, O aunt, for you are, Praise to Allāh, a learned lady whom none taught, one who comprehends without being made to do so.”²

The wise lady discontinued her speech. The crowd which had been brainwashed by lies and by greed stood stunned. Her statements caused many to wake up and the minds to listen to reason. Her speech had the greatest effect on people's hearts, so they realized the magnanimity of what they had committed; now they did not know what to do.

From the wasī did she inherit wisdom
Particularly hers in its beauty and oratory.
Whenever she expounds you would believe
From oratory she derives her treasures.

Or like a sword in the hand of a valiant she may be
With it he defended and won victory.
Or that she leads a whole regiment of hosts
And drives from facts' hosts a crowd.
Or in the Imāmate's woods a lioness
For her roaring even heads bow down.
Or she is the tumultuous ocean whose waves
Crushed one another in knowledge, might and dignity.
Or from the Lord's Wrath lightning ensues
From which Harb's clan could not escape.
Or that Hayder on his steed wipes out
The hosts of misguidance one after another.
Or the summit of the pulpit embraced him,
So for the Sharī‘a did he ignite a light.
Or in wisdom has the wise lady
of Hashim shattered blindness greatly.³

FĀТИMA DAUGHTER OF AL-ḤUSAIN (ع) DELIVERS A SPEECH

Fātimā, al-Husain's daughter⁴, delivered a speech saying,

---

¹This speech is compiled from the writings of Shaikh al-Ṭūsi in his Āmāli as well as that of his son, from Al-Luhūf of Ibn Tāwūs., Ibn Nama, Ibn Shahr Ashūb, and from al-Tibrisi's book Al-Iḥtīāj.


³Excerpted from a poem by the ʿallūma Mirza Muḥammed Ali al-Urdabadi in praise of the wise lady Zainab, peace be upon her.

⁴Fātimā daughter of al-Husain (ع), was a great personality. She enjoys a great status in the creed. Her father, the Master of Martyrs, testifies to this fact. When al-Ḥasan II approached him asking him for the hand of either of his two daughters, he (ع), as we are told (continued...)
All Praise is due to Allāh, as much as the number of the sands and of the stones, as much as the `Arsh weighs up to the ground. I praise Him, believe in Him, and rely upon Him, and I testify that there is no god other than Allāh, the One and Only God, there is no partner with Him, and that Muhammed is His servant and Messenger, and that his offspring have been slaughtered by the Euphrates river neither on account of blood revenge nor out of dispute over inheritance. Lord! I seek refuge with You against telling a lie about You and against saying anything contrary to what You have revealed of taking many a covenant regarding the vicegerency of Ali ibn Abu Talib (عليه السلام), the man whose right is confiscated and who was killed without having committed a sin, just as his son was only yesterday killed, at one of the houses of Allāh, the most Exalted One, at the hands of those who give Islam nothing but lip service. Destruction may afflict their heads that did not ward off from him any injustice as long as he lived nor at his death, till Allāh Almighty took his soul to Him while his essence was praised, his dealing with others was commendable, his merits were well known, and his beliefs well admitted by everyone. Never did he ever accept anyone's blame nor the criticism of any critic in doing what is right. Lord! You guided him to Islam even when he was a child and praised his virtues when he grew up. Never did he ever cease enjoining others to follow Your Path and that of Your Messenger (ص). He always paid no heed to the riches of this world. He always desired the hereafter, a man who carried out jihād for Your Cause. With him were You pleased, so You chose him and guided him to a Straight Path. O people of Kūfah! O people of treachery, of betrayal and conceit! We are members of a Household tried on your account by Allāh, afflicted by you. He made our dealing with you good, and He entrusted His knowledge to us, and He bestowed upon us its comprehension; so, we are the bastian of His knowledge, understanding and wisdom, and His Arguments on the earth which He created for the good of His servants! Allāh bestowed upon us...
His blessings and greatly honoured us with His Prophet, peace and blessings of Allah be upon him and his Progeny, favouring us over many of those whom He created. Yet you called us liars and apostates, and in your eyes you deemed killing us as lawful, and so is looting our possessions, as if we were the offspring of the Turks or of Kabul, just as you killed our grandfather in the past. Your swords drip with our blood, the blood of Ahl al-Bayt, out of past animosity. Thus have your eyes been cooled, and thus have your hearts been elated, telling lies about Allah and out of evil plans which you hatched, while Allah is the very best of planners. So do not be carried away with your excitement because of our blood which you have spilled or our wealth which you have snatched away, for what has befallen us is truly a great tragedy and a momentous calamity “In a Book even before We created them; surely this is easy for Allah, so that you may not be grieved because of what you missed nor feel happy because of what you acquired, and Allah does not love anyone who is conceited, boastful” (Qur’an, 57:23). May you be ruined! Expect to be cursed and to be tormented, for it seems as though it has already befallen you, and more and more signs of Wrath are on their way to you from the heavens till He makes you taste of the chastisement and make some of you taste of the might of others, then on the Day of Judgment shall you all remain for eternity in the painful torment on account of the injustice with which you have treated us; the curse of Allah be upon the oppressors. Woe unto you! Do you know what hand you have stabbed, what soul found fighting us agreeable? Rather, by what feet did you walk towards us with the intention to fight us? Your hearts became hardened, and Allah sealed your hearts, your hearing, and your vision, and Satan inspired to you and dictated, placing a veil over your eyes, so you can never be guided. Destruction is your lot, O people of Kafar! What a legacy of the Prophet (ﷺ) is standing before you, and what blood revenge will he seek from you on account of your enmity towards his brother, Ali ibn Abu Talib (不失), my grandfather, and towards his good and righteous offspring, yet you even brag about it saying:

We killed Ali and the sons of Ali,
With Indian swords and spears,
And we placed their women in captivity
Like the Turks! We crushed them with severity.

May stones and pebbles fill your mouths! You brag about killing people whom Allah chose and purified with a perfect purification and from whom He kept away all abomination. Suppress it, then, and squat just as your fathers did, for each will get the rewards of what he earns and will be punished for what he committed. You envied us, woe unto you, for what Allah, the most Exalted One, favoured and preferred us. Such is Allah's favour: He bestows His favours upon whomsoever He pleases, and surely with Allah are great favours. For whoever Allah does not make a noor, he shall have no noor at all.

Voices were raised with weeping and wailing, and they said to her, “Enough, enough, O daughter of the pure ones, for you have burnt our hearts and necks,” so she took to silence.

**UMM KULTHUM SPEAKS OUT**

---

1In several places of this book have we pointed out the fact that Umm Kulthum is the wise lady Zainab, and the following statements are excerpted from her speech quoted above. We are repeating it only following in the tradition of other narrators of this (continued...)

261
Umm Kulthūm said,

Silence, O people of Kāfā! Your men murder us, while your women mourn us! The judge between us and you is Allāh on the Day of Final Judgment. O people of Kāfā! Horrible, indeed, is what you have committed. Why did you betray Husain? Why did you kill him, loot his wealth, then take his women captive? May you be ruined, and may you be crushed! Woe unto you! Do you know what adversities have befallen you and what a burden of sins you have placed on your backs? Do you know what blood you have shed and what honourable ladies you have afflicted, what children you have orphaned, and what wealth you have looted? You killed the best of men after the Prophet (ص), so mercy was removed from your hearts! Surely Allāh's party shall be the winner, whereas the party of Satan shall be the loser.

People burst in tears, women pulled their hair in grief and beat their faces and cheeks, crying and wailing, and there were more tearful eyes that day than anyone could ever recall.

AL-SAJJĀD (ع) DELIVERS A SPEECH

Ali ibn al-Husain (ع) was brought on a lean camel. Chains were placed on his neck, and he was handcuffed. Both sides of his neck were bleeding. He was repeating these verses:

O nation of evil, may your quarter never tastes of water!
O nation that never honoured in our regard our Grandfather!
Should we and the Messenger of Allāh meet
On the Judgment Day, how would you then plead?
On bare beasts of burden have you
Transported us, as if we never put up a creed for you!

He signaled to people to be silent. Once they were silent, he praised Allāh and glorified Him and saluted the Prophet (ص). Then he said,

O people! Whoever recognizes me knows me, and whoever does not, let me tell him that I am Ali son of al-Husain ibn Ali ibn Abu Talib (ع). I am the son of the man whose sanctity has been violated, whose wealth has been plundered, whose children have been seized. I am the son of the one who has been slaughtered by the Euphrates neither out of blood revenge nor on account of an inheritance. I am the son of the one killed in the worst manner. This suffices me to be proud.

O people! I plead to you in the Name of Allāh: Do you not know that you wrote my father then deceived him? Did you not grant him your covenant, your promise, and your allegiance, then you fought him? May you be ruined for what you have committed against your own souls, and out of your corrupt views! Through what eyes will you look at the Messenger of Allāh (ص) when he says to you, “You killed my Progeny, violated my sanctity, so you do not belong to my nation”?

Loud cries rose, and they said to each other, “You have perished, yet you are not aware of it.” Then he (ع), said, “May Allāh have mercy on anyone who acts upon my advice, who safeguards my legacy with regard to Allāh,

1(...continued)
epic.
His Messenger (ﷺ), and his Ahl al-Bayt (ع), for we have in the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) a good example of conduct to emulate.” They all said, “We, O son of the Messenger of Allah, hear and obey, and we shall safeguard your trust. We shall not turn away from you, nor shall we disobey you; so, order us, may Allah have mercy on you, for we shall fight when you fight, and we shall seek peace when you do so; we dissociate ourselves from whoever oppressed you and dealt unjustly with you.” He (ع), said, “Far, far away it is from you to do so, O people of treachery and conniving! You are separated from what you desire. Do you want to come to me as you did to my father saying, ’No, by the Lord of all those [angels] that ascend and descend’?! The wound is yet to heal. My father was killed only yesterday, and so were his Ahl al-Bayt (ع), and the loss inflicted upon the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ), upon my father (ع), and upon my family is yet to be forgotten. Its pain, by Allah, is between both of these [sides] and its bitterness is between my throat and palate. Its choke is resting in my very chest.”

Wait, O Banā Harb, for what we have gone through
Is seen by the Lord of Heavens who well knows all.
It is as if on Judgment Day I see Ahmed
Before the messengers comes rolling up his sleeves
And to you shall he say: Woe unto you!
My sanctity did you violate
And your swords drank of my blood,
Do you know what blood you on the ground spilled?
Or which ladies you took to captivity?
Is it just that you safeguard your girls
And leave my free ladies taken captive like the Daylams?
And should you make water for the wild beasts permissible
While my children because of thirst are on fire?
O by Allah! If the hosts of unbelievers
Had ever vanquished my offspring,
They would never have committed such great injustice.
O how Muhammed will feel when you have
Stabbed the necks and slit the throats?

Such is your reward for me so
How soon you were untrue
To the trust with regard to my daughter
And with regard to my brother?²

THE BURIAL

Historians record that the Master of Martyrs (ع) set up a tent on the battlefield³, ordering those killed from among his companions and Ahl al-Bayt (ع) to be carried to it. Whenever a fresh martyr was brought,

---

¹All these speeches are mentioned by Ibn Tāwūs in his book Al-Luhūf and by Ibn Nama in his book Muthīr al-Ahzūn.

²These verses were composed by al-Hājj Muhammed Rida al-Azri and published on p. 445 (Najaf: Al-Ādāb Press) of Riyād al-Madh wa al-Rathā’.

he (¢), would say, “You have been killed just as the prophets and the families of prophets are killed.”¹ He did so to everyone with the exception of his brother Abul-Fadl al-‘Abbās (¢), whom he left where he fell near the river bank of the Euphrates.²

When ‘Omer ibn Sa’d accompanied those whom he arrested of the custodians of the Message and left for Kūfah, he left behind those who were described by the Commander of the Faithful (¢) as the masters of martyrs in the life of this world and in the hereafter, an honour to which nobody ever preceded nor will anyone succeed them³, lying on the sands incinerated by the sun and sought by the wild beasts of the desert.

Stabbing changed every sense of theirs
Except virtues, from all they are secure.

Among them was the Master of the Youths of Paradise who was in a condition that would split the hardest of the stones, yet divine lights were emanating from his corpse, and sweet scents were surrounding him from all directions.

A wounded one whose beauty the swords could not change,
Nor did they make of him something new
He was a moon and now he is the morning sun,
Since the hand of blood outfitted him with its garment.
His rays protect the eyes so
Whenever they try a path, I fancy it blocked,
And trees of lances give him shade,
So the heat refused to send him missive.

A man belonging to Banū Asad has narrated the following:

Once the army had left, I came to the battlefield and saw light emanating from those corpses that were covered with blood yet smelled sweet scents. I saw a terrifying lion walking between the amputated parts till he reached the Embodiment of Sanctity and the Sacrifice of Guidance. He rubbed himself on his blood and rubbed his body on his as he kept muttering and letting out a very strange sound. I was amazed. Never have I ever seen such a fierce lion abandon what would be for his likes nothing but a meal. I hid among the marshes and kept watching to see what else he would do. I was more amazed when midnight came. It was then that I saw candles and heard voices that filled the earth with painful cries and wailing.⁴

On the thirteenth day of Muharram, Zayn al-‘Abbān (¢) came to bury his martyred father (¢), since only an

---

¹This is narrated on p. 211, Vol. 10, and p. 125, Vol. 13, of al-Majlisi’s Bihār al-Anwār where al-Nu`mān’s book Al-Ghayba is cited.
²This is what a group of historians have recorded. Refer to p. 115 of my book Qamar Banī Hāshim (Hayderi Press edition, Najaf).
³Ibn Qawlawayh, Kāmil al-Ziyārāt, p. 219.
⁴Sayyid Hāshim al-Bahhrání, Madīnat al-Ma`ājiz, p. 263, chapter 127.
Imam buries another Imam.¹

This brings to memory a dialogue that once took place between Imam [Ali son of Mûsa] al-Rida (e) and Ali ibn Abu Hamzah. The Imam [by way of testing the veracity of the man] (e) was asked, “Tell me: Was al-Husain ibn Ali (e) an Imam?” He (e) answered in the affirmative. The Imam (e) was again asked, “If so, then who took care of burying him?” Ali (e) said, “Ali ibn al-Husain al-Sajjad (e) did.” Imam al-Rida (e) in turn asked him, “But where was Ali ibn al-Husain at the time?” Ali ibn Abu Hamzah said, “He was jailed at Kufa inside Ibn Ziyâd's prison, but he came out without their knowledge in order to bury his father then returned to the prison once he was through.” Imam al-Rida (e) said, “Then the One Who enabled Ali ibn al-Husain (e) to go to Kerbalâ’ in order to take care of his [slain] father then return is the same One Who will enable the person entrusted with a similar task [meaning himself] to go to Baghdad [from Khurasan, northeast Iran] in order to take care of his father, and he is neither jailed nor confined.”

When al-Sajjad (e) came to the place, he saw Banû Asad assembled around the slain not knowing what to do. They could not identify the corpses especially since their killers had separated the heads from the bodies. Had it been otherwise, they could have inquired about them with the families and the tribes of those slain. But he (e), informed them that it was his task to bury those pure bodies. He informed them of the names of the slain, identifying those who belonged to Banû Hashim from the rest. Crying and wailing rose, and tears filled the eyes of everyone present there and then. The ladies of Banû Asad loosened their hair in grief and beat their cheeks.

Imam Zayn al-‘Abidîn (e) walked to his father's body, hugged it and wept loudly. Then he came to the grave-site and lifted a handful of its soil. A grave already dug appeared, and so did a pre-constructed shrine... He placed his hands under the Imam's back and said, “In the Name of Allah, and according to the creed of the Messenger of Allah. Allah has said the truth, and so has His Messenger (ص). The will of Allah be done; there is no power nor might except in Allah, the Great.” Then he took it and went down without being assisted by anyone from among the Banû Asad to whom he said, “I have with me someone who will assist me.” Once he laid it down in the grave, he put his cheek on his father's sacred neck and said, “Congratulations to the land that contains your pure body, for the world after you is dark whereas the hereafter in your light shall shine. As to the night, it is the harbinger of sleep, while grief remains forever, for Allah shall choose for your Ahl al-Bayt (e) your abode wherein you shall abide. From me to you is Salâm, O son of the Messenger of Allah, and the mercy of Allah and His blessings.”

On the grave he wrote: “This is the grave of al-Husain son of Ali son of Abu Tâlib, the one whom they killed even as he was a thirsty stranger.” Then he walked to the body of his uncle, al-‘Abbas (e), and he saw him

¹al-Mas’ûdi, Ibbâh al-Wasiyya, p. 173. On p. 402 of my book Zayn al-‘Abidîn, I quoted the traditions proving that an Imam is not buried except by another Imam. Traditions do not reveal such a safeguarded mystery. Perhaps it is to be understood that the corpse of an infallible person, when journeying to the Supreme One, at the termination of his earthly life, is granted certain privileges such as nobody can come close to it unless he is one of his status. A case in point is how one particular person came close to the Seat of Divinity two bow’s throw or even closer, arriving at a station from which even the Trusted One (Gabriel) kept his distance, leaving the Prophet (ص) alone in the oceans of the divine domain. A claim put forth with regard to our Imams is not out of the ordinary, especially since, in all reality, they were created of the same substance [noor] from which Muhammed (ص) was created. They shared all the merits of their grandfather with the exception of Prophethood and consorts. Such is stated on p. 22 of Sulaymân al-Hilli’s book Al-Muhtadir (Naqafi edition). Such mysteries cannot be realized by a human mind, and there is no way to deny them just because we cannot fully comprehend them unless they reach the limit of impossibility. Authentic traditions have stated that there are many unusual situations which surround the Imams (e), situations which other humans cannot emulate, such as bringing the dead back to life in the latter's original physical forms, their ability to see one another [despite the distance that separates them or the time], their bodies ascending to heavens, and their listening to the greetings of those who visit their grave-sites. All of this is endorsed by our mentor, al-Mufid, as stated on p. 84 of Al-Maqālāt (Tehran edition), by al-Karakji in his book Kanz al-Fawā'id, by al-Majlisi on p. 373, Vol. 1, of his book Mir‘ât al-‘Uqûl, by Kâshîf al-Ghiţâ on p. 51 of his book Manhaj al-Rashâd, and by al-Nawari on p. 289, Vol. 1, of his book Dâr al-Salâm.
in a condition that had left the angels in the heavens' strata baffled and caused the hūris to weep even as they were in the chambers of Paradise. He fell upon it kissing his sacred neck and saying, “May the world after you be obliterated, O moon of Banū Ḥāshim, and peace from me to you, O martyr, and the mercy of Allāh and His blessings.”

He dug a grave for him and took him down in it by himself just as he had done to the corpse of his martyred father (♂). He said to Banū Asad, “There is someone with me to help me.”

Yes, he gave a piece of jewelry to Banū Asad as a token of appreciation for consoling him in burying the martyrs, and he assigned for them two places, ordering them to dig two pits in the first of which he buried those slain from Banū Ḥāshim and in the second those slain from among their companions.

As regarding al-Hurr al-Riyāḥī, his corpse was taken away by his tribe that buried it where it now stands. It is said that his mother was present then and there, and when she saw what was being done to the corpses, she carried her son's corpse somewhere else.

The closest in proximity to the grave of al-Husain (♂) from among the martyrs is his son Ali al-Akbar (♂). In this regard, Imām al-Sādiq (♂) says to Hammad al-Basrī, “The father of’ Abdullah was killed as a stranger, away from home; he is mourned be whoever visits his grave-site, and whoever does not visit it grieves for him; whoever does not see him is very depressed on account of being deprived of doing so, therefore he grieves; whoever sees the grave of his son at his feet in a desolate land, far away from his kin, invokes Allāh’s mercy for him because of the fact that he was not supported when he called upon people to uphold righteousness, and because the renegades assisted one another against him till they killed him and did not have any respect for him, so much so that they exposed his corpse to the wild beasts and prohibited him from drinking of the water of the Euphrates of which the dogs drink. They disregarded their obligations in his regard towards the Messenger of Allāh (ṣ) who had enjoined them to be kind to him and to his Ahl al-Bayt (♂). He was abandoned in his grave, slain among his kinsfolk and Shi’as. In loneliness, being near his grave removes the pain of loneliness and so is his being distant from his grandfather (ṣ) and from the house which none could enter except those whose conviction of heart Allāh tested, and by those who recognize our rights. My father has told me that since he was killed, his place has never been empty of those who bless him from among the angels, the jinns, mankind, and even the wild beasts. Whoever visits it is envied and is rubbed for blessing, and looking at his grave is done in keeping with his being distant from his grandfather (♂) and his being slain among his kinsfolk and Shi’as.

1See Al-Kibrīṭ al-Ahmār (of Shaikh Muhammed Bāqir al-Birjandi al-Sāfī), Asrār al-Shahāda (of Sayyid Kāzīm al-Rashtī al-Hā’iri), and Al-Iyqūd.

2Shaikh Muhammed Bāqir al-Birjandi al-Sāfī. Al-Kibrīṭ al-Ahmār. On p. 344 of his book Al-Anwār al-Nu’māniyya, Sayyid al-Jazā’īrī cites testimonials to this statement. He, for example, details how [sultān] Ismā’īl al-Safawī [founder of the Safavid dynasty who lived from 904 - 930 A.H./1499 - 1524 A.D. and ruled Iran from 907 - 930 A.H./1502 - 1524 A.D.—Tr.] dug up the place, whereupon he saw the deceased as though he had just been killed, and there was a bandage on his head. Once he untied it, blood started pouring out, and the bleeding did not stop till he tied it back again. He built a dome above the grave and assigned someone to tend to it. So, when al-Nawari, in his book Al-Lulu’wal Marfūn, denies that he had been buried, he did not support his denial with any evidence. On p. 37, Vol. 1, of Tuhfat al-’Ālim, Sayyid Ja’far Bahr al-’Uthmān states that Hamad-Allāh al-Mustawfi has indicated in his book Nuzhat al-Qulūb saying that there is in Kerbalā’ the grave of al-Hurr [al-Riyāḥī] which is visited by people. He is the latter's grandfather up to 18 generations back. One of them used to say:

Point out to the Hurr and see,
How doing so suffices every man free.

The authority Sayyid Muhammed al-Qazwīnī responded to him with these verses:

Visit the Hurr, the martyr, and do not delay,
The first of the martyrs should you visit pay;
Do not hear one who calls and does say
Point out to the Hurr then a salutation pay.
anticipation of earning goodness. Allāh boasts to the angels of those who visit it. As far as what such pilgrim receives from us, we invoke Allāh's mercy for him every morning and every evening. It has come to my knowledge that some Kafians as well as others in Kāfa's outskirts pay it a visit in the eve of the middle of Sha'ban. They recite the Holy Qur'ān; they narrate his story; they mourn him, and women eulogize him while others compose their own eulogies.” Hammad said to the Imām (r), “I have personally witnessed some of what you have just described.” The Imām (r), then said, “Praise to Allāh Who has made some people come to us, praise us, and mourn us, and praised is He for making our enemy shame them for doing so, threaten them, and describe what they do as ugly.”

Today fell the one who
Most protects honour,
The most true teller,
The one who most feeds the beasts
With his foe's corpses,
The one who most stains
The bird and the vulture.
He is spent, having returned the swords
To the lances. He left his impact
On them and on death itself.
The man of glory passed away
Under the swords, and what was

Broken on him buries him.
So if he does receive
The time of the eve
With a dusted forehead,
The war's morning did turn
The regiment dusted.
And if he is spent thirsty, heart-broken
He had terrified the heart of death
Till the heart is split.
And he crushed the foes
And he did annihilate
What fates give birth to suckle on death.
From between two shields he emerged:
Battle and patience, and patience is
The strongest of all.
He showed his might,
The most mighty protector of all
A protector of honour he was,
And the most courageous to lead the hosts.
His support in the heat of blows was keen:
Though his supporters were a few,
They were still many.

1Ibn Qawlawyh, Kāmil al-Ziyārāt, p. 325. al-Majlisi, Mazār al-Bihār, p. 124, citing the previous reference.
It stumbled till it died
The edge of his sword
But his grip did not.
As if the sword granted him patience,
So he did not leave the battle
Till his sword was broken to pieces.
Allah is his Supporter, how his heart
From patience was split then did depart.
Had patience been stone, it would have cracked.
He bent to kiss his son
But the arrow before him kissed his neck.
Both he and death were born in an hour
And before him the arrow in his neck make Takbīr,
And in captivity there were elite ones of chambers,
Hard for their men to see them thus driven.
They had, before, protected their chambers
And in protecting their honours
They remained ever vigilant.
On the Day of Ta'f fate walked blindly
Not leaving any support for them
Without taking him away.
He forced them to traverse the desert at night,
Never before the Ta'f did they know
What the desert was, nor did they know
How to traverse at night,
Not even their eyes
Had seen their shadows.
Till they appeared and wailed
At the Ghadirīyya, unveiled...

AT THE GOVERNOR'S MANSION²

Having returned from his camp at Nakhīla, [ʿUbaydullah] Ibn Ziyād went straight to his mansion³. The

¹This poem was composed by Sayyid Hayder al-Hilli, may Allāh enlighten his mausoleum.

²According to p. 8 of Siffin, a book written by Nasr ibn Muzāhim and printed in Egypt, when Ali (ع) entered Kūfa, he was asked, “Which [prison] house do you prefer?” He said, “Do not lodge me at the house of oppression and corruption.” He, therefore, remained in the custody of Jaʿdah ibn Habīrah al-Makhzūmī.

Al-Husain's severed head was placed in front of him, and he kept hitting its mouth with a rod which he had in his hand for some time. Zayd ibn Arqam said, “Stop hitting these lips with your rod, for by Allah, the One and Only God, I saw the lips of the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) kissing them,” then he broke into tears. Ibn Ziyād said to him, “May Allah cause you never to cease crying! By Allah, had you not been an old man who lost his wits, I would have killed you.” Zayd went out of the meeting place saying, “A slave is now a monarch ruling them, treating them as his property. O Arabs! Henceforth, you are the slaves! You have killed Fātima's son and granted authority to the son of Marjānā who kills the best from among you and permits the evil ones to be worshipped. You have accepted humiliation, so away with whoever accepts humiliation.”

Zainab daughter of the Commander of the Faithful ( Races kept a distance from the women as she remained disguised, but she could not disguise the prestige of being brought up in the lap of prophethood and in the glory of Imāmate, so she attracted Ibn Ziyād's attention. He inquired about her. He was told that she was Zainab, the wise lady, daughter of the Commander of the Faithful ( Races. He wanted to tell her how rejoiced he was at what had happened. Said he, “Praise be to Allah Who exposed you to shame, Who killed you and proved you liars.” She, peace be upon her, responded with: “Praise be to Allah Who honoured us by choosing Muhammed [from among us] as His Prophet and purified us with a perfect purification. Rather, only a debauchee is exposed to

\[\text{she was brought with nothing to cover her head} \\
\text{in a condition that left no patience for the skin.} \\
\text{With nothing to cover her face;} \\
\text{did they keep any cover for the ladies of guidance?} \\
\text{No, by the One Who outfitted her with His Light,} \\
\text{They robbed her even of her cover.} \\
\text{May those hands be forever} \\
\text{Paralyzed; they left no veil for them at all.} \]


\[\text{3 Sharḥ Qaṣīdat Abī Firās, p. 149.} \]

\[\text{4 `Abul-Abbās” ʿAbd ibn Yousuf ibn ʿAbd al-Qarmānī, } \text{Akhbār al-Duwal, Vol. 1, p. 8.} \]

\[\text{5 Excerpted from a poem by Sayyid ʿAbd al-Muttalib al-Hilli recorded on p. 218, Vol. 3, of } \text{Su`arā` al-Hilla.} \]

\[\text{6 Ibn Hajar al-`Asqalānī, } \text{Al-Sawā'iq al-Muhriqā, p. 118. al-Tabari, } \text{Tārikh, Vol. 6, p. 262. Ibn Kathīr, } \text{Al-Bidāya wal Nihāya, Vol. 8, p. 190. Ibn Hajar al-Haythami, } \text{Mujma` al-Zawā'id, Vol. 9, p. 195. Ibn ʿAsākir, } \text{Tārikh, Vol. 4, p. 340. These authors have expressed their disbelief of what he has said. The fact that he was blind does not necessarily render his statement inaccurate, for it is quite possible he had heard the same. Ibn ʿAsākir's statement that Zayd was present then and there supports his.} \]
shame, and a sinner is proven to be a liar, and we are neither.”

Ibn Ziyād asked her, “How have you seen what Allah has done to your Ahl al-Bayt (t)?” She, peace be upon her, said, “I have seen Him treating them most beautifully. These are people to whom Allah prescribed martyrdom, so they leaped from their beds welcoming it, and Allah shall gather you and them, and you shall be questioned, and your opponents shall charge you; so, you will then find out whose lot shall be the crack of hell, may your mother, O son of Marjāna, lose you.”

This statement enraged Ibn Ziyād, and her words incinerated him with ire, especially since she said it before such a huge crowd. He, therefore, was about to kill her when ’Amr ibn Harith said to him, “She is only a woman; can she be held accountable for what she said? She cannot be blamed when she thus prattles.”

Ibn Ziyād turned to her one more time and said, “Allah has healed my heart by letting me seek revenge against your tyrant and against the rebels and mutineers from among his Ahl al-Bayt!” The wise lady calmed herself and said, “By my life! You have killed my middle-aged protector, persecuted my family, cut off my branch and pulled out my roots; so, if all of this heals your heart, then you are indeed healed.”

Did the foes’ lances really seek him?

O Husain! Never shall I ever forget Husain!

Did the foes’ lances really seek him?

They left him in Kerbalā’ slain,

---

1al-Tabari, Ṭūrīkh, Vol. 6, p. 262.
2Ibn Tāwūs, Al-Luhūf, p. 90.
3Ibn al-Athīr, Al-Kāmil, Vol. 4, p. 33. al-Khwārizmī, Maqtaʿ al-Husain, Vol. 2, p. 42. al-Tabari, Ṭūrīkh, Vol. 6, p. 263. al-Mufīd, Al-Irshād, al-Tibrīsī, Tāʾāt al-Warū, p. 141. According to p. 145, Vol. 3, of Kāmil al-Mībraḍ (1347 A.H./1735 A.D. edition), Zainab daughter of Ali ibn Abu Tālib (t), the eldest of those taken captive to Ibn Ziyād, was quite eloquent, driving her argument against the latter home. Ibn Ziyād, therefore, said to her, “If you achieved your objective behind your oratory, your father was an orator and a poet.” She said to him, “What would women do with poetry?” Ibn Ziyād, in fact, used to stutter, and he had a lisp; his speech had a heavy Persian accent.


5al-Tabari, Ṭūrīkh, Vol. 6, p. 263.
7Ibn al-Athīr, Al-Kāmil, Vol. 4, p. 34.
May Allāh never water Kerbala's sides.¹

When it became clear to Ibn Ziyād that there were many people present who were voicing their resentment of what he had committed and how everyone was repeating what Zainab had said, he feared an uprising, so he ordered the police to jail the captives inside a house adjacent to the grand mosque². Ibn Ziyād's doorman has said, “I was with them when he issued his order to jail them. I saw how the men and women assembled there weeping and beating their faces.”³ Zainab shouted at people saying, “Nobody should tend to us except either a bondmaid, a freed bondmaid, or umm wuld⁴, for they were taken captive just as we have been.”⁵ What Zainab meant is that only a female captive is familiar with the pain and humiliation of captivity; therefore, she would be sympathetic and would not rejoice nor enjoy seeing them in captivity. This is undeniable. It is reported that when Jassas ibn Murrah killed Kalīb ibn Rabī‘ah, it happened that his sister was in the company of Kalīb at the time. When the women of the quarter met for the funeral ceremony in Kalīb's memory, they said to the latter's sister, “Get Jalīla (Jassas's sister) out of this ceremony; her presence causes her to rejoice, and it is a shame among the Arabs; she is the sister of one who has killed one of us.” The woman voluntarily left as Kalīb's sister said, “This is the departure of the aggressor and the parting of one who rejoices on account of our misfortune.”⁶

Ibn Ziyād again called them to his presence. When they were brought to him, their women saw al-Husain's head in front of him with its divine rays ascending from its curves to the depth of the heavens. Al-Rubā‘, al-Husain's wife, could not check herself from falling upon it and kissing it as she said:

The one that was in Kerbala a luminary
Is now slain but not buried at all
O grandson of the Prophet! May Allāh reward you
On our behalf with goodness and may you
Be spared the shorting of the scales.

To me you were a mountain, a refuge
And you used to be our companion in lineage and in creed
Who will now help the orphans and those in need?
To whom shall the needy go for help?
By Allāh! I shall never exchange your kinship with anyone else
Till I am lost between water and mud.⁷

¹These lines are recorded on p. 148 of Tathkirit al-Khawāṣṣ of Ibn al-Jawzi, the grandson. Due to confusion and absence of verification, these same verses are recorded under No. 18, p. 314, or Al-Hamāṣa al-Basriyya, in a chapter dealing with eulogies, attributing them to `Āṭika daughter of Nufayl, al-Ḥusain's wife! Not even one reliable historian has ever indicated that al-Ḥusain (ṣ) had ever married her!

³al-Naishapuri, Rawdat al-Wā‘izin, p. 163.
⁴“Freed umm wuld” is a bondmaid who bears sons by her master and who is set free on that account but remains in the latter’s custody as his wife. – Tr.
⁶Abul-Faraj al-Isfahānī, Al-Aghānī, Vol. 4, p. 150.
IBN `AFIF

Hamid ibn Muslim has said, “Ibn Ziyād ordered to hold a congregational prayer service. They assembled at the grand mosque. Ibn Ziyād ascended the pulpit and said, ‘All Praise is due to Allāh Who manifested the truth and elevated those who act according to it and Who granted victory to the commander of the faithful Yazīd and to his party, and Who killed the liar and the son of the liar, al-Husain son of Ali, and his Shi`as.’”

Nobody among that crowd that had sunk in misguidance objected to such a preposterous statement except `Abdullāh ibn `Affīf al-Azdi and also one of the sons of Walibāh al-Ghamīdī who both stood up and said to him, ‘O son of Marjān! The liar and the son of the liar is you and your father, and so is everyone who accepts your authority and his son! O son of Marjān! Do you really kill the offspring of the prophets and still talk about who is truthful and who is a liar?!’” Ibn Ziyād asked who the speaker was. Ibn `Affīf answered by saying, ‘I am the speaker, O enemy of Allāh! Do you really kill the righteous offspring from whom Allāh removed all abomination then claim that you are a follower of the Islamic creed?! Oh! Is there anyone to help?! Where are the sons of the Muhājirīn and the Ansār to seek revenge against your tyrant, the one who and whose father were both cursed by Muḥammad (ṣ.), the Messenger of the Lord of the Worlds?’

Ibn Ziyād’s anger now intensified. He ordered him to be brought to him. The police grabbed him. It was then that Ibn `Affīf shouted the slogan used by the Azdis which was: ‘Ya Mabroor!’ This caused a large number of the Azdis present there to leap to his rescue and to forcibly free him from the police and take him safely home.”

`Abdul-Rahmān ibn Makhnāf al-Azdi said to him, “Woe unto someone else other than you! You have surely condemned yourself and your tribe to destruction!”

Ibn Ziyād then ordered a number of men from the Azd tribe, including `Abdul-Rahmān ibn Mikhnāf al-Azdi, to be jailed. During the night, a band of men working for Ibn Ziyād went to the latter's house to bring him intelligence of what the Azd tribesmen were discussing. When these tribesmen came to know about such spying, they gathered their fighting men, as well as the fighting men of their allies in Yemen, together. Ibn Ziyād came to know about such assembling of troops, so he sent Mudār tribesmen headed by Muḥammad ibn al-Asḥāth to fight them. A fierce battle broke out, and many men from both sides were killed. Wāsīl ibn al-Asḥāth reached the house of Ibn `Affīf. He and his men broke its door open. His daughter screamed warning her father saying, “The people have come to you!” He said to her, “Do not be concerned, just hand me my sword” with which he kept defending himself as he was reciting these lines:

The son of the honoured, the clement, and the pure am I
Clement is my mentor and the son of Umm `Āmir
How many of you shielded or did not shield,
How many a hero left slain on the battlefield?

His daughter kept saying, “How I wish I had been a man so that I could defend you against these sinners, the

---

1Ibn al-Athīr, Al-Kāmil, Vol. 1, p. 34.
2al-Tabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 263.
3Ibn Tāwūs, Al-Luhūf.
4al-Tabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 263.
5al-Qazwīnī, Riyāḍ al-Aḥzān, p. 57, citing Rawdat al-Ṣafā.
6According to Ibn Nāma al-Hilli’s book Muthūr al-Aḥzān, Ibn Ziyād had dispatched Muḥammad ibn al-Asḥāth. Since he was killed on `Ashūrā as a consequence of Imām al-Husain’s curse upon him when a scorpion bit him, the person dispatched in this account should instead be one of the offspring of al-Asḥāth.
killers of the righteous Progeny of the Prophet (صلى الله عليه وسلم)!

For some time, no man was able to come close to him due to the fact that his daughter kept warning him about the direction from which they were attacking him since he was blind. In the end, however, they overwhelmed him. His daughter cried out: “What humiliation! My father is surrounded and there is none to help him!” He kept circling with his sword in his hand as he repeated this line:

I swear, should I am permitted to see,  
Unable to face my might shall you be.  
By Allah do I swear! Had I been able to see  
You wouldn't know whence and how I attack thee!

Once they overpowered him, they arrested him and brought him to Ibn Ziyād who started by saying to him, “Praise be to Allah who subjected you to such humiliation!” Ibn `Afīf asked him: “What did He humiliate me for?!”. Then he recited this line of poetry:

By Allah do I swear! Had I only been able to see  
You wouldn't know whence and how I attack thee!

Ibn Ziyād asked him, “O enemy of Allah! What do you think of `Uthmān [ibn `Affān]?” Ibn `Afīf verbally abused `Uthmān then said to Ibn Ziyād, “What do you have to do with `Uthmān whether he was good or bad? Allah, the most Praised and Exalted One, is in charge of His creatures; He judges between them and between `Uthmān with justice and equity. You should instead ask me about your father and about Yazīd and his father.” Ibn Ziyād said, “I shall not ask you about anything; rather, you shall taste of death one choking after another.” Ibn `Afīf said, “Then Praise to Allah, the Lord of the Worlds! I have been for years praying my Lord to grant me the honour of martyrdom even before your mother gave birth to you, and I prayed Him to let it be at the hands of one whom He curses and hates the most! When I lost my eyesight, I lost hope of attaining martyrdom, but now I praise Allah Who has blessed me with it though I had lost that hope, responding to my supplications of old!” Ibn Ziyād ordered his neck to be struck with the sword and to crucify him in the salty tracts of the land.1

Ibn Ziyād ordered Jandab ibn `Abdullāh al-Azdi, who was an old man, to be brought to him. He said to him, “O enemy of Allah! Did you not fight on Abu Turāb’s side during the Battle of Ṣiffīn?” The old man answered, “Yes, and I love him and am proud of him, while I despise you and your father especially after you have killed the grandson of the Prophet (صلى الله عليه وسلم) and his companions and the members of his family without fearing the One and Only God, the Great Avenger.” Ibn Ziyād said, “You have less feeling of shame than that blind man, and I seek nearness to Allah through shedding your blood.” Jandab said, “In that case, Allah shall never bring you closer to Him.” Ibn Ziyād, on a second thought, feared the might of the man’s Azd tribe, so he left him alone saying, “He is only an old man who has lost his mind and wits.” He released him.2

AL-MUKHTĀR AL-THAQAFI

---


When Ibn Mūkhtar saw that horrific and most deplorable scene, he sighed loudly and an exchange of harsh words took place between him and Ibn Ziyād wherein the harshest words were al-Mūkhtar’s. Ibn Ziyād became burning with outrage and ordered him to be sent back to jail. Some say that he whipped him, blinding one of his eyes.2

After the execution of Ibn `Afīf, al-Mūkhtar was released due to the interference of `Abdullāh son of `Omer ibn al-Khattāb who asked Yazīd to have him released. Yazīd was the husband of al-Mūkhtar’s sister, Safiyyya daughter of Abu `Ubayd al-Thaqafi. But Ibn Ziyād postponed carrying out Yazīd’s order for three days. Having ordered the execution of Ibn `Afīf, Ibn Ziyād delivered a speech wherein he abused the Commander of the Faithful (ṣ), causing al-Mūkhtar to denounce and to taunt him to his face saying, “You are the liar, O enemy of Allah and enemy of His Messenger! Rather, Praise to Allah Who dignified al-Husain and his army with Paradise and with forgiveness just as He humiliated Yazīd and his army with the fire and with shame.” Ibn Ziyād hurled an iron bar at him that fractured his forehead, then he ordered him to be sent back to jail, but people reminded him that `Omer ibn Sa’d was the husband of his sister while another brother-in-law was none other than `Abdullāh ibn `Omer [ibn al-Khattāb]. They reminded him of his lofty lineage, so he changed his mind of having him killed, yet he insisted on sending him back to prison. For the second time did `Abdullāh ibn `Omer write Yazīd who in turn wrote `Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād ordering him to release the man.3

Al-Mūkhtar incessantly kept after that informing the Shi’as of the merits which he knew of the companions of the Commander of the Faithful (ṣ), of how he rose seeking revenge for al-Husain (ṣ), and how he killed Ibn Ziyād and those who fought al-Husain (ṣ).4

One incident he narrated was the following which he recollected about the time when he was in Ibn Ziyād’s jail:

`Abdullāh ibn al-Hārith ibn Nawfal ibn `Abd al-Muṭṭalib and Maytham al-Tammār were among his cell mates. `Abdullāh ibn al-Hārith asked for a piece of iron to remove the hair in certain parts of his body saying, “I do not feel secure against Ibn Ziyād executing me, and I do not want him to do so while there is unwanted hair on my body.” Al-Mūkhtar said to him, “By Allāh he shall not kill you, nor shall he kill me, nor shall you face except very little hardship before you become the governor of Basra!” Maytham heard their dialogue, so he said to al-Mūkhtar, “You yourself will rise seeking revenge for al-Husain’s blood, and you shall kill the same man who wants us to be killed, and you shall trample on his cheeks with your very foot.”5 This came to be exactly as these men had said. `Abdullāh ibn al-Hārith was released from jail after Yazīd’s death and became the governor of Basra. After only one year, al-Mūkhtar rose seeking revenge against the killers of al-Husain (ṣ), killing Ibn Ziyād, Harmalāh ibn Kāhīl, Shimr ibn Thul-Jawshan and a large number of the Kāfians who had betrayed al-Husain (ṣ). As Ibn Nama al-Hilli tells us, he [and his army] killed eighteen thousand Kāfians, then almost ten thousand of them fled away from him and sought refuge with Mis’ab ibn al-Zubayr. Among them was Shabth ibn Rab’i who reached him riding a mule whose ears and tail he had cut off and who was wearing

---

1. Al-Qazwīnī, Riyāḍ al-Ahzān, p. 52.
a torn outer garment and shouting, “Help! Lead us to fight this debauchee who demolished our homes and killed our honourable men!”

THE SACRED HEAD SPEAKS

My heart goes for your head atop a spear  
Outfitted with its own lights with an attire,  
Reciting the Book from the top of the spear,  
Through him did they raise the Book even higher.  

The martyred grandson of the Prophet (ﷺ) remained an ally of the Qur’an since his early childhood. Thus were he and his brother ( ), for they were the legacy of the Messenger of Allah, his vicegerents over his nation. The greatest Prophet (ﷺ) had stated that they and the Holy Qur’an would never part from one another till they meet him at the Pool of Kawthar. Al-Husain ( ), therefore, never ceased reciting the Qur’an all his life as he taught and cultivated others, when he was at home or when travelling. Even during his stand in the Battle of Taif, though surrounded by his foes, he used the Qur’an to argue with them and to explain his point of view to them. Thus was the son of the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) energetically marching towards his sacred objective, so much so that his sacred head kept reciting the Qur’an even as it stood atop a spear, perhaps someone among the people would be enlightened with the light of the truth. But this lamp-post of guidance did not see except people whose comprehension was limited, whose hearts were sealed, and whose ears were deafened: “Allāh sealed their hearts and hearing, and over their vision there is a veil” (Qur’an, 2:7).

This must not surprise anyone who comprehends divine mysteries. The Lord, Praise to Him, mandated upon the Master of Martyrs ( ) to rise in order to close the gates of misguidance in that particular fashion defined by the circumstances, place, and method. He did so for the achievement of certain objectives set by the Great One. He had inspired His holiest Prophet (ﷺ) to recite this particular page to his son, al-Husain ( ); so, there is no way other than its acceptance and the submission to whatever best pleases the Lord of the Worlds: “He is not asked about what He does, whereas they are asked” (Qur’an, 21:23).

The Omnipotent and the Exalted One wanted such a sacred uprising to make the nation then, as well as the successive generations, to become acquainted with the misguidance of those who deviated from the Straight Path and who played havoc with the Shari’a. He liked any and all deeds that would firm the foundations of this martyrdom whose epic was recorded by al-Husain's pure blood, bringing about shining pages narrating the deeds of those who rose against abomination. This became enshrouded with many extra-ordinary events which most minds could not comprehend. One such strange event was the recitation by the great head of the sacred verses of the Holy Qur’an. The speech of a severed head is a most eloquent means to drive the argument against those who were blinded by their own desires home. It underscores the fact that his stand was right, a stand which he never undertook except in obedience to the Lord of the Worlds and to the detriment of those who in any way harmed or oppressed al-Husain ( ). It drew the nation's attention to the misguidance of those who dared to oppress.

Divine Providence did not do something for the first time when it enabled al-Husain's head to speak in

---

1 al-Tabari, Tārīkh, Vol. 7, p. 146.
2 According to p. 36 of Sayyid Muḥsin al-Amin's book Al-Durr al-Nadīd, these verses were composed by Sayyid Riḍa al-Hindi.
order to serve the interests the essence of which many fail to comprehend. It had enabled a tree\(^1\) to speak to Moses son of Imran [Amram], prophet of Allah (\(\text{\textcircled{\(\varepsilon\)}}\)), and how can a tree be compared to a severed head in as far as obedience to the most Merciful One, Praise to Him, is concerned?

Zayd ibn Arqam has said, “I was sitting in my room when they passed by, and I heard the head reciting this verse: ˝Or do you think that the fellows of the cave and the inscription were of Our amazing Signs?˝ (Qur’\(\text{\textcircled{\(\text{\textcircled{\(\varepsilon\)}}\)}}\), 18:9). My hair stood up, and I said, ˝By Allah, O son of the Messenger of Allah! Your head is much more amazing!˝\(^2\)

When the holiest of severed heads was placed at the money changers’ section of the bazaar, there was a great deal of commotion and noise of the dealers and customers. The Master of Martyrs (\(\text{\textcircled{\(\varepsilon\)}}\)) wanted to attract the attention to him so that people would listen to his terse admonishment, so his severed head hawked quite loudly, thus turning all faces to it. Never did people hear a severed head hawking before the martyrdom of al-Husain (\(\text{\textcircled{\(\varepsilon\)}}\)). It then recited Sûrat al-Kahf from its beginning till it reached the verse saying, “They are youths who believed in their Lord, and We increased their guidance” (Qur’\(\text{\textcircled{\(\text{\textcircled{\(\varepsilon\)}}\)}}\), 18:13), “… and do not (O Lord!) increase the unjust in aught but error” (Qur’\(\text{\textcircled{\(\text{\textcircled{\(\varepsilon\)}}\)}}\), 71:24).

The head was hung on a tree. People assembled around it looking at the dazzling light that emanated from it as it recited the verse saying, “And those who oppressed shall come to know what an end they shall meet” (Qur’\(\text{\textcircled{\(\text{\textcircled{\(\varepsilon\)}}\)}}\), 26:227).\(^3\)

Hilâl ibn Mu‘awiyyah has said, “I saw a man carrying the head of al-Husain (\(\text{\textcircled{\(\varepsilon\)}}\)) as it [the head] was saying, ˝You separated between my head and my body, so may Allah separate between your flesh and bones, and may He make you a Sign for those who shirk from the Straight Path.˝ He, therefore, raised his whip and kept whipping the head till it ceased.”\(^4\)

Salamah ibn Kahlîr heard the head reciting the following verse from the top of the spear where it had been placed: “Allah shall suffice you for them, and He is the Hearing, the Knowing” (Qur’\(\text{\textcircled{\(\text{\textcircled{\(\varepsilon\)}}\)}}\), 2:137).\(^5\)

Ibn Wâkidâ says that he heard the head reciting Sûrat al-Kahf, so he was doubtful whether it was, indeed, the voice of the Imâm (\(\text{\textcircled{\(\varepsilon\)}}\)), whereupon he (\(\text{\textcircled{\(\varepsilon\)}}\)), stopped his recitation and turned to the man to say, “O son of Wâkidâ! Do you not know that we, the Imâms, are living with our Lord receiving our sustenance?” He, therefore, decided to steal and bury the head. It was then that the glorious head spoke again to him saying, “O son of Wâkidâ! There is no way to do that. Their shedding my blood is greater with Allah than placing me on a spear; so, leave them alone, for they shall come to know when the collars are placed around their necks and when they are dragged with chains.”\(^6\) Al-Minhâl ibn ’Amr has said, “I saw al-Husain’s head in Damascus atop a spear and in front of it stood a man; the head was reciting Sûrat al-Kahf. When the recitation came to the verse


\(^{3}\)Ibn Shahr Ûshûb, Vol. 2, p. 188.

\(^{4}\)Sharh Qasîdat Abî Firâs, p. 148.


\(^{6}\)Sharh Qasîdat Abî Firâs, p. 148.
saying, `Or did you reckon the fellows of the Cave and the Inscription among our amazing Signs?' (Qur’ān, 18:9), the head spoke in an articulate tongue saying, `More amazing than the fellows of the cave is killing me and thus transporting me.'”

When Yazīd ordered the killing of a messenger sent by the then Roman [Byzantine] emperor who resented what Yazīd had committed, the head loudly articulated these words: *La hawla wala quwwata illa billāh!* (There is no power nor might except in Allāh).

Is it your soul or the soul of Prophethood that does ascend From the earth to Paradise as the ḥurīs prostrate? Is it your head or the head of the Messenger atop the spear Repeating the *ayat* of the fellows of the cave? Is it your chest or the reservoir of knowledge and wisdom That crushed a host of the ignorant attempts? Is it your mother or the Mother of the Book that did sigh So her sighing heart did indeed melt, And the earth echoes the heavens in its sighs So while one wails, the other cries? The *Wahi* held a mourning of its own At his house, and the one solaced is Muhammed, Seeing the Two Weighty Things: One to pieces torn With arrows, and the other with the sword to pieces sawn, So his *ʿItrat* some killed by the sword and some by the arrows, Some martyred and some expelled in the plains full of sorrows. What a martyr whose body did the sun bake? Though from its very origin did its own rays take? And what a slain save one whose body the horses crushed Though from his mention their riders freeze and are hushed. Did you know that Muhammed's very soul, Like his Qur’ān, is in his grandson personified? Had those horses, like their riders, only come to know That the one under the hooves was in fact Ahmed, They would have against their riders declared a mutiny Just as they against him revolted and declared. Injustice slit a throat the moon's light does envy And in each of his veins for the truth there is a star And crushed ribs wherein compassion does reside And stopped breathing wherein the Truth is Glorified. Yet the greatest calamity of all Is the suffering of his free ladies' every soul. Oppressed they were as their only protector is tied Some were handcuffed complaining from their pain,

---

While other ladies were being slapped and in chain,  
As if said to his people the Messenger of Oneness:  
Seek revenge against my ’Itarat and with cruelty oppress.¹

**OPPRESSION OF AL-ASHDAQ**

Ibn Ja’rūr [al-Tabari] narrates the following:

Ibn Ziyād wanted to send ’Abd al-Malik ibn al-Hārith al-Salāmī to Madīna in order to inform ‘Amr ibn Sa’īd al-Ashdaq² of the killing of al-Husain (ṣ), but he sought to be excused of such an undertaking, claiming to be sick. Al-Ashdaq refused to accept his excuse. Ibn Ziyād was described as very heavy-handed, nobody could tolerate his ire. He ordered the man to rush and to buy another she-camel if the one he was riding was not fast enough, and not to let anyone reach the destination before him. He, therefore, rushed to Madīna. A man from Quraish met him and asked him why he seemed to be in such a hurry. ’The answer rests with the governor,’ was his answer. When Ibn Sa’īd was informed of al-Husain (ṣ) having been killed, he was very happily excited and was subdued with elation. He ordered a caller to announce it in the city’s alleys, and before long, the cries and the wailing coming from the Hashemite ladies mourning the Master of the Youths of Paradise (ṣ) were heard like never before. Those cries reached all the way to the house of al-Ashdaq who laughed and quoted a verse of poetry composed by ’Amr ibn Ma’di-Karb saying,

Noisy with grief were the women of Banū Ziyād  
As noisy as our women on the Rabbit Day.

He maliciously added saying, “A wailing noise like the one we raised when Ṭūthmān was killed.”³ Then he turned to the grave of the Messenger of Allāh (ṣ) and again maliciously said, “Now we have gotten even with you, Messenger of Allāh, for what you did to us during the Battle of Badr.” A number of men from the Anṣār rebuked him with shame for having made such a statement.⁴

He ascended the pulpit and said, “O people! It is a blow for a blow, and a crushing for a crushing! A sermon followed another! This is sound wisdom, so no nathr can do any good. He condemned us as we praised him, cut off his ties with us though we did not, just as it was his habit, and just as it was ours, but what else can we do to a man who drew his sword with the intention to kill us other than to put an end to the danger to which he exposed us?”

‘Abdullāh ibn al-Sa’īd stood up and said to him, “Had Fāṭima (ṣ) been alive, and had she seen al-Husain’s [severed] head, she would have wept for him.” ‘Amr ibn Sa’īd rebuked him and said, “We are more worthy of Fāṭima than you: Her father was our uncle, her husband was our brother, his mother was our daughter. And had Fāṭima been alive, she would have cried but would not have blamed those who killed him in self

¹Excerpted from a poem by Sayyid Sāliḥ son of the ḍallāma Sayyid Mehdi Bahr al-ʿUlūm.

²According to p. 240, Vol. 5, of Ibn Hajār al-Hāïthami's book Mujma’ al-Zawā’id, and also according to p. 141 of his other book titled Al-Sawā’iq al-Muhriqa, Abu Hurayra is quoted as saying, “I have heard the Messenger of Allāh, peace of Allāh be upon him and his progeny, saying, ‘One of the tyrants of Banū Umayyah shall have a nosebleed on my pulpit, and his blood will flow thereupon.’” ‘Amr ibn Sa’īd did, indeed, have a nosebleed as he was on the pulpit of the Messenger of Allāh (ṣ), staining it with his blood.

³al-Tabari, Tārikh, Vol. 6, p. 368.

defense.”¹

`Amr was very crude and uncouth, a man of legendary cruelty. He ordered `Amr ibn al-Zubayr ibn al-Awwam², head of the police force, after al-Husain (шейх) had been killed, to demolish all the houses of Banū Hashim [the Prophet's clansmen]. He did, persecuting them beyond limits... He also demolished the home of Ibn Mut` and beat people with cruelty. They fled from him and went to [`Abdullah] Ibn al-Zubayr³. The reason why he was called “al-Ashadq” [one whose jaws are twisted to the right or to the left] is due to the fact that his jaws were twisted after having gone to extremes in taunting Imam Ali ibn Abu Talib (шейх)⁴. Allāh, therefore, punished him [in this life before the hereafter] in the worst manner. He was carried to `Abd al-Malik ibn Marwān in chains; once he had profusely remonstrated with the latter, he was ordered to be killed⁵.

Escorted by a number of women from her kinsfolk, the daughter of `Aqīl ibn Abu Talib went out to visit the grave of the Prophet (ﷺ) where she threw herself on it, burst in tears then turned to the Muhajirūn and the Ansār and came forth instantaneously with these verses:

What will you on the Judgment Day
To the Prophet stand and say?
Surely what you will hear will be true:
Those who betrayed his Progeny were you.
Were you present, or were you not there at all
And justice is combined in the Lord of all...?
You handed it over to those who are never fair
So your intercession with Allāh will go nowhere.
Though on the Taff Day absent was he,
Yet all the dead did your very eyes see.
You saw all those who did die
So to Allāh you shall never come nigh.

All those present wept. There was no such weeping ever before⁶. Her sister, Zainab, kept mourning al-Husain (шейх) in the most somber manner while repeating these verses:

What will you say when the Prophet to you will say:
How did you fare, since you are the last of nations,
With my Progeny and family after my demise?
Some of them were taken captives and some in blood stained.
That was not my reward for having advised you

¹`Abdullāh Nūr-Allāh al-Bahrānī, Maqta al-ʿAwālim, p. 131.
²According to p. 23, Vol. 4, of al-Balāthirī's book Ansāb al-Ašrāf, the mother of `Amr ibn al-Zubayr was Ama daughter of Khālid ibn Saʿid ibn al-ʿĀs. Her father was in command of an army which `Amr ibn Saʿid al-Asdaq dispatched to Mecca to fight `Abdullāh ibn al-Zubayr. Abdullāh's army captured `Amr ibn al-Zubayr, so `Abdullāh ordered everyone who had suffered an injustice at his hand to whip him. The whipping caused his death.
⁴al-Mirzabānī, Muṣjam al-Shuʿarāʾ, p. 231.
That you should succeed me in faring ill with my family. ¹

**UMM AL-BANEEN**²

I could not find any reliable reference clearly stating that Umm al-Baneen was alive during the Battle of Taff, and there are three theories refuting anyone's claim to the contrary:

**FIRST:** ʿAllama Muhammed Hasan al-Qazwini says on p. 60 of his book *Riyād al-Ahzān*, “The mourning of that tragedy was held at the house of Umm al-Baneen, wife of the Commander of the Faithful (ṣ) and mother of al-ʿAbbās and his brothers.”

**SECOND:** On p. 31 of the second edition of al-Samawi's book *Ibsār al-ʿAyān*, it is stated that, “I find my heart pouring out for the eulogy of his mother Fātimah, Umm al-Baneen, which was recited by Abul-Hasan al-Akhfash in his book *Sharḥ al-Kāmil*. She used to go to al-Baqiʾ [cemetery] daily in order to mourn him, and she would carry his son ʿAbdullāh. The people of Mecca used to assemble and listen to her eulogies. Among them was Marwān ibn al-Hakam. They would all weep for the grief in her mourning.”

**THIRD:** Abul-Faraj [al-Isfahāni] in his book *Muqāṭil al-Tālibīyyīn* says the following when he discusses how al-ʿAbbās was killed: “It is reported from Muhammed ibn Ali ibn Hamzah who quotes Hammād ibn ʿEisa al-Juhnī citing Muʿāwiyyah ibn ʿAmmar citing Jaʿfer saying that Umm al-Baneen was the mother of four brothers who were all killed. She used to go out to al-Baqiʾ to mourn the death of her sons in the most sad of tones and the most burning to the hearts. People would assemble to listen to her. Marwān used to go among those who went there; he listened to her mourning.”

This is all I could find indicating that she was alive during the Battle of Taff. But the first quotation contains no proof; all it says is that the mourning was held at the house of Umm al-Baneen. There is no clue in it to her being present there and then, and it is no more than a tale recorded by Abul-Faraj which he accepted without conducting the least amount of investigation regarding its authenticity. The second statement is clearly a quotation of what Abul-Faraj has written. Al-Samawi’s *Ibsār al-ʿAyān* contains pretty much what is included in *Muqāṭil al-Tālibīyyīn*, hence it cannot be regarded as a second independent opinion.

As to the text in *Sharḥ al-Kāmil*, which is attributed to al-Akhfash, I could not find even one single biographer referring to it, although I examined the biographies of everyone named “al-Akhfash.” As regarding *shaikh* al-Samawi, I personally quite often asked him about the source of the said *Sharḥ*, but he always met me with silence. I even told him frankly that the verses of poetry in it must be his own, and that he built his tale around them; so, his reward will nevertheless be with the Almighty, all Praise to Him. Such is the case with al-Majlisi who quotes Abul-Faraj on p. 201, Vol. 10, of his encyclopedia *Bihār al-Anwār*. The narrative by Abul-Faraj with regard to this incident is faulty due to the following:

---

¹These verses verbatim are recorded on p. 51 of Ibn Nama’s book *Muthīr al-Ahzān*, on p. 96 of Ibn Tāwūs’s book *Al-Luhūf*, and on p. 36, Vol. 4, of Ibn al-Athīr’s book *Al-Tārikh al-Kāmil*, but the latter concedes that they were by [Zainab] the daughter of ʿAqīl ibn Abu Tālib, and so does Abul-Rayhān al-Biruni who states so on p. 329 of his book *Al-Āthīr al-Bāqiya*. The same is stated by Ibn Jarīr [al-Ṭabarī] on p. 268, Vol. 6, of his *Tārikh*, but he quotes only two lines. Ibn Qutaybah, on p. 212, Vol. 1, of his book ʿUyūn al-Akhdār, says that there is a disagreement among the scholars about these verses. On p. 76, Vol. 2, of al-Khawārizmi’s book *Maqtaʿ al-Husain*, it is stated that they were by Zainab daughter of ʿAqīl ibn Abu Tālib.

²“Umm al-baneen” literally means: “mother of the sons.” Such was called any bondmaid who was freed after giving birth to a son by her master and who literally in her husband/master’s custody thereafter as his wife. It carries the same meaning as “umm wuld.” – Tr.
1. Nobody pays attention to the men upon whom he relies for his isnād. Yazid ibn al-Mughirah ibn Nawfal ibn al-Harith ibn `Abd al-Muttalib ibn Hashim al-Nawfali is mentioned on p. 347, Vol. 11, of Ibn Hajar’s book Tahtīb al-Tahtīb where Ahmed is quoted as saying that the man has much to be criticized for. Abu Zar‘ah describes his traditions as weak and that most of what he narrates is not known to others. Abu Hātim has said, “His traditions are very bad.” Al-Naṣṣār says that the traditions he narrates should be discarded. On p. 214, Vol. 10, of Ibn Hajar’s book titled Tahtīb al-Tahtīb, Mu‘āwiyah ibn `Amrār ibn Abu Mu‘āwiyah cites Abu Hātim saying that his traditions are not to be used as arguments; besides, he is not well known [to other scholars of traditions].

2. Umm al-Bāneen quotes a great deal of spiritual knowledge and prophetic ethics from the master of ṭawwās as well as from the Masters of the Youths of Paradise (r), so much so that what she learned lifted her to the highest degrees of conviction. She could not have said anything contradictory to the canon of the Share‘a which prohibits a woman from being exposed in any way to strangers either through prohibition or as a precaution so long as there was no extreme necessity for it. It goes without saying that when a woman mourns someone she has lost, she ought to sit in her house and fortify herself against being seen by strangers or her voice being heard by them as long as there was no urgency for it. Al-Sa‘īdā (r), once said to Abu Khalif al-Kabuli who expressed his astonishment at finding the Imām’s door open, “O Abu Khalif! One of our neighbours has just left our house and was not aware of the door not shutting properly. It does not fit the daughters of the Messenger of Allāh ( ﷺ) to go out and [noisily] slam the door behind them.”

So, whoever grows up at their homes and learns their ethics does not deviate from their path. There is no room to charge Umm al-Bāneen of having crossed the divine boundaries legislated by the Share‘a for women.

As regarding the truthful lady, al-Zahrā’ (r), Medina’s elders forced her to go out to the Baqī’ cemetery to mourn her father (r), so the Commander of the Faithful (r) built her a shed of palm leaves to shield her from the strangers, a shed which he called “bayt al-ahzān” (the house of griefs). Historians never say that people used to go there to hear her mourn the setting of the sun of Prophethood, the cessation of the heavens’ wāhi, and the obliteration of the divine counsels.

3. A woman mourns her lost one at the cemetery where he is buried. Nobody has written saying that a woman went out to a cemetery to mourn her dear one who is buried somewhere else. Such is the case in all generations. The claim made by Abul-Faraj that Umm al-Bāneen used to go to al-Baqqī’ cemetery is an evident fabrication since there is no proof for it. His objective was to say that Marwān ibn al-Hakam was kind of heart, for weeping is a sign of grief caused by oppression inflicted upon a dear deceased person to whom one is linked by a certain tie, so his heart gets excited and the emotion overflows, hence the tears pour down from his eyes when he weeps. Marwān ibn al-Hakam was the one who rejoiced at the killing of al-Husain (r), and he demonstrated his elation and happiness about such a calamity when he looked at al-Husain’s head then instantly came forth with these verses:

1Sayyid Hāshim al-Bahrānī, Madīnāt al-Mu‘ājīz, p. 318, ḥadīth 86.

2The following is recorded on p. 93 of Al-Ishārāt li Ma‘rifat al-Ziyārāt, where the author, Abu Muhsin Ali ibn Abu Bakr al-Harawi, says, “Bayt al-Ahzān at the Baqqī’ belongs to Fātimah (r).” Ibn Jubayr is quoted on p. 103, Vol. 2, of the 1316 A.H./1899 A.D. Egyptian edition of al-Samhādi’s book Wafa‘ al-Wafā’, saying, “Near al-Abbās’s dome is Bayt al-Ahzān to which Fātimah (r) used to retire after the demise of her father (r), and she spent her grieving time there.” Al-Khwārizmī, on p. 191 of the first 1310 A.H./1893 A.D. edition of his book Hamish al-`Ulam’, says that Ali (r) built a shed of palm leaves in the [then] outskirts of Medina for al-Zahrā’ (r) to mourn her father (r).” On p. 328, Vol. 2, of Fath al-Qadīr by Ibn Humām al-Hanafi, it is stated that prayers are offered at the masjid of Fātimah (r) daughter of the Messenger of Allāh ( ﷺ) at the Baqqī’, and it is the one called Bayt al-Ahzān.”
How I wish your garment were on your arms
And redness were on your cheeks,
Looking like pieces of gold twain,
How happy I am today having killed Husain!

4. Abul-Faraj, in his book Muqâtil al-Tâlibiyyân, contradicts himself when he discusses the martyrdom of al-`Abbâs (¢) then comments by saying, “He was the last to be killed from among his full-blooded brothers whom he inherited.”

Such narrative agrees with what Miṣ`ab ibn al-Zubayr has recorded on p. 43 of Nasab Quraish where he says, “Al-`Abbâs inherited his brothers who did not have offspring, and al-`Abbâs inherited his son `Ubaydullah. ’Omer and Muhammed were both alive; so, Muhammed handed over his inheritance from his uncles to `Ubaydullah whereas ’Omer did not till someone mediated, and he accepted his share.” Abu Nasr al-Bukhârî has said on p. 89 of Sirr al-Silsila al-`Alawiyya (printed at Najaf by the Hayderi Press), “On the Ta’ff Day, al-Husain (¢) advanced the brothers of al-`Abbâs, namely Ja`fer, `Uthmân, and ’Abdullâh, who were all killed, so al-`Abbâs inherited them. Then al-`Abbâs was killed, so his son `Ubaydullah ibn al-`Abbâs inherited them all.” This confirms our belief that Umm al-Baneen was dead during the Battle of Ta’ff. Had she been alive, she would have inherited the wealth that belonged to al-`Abbâs's brothers, being their mother, and they would not have been inherited by al-`Abbâs till the inheritance is transferred to his son `Ubaydullah. Muhammed ibn al-Hanafiyya did not dispute with `Ubaydullah about his uncles' inheritance, in accordance with the Sharî`a, because al-`Abbâs was related through both his father and mother to his brothers who had by then been martyred, whereas Muhammed was related to them only through his father. A full-blooded brother is given priority in as far as inheritance is concerned over his half-brother. ’Omer al-Atraf did not understand the problem although he was the son of Ali (¢), the gateway of the City of Knowledge (ص), and he should have referred to the nation's Imam, Zayn al-`Ābidîn, in order not to fall in perdition. The dispute attributed to him was true. What is stated in `Umdat al-Tâlib (Najaf's edition) confirms the existence of such a dispute: He went out to people wearing red-dyed clothes and made a statement wherein he said, “I am the wise man who did not go out to fight.” The contradiction in what Abul-Faraj says becomes obvious: To say that Umm al-Baneen went out to al-Baqi’ cemetery to mourn her sons is to say that she was alive then, whereas his discussion of al-`Abbâs's estate being inherited by his brothers testifies to the fact that she was actually dead by then... How often he [Abul-Faraj al-Isfahâni] has fallen in error!

`ABDULLAH IBN JA`FER

Ibn Jarîr [al-Tabari] has said that when the news of al-Husain's martyrdom was announced, `Abdullâh ibn Ja`fer held a mourning majlis, so people came to him to offer their condolences. His slave, Abul-Lislâs¹, said to him, “This is what we got from al-Husain!” He hurled his sandal at him as he said, “O son of the stinking woman! How dare you say something like that about al-Husain (¢)?! By Allah! Had I been with him, I would not have liked to part with him before being killed defending him. By Allah! What consoles me is that both my sons were martyred in his defense together with my brother as well as my cousin who all stood firmly on his side.” Then he turned to those in his presence and said, “Praise to Allah! It surely is very heavy on my heart to

¹His name as stated on p. 194 of al-Irbîlî's book Kashf al-Ghummah was “Abul-Salâsî,” the man of chains.
see al-Husain (¢) get killed, and that I could not defend him with my life, but both my sons have.”

It is truly amazing to read in the books of history how al-Balathiri and al-Muhsin al-Tanakhi claim that `Abdullah ibn Ja’fer went to meet Yazid, and that the latter was generous to him more than his father Mu‘awiya had been!

Anyone who studies the psychology of Ja’fer's son will find it evident that this incident, which is taken for granted by al-Mada‘îni and upon which al-Balathiri and al-Tanakhi depend, is simply a lie. Anyone who sees how those men lost their loved ones cannot help concluding that their fires were full of nothing but grief over such a loss as they waited for the opportunity to seek revenge. This is proven by the statement made to the Prophet (ص) by `Abdullah ibn Ubayy ibn Sallal. When Ubayy did something because of which the Qur’anic verse saying, “Should we return to Medina, the mighty ones shall get the weak out of it” (Qur’ân, Al-Munafiqûn [The Hypocrites]:63), `Abdullâh came to the Prophet of Islam (ص) and said, “You have heard this statement made by Ubayy, have you not?” The Prophet (ص) said, “I have.” The man then said, “You know very well that there is nobody more kind than me to his father, yet if you want him killed, then order me to do it, for I am afraid you will order someone else to do it, and I hate to look at the face of my father's killer then attack and kill him and get myself thrown into the fire [of hell]...” This incident gives us a glorious idea about the human nature, about how the relatives of someone killed feel, and how they wait for the opportunity to seek revenge, even when such killing throws them into the pitfalls of shirk. Such is the nature of all people. `Omer ibn al-Khattâb used to say to Sa`d ibn al-`As, with whom he met one night in the company of `Uthmân, Ali (¢), and Ibn `Abbas, “Why do you thus turn away from me as if I killed your father?! I did not kill him; al-Hasan's father [Imâm Ali, as] did.” The Commander of the Faithful (¢) said, “O Allâh! I seek Your forgiveness! Shirk and everything else therein is by now gone, and Islam obliterated whatever was before it; so, why do you, O `Omer, thus stir old hostilities?” It was then that Sa`id said, “The man who killed him was apt to it, a man of nobility, and it is dearer to me that he killed him than anyone else who did not descend from `Abd Manâf.”

It was not easy for Sa`id to remember how his father had been killed even though the latter was an apostate whom the sword of Muhammed's Call killed, and even though the killer [Ali] is a man of honour whose feats are numerous, and even though the latter did not kill him except in obedience to the Order of the Lord, the Mighty One, as the wâhi was brought from the heavens by the “messenger of the heavens” [Gabriel]. But his fear of the sword of justice obligated him to pretend to be satisfied, although the fire was burning inside him as he kept waiting for an opportunity to seek revenge. Such fire of animosity manifested itself by his son, `Amr ibn Sa`id al-Ashdaq, on the same day when he was appointed by Yazid as Governor of Medina. He looked in the direction of the Prophet's grave and, with such a big mouth, loudly said, “This day do we seek revenge for the Battle of Badr, O Messenger of Allâh!” And when he heard the wailing of the women of Bani Hashim mourning the Master of the Youths of Paradise, he said, “Mourners mourning: thus did we mourn `Uthmân.”

The heart of `Abdullâh ibn Ja’fer was burning against Maysoon's son, and he very much hoped for an opportunity to annihilate him, to finish him, as well as his family and kinsfolk. No matter how forgetful he may have been, he could not have forgotten that he killed the “Father of the Oppressed” and the stars on earth belonging to `Abd al-Muttalib as well as the peerless from among his companions. He hit with his rod the lips
of the fragrant flower of the Messenger of Allah (صلی الله علیه وآله وسلم)! Could Ja’fer's son, since the case was as such, look at Yazid in the eyes as his sword was dripping with their own blood, and as he was deafened by hearing one who felt rejoiced at the calamity that befell the Prophet of Islam? Yazid had said this line:

    The cream of their crop have we killed
    Then did we turn and set the record for Badr straight.

He denied the Islamic Message altogether saying:

    Banâ Hashim with authority played,
    No message came, nor any revelation revealed.

Could the son of Ja’fer possibly forget how the ladies who descended from the Prophet (صلی الله علیه وآله وسلم) stood with their faces unveiled, exposed to the looks of those who were near as well as those who were distant, knowing that they were the source of all honour, the fortress of the creed? What makes things more tolerable is the fact that the person who accepts this tradition is none other than al-Madâ’ini who is well known for his loyalty to the Umayyads, and his book is full of “traditions” raising the status of Banâ Umayyah and lowering that of the ’Alawides. Anybody who is familiar with the biographies of notable men and with the personalities of the narrators pays no attention to such “traditions”.

```
`ABDULLÂH IBN `ABBÂS
```

Having come to know that `Abdullâh ibn `Abbâs refused to swear the oath of allegiance to Ibn al-Zubayr, Yazid wrote him saying,

    It has come to my knowledge that the atheist son of al-Zubayr invited you to swear the oath of allegiance to him and to be obedient to him so that you might support him in his wrongdoing and share his sins, and that you refused and kept your distance from him because Allah made you aware of our rights we, family members of the Prophet (صلی الله علیه وآله وسلم); so, may He grant you the rewards due to those who maintain their ties of kinship, who are true to their promise. No matter what I forget, I shall never forget how you always remained in contact with us, and how good the reward you have received, the one due to those who obey and who are honoured by being relatives of the Messenger of Allah (صلی الله علیه وآله وسلم). Look, then, after your people, and look at those whom the son of al-Zubayr enchants with his words and with his promises and pull them away from him, for they will listen to you more than they will to him; they would hear you more than they would that renegade atheist, and peace be with you.

Ibn `Abbâs wrote Yazid back saying,

    I received your letter wherein you mentioned Ibn al-Zubayr's invitation to me to swear the oath of allegiance to him, and that I refused due to recognizing your right. If that is the case [as you claim], I desire nothing but being kind to you. But Allah knows best what I intend to do. And you wrote me urging me to encourage people to rally behind you and to discourage them from supporting Ibn al-Zubayr... Nay! Neither pleasure nor happiness is here for you; may your mouth be filled with stones, for you are the one whose view is weak when you listened to your own
whims and desires, and it is you who is at fault and who shall perish! And you wrote me urging me to hurry and to join my ties of kinship. Withhold your own, man, for I shall withhold from you my affection and my support. By my life, you do not give us of what is in your hand except very little while withholding a lot; may your father lose you! Do you think that I will really forget how you killed Husain (ћ) and the youths of Banū `Abd al-Muttalib, the lanterns that shone in the dark, the stars of guidance, the lamp-posts of piety, and how your horses trampled upon their bodies according to your command, so they were left unburied, drenched in their blood on the desert without any shrouds, nor were they buried, with the wind blowing on them and the wolves invading them, and the heinas assault them till Allāh sent them people who do not have shirk running through their veins and who shrouded and buried them...? From me and from them come supplications to Allāh to torment you! No matter what I forget, I shall never forget how you let loose on them the da`iyy and the son of the da`iyy, the one begotten by that promiscuous prostitute, the one whose lineage is distant, whose father and mother are mean, the one because of whose adoption did your father earn shame, sin, humiliation and abasement in the life of this world and in the hereafter. This is so because the Messenger of Allāh (ص) said, “The son is begotten by wedlock, whereas for the prostitute there are stones.” Your father claims that the son is out of wedlock, and it does not harm the prostitute, and he accepts him as his son just as he does his legitimate offspring! Your father killed the Sunnah with ignorance while deliberately bringing to life all misguidance. And no matter what I forget, I shall never forget how you chased Husain (ћ) out of the sanctuary of the Messenger of Allāh [Medina] to that of Allāh Almighty [Mecca], and how you dispatched men to kill him there. You kept trying till you caused him to leave Mecca and to go to Kāfā pursued by your horsemen, with your soldiers roaring at him like lions, O enemy of Allāh, of His Messenger (ص), and of his Ahl al-Bayt (ћ)!

Then you wrote Marjāna's son to face him with his cavalry and infantry, with spears and swords. And you wrote him ordering him to be swift in attacking him and not to give him time to negotiate any settlement till you killed him and the youths of Banū `Abd al-Muttalib who belong to Ahl al-Bayt (ћ) with him, those from whom Allāh removed all abomination and whom He purified with a perfect purification. Such are we, unlike your own uncouth fathers, the livers of donkeys! You knew fully well that he was most prominent in the past and most cherished now, had he only sought refuge in Mecca and permitted bloodshed in its sanctuary. But he sought reconciliation, and he asked you to go back to your senses, yet you went after the few who were in his company and desired to eradicate his Ahl al-Bayt (ћ) as if you were killing dynasties from the Turks or from Kabul! How do you conceive me as being friendly to you, and how dare you ask me to support you?! You have killed my own brothers, and your sword is dripping with my blood, and you are the one whom I seek for revenge. So if Allāh wills, you shall not be able to shed my blood, nor shall you be faster than me in seeking revenge so you would be more swift in killing us just as the prophets are killed, considering their blood equal to that of others. But the promise is with Allāh, and Allāh suffices in supporting the wronged, and He seeks revenge for the oppressed. What is truly amazing is your own transporting the daughters of `Abd al-Muttalib and their children to Syria. You see yourself as our vanquisher, and that you have the right to humiliate us, although through me and through them did Allāh bestow blessings upon you and upon your slave parents. By Allāh! You welcome the evening and the day in security indifferent to my wounds; so, let my own tongue wound you instead, and let my tying and untying not provoke you to argue. Allāh shall not give you a respite following your killing of the Progeny of the Messenger of Allāh (ص) except for a very short while before He takes you as a Mighty One does, and He shall not take you out of the life of this world except as an abased and
dejected sinner; so, enjoy your days, may you lose your father, as you please, for what you have committed has surely made you abased in the sight of Allah.1

THE CAPTIVES TAKEN TO SYRIA

Ibn Ziyād sent a messenger to Yazīd to inform him that al-Husain (ṣ) and those in his company were killed, that his children were in Kūfah, and that he was waiting for his orders as to what to do with them. In his answer, Yazīd ordered him to send them and the severed heads to him2.

`Ubaydullāh wrote something, tied it to a rock then hurled it inside the prison where the family of Muhammed, peace and blessings of Allah be upon him and his family, was kept. In it he said, “Orders came from Yazīd to take you to him on such-and-such a day. If you hear the takbir, you should write your wills; otherwise, there is security.” The post returned from Syria with the news that al-Husain's family is being sent to Syria3.

Ibn Ziyād ordered Zajr ibn Qays and Abu Burda ibn `Awf al-Azdi as well as Tāriq ibn Zabyān to head a band of Kūfians charged with carrying al-Husain's severed head and of those killed with him to Yazīd4. Another account says that Mujbir ibn Murrah ibn Khalid ibn Qanab ibn `Omer ibn Qays ibn al-Hārith ibn Mālik ibn `Ubaydullāh ibn Khuzaymah ibn Lu`ayy did so5.

They were trailed by Ali ibn al-Husain (ṣ) whose hands were tied to his neck in the company of his family6 in a condition the sight of which would cause anyone's skin to shiver7. With them was Shimr ibn Thul-Jawshan, Mujfir ibn Thu`labah al-`A`idi8, Shabth ibn Rab`i, `Amr ibn al-Hājjās, in addition to other men. They were ordered to mount the heads on spears and to display them

---


2Ibn Tāwūs, Al-Luhūf, pp. 95-97.

3al-Tabari, Tārikh, Vol. 6, p. 266. On p. 96, al-Tabari states that Abu Bukrah was given one week by Bishr ibn Arta`ah to go to Mu`awiyyah. He went back from Syria on the seventh day. On p. 74 of his book Muthūr al-Ahzān, IbnNama says that `Amirah was dispatched by `Abdullāh ibn `Omer to Yazīd in order to get him to release al-Mukhtār al-Thaqafi. Yazīd wrote a letter in this regard to `Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād. `Amirah brought him the letter to Kūfah, crossing the distance from [Damascus,] Syria to Kūfah in eleven days.


5Ibn Hajar al-`Asqalānī, Al-Isbābah, Vol. 3, p. 489, where Murrah's biography is discussed.


7al-Qarmānī, Tārikh, p. 108. al-Yāfī, Mir`at al-Jīnān, Vol. 1, p. 134. In both references, it is stated that the daughters of Imām al-Husain son of Ali ibn Abu Tālib (ṣ) were taken into captivity, and Zayn al-`Abidin (ṣ) was with them, and that he was sick. They were driven as captives; may Allah be the Killer of those who did it. Only Ibn Taymiyyah differed from all other historians when he stated on p. 288 of his book Minhāj al-I'tidāl saying that al-Husain's women were taken to Medina after he had been killed.

8On p. 165 of Ibn Hazm's book Jamharat Ansāb al-`Arab, it is stated that, “Among Banū `Ādah are: Mujfir ibn Murrah ibn Khalīd ibn `Amīr ibn Qābān ibn `Amīr ibn Qays ibn al-Hārith ibn Mālik ibn `Ubayd ibn Khuzaymah ibn Lu`ay, and he is the one who carried the head of al-Husain son of Ali, peace be upon both of them, to Syria.”
wherever they went⁴. They hurried till they caught up with them⁵.

Ibn Lahi’ah is quoted as saying that he saw a man clinging to Ka’ba’s curtains seeking refuge with his Lord and saying, “And I cannot see You doing that!” Ibn Lahi’ah took him aside and said to him, “You must be insane! Allah is most Forgiving, most Merciful. Had your sins been as many as rain drops, He would still forgive you.” He said to Ibn Lahi’ah, “Be informed that I was among those who carried al-Husain’s head to Syria. Whenever it was dark, we would put the head down, sit around it and drink wine. During one night, I and my fellows were guarding it when I saw lightning and beings that surrounded the head. I was terrified and stunned but remained silent. I heard crying and wailing and someone saying, ‘O Muhammed! Allah ordered me to obey you; so, if you order me, I can cause an earthquake that will swallow these people just as it swallowed the people of Lot.’ He said to him, ‘O Gabriel! I shall call them to account on the Day of Judgment before my Lord, Glory to Him.’ It was then that I screamed, ‘O Messenger of Allah! I plead to you for security!’ He said to me, ‘Be gone, for Allah shall never forgive you.’ So, do you still think that Allah will forgive me⁶?”

At one stop on their journey, they put the purified head down; soon they saw a pen made of iron which came out of the wall and which wrote the following in blood⁷:

Does a nation that killed Husain really hope for a way
His grandfather will intercede for them on the Judgment Day?!

But they were not admonished by such a miracle, and blindness hurled them into the very deepest of all pits; surely Allah, the most Exalted One, is the best of judges.

One farasang before reaching their destination, they placed the head on a rock; a drop of blood fell from it on the rock. Every year, that drop would boil on `Ashara, and people would assemble there around it and hold mourning commemorations in honour of al-Husain (elho). A great deal of wailing would be around it. This continued to take place till `Abd al-Malik ibn Marwân ascended the throne. He ordered that the rock should be removed. It was never seen after that, but the spot where that rock stood became the site of a dome built in its honour which they called “al-Nuqta” [the drop]⁸:

Near the town of Hama and among its orchards stood a mosque called “Masjid al-Hasain.” People there

---

² al-Mufīd, Al-Irshād.
³ Ibn Tāwūs, Al-Luhūf, p. 98.
⁵ Shaikh `Abbās al-Qummi, Nafs al-Mahmūm, p. 228. It is stated on p. 23, Vol. 3, of Nahr al-Thahab fi Tārīkh Halab that, “When al-Husain’s head was brought with the captives, they reached a mountain to the west of Aleppo. One drop of blood fell from the sacred head above which a mausoleum called Mashhad al-Nuqta [mausoleum of the drop] was constructed.” On p. 280, Vol. 3, Yahya ibn Abu Tay’s Tārīkh is cited recounting the names of those who constructed and renovated it. On p. 66 of the book titled Al-Ishūrāt ila Mudīrat al-Ziyārat by Abul-Hasan Ali ibn Abu Bakr al-Harawi (who died in 611 A.H./1215 A.D.), it is stated that, “In the town of Nāsibin, there is a mausoleum called Mashhad al-Nuqta, a reference to a drop from al-Husain’s head. Also, there is at Sūq al-Nashshābin a place called Mashhad al-Rās [mausoleum of the head] where the head was hung when the captives were brought to Syria.”
say that they escorted the rock and the head of al-Husain (ﻫ) that bled all the way to Damascus.

Near Aleppo there is a shrine known as “Masqat al-Saqt.” The reason why it was called so is that when the ladies of the Messenger of Allah (ص) were taken to that place, al-Husain's wife had miscarried a son named Muhsein.

At some stops, the head was placed atop a spear next to a monk's monastery. During the night, the monk heard a great deal of tasbih and tahhl, and he saw a dazzling light emanating from it. He also heard a voice saying, “Peace be upon you, O father of `Abdullah!” He was amazed and did not know what to make of it. In the morning, he asked people about that head and was told that it was the head of al-Husain ibn Ali ibn Abu Talib (ﻫ), son of Fátima (ﻫ) daughter of Prophet Muhammed (ص). He said to them, “Woe unto you, people! True are the accounts that said that the heavens would rain blood!” He asked their permission to kiss the head, but they refused till he paid them some money. He declared his Shahāda and embraced Islam through the blessing of the one who was beheaded just for supporting the divine call. When they left that place, they looked at the money the monk had given them and saw this verse inscribed on it: “And those who oppressed shall come to find how evil their end shall be” (Qurʾān, 26:227).

Is the head of Fátima's son really gifted to the Syrians?
And is it with a rod hit by its killer?

Are the Prophet's virtuous daughters really taken captive
With their heads left without a cover,
Struggling with the pain of loss,
Seeing al-Husain's head from a distance atop a spear?
They weep, and its sight prohibits patience from coming near,
And his beard with his own blood drenched:
Whatever wind comes teases it and whatever goes.

**IN SYRIA**

---

1The mentor and revered muhaddith. Shaikh `Abbās al-Qummi, says the following in his book Nafs al-Mahmūm, “I saw that stone on my way to the pilgrimage, and I heard the servants talking about it.”

2On p. 173, Vol. 3, of Mu`jam al-Buldān, and on p. 128 of Kharītat al-`Ajā`īb, it is referred to as “Mashhad al-Tarh.” On p. 278, Vol. 2, of Nahr al-Thahab, it is called “Mashhad al-Dakka.” Mashhad al-Tarh is located to the west of Aleppo. In the Tārīkh of Ibn Abu Tay, it is indicated that Mashhad al-Tarh was built in the year 351 A.H./962 A.D. according to the order of Sayf al-Dawlah. Other historians have said that one of al-Husain's wives had miscarried in that place when al-Husain's children and the severed heads were brought with them. There used to be a useful mineral in that area, but when its residents felt elated upon seeing the captives, Zainab invoked Allāh’s curse on them; therefore, that mineral lost its useful qualities. Then the author goes on to document the history of its renovations.

3In the discussion of the subject of “Jawshan,” on p. 173, Vol. 3, of his work Mu`jam al-Buldān, and also on p. 128 of Kharītat al-`Ajā`īb, where reference to the Jawshan mountain is made, it is stated that one of al-Husain's family members taken captive asked some of those who worked there to give him bread and water. When they refused, he invoked Allāh to curse them, thus condemning the labour of all labourers at that place to always be unprofitable.

4Ibn al-Jawzi, the grandson, Tathkirat al-Khwāss, p. 150.

5These verses were composed by the `allāma shaikh `Abd al-Husain al-A`sam al-Najafi, may Allāh have mercy on his soul.
When they were near Damascus, Umm Kulthúm sent a message to al-Shímr asking him to let them enter the city from the least crowded highway, and to take the heads out so that people might be diverted by looking at them rather than looking at the women. He escorted them as they were in a condition from which skins would shiver and senses quiver. Al-Shímr instead ordered his men to take the captives for display before onlookers and to place the severed heads in their midst.²

On the first day of Safár, they entered Damascus and were stopped at the Clocks Gate. People came out carrying drums and trumpets in excitement and jubilation. A man came close to Sukayna and asked her, “What captives are you all from?” She said, “We are captives belonging to the family of Muhammad (ص).”³

Yázíd was sitting at a surveillance outpost overlooking the mountain of Jayrán. When he saw the captives with the heads planted atop the spears as their throng came close, a crow croaked, whereupon he composed these verses:

When those conveyances drew nigh
And the heads on the edge of Jayrán,
The crow croaked so said I:
Say whatever you wish to say
Or say nothing at all,
The Messenger this very day
What he owed me he did repay.⁵

It is due to these verses that Ibn al-Jawzi and Abu Ya`li, the judge, as well as al-Taftazáni and Jalal al-Sayyáthí permitted cursing Yázíd and labelling him as káfír.⁶

Sahl ibn Sá`d al-Sá`idi came close to Sukayna daughter of al-Husain (ع) and asked her, “Is there anything I can do for you?” She asked him to pay the man who was carrying the head some money and to ask him in

---


²Such is recorded on p. 331 of the offset edition of al-Birúni's book Al-Áthür al-Báquiya, al-Bahá's book Al-Kámil, on p. 269 of Mísháh al-Kaf`ámí, and on p. 15 of al-Fay'd's book Taqwím al-Muhsíín. According to p. 266, Vol. 6, of al-Tabári's Tárikh, the time from their imprisonment till the post coming from Syria informing them of their arrival at Syria in the beginning of the month of Safár must have been a lengthy one except if birds had been used to carry such mail.

³According to p. 61, Vol. 2, of al-Kháwárizmí's book Maqtal al-Husain, they were brought to Damascus through Toma's Gate. This Gate, according to p. 109 of Al-Máqásíd, was one of the ancient gates of Damascus. Abu `Abdulláh Muhammed ibn Ali ibn Ibráhím, who is known as Ibn Sháddád and who died in 684 A.H. /1286 A.D., says the following on p. 72, Vol. 3, of A`laq al-Khatrá: “It was called the Clocks Gate because atop that gate there were clocks marking each hour of the day: small copper sparrows, a copper raven and a copper snake marked the timing: at the end of each hour, sparrows would come out, the raven would let a shriek out, and one (or more) stone would be dropped in the copper washbowl [making it sound].”


⁵According to p. 161 of the offset Damascus edition of Ibn Hawqál's book Sourat al-Ard, there is none in the Islamic world better than it. It used to be a temple for the Sabæans, then the Greeks used to worship in it, then the Jews as well as Pagan kings. The gate of this mosque is called Jayrán's Gate. It is over this gate that the head of John the Baptist (Yahya son of Zakáriyya) was crucified. It was on this same Jayrán's Gate that the head of al-Husain ibn Ali ibn Abu Tálib (ع) was crucified in the same place where the head of John the Baptist had been crucified. During the reign of al-Walid ibn `Abd al-Malik, its walls were covered with marble. It seems that this is the same as the Umayyad Mosque.

⁶al-Álúsí, Rúh al-Ma`ání, Vol. 26, p. 73, where the verse “So do you wish, if you take charge... etc.” is explained. The author says, “He meant, when he said, ‘I have taken back from the Messenger (ص) what he owed me,’ that he avenged the loss which he had suffered during the Battle of Badr at the hands of the Messenger of Alláh (ص) when his grandfather, ‘Utbáh, his uncle, and others were killed. This is nothing but obvious apostasy. Such was the similitude struck by Ibn al-Zub`ári before accepting Islam.
return to stay away from the women so that people would be distracted by looking at the head instead of looking at the women. Sahl did so.

An elderly man came near al-Sajjad and said, “Praise be to Allah Who annihilated you and Who granted the governor the upper hand over you!” At such a juncture, the Imam poured of his own kindness over that poor [ignorant] man who was brainwashed by falsehood in order to bring him closer to the truth and to show him the path of guidance. Such are the Ahl al-Bayt (.), their light shines over those whom they know to be pure of heart and pure of essence and, as such, who are ready to receive guidance. He (.), asked the man, “Have you read the Qur’an, O shaikh?” The man answered al-Sajjad in the affirmative. “Have you read,” continued al-Sajjad, “the verse saying, ‘Say: I do not ask you for a reward for it [for conveying the Islamic Message to you] except that you treat my kinsfolk with kindness,’ the verse saying, ‘And give the [Prophet’s] kinsfolk their due rights,’ and the verse saying, ‘And be informed that whatever you earn by way of booty, for Allah belongs the fifth thereof and for the Messenger [of Allah] and for the [Prophet’s] kinsfolk?’” The man answered by saying, “Yes, I have read all of them.” He (.) then said, “We, by Allah, are the kinsfolk referred to in all these verses.” Then the Imam (.) asked him whether he had read the verse saying, “Allah only desires to remove all abomination from you, O Ahl al-Bayt, and purifies you with a perfect purification” (Qur’an, 33:33). “Yes” was the answer. Al-Sajjad (.), said to him, “We are Ahl al-Bayt whom Allah purified.” “I ask you in the Name of Allah,” asked the man, “are you really them?” Al-Sajjad (.), said, “By our grandfather, the Messenger of Allah, I swear that we are, without any doubt.”

It was then that the elderly man fell on al-Sajjad's feet kissing them as he said, “I dissociate myself before Allah from whoever killed you.” He sought repentance of the Imam (.) from whatever rude remarks he had earlier made. The encounter involving this elderly man reached Yazid who ordered the man to be killed.

What miracle will Yazid bring
On the Day the Books of deeds are read
When the Lord of 'Arsh will recite
And in denial stunned will be every being?

Before they were brought to Yazid's court, they were tied with ropes. The beginning of the rope was around the neck of Zayn al-'Abidin [Ali son of Imam al-Husain (.), also called al-Sajjad, the one who prostrates to Allah quite often], then around the necks of Zainab, Umm Kulthum, up to all the daughters of the Messenger of Allah (.)\[^{3}\]. Whenever they laxed in their walking, they were whipped. This went on till they were brought face to face with Yazid who was then sitting on his throne. Ali ibn al-Husain (.) asked him, “What do you think the reaction of the Messenger of Allah might have been had he seen us looking like this?” Everyone wept. Yazid ordered the ropes to be cut off.

---

3. According to p. 31, Vol. 25, of al-Álusi's voluminous book *Rûh al-Ma'âni*, these verses were composed by Sayyid 'Omer al-Haythami, one of the author's contemporary relatives. The author expresses his admiration of these verses.
4. al-Yâfi'i, *Mir'ât al-Jinân*, p. 341. On p. 35, Vol. 4, of his book *Al-Târikh al-Kâmîl*, Ibn al-Athir, as well as [al-Mas'ûdi] the author of *Muruqî al-Thabab*, both indicate that when the head was brought to Yazid, the latter kept hitting it with a rod in his hand as he cited these verses by the poet al-Hasîn ibn Hamâm:

(continued...)
They were lined up on the stairs to the gate leading to the [Umayyad Grand] mosque as was their custom with all captives, and the sacred head was placed in front of Yazid who kept looking at the captives and reciting these verses:

We took to patience, and on patience we set our minds,
While our swords chopped off heads and hands.
We were splitting heads of men held by us as dear
But they to unkindness and injustice were more near.

Then he turned to al-Nu`mân ibn Bashîr and said, “Praise to Allâh Who killed him [al-Ḥusain].” Al-Nu`mân said, “Commander of the faithful Mu`awiyah used to hate killing him.” Yazid said, “That was before he rebelled. Had he rebelled against the commander of the faithful, he would have killed him.”

May the heavens crush the earth
And may annihilation or resurrection overwhelm the world.
The veils of Ali's daughters, the best of all women,
Are made freely accessible to the da`is.
Captives on lean beasts of burdens were they conveyed,
With heads uncovered, a country bids them farewell
As another, bemused, eyes them.

So should their eyes be tearful,
Or should they of exhaustion be unable to walk,
The chambered lady that she is,
With cruelty the Shimr of prostitution would whip her,
And with his cruelty agonize her as he
In his grudge would rebuke her.
She has none to protect her except a haggard
Ailing, with sickness afflicted and in pain,
A sick man suffering nightly from cuffs and chain,

(...continued)

Our people refused to be fair to us, so
Swords in our hands bleeding did so,
Splitting the heads of men who are to us dear
Though they were to injustice and oppression more near.

On p. 313, Vol. 2, of Al-'Iqd al-Farîd (by Sayyid Muhammed Rida al-Asterbâdi al-Hilli), where Yazid's reign is discussed, the author says, “When the head was placed in front of him, Yazid cited what al-Hasîn ibn al-Hamâm al-Maznî had said.” He quoted the second verse [in the above English text, the last couplet]. Ibn Hajar al-Haythami al-'Aqalînî, on p. 198, Vol. 9, of his book Mujma` al-Zawâ'id, quotes only the second verse. On p. 61, Vol. 2, of his book Maqta`l al-Husain, al-Khawarizmi contents himself by simply saying that they stood on the steps of the mosque's gate. These verses are cited by al-Īmâdi on p. 91 of his book Al-Mu'talîf wa al-Mukhtalîf. Then he traces the lineage of the poet al-Hasîn ibn Hamâm ibn Rabî'ah, citing three verses, including these couplets, from a lengthy poem. On p. 151 of Al-Shîr wa al-Shu`arâ', three verses are cited which include this couplet. On p. 4 of Al-Ashyâ' wal Nâdî'în, where immortalized ancient poems and those composed during the time of jâhiliyya are cited, only the second verse is quoted. On p. 120, Vol. 12, of the Sassi edition of Abul-Faraj al-Isfahâni's voluminous book Al-Aghâni, thirteen lines are quoted, including this couplet.

Conveyed on a conveyance of hardship and cruelty. 
They took him at night, handcuffed, into the depths 
Of a plain he never before traversed. 
Iron consumed his flesh 
And affected him so his blood in his neck overflowed. 
He sees children cry and women wail, 
And livers from fear almost soar. 
As the head of his father, Muhammed's grandson 
Is hoisted before the captives on a spear. 
They took him to Syria unwelcome 
As its people celebrated their “victory”. 
They took him to the court of Hind's son 
Pleased with his “victory”. 
And Marwān with pleasure is elated 
And the head of his father, the grandson of the nabi, 
Is presented in a gold washbowl before a da`i 
Overtaken by pleasure and arrogance, 
One who used to hide his apostasy. 
But when he to his fathers at Badr referred 
Exposed his apostasy most manifestly.  

**YAZĪD MEETS AL-SAJJĀD (ɛ)**

_Yazīd turned to al-Sajjād (ɛ) and asked him, “How did you, Ali, see what Allāh did to your father, al-Husain?” “I saw,” answered al-Sajjād (ɛ), “what Allāh, the One and Only God, the most Exalted One, had decreed before creating the heavens and the earth.” Yazīd consulted those around him as to what to do with al-Sajjād (ɛ), and they advised him to kill him. Imām al-Sajjād, Zayn al-`Ābidīn (ɛ), said, “O Yazīd! These men have advised you to do the opposite of what Pharaoh's courtiers had advised Pharaoh saying: 'Grant him and his brother a respite.' The ad`iyā ² do not kill the prophets' sons and grandsons.” This statement caused Yazīd to lower his head and contemplate for a good while³. 

Among the dialogue that went on between both men is Yazīd quoting this Qur’ānic verse to Ali ibn al-Husain (ɛ): “Whatever misfortune befalls you is due to what your hands commit” (Qur’ān, 45:22). Ali ibn al-Husain (ɛ) responded by saying, “This verse was not revealed in reference to us. What was revealed in reference to us was this verse: 'Whatever misfortune befalls the earth or your own selves is already in a Book even before we cause it to happen; this is easy for Allāh, so that you may not grieve about what you missed nor feel elated on account of what you receive' (Qur’ān, 57:23)⁴. We do not grieve over what we missed nor feel elated on account of what we receive.”⁵ Yazīd then cited the following verse by al-Fadl ibn al-`Abbās ibn `Utbah:

---

¹Excerpted from a poem by the `allāma shaikh `Abd al-Mun`im al-Fartūsī.

²Ad`iyā is plural of da`iy, someone adopted and given the last name of the person who adopted him as though he had been the latter’s own biological offspring in contradiction to the Islamic tenets. — Tr.


⁵Ali ibn Ibrāhīm, *Tafsīr*, p. 603, where the Chapter of al-Shūra is discussed.
Wait, O cousins, wait, O masters, do not hurry!
Do not bring to surface what we did bury.¹

Al-Sajjād (🧢), sought permission to speak. “Yes,” said Yazīd, “provided you do not utter verbal attacks.” He (🧢) said, “I am now standing like one who ought not verbally attack anyone, but tell me: How do you think the Messenger of Allāh (ﷺ) would have felt had he seen me looking like this?” Yazīd ordered him to be untied.²

Yazīd ordered the person who used to recite the Friday khutba to ascend the pulpit and to insult Ali and al-Husayn (踟), which he did. Al-Sajjād (🧢) shouted at him saying, “You have traded the pleasure of the creature for the Wrath of the Creator, so take your place in the fire [of hell].”³

Should you on the pulpits publicly taunt him on demand,
While through his sword did these very pulpits stand?!²

He asked Yazīd saying, “Do you permit me to ascend this pulpit to deliver a speech that will please Allāh Almighty and that will bring good rewards for these folks?” Yazīd refused, but people kept pleading to him to yield, yet he was still relentless. His son, Mu‘āwiyyah II, said to him, “Permit him; what harm can his words cause?” Yazīd said, “These are people who have inherited knowledge and oratory⁴ and are spoon-fed with knowledge⁵.” They kept pressuring him till he agreed.

The Imam said:

All Praise is due to Allāh for Whom there is no beginning, the ever-Lasting for Whom there is no end, the First for Whom there is no starting point, the Last for Whom there is no ending point, the One Who remains after all beings no longer exist. He measured the nights and the days. He divided them into parts; so, Blessed is Allāh, the King, the all-Knowing... O people! We were granted six things and favoured with seven: We were granted knowledge, clemency, leniency, fluency, courage, and love for us in the hearts of the believers. And we were favoured by the fact that from among us came a Prophet, a Siddiq, a Tayyār, a Lion of Allāh and of His Prophet (ﷺ), and both Masters of the Youths of Paradise from among this nation. O people! Whoever recognizes me knows me, and whoever does not recognize me, let me tell him who I am and to what family I belong: O people! I am the son of Mecca and Mina; I am the son of Zamzam and al-Safā; I am the son of the one who carried the rukn on his mantle; I am the son of the best man who ever put on clothes and who ever made tawāf and sa’i, of whoever offered the hajj and pronounced the talbiya. I am the son of the one who was transported on the buraq and who was taken by Gabriel to sidrat al-muntaha, so he was near his Lord like the throw of a bow or closer still. I am the son of the one who led the angels of the heavens in the prayers. I am the son to whom the Mighty One revealed what He revealed. I am the son of the one who defended the Messenger of Allāh (ﷺ) at Badr and Hunayn and never disbelieved in Allāh not even as much

²Ibn Nama, Muthir al-Ahzān, p. 54.
⁴Kāmil al-Bahāʾi.
⁵al-Qazwīnī, Riyāḍ al-Ahzān, p. 148.
as the twinkling of an eye. I am the son of the best of the believers and of the heir of the prophets, of the leader of the Muslims and the noor of those who offer jihād and the killer of the renegades and those who deviated from the straight path and who scattered the ahzāb and the most courageous one, the one with the firmest determination: such is the father of the grandsons of the Prophet (ﺻﻠﻠﻪ وسلم), al-Hasan and al-Husain (عليهم السلام), such is Ali ibn Abu Tālib (عليه السلام). I am the son of Fāṭima al-Zahrā’ (عليها السلام), the Head of all Women, the son of Khadija al-Kubra. I am the son of the one with whose blood the sand mixed. I am the son of the one who was slaughtered at Kerbalā’. I am the son of the one for whom the jinns wept in the dark and for whom the birds in the air cried.

Having said this much, people's cries filled the place, and Yazīd feared dissension, so he ordered the mu'aththin to call the athān for the prayers. The latter shouted: Allāhu Akbar! The Imām (عليه السلام) said: “Allāh is Greater, more Magnanimous, and more Kind than what I fear and of what I avoid.” The prayer caller now shouted: Ashhadu an la ilā ilāha illa-Allāh! He (عليه السلام) said, “Yes, I testify with everyone who testifies that there is no god besides Him nor any other Lord.” The caller shouted: Ashahadu anna Muhammedan rasool-Allāh! The Imām (عليه السلام) said to the prayer caller, “I ask you, by Muhammed, to stop here till I speak to this man,” then he turned to Yazīd and asked him, “Is this great Messenger of Allāh (ﺻﻠﻠﻪ وسلم) your grandfather or mine? If you say that he is yours, everyone present here, as well as all other people, will come to know that you are a liar And if you say that he is mine, then why did you kill my father unjustly and oppressively and plundered his wealth and took his women captive? Woe unto you on the Day of Judgment when my grandfather will be your opponent.”

Yazīd yelled at the prayer caller to start the prayers immediately. A great deal of commotion now could be heard among the people. Some people prayed whereas others left.1

THE MOST SACRED HEAD

Yazīd ordered al-Husain's head to be brought to him. He put it in a gold washbowl2. The women were behind him. Sukayna and Fāṭima stood and tried anxiously to steal a look at it as Yazīd kept hiding it from them. When they did see it, they burst in tears3. He then permitted people to enter to see him4. Yazīd took a rod and kept hitting al-Husain's lips with it5 saying, “A day for a day: this day is [in revenge] for

---


Our folks refused to be to us fair
So swords dripping with blood were to them fair;
We were splitting heads of men held by us as dear
But they to unkindness and injustice were more near.

Yahya ibn al-Hakam ibn Abul-ʿĀs, brother of Marwān ibn al-Hakam, who was sitting near him, recited these verses:

A head at the Taff is closer in kinship
Than Ibn Ziyād, slave of a mean and lowly descent;

Sumayya's offspring count as many as the stones
But the Progeny of the Chosen One now have no offspring.

Having heard and understood them, Yazīd hit him [with the iron rod still in his hand] on his chest saying, “Shut your mouth, motherless man!”


According to p. 193, Vol. 8, of Ibn Kathīr's book Al-Bidāya, al-Ḥasan was a poet; then the author cites the second verse which is the same as stated in Mujmaʿ al-Zawā'id of Ibn Hajar al-Haythami al-ʿAsqalānī. On p. 54 of his book Muthār al-Ahzān, Ibn Nama narrates saying that al-Ḥasan ibn al-Ḥasan was al-Ḥasan II, and that when he saw al-Ḥusain's head being thus hit, he said, “O what humiliation!”

Sumayya's offspring now count as many as the stones
Whereas the daughter of the Messenger of Allāh has no offspring.

According to p. 49 of Tathkīrat al-Khwās of Ibn al-Jawzi, the grandson, when al-Ḥasan al-Basri came to know what Yazīd had done to the head, he cited the second verse. According to p. 71, Vol. 12, of Al-Aghānī, these verses were attributed to ʿAbdul-Raḥmān ibn (continued...)
Abu Barzah al-Aslami said, “I bear witness that I saw the Prophet (ﷺ) kissing his lips and those of his brother al-Hasan (ν) and say to them: ‘You are the Masters of the Youths of Paradise; may Allah fight whoever fights you; may He curse him and prepare hell for him, and what an evil refuge it is!’” Yazid became angry and ordered him to be dragged out of his court.

A [Christian] messenger sent by Caesar was present there; he said to Yazid, “We have in some islands the hoof of the donkey upon which Jesus rode, and we make a pilgrimage to it every year from all lands and offer nathr to it and hold it in as much regard as you hold your sacred books; so, I bear witness that you are wrongdoers.” This statement enraged Yazid who ordered him to be killed. The messenger stood up, walked to the head, kissed it and pronounced the kalima. At the moment when that messenger's head was cut off, everyone heard a loud and fluent voice saying: La hawla wala quwwata illa billah! (There is neither power nor might except in Allah).

The head was taken out of the court and hung for three days on the mansion's gate. When Hind daughter of `Amr ibn Suhayl, Yazid's wife, saw the head on her house's door with divine light emanating from it, its blood still fresh and had not yet dried, and it was emitting a sweet fragrance, she entered Yazid's court without a veil crying, “The head of the daughter of the Messenger of Allah (ص) is on our door!” Yazid stood up, covered her and said, “Mourn him, O Hind, for he is the reason why Banā Hāshim are grieving. [ʿUbaydullah] Ibn Ziyād hastily killed him.”

Yazid ordered the heads to be hung on the land's gates and on the Umayyad Mosque, and his order was carried out.

Marwān [ibn al-Hakam] was very happy about al-Husain (ν) being killed, so he composed this poetry:

Dawser hit them with such a blow
That firmed authority's foundations,
So authority now is stable.

Then he kept hitting al-Husain's face with a rod as he was repeating these poetry lines:

---


2 Ibn Ḥajar al-‘Aṣqalānī, Al-Suwāʾiq al-Muhriqa, p. 119.

3 Abdullāh Nūr-Allāh al-Bahrānī, Maqta l al-ʿAwālim, p. 151. Ibn Nama, Muthīr al-Ahzān. On p. 72, Vol. 2, of his book Maqta l al-Husain, al-Khawārizmi states the dialogue between the Christian [envoy] and Yazid and how the first was killed, but he does not indicate that the most sacred head spoke.


5 Abdullāh Nūr-Allāh al-Bahrānī, Maqta l al-ʿAwālim, p. 151. In the Introduction to this book, her father is introduced to the reader and so is her husband.


How I wish your garment were on your arms
And redness were on your cheeks,
Looking like pieces of gold twain,
How happy I am today having killed Husain!

A SYRIAN ENCOUNTERS FĀTIMA

Historians record that a Syrian looked at Fātima daughter of Ali (Ʌ) then asked Yazīd to give her to him to serve him. This daughter of the Commander of the Faithful (Ʌ) was terrified; she clung to her sister Zainab and said, “Serve him?! How could I do that?!” Zainab said to her, “Do not be concerned; this shall never happen at all.” Hearing her, Yazīd said, “It could if I would!” She said to him, “Not unless you renegade from our religion.” He answered her by saying, “Those who reneged from the religion are your father and your brother.” Zainab said, “By Allah’s religion and the religion of my grandfather do I swear that it was through my father and brother that you and your father received guidance, had you been a Muslim at all.” He said to her, “You lie, you enemy of Allah!” She, peace be upon her, toned down her language and said to him, “You are an ʿāmir over the destiny of people; you oppressively taunt and subdue others.” The same Syrian repeated his plea to Yazīd who now rebuked him and said, “May Allah grant you a fate that will put an end to you!”

ZAINAB’S SPEECH

Both Ibn Nama and Ibn Tawus (Ʌ) say that Zainab daughter of Ali ibn Abu Ṭalib (Ʌ) heard Yazīd quoting the following verses by Ibn al-Zub`ari (Ʌ):

I wish my forefathers at Badr had witnessed
How the Khazraj are by the thorns annoyed,
They would have Glorified and Unified Allah
Then they would make tahhil and say in elation:

May your hands, O Yazīd, never be paralyzed!

---


2 Ibn al-Athīr, Vol. 4, p. 35.

3 al-Ṭabarî, Tārīkh, Vol. 6, p. 265.

4 This sermon is documented on p. 21 of Balaghāt al-Nisā‘ (Najafi edition), and on p. 64, Vol. 2, of al-Khawārizmi’s book Maqtal al-Husain.

5 In his book Maqtal al-Husain, al-Khawārizmi identifies her mother as Fātima (Ʌ) daughter of the Messenger of Allah (ص).

6 These verses are attributed by Ibn Tawus to Ibn al-Zub’ari, as he so states on p. 102 of his book Al-Luhūf, but they are not all his. Al-Khawārizmi on p. 66, Vol. 2, of his book Maqtal al-Husain, Ibn Abul-Hadīd on p. 383, Vol. 3, of his book Sharḥ Nahjul Balūgha (first Egyptian edition), and Ibn Hishām in his Sīrat, where he discusses the Battle of Uhud, all state sixteen lines which do not include except the first and the third lines mentioned by Ibn Tawus. Al-Birūnī cites all of them on p. 331 of the offset edition of his book Al-Āthār al-Buqiyā, excluding the fourth line.
We have killed the masters of their chiefs
And equated it with Badr, and it was so, indeed;
Hashim played with the dominion so
No news came, nor a revelation descended.
I do not belong to Khandaf if I do not
Seek revenge from Ahmed's offspring
For what he had done.

She reacted to these lines by stating the following:

All Praise is due to Allah, Lord of the Worlds. Allah has blessed His Messenger and all His Messenger's Progeny. Allah, Glory to Him, has said the truth when He said, “Then the end of those who committed evil was that they disbelieved in Allah's Signs and they were ridiculing them” (Qur'an, 30:10). Do you, O Yazid, think that when you blocked all the avenues before us, so we were driven as captives, that we are light in the sight of Allah and that you are superior to us? Or is it because you enjoy with Him a great status, so you look down at us and become arrogant, elated, when you see the world submissive to you and things are done as you want them, and when our authority and power became all yours? But wait! Have you forgotten that Allah has said, “Do not regard those who disbelieved that We grant them good for themselves? We only give them a respite so that they may increase their sins, and for them there is a humiliating torment”? (Qur'an, 3:178). Is it fair, O son of tahlis, that you keep your free and slave women in their chambers and at the same time drive the daughters of the Messenger of Allah (saaw) as captives with their veils removed and faces exposed, taken by their enemies from one land to another, being viewed by those at watering places as well as those who man your forts, with their faces exposed to the looks of everyone near or distant, lowly or honourable, having none of their protectors with them nor any of their men? But what can be expected from one [descended from those] whose mouths chewed the livers of the purified ones and whose flesh grows out of the blood of the martyrs? How can it be expected that one who looks at us with grudge and animosity, with hatred and malice, would not hate us, we Ahl al-Bayt (saaw)? Besides, you, without feeling any guilt or weighing heavily what you say, recite saying:

Then they would make tahhil and say in elation:
May your hands, O Yazid, never be paralyzed!

How dare you hit the lips of Abu `Abdullah (as), the Master of the Youths of Paradise? But why should you not do so, since you stirred a wound that almost healed and all mercy is removed from your heart when you shed the blood of the offspring of Muhammed, peace and blessings of Allah be upon him and his Progeny, and the stars on earth from among the family of `Abd al-Muttalib? Then you cite your mentors as if you speak to them... Soon shall you be lodged with them, and soon shall you wish you were paralyzed and muted and never said what you said nor did what you did. O Allah! Take what belongs to us out of his hands, seek revenge against all those who oppressed us, and let Your Wrath descend upon whoever shed our blood and killed our protectors! By Allah! You have burnt only your own skin! You have cut only your own flesh! You shall come face to face with the Messenger of Allah, peace of Allah be upon him and
his Progeny, bearing the burdens of the blood which you have shed, the blood of his offspring, and of his sanctities which you violated, the sanctities of his women, his kinsfolk, his flesh and blood, when Allah gathers them together and seeks equity on their behalf. “And do not reckon those who are slain in the Way of Allah as dead. Nay! They are living with their Lord, receiving their sustenance” (Qur‘ān, 3:169). Allah suffices you as your Judge and Muhammed, peace and blessings of Allah be upon him and his progeny, as your opponent, and Gabriel as your foe. All those who instigated you to do what you did and who put you in charge so that you might play havoc with the lives of the Muslims: how evil the end of the oppressors is and which of you shall have the worst place and will be the least protected? Although calamities have forced me to speak to you, I nevertheless see you small in my eyes and find your verbal attacks great, and I regard your rebuke too much to bear, but these eyes are tearful, and the chests are filled with depression. What is even more strange is that the honoured Party of Allah is being killed by the taleeq party of Satan. Such hands are dripping with our blood; such mouths are feeding on our flesh, while those sacred and pure corpses are offered as food to the wild beasts of the desert and are dirtied by the brutes. If you regard us as your booty, you shall soon find us as your opponents, that will be when you find nothing but what your hands had committed, and your Lord never treats His servants unjustly. To Allah is my complaint, and upon Him do I rely. So scheme whatever you wish to scheme, and carry out your plots, and intensify your efforts, for by Allah, you shall never be able to obliterate our mention, nor will you ever be able to kill our inspiration, nor will your shame ever be washed away. Your view shall be proven futile, your days numbered, and your wealth wasted on the Day when the caller calls out, “The curse of Allah be upon the oppressors.” All Praise is due to Allah, Lord of the Worlds, Who sealed the life of our early ones with happiness and forgiveness, and that of our last with martyrdom and mercy. We plead to Allah to complete His rewards for them and grant them an increase and make succession good for us; He is the most Merciful, the most Compassionate. Allah suffices us, and how great He is!

Yazīd responded to her speech by first quoting this poetic verse:

O cry, a praiseworthy one,  
How easy it is for the mourners to mourn!

Anyone who is familiar with Yazīd and with his misguidance cannot be surprised at all to hear him asking with a big mouth the Syrian jackals around him: “Do you know where Fātimah’s son came from, and what prompted him to do what he did and fall into the pitfalls of what he committed?” They answered in the negative. Said he, “He claims that his father is better than my father, that his mother Fātimah (may Allah be pleased with her) daughter of the Messenger of Allah (may Allah bless him and grant him peace) is better than mine, that his grandfather (may Allah be pleased with him) is better than mine, and that he is more worthy than me of taking charge. As regarding his saying that his father is better than my father, my father had asked Allah, the Great, the Sublime, to arbitrate between them, and people know best in whose favour He ruled. As regarding his saying that his mother is better than mine, by my life, Fātimah (may Allah be pleased with her) daughter of the Messenger of Allah (may Allah bless him and grant him peace) is better than my mother. As regarding his saying that his grandfather (may Allah be pleased with him) is better than my grandfather, by my life, nobody who believes in Allah and in the Last Day can find anyone among us equal to the Messenger of Allah. But he speaks with a little understanding of what he says and has not read the verse saying, ‘Say: Lord! Owner of the domain! You grant authority to whomsoever You please, and you take the authority from whomsoever You please; You exalt whomsoever You please, and You abase whomsoever You please’ (Qur‘ān,
3:26), and he did not read the verse saying, `Allāh grants His domain to whomsoever He pleases' (Qurʾān, 2:247).

THE HOUSE OF RUINS

The speech quoted above, which Zainab delivered, shook the very foundations of Yazīd's court, and people started discussing with one another as to what extent they had been misled, and in what valley of abyss they had been hurled. Yazīd had no choice except to get the women out of his court and to lodge them at a house of ruins which could not protect them against any heat or any cold. They remained there weeping and wailing, mourning al-Husain (τ) for three days.

One day, al-Sajjād (τ) went out for a walk. Al-Minhāl ibn ʿOmer met him and asked him, “How have you received the evening, O son of the Messenger of Allāh (ص)”? “We have received the evening,” the Imām (τ) answered, “like the Israelites among the people of Pharaoh: they kill their sons and take their women captive. The Arabs brag before the non-Arabs saying that Muḥammad (ص) was one of them, while Quraish boasts before the rest of the Arabs of Muḥammad (ص) belonging to it. We, his Ahl al-Bayt (τ), are now homeless; so, to Allāh do we belong, and to Him shall we all return.”4 Al-Minhāl is quoted as saying, “While he was thus talking to me, a woman came out after him and said, `Where are you going, O best of successors?' He left me and hurried back to her. I inquired about her, and I was told that she was his aunt, Zainab (τ).”5

BACK TO MEDINA

Yazīd was very happy about killing al-Husain (τ) and those with him as well as the capture of the ladies who descended from the Messenger of Allāh, peace of Allāh be upon him and his progeny. He was seen at his court looking very excited, paying no heed to the fact that he was an atheist and an apostate as testified by his citing the poetry of al-Zub`arī quoted above to the extent that he denied that the Messenger of Allāh Muḥammad (ص) had ever received any revelation. But when he was rebuked by more and more people, it gradually appeared to him how he had failed and erred in what he had committed: a sin the like of which had never been committed by anyone belonging to the Islamic creed. It was then that he realized the implication of Muʿāwiyah's will to him wherein he said, “The people of Iraq shall not leave al-Husain till they pressure him to revolt. If he rebels against you, forgive him, for he was begotten in sacred wombs, and he enjoys a lofty

---

3 Al-Khwārizmi, Maqṭal al-Husain, Vol. 2, p. 34. About this shed, or say jail, as stated on p. 146, Vol. 4, of al-Yunānī’s Miṣr ʿūt al-Zamān, where the events of the year 681 A.H./1283 A.D. are discussed, the author says, “On the eleventh night of the month of Ramadān, the felt market in Damascus caught fire and was burnt in its entirety, and the fire engulfed the Booksellers’ Bridge, the fountain square, and the cloth market known as Sūq ʿAsa-Allāh, as well as the watering area of Jayrūn. The fire reached the ʿAjam Street in the midst of Jayrūn, scorching the wall of the ʿOmeri Mosque adjacent to the jail where Zayn al-ʿAbīdīn (τ) had been imprisoned.”
6 al-Sayyūṭī, Tārīkh al-Khulafā, p. 139.
His closest courtiers, and even his family members and women, stayed away from him. He saw with his own eyes and heard with his own ears the statements uttered by the most sacred severed head when he ordered the envoy of the Roman emperor to be killed: \textit{La hawla wala quwwata illa billah}! (There is neither power nor might except in Allāh). Yazīd's most abominable crime and extreme cruelty were now being discussed at every gathering, and such discussions were finding an echo throughout Damascus. Yazīd, at that juncture, had no choice except to shift the blame to the shoulder of [`Ubaydullāh] Ibn Ziyād in order to distance the taunting from him, but what is already established cannot be removed.

When he feared dissension and repercussions, he rushed to get al-Sajjad and the children out of Syria and send them back home. He carried out their wishes, ordering al-Nu`mān ibn Bashīr and a number of other men with him to escort them to Medina and to treat them with kindness.

When they reached Iraq, they asked the road guide to take the highway leading to Kerbalā'. They reached the place where al-Husain (ئ) had been martyred. There, they found Jabir ibn `Abdullāh al-Ansārī accompanied by a group of Bana Hashim and some of the family members of the Messenger of Allāh (/api). They had all gone there to visit al-Husain's grave. They met each other weeping and grieving, beating their cheeks. They stayed there mourning al-Husain (ئ) for three days.

Jabir ibn `Abdullāh al-Ansārī stood at the grave and burst in tears then thrice called out al-Husain's name, then he said, “Why a loved one does not answer one who loves him?” But soon he answered his own query by saying, “How can he answer while his cheeks are torn, his head separated from his body? Yet I bear witness that you are the son of the Seal of Prophets (/api), the son of the Master of the Faithful (ئ), the son of the inseparable ally of piety, the descendant of guidance, the fifth of the fellows of the kiṣā`, the son of the master of naqībs, the one who was brought up in the lap of the pious, that you were raised on the milk of imān, that you were weaned with Islam, so you were good when you were alive, and you are so when dead. But the hearts of the faithful are not pleased with parting with you, nor do they have any doubt about goodness being yours. So peace of Allāh be upon you and His Pleasure. And I bear witness that you treaded the same path treaded before you by your brother [prophet] Zāchariyyah [Zacharias].”

Having said so, Jabir turned his head around the grave as he said, “Assalamo Alaikom, O souls that abide at al-Husain's courtyard! I bear witness that you upheld the prayers and paid zakāt, enjoined what is right and prohibited what is wrong, struggled against the atheists and adored Allāh till death overtook you. By the One Who sent Muhammed, peace of Allāh be upon him and upon his Progeny, as His Prophet with the truth, we have a share in what you have earned.” `Aṭiyyah al-`Awfi [his companion who was leading him, since he, a maternal relative and one of the greatest saḥāḥib of Prophet Muhammed (api) was by then a blind old man] asked him, “How so when we did not descend a valley nor ascend a mountain, nor did we strike with a sword, whereas the heads of these people have been severed from their bodies, their sons have been orphaned and their wives widowed?” Jabir answered: “I heard the Messenger of Allāh (api), whom I very much love, saying, ‘One who loves a [certain] people will be lodged with them, and one who loves what some people do will have a share in status.”

\begin{footnotesize}
\begin{enumerate}
\item al-Ṭabari, \textit{Tārīkh}, Vol. 6, p. 180.
\item Abdullāh Nūr-Allāh al-Bahrānī, \textit{Maqṭal al-`Awālim}, p. 150.
\item al-Mufid, \textit{Al-Irshād}.
\end{enumerate}
\end{footnotesize}
[the rewards of] their deeds.’ By the One Who sent Muhammed ( ﷺ) as a Prophet with the truth, my intention and that of my companions is identical to the one for which al-Husain ( ﷺ) and his companions were all killed.”

THE SEVERED HEAD REJOINS THE BODY

Once Zayn al-‘Abbîdîn ( ﷺ) came to know of Yazîd's consent, he asked him for the heads so that he would bury them. Yazîd showed no hesitation to do so, ordering the heads, including those of Zayn al-‘Abbîdîn's family members, to be handed over to him. Zayn al-‘Abbîdîn reunited them with their respective bodies.

Writers of biographies who recorded his bringing the heads to Kerbalâ’ include the author of Shaikh ’Abbâs al-Qummi, Nâfs al-Mahmûm who discusses this issue on p. 253 of his book, and it is also discussed on p. 155 of Riyâd al-Ahzân of al-Qazwînî.

As regarding al-Husain’s head, we read about it on p. 165 of al-Fattâl's book Rawdat al-Wâ ‘izîn, and on p. 85 of Muthûr al-Ahzân by Ibn Nama al-Hilli. The latter reference is the one the Shi’ as consider as the most accurate as stated on p. 112 of Al-Luhûf by Ibn Tawûs. On p. 151 of al-Tibrisi's book I’âm al-Wara’, as well as on p. 154 of Maqtal al-‘Awâlim, as is the case with both Riyâd al-Masâ’îb and Bihâr al-Anwâr, the same view is the most famous among scholars. On p. 200, Vol. 2, of his book titled Al-Manâqib, Ibn Shahrî Shâbîs says, “In some of his letters, al-Murtada has stated that al-Husain's head was reunited with its body in Kerbalâ’.“ Al-Tûsî has said that that incident was the basis for ziyarat al-arba’een. The author of Bihâr al-Anwâr cites Al-‘Udâd al-Qawiyya by the brother of ‘âllâmâ al-Hilli. On p. 67 of his book ‘Ajâ’îb al-Makhluqât, al-Qazwînî indicates that it was on the twentieth of Safar that al-Husain's head was reunited with its body. Al-Shabrâwî says, “The head was returned to the body after forty days.” According to Ibn Hajar's book Sharh al-Bûsîri’s Hamziyya, forty days after his martyrdom, al-Husain's head was returned [to its body]. Sibt ibn al-Jawzi has said, “It is most widely known that it [the head] was returned to Kerbalâ’ and buried with the body.” On p. 57, Vol. 1, of his book Al-Kawâkib al-Durriyya, al-Manawî records the consensus among Imâmîe Sh’as that the head was returned to Kerbalâ’ and that this view was the one accepted by al-Qurtubi. He did not list his sources but attributed it to “some people of knowledge as well as eye witnesses,” becoming evident to him that the head was, indeed, returned to Kerbalâ’. Abûl-Rayhân al-Bîrûnî states that it was on the twentieth of Safar that al-Husain's head was reunited and buried with its body.

Based on the above, any statements to the contrary should not be taken seriously especially those claiming that he was buried with his father ( ﷺ), a claim with which the scholars mentioned above are familiar and which they all discard. Their rejection of such a claim proves that it cannot be relied upon especially since its isnâd is not complete and its narrators are not famous. Abu Bakr al-‘Alûsî, who was asked once where the head of al-Husain ( ﷺ) was, composed the following verses:

Seek not al-Husain's head in the east or in the west,
Leave all and come to me: in my heart does it rest.

---

1Abû Ja’fer Muhammed ibn Abû-Qâsim ibn Muhammed ibn Alî al-Tabari al-‘Âmîli, Bishârat al-Mustafa, p. 89 (Hayderî Presh edition). This author is one of the 5th century A.H./11th century A.D. scholars who were tutored by Shaikh al-Tûsî’s son.


3“Hamziyya” means a poem the rhyme of which ends with a hamza. – Tr.

4Ibn al-Jawzi, the grandson, Tathkirat al-Khawâsî, p. 150.

THE ARBA`EEN

It is customary to pay tribute to the deceased forty days after his death by doing acts of righteousness on his behalf, by eulogizing him and enumerating his merits. This is done at organized gatherings in order to keep his memory alive just when people's minds start to forget about him and their hearts start to ignore him. An immortal portrayal is brought back to such minds through the medium of well composed poetry transmitted from one person to another, one which takes its place in people's hearts. Epochs, hence, pass by, and so do years, while his memory remains fresh and alive. Or maybe someone delivers a moving speech recorded in books and in other records, so it would become an enduring part of history. The lost one remains alive whenever such poetry is recited, or whenever a researcher comes across what was said in his eulogies recorded in books, so he develops an interest in investigating him and in getting to know his merits and feats. Such a commendable custom becomes more significant as the greatness of the lost one increases and is proportionate with his feats. Such is the case with reformers and role models emulated by others. This is more important because disseminating their merits and teachings calls for following them and walking on their footprints to effect reform and to cultivate the souls.

Both Abu Tharr al-Ghifari and Ibn `Abbás quote the Prophet (ﷺ) as saying, “The earth mourns the death of a believer for forty mornings.” Zurarah quotes Abu `Abdullah Imam al-Ṣadiq (ехать) saying, “The sky wept over al-Husain (ع) for forty mornings with blood, while the earth wept over him for forty mornings with blackness. The sun wept over him for forty mornings with the eclipse and with redness, whereas the angels wept over him for forty mornings. No woman among us ever dyed with henna, nor used any oil, nor any kohl nor cohabited with her husband till the head of `Ubaydullah ibn Ziyād was brought to us, and we are still grieving even after all of that.”

This is the basis of the ongoing custom of grieving for the deceased for forty days. On the 40th day, a special mourning ceremony is held at his grave-site attended by his relatives and friends. This custom is not confined to Muslims. Christians hold mourning ceremonies forty days after the death of their lost one. They gather at a church and repeat a special prayer which they call a funeral prayer service. They do likewise six months after his death and then one year after his death. Jews renew their mourning service thirty days after one's death, nine months after one's death, and one year after one's death. All of this is done in order to keep his memory alive and so that people may not forget his legacy and deeds if he is great with merits and feats.

At any rate, a researcher does not find in the band described as reformers a man so well shrouded in feats of the most sublime meanings, one whose life, uprising, and the tragic way in which he was killed..., a divine call and lessons in reform, even social systems, ethics, and sacred morals..., other than the Master of the Youths of Paradise, the man who was martyred for his creed, for Islam, for harmony, the martyr for ethics and cultivation, namely al-Husain (ع). He more than anyone else deserves to be remembered on various occasions. People ought to make a pilgrimage to his sacred grave-site on the anniversary of the passage of 40 days following the date of his martyrdom so that they may achieve such lofty objectives.

The reason why most people hold only the first such an anniversary is due to the fact that the merits of those men are limited and temporal, unlike those of the Master of Martyrs: his feats are endless, his virtues are countless, the study of whose biography keeps his memory alive, and so is the case whenever he is mentioned. To follow in his footsteps is needed by every generation. To hold an annual ceremony at his grave on the anniversary of his arba`een brings his revolution back to memory. It also brings back to memory the cruelty

---

²al-Nawari, Mustadrak al-Wasā’il, p. 215, chapter 94.
committed by the Umayyads and their henchmen. No matter how hard an orator tries, or how well a poet presents his theme, new doors of virtue, which were closed before, will then be opened for him.

This is why it has been the custom of the Shi'as to bring back to memory on the arba`een those events every year. The tradition wherein Im`am al-Baqir (‡) says that the heavens wept over al-Husain (‡) for forty mornings, rising red and setting red¹, hints to such a public custom.

So is the case with a statement made once by Im`am al-Hasan al-`Askari (‡) wherein he said, “There are five marks of a believer: his fifty-one rek`at prayers, ziyarat al-arba`een, audible recitation of the basmala, wearing his ring on the right hand, and rubbing his forehead with the dust.”²

Such a statement leads us to the ongoing public custom being discussed. Holding a mourning ceremony for the Master of Martyrs and holding meetings in his memory are all done by those who are loyal to him and who follow him. There is no doubt that those who follow his path are the believers who recognize him as their Im`am; so, one of the marks highlighting their iman, as well as their loyalty to the Master of the Youths of Paradise, the one who was killed as he stood to defend the divine Message, is to be present on the arba`een anniversary at his sacred grave in order to hold a mourning ceremony for him and remember the tragedies that had befallen him, his companions and Ahl al-Bayt (‡).

To twist the meaning of ziyarat al-arba`een by saying that it means visiting the grave-sites of forty believers is simply indicative of twisted mentalities, an attempt at distortion, one which good taste resents. Moreover, it is without any foundation. Had the goal been to visit forty believers, the Im`am (‡) would have used the term “ziyarat arba`een [mu`min].” The original wording indicates that ziyarat al-arba`een is one of the conditions enumerated in the hadith cited above saying that it is one of the marks of one’s iman and an indication of his loyalty to the Twelve Imams (‡).

All the Im`ams who descended from the Prophet (‡) were the gates of salvation, the arks of mercy. Through them can a believer be distinguished from a non-believer. They all left this world after being killed as they stood to defend the divine Message, accepting the possibility of their being killed for the stand which they took in obedience to the Command of their Lord, Glory to Him, the One Who sent His wahit to their grandfather, the Prophet (‡). Father of Muhammed, al-Hasan (‡), son of the Commander of the Faithful, Ali (‡), has pointed out to this fact saying, “The mission which we undertake is assigned to Twelve Imams (‡) each one of whom is either to be killed or poisoned.”

A mourning ceremony ought to be held in commemoration of the arba`een of each one of them. The statement made by Im`am Hasan al-`Askari (‡) does not contain any clue restricting the commemoration of the arba`een to al-Husain (‡) alone, but scholars have understood it to imply emphasis on visiting al-Husain’s grave-site in particular, since the cause defended by the Master of Martyrs (‡) is the one characterized by enjoining what is right and forbidding what is wrong. This is why it is said that Islam started with Muhammed (‡) and it stays alive through al-Husain (‡). So is the implication of one hadith by the Messenger of Allah (‡) saying: “Husain is of me, and I am of Husain.” This hadith conveys the same message because the hardship from which the Master of Martyrs (‡) suffered was for the sake of firming the foundations of Islam and removing the thorns of falsehood from the path of the Shar`a, and to warn the following generations of the crimes committed by the promoters of misguidance. This is exactly the cause for which the Prophet of Islam (‡) stood to disseminate the divine call.

For all of these reasons, the Imams from among the Prophet's Progeny (‡) found no alternative to attracting the attention to such a glorious revolution because it contains tragedies that would split the hardest

¹Ibn Qawlawayh, Kāmil al-Ziyyārāt, p. 90, chapter 28.

²This is narrated by Shaikh al-Tusi on p. 17, Vol. 3, of his Tahthib, in a chapter discussing the merits of visiting the grave-site of al-Husain (‡) wherein he quotes Im`am Abu Muhammed al-Hasan al-`Askari (‡). It is also narrated on p. 551 of the Indian edition of Miṣbaḥ al-Mutahajjid.
of rocks. They knew that persistence in demonstrating the injustice dealt to al-Husain (ツ) would stir the emotions and attract the hearts of sympathizers. One who hears the tales of such horrible events will come to conclude that al-Husain (ツ) was a fair and just Imam who did not succumb to lowly things, that his Imamate was inherited from his grandfather, the Prophet (ص), and from his father, the wasi (ツ), that whoever opposes him deviates from the path of equity. Whoever absorbs the fact that right was on al-Husain's side and on that of his infallible offspring would be embracing their method and following their path.

This is why the Imams (ツ) did not urge the holding of mourning ceremonies for the arba'een anniversary of any of them, not even for that of the Prophet of Islam (ص), so that it alone would be the memory of his tragedy that would make a strong case for safeguarding the religious link. Turning attention to it is more effective in keeping the cause of the Infallible Ones dear to all those who discuss it: “Keep our cause alive, and discuss our cause.”

The kind reader, anyway, can easily see why ziyyarat al-arba'een is an indication of one's iman when he gets to know similar indications to which the hadith has referred.

The first of such marks, namely the 51-rek`at prayers, legislated during the night of the Prophet's mi`raj, and which, through the Prophet's intercession, were reduced to only five during the day and the night, are: seventeen rek`at for the morning, the noon and the afternoon, the sunset and the evening, and the nafl prayers timed with them, in addition to night's nafl prayers: they all make up thirty-four: eight before the noon-time prayers, eight before the after-noon prayers, four after sunset prayers, and two after the evening prayers regarded as one, and two before the morning prayers, and finally eleven rek`at for the night's nafl prayers. Add to them the shaf` and witr rek`at, and you will come to a total of obligatory and optional prayers of fifty-one rek`at. This is applicable only to the Shi`as. Although they agree with the Shi`as with regard to the number of obligatory rek`at, the Sunnis differ when it comes to optional prayers. On p. 314, Vol. 1, of Ibn Humam al-Hanafi's book Fath al-Qadir, they are: two rek`at before the fajr prayers, four before the noon prayers and two after that, four before the afternoon prayers, or just two rek`at, two more after the sunset prayers and four thereafter, or just two, making up twenty-three rek`at. They differ about the night's nafl prayers whether they ought to be eight, only two, or thirteen, or even more. Hence, the total of optional and compulsory rek`at will in no case be fifty-one; so, the fifty-one rek`at are relevant to Imamite Shi`as only.

The second on the list of marks referred to in the said hadith is the audible pronunciation of the basmala. Imamites seek nearness to Allah, the most Exalted One, by making it obligatory to pronounce it audibly in the audible prayers and voluntary in the inaudible ones, following the text of their Imams (ツ). In this regard, al-Fakhr al-Razi says, “Shi`as are of the view that it is a Sunnah to audibly pronounce the basmala in the audible prayers as well as in the inaudible ones, whereas the majority of [Sunnī] faqih differ from them. It is proven through tawātir that Ali ibn Abu Talib (ツ) used to audibly pronounce the basmala. Anyone who follows Ali (ツ), in as far as his creed is concerned, will surely be on the right guidance by token of the hadith saying: ‘O Allah! Let right be with Ali wherever he goes.’” This statement of al-Razi was not digested by Abul-Thana` al-Alusi who followed it with a comment in which he said, “Had anyone acted upon all what they claim to be mutawātir from the Commander of the Faithful (ツ), he will surely be an apostate; so, there is no alternative to believing in some and disbelieving in others. His claim that anyone who emulates Ali (ツ) in as far as his creed is concerned will be on the right guidance of Islam is accepted without any discussion so long as we are sure that it is proven as having been said by Ali (ツ). Anything else besides that is steam.”

Shi`as are not harmed when al-`Alusi and others assault them especially since their feet are firm on the path of loyalty for the Master of wasis (ツ) to whom the Messenger of Allah (ص) says, “O Ali! Nobody knows Allah, the most Exalted One, (fully well) except I and you, and nobody knows me (fully well) except Allah and

2Rūh al-Ma`āni, Vol. 1, p. 47.
you, and nobody knows you (fully well) except Allah and I.”

If you, woe unto you, never heard of his merits and feats,
Then hear them from “Hal Ata,” O fool,
For it should suffice you!²

Sunnis have opted to do the opposite with regard to such a pronouncement. On p. 478, Vol. 1, of Ibn Qudâmah's book Al-Mughdî, and also on p. 204, Vol. 1, of Badâi` al-Sanâ`i” by al-Kasâni, and also on p. 216, Vol. 1, of al-Zarqâni’s Sharh of Abul-Dirâs’s Mukhtarâsâr of Malik’s fiqh, audible pronunciation is not a Sunnah in prayers.

The third mark mentioned in the said hadîth, that is, wearing a ring in the right hand, is something practiced religiously by the Shi’as on account of the traditions they quote from their Imams (ع). A multitude from among the Sunnis disagrees with them. Ibn al-Hajjâj al-Maliki has said, “The Sunnah has recorded everything as abominable if handed by the left hand and everything râhid if handed by the right. In this sense, it is highly recommended to wear a ring in the left hand to be taken by the right one and then placed on the left.” 1 Ibn Hajjâr narrates saying that Malik hated to wear a ring on his right hand, believing it should be worn on the left.³ Shaikh Ismâ`îl al-Barusawai has said the following in ‘Id al-Durr: “Originally, it was a Sunnah to wear a ring on the right hand, but since this is the distinguishing mark of the people of bid’as and of injustice, it became a Sunnah in our time to place the ring on a finger on the left hand.”⁴

The fourth mark mentioned in the said hadîth is the placing of the forehead on dust [or dry soil]. Its message is to demonstrate that during the sajdah, the forehead has to be placed on the ground. Sunnis do not

---

¹Al-Muhtadîr, p. 165.
²According to p. 140, Vol. 4, of Ibn al-'Imâd's book Shatharât al-Thahab, a number of Hanbalis used to recite this line from the pulpits of Baghdad.
³Al-Madkhâl, Vol. 1, p. 46, in a chapter dealing with the etiquette of entering mosques.
⁵This is narrated by the authority Shaikh `Abd al-Husain Ahmed al-Aminî al-Najâfi in his 11-volume encyclopedia titled Al-Ghadîr quoting p. 142, Vol. 4, of the exegesis titled Rûh al-Bayân. This is not the first issue wherein Sunnis practice the opposite of what the Shi‘as practice. On p. 137, Vol. 1, of Abu Ishâq al-Shirâzî's book Al-Muhaiththab, on p. 47, Vol. 1, of al-Ghazâlî’s book Al-Wajîz, on p. 25 of al-Nawawî’s Al-Minâjî as well as on p. 560, Vol. 1, of its Sharh by Ibn Hajjâr titled Tuhfat al-Muhtâkh fi Sharh al-Minâjî, on p. 248, Vol. 4, of al-`Ayni’s book Umdat al-Qâri fi Sharh al-Bukhârî, on p. 681, Vol. 1, of Ibn Muflih’s book Al-Farû’, and on p. 505, Vol. 2, of Ibn Qudâmah’s book Al-Mughdî, planing graves is looked upon as a mark of “innovators.” On p. 88, Vol. 1, of al-Sha’râni’s book Rahmat al-Ummah bi Ikhtilâf al-A‘immah, a written as a comment on the exegesis titled Al-Mizân by `allâma Tabatabâi, the author states the following: “It is a Sunnah to place graves. But since it became a distinguishing mark for the Râfidis, it is better to do contrariwise.” Among other issues wherein Sunnis do the opposite of what the Shi‘as do is blessing the Prophet (ص), his progeny (ع) and of injustice. A multitude of them suggest its elimination altogether. For example, al-Zamakhshari states the following comment after trying to explain verse 56 of Sûrat al-Ahzâb in his book Al-Kashshâf: “It is makrûh to bless the Prophet (ص) because it causes one to be charged with being a Râfidî, especially since he [the Prophet (ص)] has said, ‘Do not stand where you may be prone to being charged.’” The same theme exists on p. 135, Vol. 11, of Ibn Hajjâr's book Fath al-Bârî, in “Kitâb al-Da`awat” (book of supplications), where the author tries to answer the question: “Should one bless anyone else besides the Prophet (ص)?” Says he, “There is a disagreement with regard to blessing anyone besides the prophets although there is a consensus that it is permissible to greet the Living One. Some say it is permissible in its absolute application, while others say it is conditional because it has become a distinguishing mark of the Râfidis.” Even in the manner of dressing do some Sunnis want to distinguish themselves from others: On p. 13, Vol. 5, of al-Zarqâni’s book Sharh al-Mawâhib al-Saniyâ, it is stated that, “Some scholars used to loosen their tassels from the left front side, and I have never read any text that a tassel should be loosened from the right side except in a weak hadîth narrated by al-Tabrânî. Now since this has become a distinguishing mark of the Imâmîs, it ought to be abandoned in order to avoid looking like them.”
place their forehead on the ground. Abu Hanîfah, Malik, and Ahmed are reported as having authorized the
prostrating on turban coils\(^1\), or on a piece of garment\(^2\) worn by the person performing the prayers or any piece
of cloth. Hanafis have authorized placing it on the palms if one feels grudgingly that he has no other choice\(^3\).
They also permit prostrating on wheat and barley, on a bed, on the back of another person standing in front of
you who is also performing the same prayers...\(^4\)

The objective behind such a reference is that it is highly commendable, when one prostrates to thank
Allâh, to rub his forehead on the dust as a symbol of humility and to shun arrogance. An examination of the
original text will show any discreet person that it is equally commendable to rub both sides of the face on it.
It is to this meaning that Sayyid Bahr al-'Ulam, may Allâh sanctify him, refers in a poem wherein he says this line
about sajdat al-shukr:

> The cheek is more worthy of being rubbed,
> The hadîth clearly says so
> Whereas in reference to the forehead,
> It states it can be done, too.

Rubbing the cheeks exists when reference is made to sajdat al-shukr\(^5\), something whereby prophet Moses son
of `Imran [Amram] \(\xi\) deserved to be drawn closer to the Almighty whenever he addressed Him silently [during the
munâjât]\(^6\). Nobody contradicted the Imâmîtes with regard to such rubbing, be it on the forehead or on the
cheeks. Sunnis never obligate themselves to rubbing their foreheads on dust when performing their prayers or
when performing sajdat al-shukr. This is so despite the fact that al-Nakh`î, Malîk, and Abu Hanîfah have all
disliked to perform sajdat al-shukr, although the Hanbalis observe it\(^7\), and so do the Shafi`is\(^8\) whenever they
receive a divine blessing or whenever a sign of Allâh's wrath is removed from them.

**A SUMMARY OF THE MARKS OF A MU`MIN**

From all what we have indicated while discussing the issues enumerated by the said hadîth as the marks
of imân, the gist of ziyârat al-arba`een connotes directing those who are loyal to Ahl al-Bayt \(\xi\) to
visiting the shrine of the one who was slain in a foreign land, the Master of Martyrs \(\xi\), in order to mourn
him and to renew the memory of what he had to bear of cruelty the like of which was never committed by
anyone who has a tint of humanity in him, let alone those who claim to follow Islam. To be present at the grave-
site of al-Husain \(\xi\) on the Arba`een anniversary of his martyrdom is the most evident of all signs of imân.

Amazement never ends about someone who twists the meaning of this statement by claiming that it
means visiting forty believers despite the absence of reference to any such forty believers, nor is there any clue

---


referring to such a meaning. Surely Islam commends a believer to visit forty others; this is enjoined by Islam and is not a distinguishing mark between the Shi‘as and the Sunnis, nor is it directed only to the believers in order to distinguish them from others. Yes, visiting the shrine of al-Husayn ( ++) on the anniversary of forty days after his martyrdom is called for by those who have a pure faith in and loyalty to Ahl al-Bayt ( ++ ). It is underscored by the eagerness to be near al-Husayn ( ++ ). It is known that those who are present at this most sacred shrine (forty days after the martyrdom’s anniversary) of the master of the youths of Paradise are, in particular, those who are his Shi‘as and who follow in his footsteps.

A testimony to the sacred hadith quoted above is the fact that the renowned scholars do not dispute in their understanding of the significance of visiting the grave-site of al-Husayn ( ++) on the 40th of Safar. One of them is Abu Ja‘fer Mu‘ammad ibn al-Hasan al-Tusi who discusses the merits of visiting the shrine of al-Husayn ( ++) on p. 17, Vol. 2, of his book Al-Tahtib. Having narrated the traditions referring to the merits of any visit to his shrine, he started discussing those to be performed on specific dates one of which is the twentieth of Safar saying, “We have narrated through isnad to my grandfather Abu Ja‘fer [Imam al-Baqir ( ++) ] what he narrated by way of isnad to our master, al-Hasan ibn Ali al-‘Askari, saying, ‘The marks of a mu‘min are five... etc.’” Al-‘Allama al-Hilli says the following in his book of ziyarat after one performs the hajj as recorded in his book Al-Muntaha: “It is highly recommended to visit the grave-site of al-Husayn ( ++) on the twentieth of Safar.” The shaikh quotes Imam Abu Mu‘ammad al-Hasan al-‘Askari ( ++) saying, “There are five marks for a believer..., etc.” Sayyid Radiyy ad-Din Ali ibn Tawus, in his book Al-Iqbal, discusses the ziyarat of al-Husayn’s shrine on the twentieth of Safar saying, “We have narrated through isnad to my grandfather Abu Ja‘fer [Imam al-Baqir ( ++) ] what he narrated by way of isnad to our master, al-Hasan ibn Ali al-‘Askari, saying, ‘The marks of a believer are five... etc.’”

Al-Majlisi, may Allah elevate his status, in his book Maze al-Bihar, quotes the same hadith as he discusses the virtues of visiting the shrine of al-Husayn ( ++) on the arba‘een. In the discussion of ziyarat which follows the hajj, shaikh Yousef al-Bahrani includes in his book Al-Hada ‘iq the topic of visiting al-Husayn’s grave-site on the 20th of Safar, describing it as one of the distinguishing marks of a mu‘min. In the same reference, shaikh ‘Abbas al-Qummi narrates the same tradition from Al-Tahtih and Misbah al-Mutahajjid as proof for the preference of ziyarat al-arba‘een without making any reference to visiting “forty believers”!

Some scholars base their exclusion of ziyarat al-arba‘een on the claim that the Imam ( ++) , never referred to rewards in the hereafter for those who visit his shrine during it despite the fact that when Ahl al-Bayt ( ++) encourage visiting the shrine of the oppressed Imam ( ++) and those of other Imams of Guidance ( ++) , they mention the rewards in the hereafter due to one who performs such a ziyarat. Such a claim should be discarded in the light of the fact that when narrating the said tradition, the Imam ( ++) was highlighting the marks that distinguish a mu‘min from others, counting ziyarat al-arba‘een as one such mark of distinction. This is what we have already clarified. He was not discussing the rewards due to one who performs such a visit.

Shaikh al-Mufid, in his book Maze al-Sh‘a, discusses how commendable and rewardable it is to perform a visit to the Imam’s grave on the 20th of Safar. So does ‘Allama al-Hilli in his book Al-Tahtkira wal

---

1Abul-Rayhān al-Biruni, Al-Āthār al-Bāqiya, p. 331.
Tahrır. The same applies to Mulla Muhsin al-Fayz in his book Taqwîm al-Muhsînîn. The reason why shaikh al-Bahâ’i, in his book titled Tawzîh al-Maqasid al-Arba‘een, suggests the 19th of Safar instead, is based on the tenth day of the arba‘een (forty days) under discussion, something which contradicts what is already established.

Hosts reached you in earnest roaring,
Rare among the hosts, to defend you.
Do not grant any respite to the lowly one;
How humiliated was lowliness by Hayder!
And revive the life of uprising anew,
Wherein dignity is supported and aided,
And draw for the victors a scheme
Wherein the thrones of the reckless are annihilated.
If a charged hour did not to your call respond
It is shamed, and in more times opportune
Did it indeed to you respond.
Rise and eye the Sacred House,
Then cast another look at your shrine:
That surely is the greatest pilgrimage:
It has become the pride of life and it is rightly so.
Proud of him: the blood of martyrdom is a cause of pride.
Whatever elevated your status they sanctified,
I hide it as do the oppressed,
Yet it surely manifests itself:
Authority complained about its luck and missed
Its pillars, from abusers who took charge,
Blackened, its forehead charred, its pillars
Resent those who with it play havoc and conspire,
And caliphate no longer knows the Muslims,
Abomination therein assails righteousness.
Blackened with a forehead charred
In it apes flourished, tigers filled with filth,
Its cups on the ears poured its tones,
And even during the prayers are cups circulated around!
Such farce is renounced by each and every mosque
That lost its glory, and it causes every pulpit to cry.
So it complains to you, for it then to a hero complains,
One who is mindful and vengeful for the sake of reform.
Virtues are folded up, how great!
This is the mother of virtues every year unfolded!

Leafless, its branches withered, with your blood watered,
So how good and fruitful what you had cultivated!
Against abominations are you called upon
By a call for help, red, bloody, on a bloody day
The Sharîa did complain about limits changed
And about injunctions there altered.
Their beauty did Umayyah rob so they became
Images formed as misguidance pleases;
Desires blew on them so they are captives complaining:
Who other than Husain can emancipate?
He met his youths in the morning and led to be
For the Lord's creed sacrifices,
So they were slaughtered.
He conveyed the message as much as he could
Its conveyance was through blood spilled and shed.
In care of reform is the forehead of a man of honour
Bloodied, while the forehead is rubbed with dust.
*Labbayk!* A lonely man surrounded by large hordes
Counting as many as the pebbles in number, none can count.
*Labbayk!* A thirsty man whose thirst was never quenched
While in his palms seas of virtues flowed.
These are the tears of those loyal to you,
So quench from them a head almost split
And be kind to these hearts for they wish
You had been in the ribs entombed.
They stampede to uphold the rites
Less magnificent are the Safa and the Mash’ar.
They rode for their sake every sort of danger
Hands almost cut off, skulls almost sawed.
They came to you on the *Arba’een* and how I wish they
Were with you on the Taff Day when you solicited help!
They found your path to be one for safety
To which they erected the bridge of loyalty
And they hold you as their hope in a fearful Hour
Either to Hell, or to the Pool of Kawthar.
And both opponents when they meet you shall know
Who will drink of it, and who will not a drop draw.¹

IN MEDINA

*A*1-Sajjād (**) had no choice except to leave Kerbala’ and set forth to Medina after having stayed there for three days. It was too much for him to see how his aunts and the other women, as well as the children, were all crying day and night while visiting one grave after another.

She complains about her foes
And his folks does she mourn,
What a condition wherein patience unfolded
And patience did depart.
So we mourn her and complain
With the blood of the insides tears are mixed.

¹This poem was composed by the *`allāma shaikh* `Abd al-Mehdi Matar al-Najafi.
And agony penetrates even a solid stone
So the heart is into bits and pieces torn.¹

Bashir ibn Hathlam has said, “When we came close to Medina, Ali ibn al-Husain (ṣ) alighted and tied his she-camel then set up a tent where he lodged the women. He said to me, ‘O Bashir! May Allah have mercy on your father! He was a poet. Can you compose any of it at all?’ I said, ‘Yes, O son of the Messenger of Allah! I, too, am a poet.’ He (ṣ) said, ‘Then enter Medina and mourn the martyrdom of Abu `Abdullāh (ṣ).’ So I rode my horse and entered Medina. When I came near the Mosque of the Prophet, peace and blessings of Allah be upon him and his progeny, I cried loudly and recited these verses:

O people of Yathrib! May you never stay therein!
Al-Husain is killed, so my tears now rain,
His body is in Kerbalā’ covered with blood
While his head is on a spear displayed.

‘Then I said, ‘Here is Ali son of al-Husain (ṣ) accompanied by his aunts and sisters; they have all returned to you. I am his messenger to you to inform you of his place.’ People went out in a hurry, including women who had never before left their chambers, all weeping and wailing. All those in Medina were in tears. Nobody had ever seen such crying and wailing. They surrounded Ali Zayn al-`Abidin (ṣ) to offer him their condolences. He came out of the tent with a handkerchief in his hand with which he was wiping his tears. Behind him was one of his slaves carrying a chair on which the Imam (ṣ) later sat, being overcome by grief. The cries of the mourners were loud. Everyone was weeping and wailing. He signaled to people to calm down. Once they stopped crying, he (ṣ) said,

‘All Praise is due to Allah, Lord of the Worlds, the Most Gracious, the Most Merciful, the King of the Day of Judgment, Creator of all creation Who is Exalted in the high heavens, Who is so near, He hears even the silent speech. We praise Him on the grave events, on time's tragedies, on the pain inflicted by such tragedies, on the crushing of calamities, on the greatness of our catastrophe, on our great, monstrous, magnanimous and afflicted hardships. O people! Allah, the most Exalted One, Praise to Him, has tried us with great trials and tribulations, with a tremendous loss suffered by the religion of Islam. The father of `Abdullāh, al-Husain (ṣ), and his family have been killed, and his women and children taken captive. They displayed his head in every land from the top of a spear... Such is the catastrophe similar to which there is none at all. O people! Which men among you are happy after him, or which heart is not grieved on his account? Which eye among you withholds its tears and is too miser with its tears? The seven great heavens wept over his killing; the seas wept with their waves, and so did the heavens with their corners and the earth with its expanse; so did the trees with their branches and the fish in the depths of the seas. So did the angels who are close to their Lord. So did all those in the heavens. O people! We have become homeless, exiles, outcasts, shunned, distanced from all countries as though we were the offspring of the Turks or of Kabul without having committed a crime, nor an abomination, nor afflicted a calamity on Islam! Never did we ever hear such thing from our fathers of old. This is something new. By Allah! Had the Prophet (ṣ) required them to fight us just as he had required them to be good to us, they would not have done to us any more than what they already have. So we belong to Allah, and to Him is our return from this calamity, and what a great, painful, hard, cruel, and catastrophic calamity it is! To Allah do we complain from what has happened to us, from the suffering we have

¹These lines were composed by Hujjatul-Islam shaikh Muḥammed Husain Kāshif al-Ghīṭā’, may Allāh sanctify him.
endured, for He is the Omnipotent, the Vengeful.'

“Sawhān ibn Sa’ā’ah al-ʿAbdi, an invalid who could barely walk on his feet, stood up and apologized to the ʿImām (r) for not rushing to help his family due to his handicap. He (r), responded to him by accepting his excuse, telling him that he thought well of him, thanked him and sought Allāh’s mercy for his father. Then Zayn al-ʿĀbidīn entered Medina accompanied by his family and children.”

Ibrāhīm ibn Talhā ibn `Ubaydullāh came to the ʿImām (r) and asked him, “Who won?” The ʿImām (r), answered, “When the time for prayers comes, and when the athān and iqāma are called, you will know who the winner is.”

As for Zainab, that is, Umm Kulthūm, she recited the following verses of poetry:

O city of our Grandfather! Accept us not
For with sighs and griefs we come;
We left you surrounded by kith and kin
And returned with neither sons nor men.

Then she took both knobs of the mosque's door and cried out, “O grandfather! I mourn to you my brother al-Husain!”

Sukayna cried out, “O grandfather! To you do I complain from what we have been through, for by Allāh, I never saw anyone more hard-hearted than Yazīd, nor have I ever seen anyone, be he an apostate or a polytheist, more evil than him, more rough, or more cruel. He kept hitting my father's lips with his iron bar as he said, 'How did you find the battle, O Husain?!’"

The ladies who were born and grew up in the lap of Prophethood held a mourning ceremony for the Master of Martyrs (r). They put on the most coarse of clothes; they shrouded themselves in black, and they continued to weep and wail day and night as ʿImām al-Sajjād kept cooking for them.

Once ʿImām Jaʿf ar al-Sādiq (r) said, “No lady who descended from Ḥashim used any dye, nor any oil, nor any kohl, for full five years; it was then that al-Mukhtar sent them the head of `Ubaydullāh ibn Ziyād.”

As regarding al-Rubah, she mourned [her husband] Abu ʿAbdullāh (r) till her eyes were no longer capable of producing tears. One of her bondmaids told her that using a particular type of herb was tear stimulant, so she ordered it to be prepared for her in order to induce her tears. Among the poetry she composed in eulogizing her husband, Abu ʿAbdullāh al-Ḥusain (r), is the following:

1Ibn Tāwūs, Al-Luhūf, p. 116.
2Shaikh al-Ṭūsī, Al-Āmūlī, p. 66.
3al-Qazwīnī, Riyāḍ al-Ahzān, p. 163.
The one that used to be a lantern
Is now at Kerbala’, killed, unburied.
O grandson of the Prophet! May Allah
Reward you on our behalf and may you
Never fall short of the Scales.
A great mountain you used to be
A shelter, secure, for me,
And a companion in family
And in faith a surety.
Now who shall for the orphans be
Of help, and who shall be for the needy?
Who shall be the resort of the destitute?
By Allah! Never shall I seek
For you at all any substitute,
Till between the sands and the mud is my abode
Wherein I will be hidden from the world.
CONCLUSION

Imám Ali Zayn al-‘Abidín (කු), son of Imám Ḥusain (ک), stayed aloof from public life in order to avoid being involved in their disputes with one another and in order to dedicate his entire time to worshipping Allah and mourning his father. He kept weeping day and night. One of his slaves said to him, “I fear for you lest you should perish.” He (ک) said to him, “I only convey my complaints and my grief to Allāh, and I know from Allāh what you all do not know. Jacob was a prophet from whom Allāh caused one of his sons to be separated. He had twelve sons, and he knew that his son was still alive, yet he wept over him till he lost his eye sight. If you look at my father, my brothers, my uncles, and my friends, how they lay slain all around me, tell me how can my grief ever end? Whenever I remember how Fatima's children were slaughtered, I cannot help crying. And whenever I look at my aunts and sisters, I remember how they were fleeing from one tent to another...”

The fire burning in the tent did he see
While he was the tent of honour and dignity.
He saw how apostasy and misguidance assailed
The daughters of the wahi and the creed.
He saw about the ladies of Prophethood
What the norms of manliness hold as abhorred:
Their looting and their beating
While none to help them besides their Lord.
He saw shy and pure ladies' faces uncovered
To the son of the prostitute driven.
He saw how the pure and virtuous ladies stood
Before ignominy: Yazīd, the tyrant, how they cried.

And they were in the ropes tied
Before the assembly of every villain and dastard displayed.¹

To you, O Messenger of Allāh (ک), is our complaint from the way whereby your nation treated your pure offspring, from the oppression and persecution to which they were subjected, and all Praise is due to Allāh, Lord of the Worlds.

¹These verses were composed by the authority shaikh Muḥammad Ḥusain al-Īṣṭahānī.
Arabs eulogize their lost ones with poems. Since the tragedy took place, innumerable poems have been composed eulogizing Imām Husain (xAA) and innumerable others will be composed till the Day of Judgment. The following are some of them. We preferred to keep them without an English translation due to our belief that no translation into any language can do justice to them. They are better appreciated in their own language.

We pray the Almighty to grant His guidance to all those who read this book, who benefit from it, and who pass it on to others, Allāhomma āmeen.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ûdîl</td>
<td>fair, just</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ûd</td>
<td>the concept of the justice of God</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ḥādîth</td>
<td>singular of ḥadîth, a statement (usually attributed either to the Prophet [pbuh] or to one of the members of his Progeny or companions)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahilla</td>
<td>plural of hilal, crescent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ûlîm</td>
<td>scholar, theologian, a highly knowledgeable person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Àmûl</td>
<td>highly recommended acts of adoration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Àrsth</td>
<td>literally: throne, symbol of the Almighty’s Authority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Àshûr</td>
<td>plural of sahar, the time immediately preceding daybreak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Athûn</td>
<td>the call for prayers; mu’aththin is one who performs ’athûn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Awqûf</td>
<td>plural of waqf, a charitable trust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Àyât</td>
<td>verse (from a sacred scripture); plura: ûyât</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barzakh</td>
<td>the place and time wherein the souls of the dead live till the Day of Judgment; see the Holy Qur’an, 23:100.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basmala</td>
<td>the uttering of: &quot;Bismillâhir-Rahmânir-Rahîm&quot; (In the Name of Allâh, the most Gracious, the most Merciful)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beed</td>
<td>plural of abyad, white</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dahr</td>
<td>time, age, eternity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dînûr</td>
<td>an Islamic (now Arab) gold currency varying in weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dîrham</td>
<td>an Islamic silver currency weighing approx. 3.12 grams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dîwân</td>
<td>a meeting place, also a collection of poems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dîyya</td>
<td>blood money, monetary compensation for manslaughter or intentional murder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Du’â’</td>
<td>supplication, invocation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ïd</td>
<td>an Islamic feast, a joyous celebration, a merry occasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fû’izeen</td>
<td>(or Fû’ûn) winners</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fajr</td>
<td>pre-dawn, daybreak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fâqîh</td>
<td>jurist, one who is knowledgeable in Islamic jurisprudence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farâsikh</td>
<td>plural of farsakh, parasang (a loan Persian word), a measure of length (distance). According to Lisan al-’Arab, it may be three to six miles. “It is called so,” the author of Lisan al-’Arab goes on, “because one who walks one farsakh will have to sit to rest,” suggesting that the original meaning of the word is: to halt, to come to a stand still, to rest.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fatāwa: plural of fatwā, a religious edict or decision

Fiqh: the science of Islamic jurisprudence

Firdaws: Paradise

Fitra: the amount (in cash or kind) paid to the needy at the end of the month of Ramadān; see text for more details

Ghazwa: a military campaign, an invasion; invader: ghāzi

Ghusul: ceremonial bath

Hadīth: (singular:) tradition, a statement made by Prophet Muhammed; plural: ahādīth

Hadi: sacrificial animals offered at Mecca’s holy precincts

Hūfīz: one who has learned the entire text of the Holy Qur’ān by heart; plural: huffāz

Hajj: Islamic pilgrimage to Mecca during the prescribed period

Halāl: Islamically permissible, admissible, allowed

Harām: Islamically prohibitive, inadmissible, forbidden

Hijāb: veil, curtain

Hilāl: crescent, singular of ahilla

Hizb: literally, it means: party (plural: ahzāb); another meaning: the 60th part of the Holy Qur’ān

Hujja: proof, argument, authority

Hūrī: heavenly wife with large lovely eyes married to the male residents of Paradise

Ihrām: pilgrimage garb, white unwoven cotton shroud worn by pilgrims

Ijtihād: the degree one reaches in order to be qualified as a mujtahid, one who is capable of deriving religious decisions on his own

Illiyeen: the highest pinnacle of Paradise; see Holy Qur’ān, 83:18.

Imām: leader of an ummah, a group of people (small or big); he may be the one who leads others in congregational prayers, or a supreme religious authority, or one of the Twelve Infallible Imāms (as)

Imān: faith, conviction

Iqāma: the pronouncement of certain statements in preparation for the performing of the prayers, usually following the athan

‘Ishā': nighttime, evening

Isnād: the method whereby one hadīth is traced and in the end attributed to a muhaddith, traditionist, one who transmitted it the first time

‘Isyān: transgression against the Almighty’s Commandments

Ítkāf: the act of remaining most of the time at a mosque for prayers and supplications
Iftār: the time or the meal to break the fast

Iqāma: the statements recited immediately before starting the ritual prayer

Isrā': night journey; usually a reference to the Prophet's night journey from Mecca to Jerusalem

Jahannam: hell

Jāhiliyya: pre-Islamic period of ignorance

Jāmi'a: inclusive, universal, university; it also means: handcuffs

Jannāba: uncleanness caused by seminal discharge

Jannat: heaven, Paradise, garden, singular of jannāt

Jihād: a struggle, an effort exerted, or a war waged in defense of Islam

Jizya: protection tax paid to Muslims by non-Muslims residing in areas under Islamic control whereby the Muslims protect their lives and property and exempt them from the military service

Kaffāra: atonement from sin

Kāfir: infidel, apostate, atheist, one who does not believe in the existence of the Creator; noun: kufr

Kalima: synonymous to "shahāda," it is a Muslim’s declaration of faith (that is, to testify that there is no god except Allāh, and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allāh), and it is always pronounced in Arabic

Kantar: in Arabic: qintār, avarying weight of 100 ratls (rotls); a ratl in Syria is roughly 3.202 kg., whereas in England it is 449.28 grams, and in Lebanon it is 2.566 kg.

Khandaq: moat, ditch

Khums: one-fifth of one’s savings (usually paid by Shī'a Muslims) set aside from annual income

Kunya: the use of "Abu " (father of) or "Umm " (mother of) often as a prefix for one's name

Kursi: literally: chair, symbol of the Almighty’s Seat of Judgment and Authority; see Holy Qur’an, 2:255

Khutba: lecture, sermon; a speech delivered on a specific occasion

Kufr: apostacy, infidelity, disbelief

Labbayk: an exclamation conveying the meaning of "At your service!" or "Here I am!"

Ma‘ād: the Return: a reference to the returning of the souls to their new bodies after the period of barzakh (see above), and their ultimate returning to their Maker for judgment; generally, it is used to refer to death and the life hereafter.

Mahr: dowry paid by the groom to the bride (or vice versa as is the case in some cultures)

Majālis: meetings or gatherings held to commemorate certain religious occasion, mostly applied to those held during the month of Muharram or to recite the Fātiha for a deceased person; singular of majlis, a place where people sit

Marji`taql: the highest theological authority-referee followed

Ma'soom: infallible, divinely protected against sinning
Mash `ar: a place where certain rites are to be conducted, a sacred area or place or precinct

Mawla: depending on its usage, it may mean either "master" or "slave," or it may mean one who is most fit for a specific position of honor and prestige. Derived from the adjective awla (one who is best qualified), it means: the person who is best suited to be the religious and temporal leader of all Muslims.

Mi `rāj: the Prophet’s ascension from Jerusalem to the heavens

Mithqāl: a weight equivalent to 24 karats or 4.68 grams

Mufassir: a theologian who is well-versed in the exegesis of the Holy Qur’ān

Muhaddith: traditionist, one who quotes statements of Prophet Muhammed

Mujāhid: one who practices jihād (se jihād above)

Mujahid: one who acquires the degree of ijtihađ and thus becomes capable of deriving religious decisions on his own

Mu`min: believer, one who has imān, conviction, true belief

Munafiqūn: hypocrites

Musnad: a compilation of traditions (ahādīth) which are consecutively and chronologically traced to their transmitters

Mutawātir: consecutively reported, traced by a perfect chronological chain of ascertained narrators of ḥadīth

Mu’aththin: caller to prayers (usually at a mosque)

Mu`min: (Muslim) believer, a man of conviction

Nafl: optional, non-compulsory, supererogatory, highly recommended act of worship; plural: nawāfil

Najāsa: uncleanness, impurity; adjective: najis

Nathr: One’s pledge to do something very good to show appreciation for the Almighty’s favorable response to his supplication and the attainment of his worldly wish

Nūr: divine or celestial light the source of which is neither fire nor reflection

Nubuwwah: prophethood, the belief in prophets and their messages

Qaniteen: those who are constantly supplicating

Qaza: compensatory, making up for a missed rite

Qibla: direction towards the Ka`ba, Mecca

Qiyām: standing

Qudsi: divine, related to the Almighty

Qunoot: supplication during prayers

Rek`at: (singular) prostration (during prayer or a ritual) (plural: rek`āt)

Rukoo`: kneeling
Sabeel: path, way, avenue

Sadaqa: (singular:) charity offered voluntarily; its plural is: sadaqāt

Sadeed: pus collected from bleeding wounds to be served to the sinners in hell when they ask for water to quench their thirst

Sahāba: companions of the Holy Prophet Muhammed; its plural is: sahābi

Ṣahīfa: tablet, scroll, parchment, a written document

Ṣāḥīḥ: literally: authentic, correct, accurate; it is generally used to refer to the collection, group of collections, or book, of verified and authenticated aḥādīth of Prophet Muhammed

Sa`i the running between the Safa and the Marwa near the Ka`ba

Sajda: prostration

Ṣalāt: Islamic prayers, optional or mandatory; plural: ṣalawāt

Salatul-`Id: late morning prayers comprised of two rek`āt (prostrations) performed in the day that follows `Id al-Fitr (the feast of fast-breaking) signaling the end of the fast of the month of Ramadan

Sārāya: (plural) military campaigns personally ordered by Prophet Muhammed; singular: sāriya

Shahāda: martyrdom; it also means: testimony

Shahr: month

Shaikh: also shyakh, an honoring title with many meanings; literally, it means an old man; in Islamic theology and philosophy, however, it is used to denote a mentor, professor, or scholar of a high caliber

Sharī`a: Islam’s legislative system

Shirk: polytheism, the belief in the existence of partners with God

Shubha: (singular) doubt, suspicion; its plural is: shubhāt

Shūra: the principle of mutual consultation, Islam’s form of democracy

Siddeeq: one who testifies to the truthfulness of a prophet

Sirāt: path, highway; same as Sabeel

Ṣiyān: Islam’s norm of fast

Suhoor: time or meal taken before daybreak in preparation to fast during the day

Sultān: ruler who rules in the name of Islam, a Muslim monarch

Sunan: plural of sunnah: a highly commended act of worship or way whereby a Muslim seeks nearness to Allāh

Sūra: (also Sūrah) a chapter of the Holy Qur’ān

Tābi`een: plural of tabi`, one who accompanied for a good period of time, learned from and a followed a sahābi, a companion of the Holy Prophet Muhammed; its plural is: tābi`een

Tafsīr: (singular:) exegesis or explanation of Qur’ānic verses; its plural is: tafāsīr
Tahajjud: night devotions; a *mutahajjid* is one who keeps religious vigilance, spending the night in prayer

Tahāra: purification, the act of removing *najāsa*, uncleanness or impurity

Takbeer: the act of glorifying Allāh by declaring in an audible voice: "Allāho Akbar!" Allāh is Great!

Talbiya: the reciting of “Labbayka Allāhumma labbayk!” (Here, I come, Lord, in response to your call!)

Taqiyya: one’s way of exerting precaution in order to save his creed or life when either is in jeopardy, Shi‘as’ way of trying to survive in the presence of sure perils

Taqleed: the concept of following a *mujtahid* or an authority recognized as the *a‘lam*, the most knowledgeable in Islamiics

Tarwiyah: The Day of Tarwiyah is the 8th of Thul-Hijjah when the pilgrims fill their water bags and prepare to go to Mina.

Tasahhud: the testimony regarding Allāh being the Lord and Muhammad being His Servant and Messenger; it is the uttering of "Ashhadu an la ilaha illa-Allāh, wa anna Muḥammed abdaho w a rasooloh"

Tashreeq: the cutting and sun-drying of sacrificed meat

Tawāf: circling around a sacred site

Tawātur: consecutive reporting, the tracing of one particular *hadīth* to its respective chronological chain of narrators

Tawḥid: the concept of the absolute Unity of God, the belief that God is One and indivisible, One—and Only One—God

Tawwabeen: the penitent ones, those who repented their reluctance to go to the rescue of Imām Husain when he was confronted with Yazid’s armies and who enlisted under the military command of al-Mukhtar and pursued those who massacred Imām Husain ibn ‘Ali ibn Abū Tālib (**)and killed them

Thakireen: those who often mention the Name of the Almighty and Glorify Him

Thayyib: a deflowered woman, a widow or divorcee

Thīreed: pieces of bread cut and dipped in stew

‘Ulemā’: plural of ‘ālim, scholar-theologian

Umma: nation, group of people

Umm wuld: "Freed mother of son" means a bondmaid who bears sons by her master and who is set free on that account but remains in his custody as his wife.

‘Umra: the pilgrimage to Mecca during any time other than the prescribed (first ten) days of the month of Thul-Hijjah

Usool: the basics of jurisprudence

Wājib: compulsory, obligatory, binding

Wāli: person to whom *wilāyat* is obligatory; a *wāli*, however, is a governor appointed by a Muslim ruler of a higher authority (such as a caliph, a sultan, etc.)

Waqf: a charitable trust

Wasi: successor to a prophet
Wilāyat: a binding supreme authority that combines both temporal and religious powers

Wisāl: fasting the last day of every lunar calendar month

Wudu: ablution

Zakāt: Literally, it means "purification;" it is a compulsory 2.5% tax on one of three categories of wealth: 1) metal coins (gold, silver, etc.), 2) grain crops (barley, wheat, grain, rice, etc.), and 3) animals raised for food consumption. Zakāt is somehow a complicated issue, and for details, readers are advised to consult books dealing with fiqh. Among its types are: zakāt al-mal (taxable wealth accumulated during one full year), and zakāt al-fitr (a tax to be paid by the head of a household at the end of the fast of the month of Ramadān).

Zihār: the making of a similitude between the back of one’s wife with that of his mother; i.e. saying that his wife’s back looks similar to his mother’s back (zahr)